

JOHN 'LOFTY' WISEMAN

# SAS SURVIVAL HANDBOOK

THIRD EDITION

THE ULTIMATE GUIDE  
TO SURVIVING ANYWHERE

  
WILLIAM MORROW  
*An Imprint of HarperCollins Publishers*

## Copyright

THIRD EDITION  
THE ULTIMATE GUIDE TO SURVIVING ANYWHERE

This new edition published in 2014 by  
William Morrow, an imprint of HarperCollins Publishers  
195 Broadway, New York, NY 10007.

Produced by Essential Works  
[www.essentialworks.co.uk](http://www.essentialworks.co.uk)

First published by Harvill 1986  
Text © John Wiseman 1986, 2003, 2009, 2014  
Illustrations © HarperCollins 1986, 2003, 2006, 2009, 2014

SAS SURVIVAL HANDBOOK. Copyright © 1986, 2003, 2009, 2014 by John Wiseman. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information address HarperCollins Publishers, 195 Broadway, New York, NY 10007.

HarperCollins books may be purchased for educational, business, or sales promotional use. For information please e-mail the Special Markets Department at [SPsales@harpercollins.com](mailto:SPsales@harpercollins.com).

### CREDITS/ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The colour illustrations were painted by Norman Arlott. Other illustrations were drawn by Steve Cross, Chris Lyon, Andrew Mawson and Tony Spalding. New design on the 2003 edition by Paul Collins.

The editors would also like to thank Howard Loxton and Christopher McLehose.

ISBN 978-0-06-237807-1  
EPub Edition November 2014 ISBN 9780062386717

14 15 16 17 18 / 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
Printed and bound by Printing Express, Hong Kong

## Dedication

For my father

T. C. H. WISEMAN

who showed me the value of life  
and whose dedication to helping  
others I try to follow

## Contents

[Title Page](#)

[Copyright](#)

[Dedication](#)

[WARNING](#)

[INTRODUCTION](#)



[1 - ESSENTIALS](#)



[2 - STRATEGY](#)



[3 - CLIMATE & TERRAIN](#)



[4 - FOOD](#)



[5 - CAMP CRAFT](#)



[6 - READING THE SIGNS](#)



[7 - ON THE MOVE](#)



[8 - HEALTH](#)



[9 - SURVIVAL AT SEA](#)



[10 - RESCUE](#)



[11 - URBAN SURVIVAL](#)



[12 - DISASTERS](#)

[POSTSCRIPT](#)

[Index](#)

[About the Publisher](#)

## **WARNING**

---

The survival techniques described in this publication are for use in dire circumstances where the safety of the individuals is at risk. Accordingly the publishers cannot accept any responsibility for any prosecutions or proceedings brought or instituted against any person or body as a result of the use or misuse of any techniques described or any loss, injury or damage caused thereby. In practising and perfecting these survival techniques the rights of landowners and all relevant laws protecting certain species of animals and plants and controlling the use of firearms and other weapons must be regarded as paramount.

---

## **INTRODUCTION**

---

In an increasingly uncertain world, the focus of this new edition is to prepare you for any survival situation you may encounter. Within these pages I look to identify every danger imaginable and show you how to deal with it. The advice given here will prepare you both physically and mentally, and make you aware of all the hazards you may face. Being fully prepared will give you the confidence to survive against the odds—and allow you to adapt when things go wrong.

For 26 years, as a professional soldier, I had the privilege of serving with the Special Air Service (SAS). This elite unit of the British Army is trained to carry out arduous operations in all parts of the world, often isolated and far from conventional forces. Working in small groups, often in enemy territory, SAS soldiers have to become their own doctor, dentist, navigator and cook. Frequently, the operational situation makes resupply impossible and they have to live off the land. They have to handle every kind of situation and problem, whether man-made or an act of nature, and get back to safety, and must develop skills which enable them to survive anywhere.

After serving throughout the world, I became the survival instructor to the SAS and it was my responsibility to ensure that each and every member of the Regiment could apply these skills in the field. Tested in training and operations, they form the basis of this new edition.

The need for survival training has never been greater. Cheaper air travel has opened up the world, and there is virtually no place left on the face of the planet that we cannot and have not visited. This, added to factors such as increased leisure time, wealth, and the knowledge provided by television programmes, means that we are becoming more adventurous and informed about the world around us.

But we must also take into account the fact that over the last 12 years the world has become a more unstable place. The Berlin wall came down in 1999, followed by the Gulf War, Bosnia, Kosovo and Sierra Leone. These events, however, were overshadowed by the catastrophic and tragic events of 11th September 2001, the resultant ‘war on terror’ and, of course, the wars in Iraq and Afghanistan. These global conflicts have affected everyone and one thing is for sure—our lives will never be the same again.

The instinct to survive will never change, neither will the human body’s amazing ability to endure. Yet we should also bear in mind that, as we become more civilized, survival skills are being forgotten. It is doubly important, therefore, to practise our survival skills, and be prepared for anything. Survival training is the best insurance policy you can take out in an unstable world. If we are all grounded in the basic techniques of survival, and know what to do in an emergency, the world immediately becomes a safer place.

You could be isolated anywhere in the world—from the arctic ice to a desert, from tropical rainforest to the open ocean, and the problems of survival are the same for both soldier and civilian. The difference lies in the circumstances; soldiers may need to hide their presence, whereas civilians will want to attract attention to effect their rescue. In areas of instability, where the risk of kidnap is high, it may be best to remain inconspicuous. Each environment calls for special survival techniques. Mountains, jungles, open plains and swamps can seem hazardous to the survivor, but each offers some form of support and can be exploited for food, fuel, water and shelter—if you know how. The effect of climate is crucial. Intense cold and searing heat challenge the survivor in different ways. You must know how to cope with both.

You also need a sense of how your body works and how it will react in different environments and situations. Assess yourself before you travel: for instance, test your basic survival skills by sleeping outside, making sure that you can light a fire, and even going without sleep or food for a period of time. This will show you how you

react in a limited simulated scenario.

Survival depends upon applying basic principles and adapting them to the circumstances. These basic principles form an essential pyramid of learning for the survivor.



Although initially it may take great physical effort to escape a dangerous situation, survival is above all a mental exercise. After the excitement of the incident and the rush of adrenalin has settled it takes great mental resolve to carry on. What keeps us going is the basic instinct, best referred to as 'the will to live'.

## Will to Live

This is the firm foundation on which we build all of our training. We constantly try to nourish and increase the will to live. It's easy to see how physically fit we are but very difficult to know how mentally fit we are.

The Will to Live (WTL) means never giving in, regardless of the situation. It's very reassuring to know that there is nothing on this earth that we cannot deal with, and there is no place where we cannot survive. As long as we follow the basic survival principles, prepare ourselves, and apply this WTL, we will come through. Some people have a stronger will than others, but we can all improve.

Some of us turn to religion in times of stress, others think of loved ones. Fear of failure or letting down comrades all help to strengthen our WTL. Reading about past exploits of survival will also help. You can have all the knowledge and kit in the world but without the will to live you can still perish.

## Knowledge

On top of our foundation we have Knowledge. The more we know the easier it is to survive. Knowledge dispels fear. Look at the locals and see how they survive. Talk to people who have endured and learn from their experiences. On a practical level, ensure you are fully informed about the medical infrastructure in the particular region you are travelling in and know exactly how the emergency services operate.

## Kit

The tip of our pyramid of learning is Kit. We keep this to a minimum and have a thorough knowledge of its uses and capabilities. There are essential items that you should never leave home without, including your Survival tin, knife, compass and a radio/phone. Remember, however, that you must also focus on what nature can provide to protect you as, ultimately, any kit must be considered a bonus. It is important that you know how to improvise and use your surroundings to sustain you when faced with a survival situation.

It is essential that you use your own judgement in the application of the methods described in this book. The tests for plant foods, for instance, are the only sure way of being certain whether a particular fruit or leaf is safe or poisonous. The average person is unlikely to come to any harm if they follow the method carefully, but there is always an element of risk. Individual responses to poisons vary—even small quantities of toxic substances can be very dangerous to some people. Some of the traps described are also very dangerous. They can inflict injury to you if handled carelessly and should never be left unattended where other people may come to harm.

In learning the skills described here, I would always advise that you keep in mind the need to conserve our environment and to avoid cruelty to animals, and to be aware that some of these techniques may contravene local bylaws. While a knife is a useful item in the wild, remain aware of contemporary knife laws. Remember, this is a handbook for survival situations when self-preservation is paramount. Therefore, risks may be involved which would be foolish even to consider under normal circumstances.

Although this is not an official publication, by sharing the survival knowledge that I and my colleagues have gained through experience, I aim to help you to make those decisions correctly. These methods and skills have helped save our lives—they will help you to be a survivor, too.

I would like, finally, to thank the SAS Regiment for providing me with the experience on which this book is based and to thank Howard Loxton and Tony Spalding who helped to bring it to publication. Without their hard work and dedication this book would not have been possible.

J.W.  
The Survival School, Hereford

## 1 **ESSENTIALS**

**B**egin by preparing yourself to be a survivor. That means preparation in every sense. This section is concerned with making sure that you have the right equipment for any expedition you undertake. It introduces the idea of carrying a pocket-sized kit of carefully selected key survival aids—which should go with you everywhere.

A knife is your most important survival tool. It must be chosen and used carefully and it must be kept in perfect condition.

Equally important is a personal preparedness, so that you are both physically and psychologically equipped to deal with the stresses and hazards of survival conditions. You must have a clear understanding of survival needs, especially of the need for—and ways of obtaining—water.

### ESSENTIALS FOR SURVIVAL

Be prepared

Research

Planning

Equipment

The unexpected

### SURVIVAL KIT

### SURVIVAL POUCH

### KNIVES

### FACING DISASTER

Basic needs

### WATER

Finding water

Condensation

Water from plants

Water from animals

### SALT

# **ESSENTIALS FOR SURVIVAL**

---

The human species has established itself in almost every corner of the Earth. Even in territories too inhospitable to provide a regular home mankind has found a way to exploit its resources, whether by hunting or by taking wealth from the ground, and has often pitted its skills against nature simply for the satisfaction of doing so.

Almost everywhere nature provides the necessities for survival. In some places the provision is abundant, in others very meagre and it takes common sense, knowledge and ingenuity to take advantage of the resources available. Even more important is the will to survive. Men and women have shown that they can survive in the most adverse situations, but they have done so because of their determination to do so—without that, the skills and knowledge in this book will be of little use if you find yourself really up against it.

Survival is the art of staying alive. Any equipment you have must be considered a bonus. You must know how to take everything possible from nature and use it to the full, how to attract attention to yourself so that rescuers may find you, how to make your way across unknown territory back to civilization, if hope of rescue is not on the cards, navigating without map or compass. You must know how to maintain a healthy physical condition, or if sick or wounded heal yourself and others. You must be able to maintain your morale and that of others who share your situation.

Lack of equipment should not mean that you are unequipped, for you will carry skills and experience with you, but those skills and experience must not be allowed to get rusty and you must extend your knowledge all the time.

We are all used to surviving on our home ground—though we may not think of our lives in that way—but the true survivor must learn how to survive when taken from familiar surroundings or when those surroundings are drastically changed by man or nature. Anyone, young or old, from whatever walk of life, can find him- or herself in a survival situation. As more and more people fly the globe, sail small boats or cross the sea in large ones, walk the hills and climb mountains and take their holidays in ever more exotic places, the situations to which they could become exposed are increasingly diversified.

But survival skills are not only concerned with the extremes of the air crash on a mountain peak, a shipwreck in the tropics or a vehicle breakdown in the middle of a desert. Every time you fasten a seat belt in a car you are giving yourself a greater chance of survival. Checking each way before crossing a road or ensuring that an open fire is safe before you go to bed are survival techniques that you carry out instinctively. It is these habits of mind that you must develop as much as acquiring skills.

The main elements of survival are Food, Fire, Shelter, Water, Navigation and Medicine. To put these in order of priority we use the acronym PLAN. No matter where you are in the world this will never change be it the Arctic, desert, jungle, sea or seashore.

## **P—for Protection**

You must ensure that you are protected from further danger, i.e. impending avalanche, forest fire or exploding fuel. Always stay on the scene of the incident as long as it is safe to do so and then make sure you are protected from the elements. This means making a shelter and often lighting a fire. There are several reasons why you should always stay at the scene:

- 1 You can utilize the wreckage for shelter, signaling etc.
- 2 It's a bigger signature on the ground, making it easier to find.
- 3 There are probably injured people that cannot be moved.
- 4 By staying where you are you conserve energy.
- 5 Because you have booked in and out and have stayed on the route, rescue time will be minimal.

## **L—for Location**

The next step after building a shelter is to put out emergency signals. You must draw attention to your position. Do this as soon as possible to help the rescuers.

## **A—for Acquisition**

While waiting to be rescued, look for water and food to help supplement your emergency supplies.

## **N—for Navigation**

Good navigation will keep you on route and will often avert a survival situation. But if you find yourself stranded, always stay where you are.

## **Medical**

You must become your own doctor and carefully monitor yourself at all times. Treat blisters as they occur, don't let them become septic. Keep an eye on your companions and deal with any unusual problems as they arise. If they are limping, falling behind, or behaving strangely, stop and treat immediately.

## **BE PREPARED**

The Boy Scouts' motto is the right one. Anyone setting out on a journey or planning an expedition should follow it by discovering as much as possible about the situations likely to be faced and the skills and equipment called for. It is the most basic common sense to prepare yourself, to take appropriate gear and to plan as carefully as possible.

Your kit could make the difference between failure and success, but, especially when back-packing, many people initially take too much and have to learn from bitter experience what they really need and what they could have done without. There is no fun in struggling with a huge pack full of superfluous items while wishing that you had a torch or can opener with you. Getting the right balance is not easy.

## **EQUIPMENT CHECK LIST**

Before any journey or expedition make a check list and ask yourself the following questions:

- How long will I be away? How much food do I need for this period and do I need to carry water?
- Have I the right clothing for the climate and enough of it? Is one pair of boots enough or, because of the surface conditions and the amount of walking, should I take a standby pair?
- What special equipment do I need for the terrain?
- What medical kit is appropriate?

Make sure that you are fit enough for what you plan to do. The fitter you are, the easier and more enjoyable it will be. If you are going hill-walking, for instance, take regular exercise beforehand and wear in your hiking boots. Walk to and from work with a bag weighted with sand and get your muscles in condition! Mental fitness is another factor. Are you sure that you are up to the task, have prepared enough and have the equipment to accomplish it? Eliminate any nagging doubts before you set out.

Always prepare contingency plans in case anything goes wrong. Things rarely go quite according to plan. What will you do if you are prevented from achieving your objective? What will you do if a vehicle breaks down, or if weather or ground conditions prove more severe than anticipated? If in a party, how will you regroup if separated? What happens if someone becomes ill?

## **Health checks**

Have a thorough medical check and ensure that you have all the necessary injections for the territories through which you intend to travel. There are vaccinations against yellow fever, cholera, typhoid, hepatitis, smallpox, polio, diphtheria and tuberculosis, and an antitetanus injection is a must. Allow plenty of time for jabs—the full anti-typhoid protection requires three injections over the course of six months. If travelling through a malarial region take an adequate supply of anti-malaria tablets. You must start taking these two weeks before your journey, so that resistance is in the system before you arrive in the risk area, and should keep taking them for a month after your return.

Go to the dentist and get your teeth inspected. Teeth that normally do not hurt can cause considerable pain in cold climates. At least start out in sound condition.

Make up a medical kit that will cover all your likely needs and, if travelling with a group, ensure that any particular individual medical needs are covered. If a potential member of the group is not fit, should they be dropped from the party? A difficult decision among friends, but one that must be made for it is best in the long run. Consider, too, the ability of each member of the group to deal with the challenge of hardship, risk and endurance that you may meet. Stress often brings out the unknown side of a person, and in planning any group expedition some form of selection is needed when choosing your companions.

## **RESEARCH**

You can never have too much information about a place you are going to. Contact people who know it already, read books, study maps—and make sure that you have reliable and up-to-date maps to take with you. Find out about the local people. Are they likely to be friendly and helpful or are they wary of strangers? Are there local customs and taboos?

The more detailed your knowledge of the way people live—particularly in non-westernized societies, where life is linked much more closely to the land—the more survival knowledge you will have if you come to need it. Local methods of shelter building and fire making, wild foods, herbal medicines and water sources will be based on an intimate understanding of the surroundings.

Study your maps carefully, get a feel for the land even before you see it and gain as much knowledge of the terrain as possible: river directions and speed of flow, waterfalls, rapids and difficult currents. How high are hills and mountains, and what are their slopes like—are they snow covered? Which way do the ridges run? What kind of vegetation can you expect, what species of trees and where? What might temperatures be and how different at day and night? When are first and last light? What is the state of the moon, the time and height of tides, the prevailing wind direction and strength? The weather that can be expected?

## **PLANNING**

For a group expedition get the members together for frequent discussions of what you aim to achieve. Nominate people for particular responsibilities: medic, linguist, cook, special equipment, vehicle maintenance, driver, navigator and so forth. Ensure that everyone is familiar with the equipment and that there are spares where needed—batteries, fuel and bulbs especially.

Divide the project into phases: entry phase, objective and recovery. Clearly state the aim of each phase and work out a time scale. Plan for emergency procedures such as vehicle breakdown, illness and casualty evacuation.

In estimating the rate of progress, especially on foot, allow plenty of time. It is always better to underestimate and be pleasantly surprised by doing better. Pressure to keep up to an over-ambitious schedule not only produces tension and exhaustion but leads to errors of judgement and risk-taking that are frequently the reason for things going wrong. You cannot carry all your water requirement with you but must replenish supplies as you travel. Water sources will be a major factor in planning any route.

When the route is planned and agreed make sure that others know about it so that you can have expectations of rescue if anything goes wrong. If you are hiking in the hills inform the police and local mountain rescue centre. Tell them your proposed plan and give times of departure and expected arrival. If touring by car, log the route with the respective motoring organization. If sailing, check with coastguard and port authorities.

Always make sure that someone knows what you are planning to do and when, and keep them informed at prearranged stages so that failure to contact will set alarm bells ringing. Boats and aircraft are strictly controlled in this respect and, if overdue, a search is raised and the route checked out, effecting rescue. Get into the habit of telling people where you are going and what time you expect to return or reach your next destination.

## **EQUIPMENT**

Being prepared for any eventuality is a tall order if you are on foot and have to carry everything you need yourself. Whatever you carry, you must ensure that it is up to the job, versatile and robust. It's a fine balance between what you would like to carry and what you must carry. When preparing for any adventure, you must take into consideration what the dangers are and how you can overcome these. This is what is called contingency planning.

The climate, weather and time of year will all help you to determine what to carry, but you must ensure that everyone with you knows how to use and maintain the specialist kit you decide to take with you. Armed with information from your research you will be able to select your equipment, matching it to objectives and conditions.

## **Clothing**

The correct choice of clothing is so important. If you start out right the chances are that you will succeed. Man is a tropical animal and can only survive as we are born in the tropics. The moment we leave this area we have to provide our bodies with this tropical environment, hence the need for clothes. There is no heat in clothing, it only traps what the body produces.

The wind and rain are the most dangerous elements in a temperate climate and the cold in extreme areas like the polar regions. If the heat that is trapped in the layers of clothing you are wearing is continuously being replaced by wind and rain, you are in danger of hypothermia. In cold climates layering is the answer so pull on a jersey if it turns cold and waterproofs if it rains. However if you wear an anorak while carrying a heavy pack, there is a danger of wearing through the shoulders and lower lumbar region allowing the ingress of water to soak the body. You need a change of clothing and additional warm garments for when you stop.

In hot climates it is very difficult to get the balance right between comfort and practicality. There has always

been a danger of overheating in extreme conditions caused by wearing heavy clothing while carrying out physical activities. When on the move wear the least amount of clothing possible and avoid walking in waterproofs if you are too hot, as the condensation generated will soak the inner layers.

Clothing should give good protection and be well-fitting without being restrictive. It must keep you warm and dry but have plenty of ways to keep the body ventilated so you don't overheat (if it gets colder you can always put on more.)

With all the great breakthroughs in recent years in fabric technology it is worth understanding the pros and cons of the different materials on offer. Gore-tex™ is an excellent material because it is breathable and so keeps you warm and dry while ventilating the body, but it does have limitations. Breathable materials can only work if they are kept clean. Once they get covered in mud and accumulate grime they are less effective. Gore-tex™ is not robust or hard-wearing and must be looked after. The best way to use Gore-tex™ is to walk or climb in windproof garments and when at rest, put on the breathable kit.

Synthetic materials such as fleece are very popular and in certain conditions outperform natural materials like wool, down or cotton. Having a zipped front makes a fleece easy to put on and take off and they are also comfortable to walk in. Choose one that is windproof as this is often all that is needed in most conditions. If it gets colder they can be worn under an outer waterproof giving good insulation. There are also garments which act like an animal's skin, using the buffalo system. They have a windproof outer with a man-made fibre pile inside. When wet they perform like a wetsuit. They are good for walking in cold/wet conditions, and are ideal for boating, canoeing and caving.

As for natural fabrics, wool is still an excellent choice for jumpers as it retains its warmth even when wet. The downside is it stretches and becomes heavy, so it's not a good choice for socks. Down is the warmest and lightest of all natural insulating materials but loses all its heat-retaining qualities when wet. Cotton acts as a wick and draws up all the moisture. So it's good to wear in the tropics but not in the cold/wet regions.

Footwear is an important consideration and for serious walking give your feet priority. Break in new boots gradually and harden up your skin with surgical spirit, starting two weeks before you set off. For the enthusiast the major consideration in choosing clothing is cost. Surplus stores are very popular for the younger adventurer who loves to parade in camouflage clothing. Although ex-military kit is good, and cheap, it is already obsolete. The big drawback of wearing camouflage or dark clothing is the risk of not being found when lost. The reason soldiers wear it is so they cannot be seen which contradicts what you are trying to do if you get into trouble. Most outdoor clothing is blue or orange, some is reversible, so a contrasting colour will always stand out wherever we find ourselves. Buy the best clothing you can afford, and take advice from a reputable outdoor shop.

Remember: There is no such thing as bad weather, only bad clothing.

## Sleeping bags

Two types are generally available. One kind uses hollow fill, man-made fibre, the other (and more expensive) is filled with down. Down is very light and gives much better insulation—provided it stays dry. If it gets wet it loses all its insulating properties and is very difficult to dry out. For conditions that are likely to be wet the man-made fibre will therefore be the better choice. Avoid getting your sleeping bag wet, however, as sleep will be seriously affected.

Excellent bivouac bags made of breathable material are also available that will keep you dry in place of a tent, but in the long term you cannot beat a tent which can also be used for cooking and communal activities. Keep your sleeping bag inside the bivy bag and stow it inside a compression sack to make it as small as possible. Keep the bag clean and use a kip mat or poncho to lie on.

## Packs

You need a strong and comfortable back-pack to carry all your clothing and equipment. Choose the very best you can afford. It should have tough and fully adjustable webbing, well secured to the pack's frame or fabric. Heavy loads can quickly loosen poorly made webbing. It must have a comfortable hip belt. The secret of wearing a pack is to take the weight securely on the hips—the body's strongest pivot—not on the shoulders and back, which quickly strain and tire.

Do you want a pack with an external or an internal frame? Internal frames are lighter and make a pack more easy to stow, but external frames are stronger, ensure a more even distribution of the load and are especially useful for awkward or heavy equipment—including, in an emergency, a sick or injured person. A good external frame should carry the pack high up on your body, putting less strain on hips and shoulders, and it should be designed to allow an airspace between the pack and your back to minimise contact perspiration. A frame adds weight and is more prone to snag on rocky projections or branches, making progress through dense vegetation a little more difficult, but its advantages more than compensate.

Finally, choose a pack made from a tough, waterproof fabric, preferably with a lace-up hood inside the main sack to prevent water leaking in and the contents falling out. Side pockets are always useful, but they must have secure zips rather than straps or drawstrings, which do not hold equipment safely.

## **Stowing kit**

If you expect to get wet, stow everything in polythene bags. Pack so that you know where everything is and so that the first things you need are not buried at the bottom. The sleeping bag is probably the last thing you need so that goes at the bottom. Your tent should be on the top, so should heavy kit such as radios, which are more easily carried there—though try not to make the pack too high, if you have to cope with strong winds, for a very high pack will be more difficult to balance and you will expend a lot of energy just keeping upright.

Pack a stove and brew-kit in a side pocket so that you have easy access when you halt. Make sure that foodstuffs that can be easily squashed or melted are in suitable containers. In a warm climate you can carry food to eat cold and make plenty of hot drinks. In a cold climate make sure that you have plenty of fats and sugars. The exact rations depend on your taste, but they should be chosen to give a good balance of vitamins, minerals, fats, proteins and carbohydrates. Take into account the extent to which you will be able to live off the land and carry a supply of anything unlikely to be available locally.

## **G.P.S**

A G.P.S (Global Positioning System) is an excellent piece of equipment and has taken a lot of skill away from the navigator. Basically these systems receive radio signals from satellites and can locate your current position, anywhere in the world, and are relatively easy to use. You need at least two satellites to get a position, but the more the better. It is also useful to note that they are reported to have 95% accuracy rate. However, in order to work, the satellite transmission must not have any obstructions in its way, such as a tree branch, so to receive a clear signal you need to be standing still and out in the open. However, if we depend solely on technology our basic skills will suffer and we will become unstuck if it becomes unserviceable or is lost. G.P.S is not effective unless you can identify where you are so stick to the basics. Map read and navigate normally and use the G.P.S to confirm your navigation or correct it.

When looking to buy a G.P.S there are several considerations to think about: what you'll be using it for – if walking you will want the unit to be as light as possible and compact; where you'll be using it; and if you need it to be waterproof (this is usually a feature of the heavier models with extra gadgets). Battery life should also be taken into account. Some G.P.S are more complicated than others so choose the model that you're happy with. Most have the facility of being able to put in way points (at sea this means the eastern and northern coordinates and on land these can be campsites, rock formations etc) and there are many convenient hand-held versions and some are even featured on watches.

There is always a danger with any battery-operated equipment that it lets you down when you need it most. Batteries always discharge faster in the cold and with age. Recharging facilities are difficult in the wilderness, although solar panel chargers and extra power packs should keep them charged, and bad connections caused by constant abuse while on the move are a real menace.

Carry the G.P.S around the neck tucked under the jacket. This will minimize the risk of damage and protect it from the weather. Don't place it in your pack or leave it lying around.

When planning your route from the map, choose prominent points that can be used as emergency rendezvous. Have these at regular intervals, preferably every hour of walking. Enter them into the G.P.S and they will keep you on track. Once entered they will offer information as to where you are in relation to these points and tell you what direction to take to reach them.

## **Radios**

For a long expedition in remote territory a radio is a necessity. They tend to be expensive but are well worth the cost; if you cannot afford the radio, you cannot afford the expedition. Choose a model with the least amount of channels available to suit your particular needs. The trouble with multi-channelled sets is that people get confused and tend to use the wrong ones. Have a working channel that everyone uses at established schedules. Have a priority channel that you can switch to in an emergency so no one will break into your transmissions. If working with coastguards/forest rangers etc make sure that your radio is compatible and you know the emergency channel (channel 16); knowing the frequency of the World Service is also useful. Keep your radio in a safe place, ideally on a person and not in a pack.

Pearrange a signals plan with scheduled calls morning and evening, especially when working in a large party. A signals plan entails people manning the radio at base and two-way communication is easily made. Make sure that the chosen frequencies will work in the areas you are going to, and that at least two people in the party are familiar with the working of the radio. Every group on the ground must be in radio contact with base. They should be allocated a call sign and frequency, and a schedule of calls to be made.

Discourage groups from talking to each other without going through base. This will cause great confusion if not controlled. Listen out before transmitting otherwise you will interfere with other stations. Everyone has verbal diarrhoea when they talk on the radio so write down what you want to say before making contact and have pencil and paper ready to make notes and take instructions. This will help to keep transmissions to a minimum and preserve the batteries.

## **REMEMBER: RSVP**

**Rhythm** – don't talk like a Darlek

**Speed** – talk slowly

**Volume** – speak softly

**Pitch** – pitch voice higher than normal and use the phonetic alphabet when spelling out place names

In the evening give a situation report to base with your location, what you have done and your future intentions. In the morning receive an update on weather conditions, a time check and other information that base can give you. A noon time call can be used to confirm your position.

## **BE AWARE**

Signals will be weak in steep gullies and valley bottoms and good signals will be received on top of high ground or across water.

If you are tackling a dangerous aspect of the expedition you may want to arrange that base listen out for additional calls so that in an emergency you can call for help and get a response immediately.

## **BE AWARE**

An emergency plan should always be put into operation when two consecutive calls are missed. Even if all is well, if you have not been able to make contact this will be treated by base as an emergency. You must return to or stay at the last reported location and await contact. If you are really in trouble base will know where you last were and where you planned to go to, and the rescue mission can follow.

## **Mobiles**

The mobile phone is one of the great inventions of the twentieth century. In an emergency situation it can be a real life-saver. On expeditions where the radios have failed due to bad weather or the location of the victims, a mobile phone has been used to raise the alarm. A group on Everest got into trouble as they started their descent after summittting. They tried many times to raise base camp but without success. The leader phoned his wife in Hong Kong on a mobile phone and reported their situation. She then alerted Kathmandu, who in turn alerted base camp, Everest and effected a rescue.

Some phones are better than others so it's worth doing some homework; it's also essential to check the network coverage with the service provider before going abroad. Keep one in the car, they are priceless when help is required and a cigarette lighter is a convenient charger for the battery, providing you have an adaptor. Charging can be a problem in the wild so use your phone wisely, but small, hand-held manual chargers can now be bought to recharge batteries. With radios and phones it takes less power to listen than to transmit, so

make your call and listen for a reply. Texting is also good for battery life and you need less signal. With all electrical kit water/moisture is the enemy. If nothing is heard don't despair. The transmitting side may be working but not the receiving side. Make short calls on the hour. Someone may be picking up your signal so don't give up. Once you receive confirmation that the rescue is under way keep the radio/phone on listening watch.

## Altimeters

In mountainous areas an altimeter is a good idea. Relating the height recorded can help you determine what contour you are on, and how far it is to the ridge or summit.

You never have enough kit in an emergency. It's nice to have G.P.S, phones etc but you can still manage without as long as you have the ability to improvise and adapt. Learn the basics and use technology for confirmation, rather than depending on them whole heartedly. Communication is of the highest importance and must be given priority. It is a safer place as long as you can communicate with the outside world.

Many survival sagas begin because of bad navigation, with people getting lost. Always plan for the worst eventuality.

## BE AWARE

When things go wrong it's a series of events that compound the situation. The weather deteriorates, the radio is broken, the mobile phone is lost. Two people have multiple injuries and you are out of water. Never give in. Plan for these situations and you will come through, but always have a contingency plan. Imagine the worst possible scenario, and train for it.

## Vehicles

Motor vehicles need special adjustment and adaptation to deal with high altitudes and extreme conditions, as well as a thorough overhaul to make sure they are in tip-top working order. You will need tanks for extra fuel and water as well as spares and modifications (see [Vehicles in Climate and Terrain](#)).

## Boats and planes

Whether travelling privately or on a commercial service you must take note of the emergency procedures. Maritime and aviation authorities rule that passengers must be informed of them and remembering them could save your life.

When you board an aircraft cabin staff point out the emergency exits and advise you on action to take in the event of an emergency. On board ship you will carry out lifeboat drills and be instructed on how to abandon ship if you have to.

The safest place on an aircraft is as far back in the tail as possible. In a crash this frequently breaks off and most survivors are from this portion. If you are a passenger in a light aircraft ask the pilot about the trip: how long will it take and what sort of ground will you be flying over? Attend to details—they count in an emergency. Also, try to keep your kit with you at all times.

## THE UNEXPECTED

How can you prepare for what you do not expect? Preparing for expected difficulties and dangers is difficult enough, but what chance have you of equipping yourself for the totally unknown disaster? Yet these are the disasters that immediately spring to people's minds—the shipwreck and the plane crash or forced landing in unfamiliar and difficult terrain.

This is the reason for this book's existence. Even more important, however, is to know about a whole range of skills which can be applied and adapted to all kinds of situations and to develop a way of thinking that enables you to draw upon them to find the solutions to particular problems. This is the preparation you can make for the unexpected.

But this is not all. You can equip yourself with a few small items which will increase your chances many times over by helping you with some of the basic necessities of survival. This can tip the balance between failure and success. They will fit in a small container slipped into a pocket or bag and can be carried anywhere. They are your survival kit. If there is an emergency you will be glad you always carry it.

More bulky, but still compact enough to carry on a belt whenever you are travelling, are a knife and the items which will fit in your survival pouch (see [Survival pouch](#)).

Without the basics, which these two kits provide, you can still improvise but they will give you a head start.

## **SURVIVAL SCENARIO**

---

**You're getting your kit together, what is the most important item to remember to take with you?**

Take your brain with you. You can't beat the combination of common sense and experience in high stress survival situations.

# **SURVIVAL KIT**

---

**A** few key items can make all the difference in the fight for survival. Collect the things listed below. They can all be fitted into a small container, such as a 2oz tobacco tin, that will be hardly noticeable when slipped into an anorak pocket. Make a habit of always having it with you. Do not choose something bigger, you may find it inconvenient to carry and leave it out on the one occasion you actually need it. Many people who roll their own cigarettes carry such a tin.

Experience has proved that each item earns its place, though some are more use in some situations than in others: fish hooks, for instance, may be invaluable in the jungle but less so in the desert.

Polish the inside of the lid to make a mirror-like reflecting surface and seal it, to be waterproof, with a strip of adhesive tape which can be easily removed and replaced. Don't then just forget the tin. Regularly check the contents, changing any which deteriorate, such as matches and medicine tablets. Mark all drug containers with use and dosage and a run-out date when they should be replaced. Pack spare space in the tin with cotton wool, which will keep the contents from rattling and can be used for fire lighting.

## **Matches (1)**

Waterproof matches are useful but bulkier than ordinary non-safety, strike-anywhere matches, which can be made 'shower-proof' by dipping the heads in melted candle fat. To save space, snap off half of each matchstick.

It is much easier to use matches than to make fire by other methods but don't waste them, use only when improvised methods fail. Take them from the tin one at a time and replace the lid. Never leave the container open or lying on the ground.

## **Candle (2)**

Invaluable for starting a fire as well as a light source. Shave square for packing. If made of tallow it is also fat to eat in an emergency or to use for frying—but be sure it is tallow; paraffin wax and some other candles are inedible. Tallow does not store well, especially in hot climates.

## **Flint (3)**

Flints will work when wet and they will go on striking long after you run out of matches. Invest in a processed flint with a saw striker.

## **Magnifying glass (4)**

Can start a fire from direct sunshine and is useful for searching for splinters and stings.

## **Needles and thread (5)**

Several needles, including at least one with a very large eye that can be threaded with sinew and coarse threads. Choose strong thread and wrap it around the needles. They can be used for repairing or making clothes in an emergency.

## **Fish hooks and line (6)**

A selection of different hooks in a small tin or packet. Add a few split lead weights. Remember that a small hook will catch both large and small fish but a large hook will only catch big ones. Include as much line as possible, it will also be useful for catching birds.

## **Compass (7)**

A luminous button compass—but make sure you know how to read it, as some small compasses can be confusing. A liquid-filled type is best, but check that it does not leak, has no bubbles in it and is fully serviceable. The pointer is prone to rust. Make sure it is on its pivot and swings freely.

## **Beta light (8)**

Beta lights provide a reliable and continuous light source for about 15 years. The lights are generally the size of a small coin, are self-illuminating requiring no batteries, and are ideal for map reading.

## **Snare wire (9)**

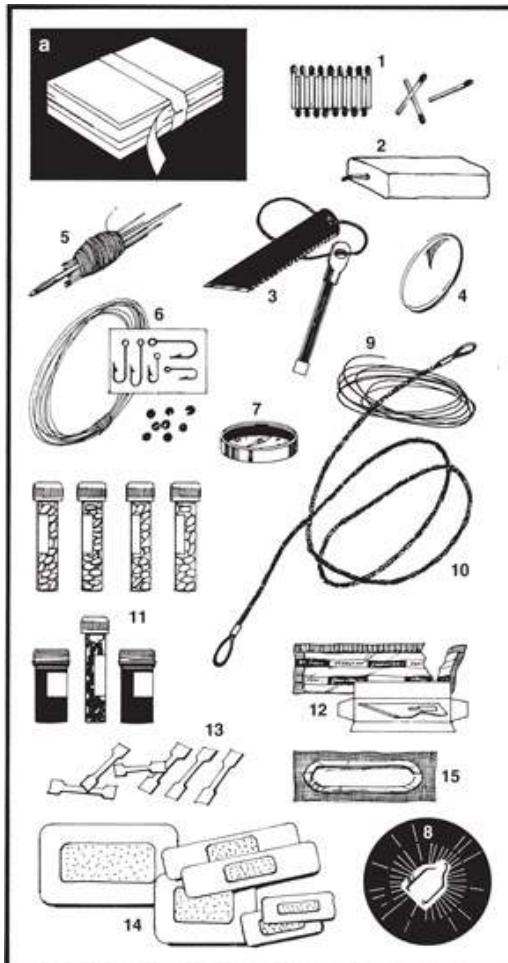
Preferably brass wire—60-90cm (2-3ft) should do. Save for snares, but could solve many survival problems.

## Flexible saw (10)

These usually come with large rings at the ends as handles. These take up too much room, so remove them; they can be replaced by wooden toggles when you need to use it. To protect from rust and breakage cover it in a film of grease. Flexible saws can be used to cut even quite large trees.

## Medical kit (11)

What you include depends upon your own skill in using it. Pack medicines in airtight containers with cotton wool to prevent rattling. The following items will cover most ailments:



**Analgesic:** A pain reliever for mild and moderate pain. Paracetamol is ideal for tooth-, ear- and headaches and Brufen (containing ibuprofen) is also an anti-inflammatory and is good for bruises and sprains. DOSE: one to two tablets every six hours as needed. Not to be taken by children, asthmatics or people with liver disorders.

**Intestinal sedative:** For treating acute and chronic diarrhoea. Imodium is usually favoured. DOSE: two capsules initially, then one each time a loose stool is passed. Antibiotic: For general infections. Tetracycline can be used even by people hypersensitive to penicillin. DOSE: one 250mg tablet, four times daily, repeated for five to seven days. Carry enough for a full course. If taking, avoid milk, calcium and iron preparations or other drugs containing aluminium hydroxide.

**Antihistamine:** For allergies, insect bites and stings (may also help in cases of a bad reaction to a drug). Piriton is recommended in Britain, Benadryl in the USA. Sleepiness is a side-effect of Piriton, so useful as a mild sleeping pill. Do not exceed recommended dosages or take with alcohol.

**Water sterilizing tablets:** For use where water is suspect and you cannot boil. Follow manufacturers' instructions. These should only be used when no other purification methods are available as they can cause stomach upsets and nausea.

**Anti-malaria tablets:** Essential in areas where malaria is present. There are types which require only one tablet taken monthly.

**Potassium permanganate:** Add to water and mix until water becomes bright pink to sterilize it, deeper pink to make an antiseptic and to a full red to treat fungal diseases such as athlete's foot.

## **Surgical blades (12)**

At least two scalpel blades of different sizes. A handle can be made from wood when required.

## **Butterfly sutures (13)**

Use to hold together the edges of clean, sterilized wounds.

## **Plasters (14)**

Assorted sizes, preferably waterproof, for minor abrasions and keeping cuts clean. They can be cut and used as butterfly sutures (see [Stitching wounds](#) in [Health](#)).

## **Condom (15)**

This makes a good water-bag – holding 1 litre (1¾pt). Alternatively, a plastic bag can be used. Fill it from a source that has an abundance of water and a degree of water pressure, like a waterfall.

# **SURVIVAL POUCH**

In a car, boat or aircraft don't stow all your kit separately. Pack a survival pouch, too large to carry in your pocket like your survival tin but kept where it can be grabbed quickly in an emergency. If you are on foot keep it outside your back-pack, and carry it on your belt. It should contain fuel, food, survival bag and signalling kit, all packed into a mess tin (a) which protects the kit and doubles as a cooking utensil. If you fancy a brew or a snack, it is all there for you and in an emergency it gives you a first back-up for survival. Anything you use from the pouch must be replenished as soon as possible.

## **POUCH**

*The pouch must be made from waterproof material and be large enough to take a mess tin. It must have a positive fastening that will not come undone, and a strong tunnel loop to hold it on your belt. Remember the pouch contains matches, solid fuel and flares—all life savers, but to be treated with care.*

### **Mess tin**

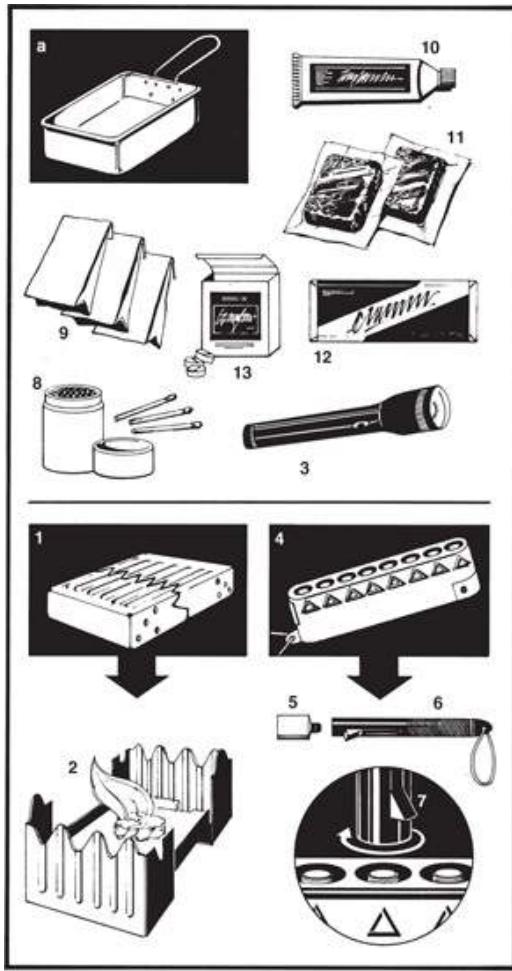
This is made from aluminium, which is light and strong. A good cooking utensil, it protects kit packed inside it.

### **Fuel**

Preferably you should have solid hexamine fuel tablets in their own stove container (1). Use sparingly when a wood fire is inconvenient. They make excellent fire lighters. The stove simply unfolds to form an adjustable pot stand (2) and holder for burning fuel.

### **Torch**

Pack a small pencil-like torch (3) that takes up little room. Keep batteries inside it, but reverse the last so that, if accidentally switched on, the batteries don't run down. Many modern torches use light-emitting diodes (LED) as their light source rather than conventional bulbs. They use less battery power and will typically work continuously for two weeks.



## Flares

Signal flares (4) to attract attention, especially in close country. Carry red and green mini-flares (5) and a discharger (6) (no bigger than a fountain pen). These are explosive so pack carefully. Simply remove discharger and screw on to flare (7). Withdraw flare and point skywards at arm's length. Pull the trigger to fire.

## Marker panel

A strip or bar of fluorescent material about 0.3 x 2m (1 x 6ft) used to attract attention in an emergency (see [Signaling in Rescue](#)). One bar signals immediate evacuation. Form other signals with panels carried by others in your party. Pack to stop the other items in the pouch rattling. A silver thermal blanket is ideal for this.

## Matches

Pack as many matches (8) as possible in a waterproof container, you never have enough. Movement against each other can ignite non-safety matches—pack carefully.

## Brew kit

There is nothing like a brew-up to restore morale. Pack tea powder and sachets of milk and sugar (9). Tea quenches thirst—coffee aggravates it!

## Food

Fat is the hardest food to come by when living off the land. Its extra calories earn it a place in your kit—tubes of butter, lard or ghee (10) are available. Dehydrated meat blocks (11) are nourishing and sustaining, though not very good in flavour. Chocolate (12) is a good food, but does not keep well—check regularly. Salt (13) MUST be included—or, better still, an electrolyte powder which contains vitamins, salt and other minerals that the body requires.

## Survival bag

A large polythene bag about 200 x 60cm (7 x 2ft) is a life-saver in the cold. In an emergency get inside to reduce heat loss. Although wet from condensation you will be warm. Even better is a heat-insulated bag of reflective

material that keeps you warm and solves the condensation problem.

### **Survival log**

Keep a written log of all events. Do not trust your memory. Record discoveries of resources, and of what works and what does not. It becomes a valuable reference and making it helps keep up your morale.

# **KNIVES**

---

**A** knife is an invaluable asset in a survival situation. The serious adventurer will carry one always. They should be packed with the luggage that you are checking in when travelling by commercial aircraft, otherwise they will be confiscated. Current knife law in the UK states that knives where the blade folds into the handle are legal as long as the blade is shorter than 3in (7.62cm).

## **Choosing a knife**

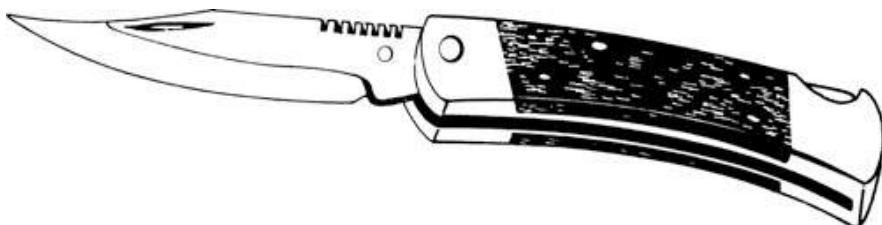
A multi-bladed folding knife is a useful tool, but, if you carry only one knife, you need something stronger, a general-purpose blade that will do all likely tasks efficiently and comfortably, from cutting trees to skinning animals and preparing vegetables. Some have a compass built into the handle or have the handle hollowed out so that you can carry survival kit inside it. However, these features will be offset by the possibility of a hollow handle breaking and a compass may soon lose its accuracy after the knife has been used on a hardwood tree. If you lose this kind of knife you also lose your survival kit—much better to keep the kit in a separate pouch on your belt or on the sheath.

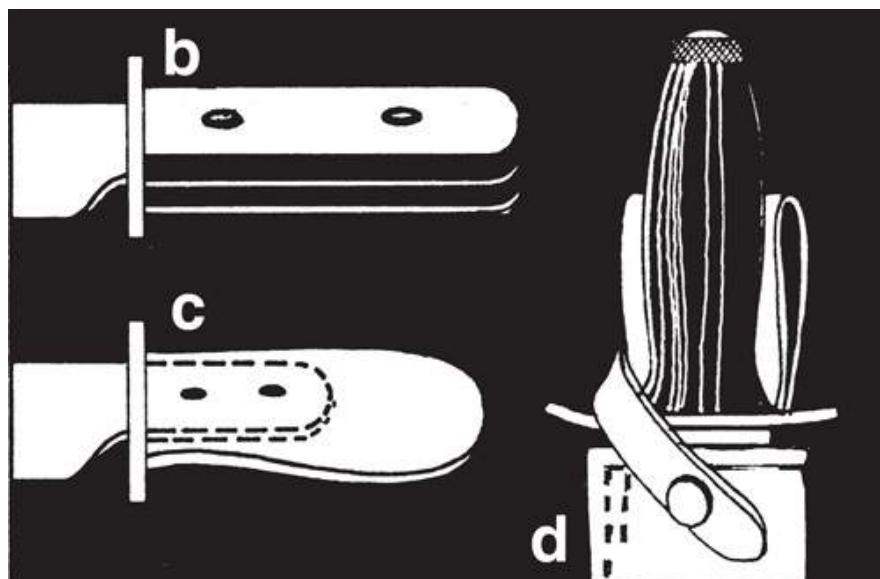
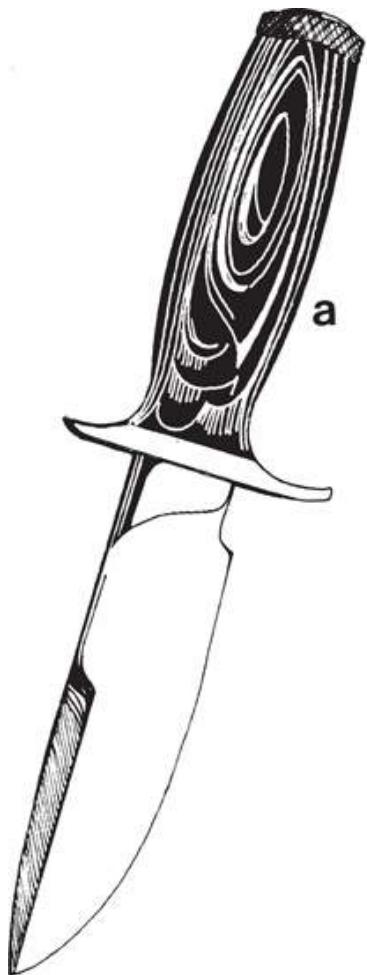
**REMEMBER: YOU ARE ONLY AS SHARP AS YOUR KNIFE.** Your knife is such an important piece of survival equipment, that you must keep it sharp and ready for use. Don't misuse your knife. Never throw it into trees or onto the ground. Keep it clean and, if you don't intend to use it for a while, oiled and in its sheath.

When walking through close, or difficult terrain, get in the habit of checking your knife. This should become an automatic reflex especially after negotiating difficult terrain. A check of all pockets and possessions should be second nature.

## **Folding knives**

A folding knife that has a serrated edge, and which can be opened one-handed is valuable, provided it has a good locked position. Always carry one. A blade in a wooden handle is usually more comfortable: it will not slip in a sweaty hand and, if the handle is made from a single piece of wood, is less likely to cause blisters.



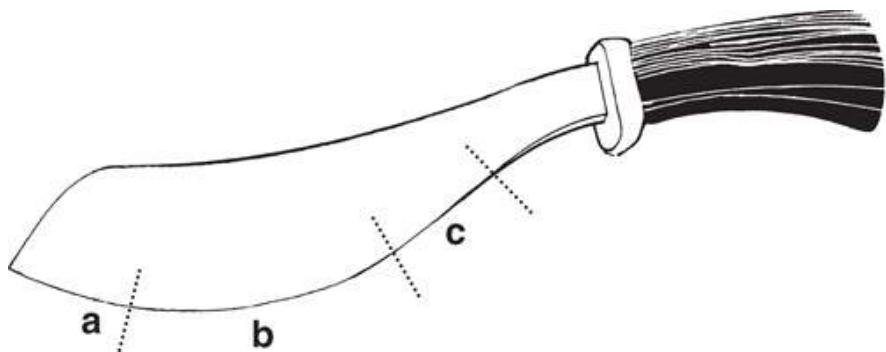


Handle (a) is ideal: a single rounded piece of wood, the knife tang passing through it and fastened at the end. If the handle breaks the tang can be wrapped with cloth or twine. Handle (b) is only riveted to the tang and would cause blisters. Handle (c) could break at the rivets if subjected to heavy work and the short tang would make it difficult to improvise a handle. The sheath (d) should have a positive fastening and a tunnel belt loop.

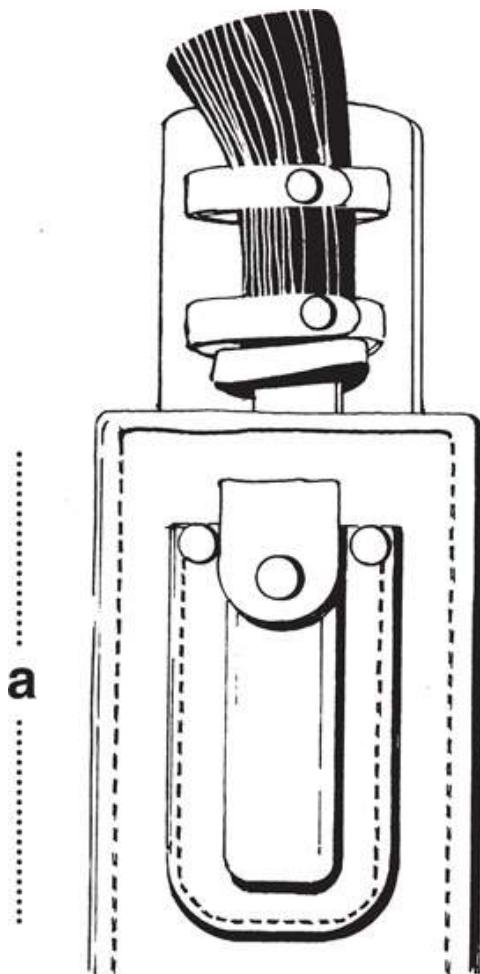
## Parang

This is the Malayan name for a type of knife with a large curved blade like a machete. It is too large to be carried in normal daily life (see [Knives](#)) but ideal when going out into the wild.

A parang 30cm (12in) in overall blade length and weighing no more than 750g (1½lb) is best, the blade 5cm (2in) at its widest and end-bolted into a wooden handle. The curved blade enables maximum effort to be applied when cutting timber and the blade arrives before the knuckles, so giving them protection. Even large trees can be cut down with a parang, which is especially useful for building shelters and rafts.



The parang blade has three different edges: **b** does the heavy work of chopping wood and bone, **a** is finer and used for skinning, **c** is finer still for cawing and delicate work. **a** and **c** are easily maintained and **b** is sharp but not so sharp as to chip easily.

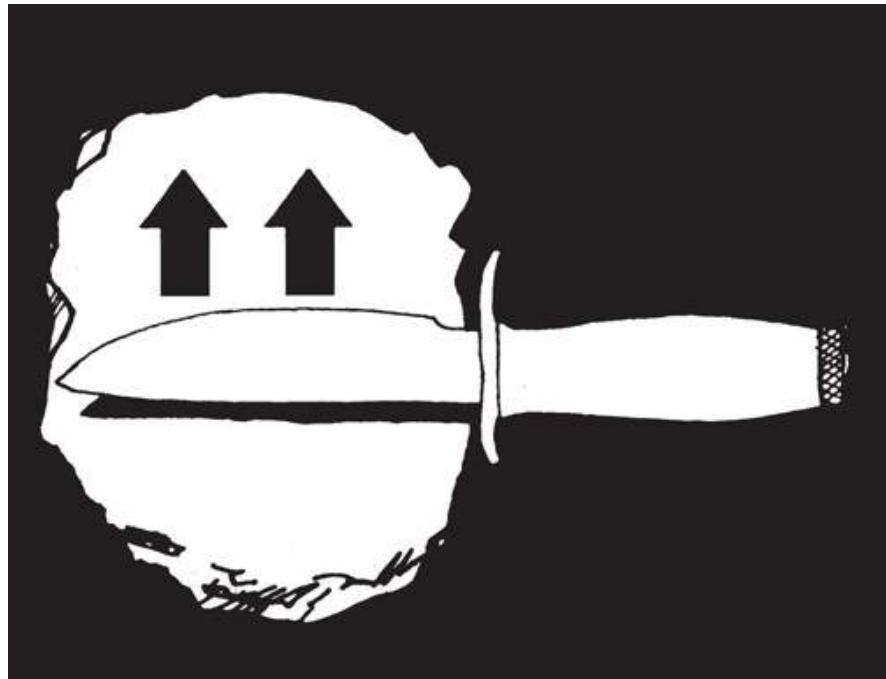


The sheath must have positive fastenings to keep the parang secure, and a loop for fixing to a belt. Some sheaths have a pocket on the front for a sharpening stone.

**REMEMBER:** There is a danger that the cutting edge may come through the side. To draw the parang NEVER hold the sheath on the same side as the cutting edge (a). This is dangerous. Get into the habit of gripping the side AWAY FROM THE CUTTING EDGE.

### Sharpening a knife

Any sandstone will sharpen tools—a grey, clayey sandstone being best. Quartz, though more rarely found, is good and granite can also be used. Rub two pieces together to make them smooth. A double-faced stone with a rough and a smooth surface is ideal and should be carried in the sheath pocket. Use the rough surface first to remove burrs, then the smooth one to get a fine edge. The object is to get an edge that will last and not chip.



To sharpen the blade, hold the handle in the right hand. Use a clockwise circular motion and apply a steady pressure on the blade with the fingertips of the left hand as you push away. Keep the angle constant and make sure you push the knife into the stone so that they edge is sharpened rather than rounded. Keep the stone wet. Rock particles on the blade will show the angle you are obtaining. DON'T drag the blade towards you under pressure. This will produce burrs. Reduce the pressure for a finer edge. Work counter clockwise on the other side.



Blade profile: (a) is too steep and will soon wear, (b) is good and (c) is too fine and might chip.

# **FACING DISASTER**

**W**hen facing a disaster it is easy to let yourself go, to collapse and be consumed in self-pity. But it is no use giving up or burying your head in the sand and hoping that this is a bad dream that will soon pass. It won't, and with that kind of attitude it will rapidly become much worse. Only positive action can save you.

A healthy, well-nourished person can physically tolerate a great deal, provided that he or she has self-confidence. Even if sick or injured, a determined person can win through and recover from seemingly impossible situations. To do so there are many stresses that must be overcome.

## **SURVIVAL STRESSES**

The survival situation will put you under pressure, both physical and mental. You will have to overcome some or all of the following stresses:

- Fear and anxiety
- Pain, illness and injury
- Cold and/or heat
- Thirst, hunger and fatigue
- Sleep deprivation
- Boredom
- Loneliness and isolation

Can you cope? You have to.

Self-confidence is a product of good training and sound knowledge. These must be acquired before you have to face up to a survival situation.

Physical fitness plays an important part. The fitter you are the better you will survive. Initially you may have to go without sleep to ensure that you are in a safe location, or make a long march in dangerous conditions. Do not wait until you are forced to go without sleep to see whether you are capable of doing so. Prove it to yourself now by getting into training. Develop the resources to cope with fatigue and loss of sleep.

You will be working hard to procure food and water. They will relieve hunger and thirst. But finding them will tire you and you will need an adequate shelter to enable you to rest and recover from your efforts. Don't overdo it. Rest frequently and assess the situation.

Pain and fever are warning signals that call attention to an injury or physical condition. They are not in themselves dangerous, however distressing and discomforting. Pain can be controlled and overcome. Its biological function is to protect an injured part, to prevent you using it, but this warning may have to be ignored to avoid the risk of further injury or death.

## **SURVIVAL SCENARIO**

### **How long can the body cope without the essentials?**

In general the human body can survive for 3 minutes without air: 3 days without water: 3 weeks without food. There are always exceptions to this and there are examples of people pushing these boundaries and surviving for longer periods. It is amazing what the human body can endure but such a survivor's health can suffer in the long term due to such trauma. For example a person surviving for more than 9

days without water will undoubtedly suffer kidney damage or failure.

## **BASIC NEEDS**

To reiterate, the main elements required for survival are FOOD, FIRE, SHELTER and WATER. Use PLAN (Protection, Location, Acquisition, Navigation) to help you to prioritise your survival needs. If you don't have shelter in the desert, having 2 litres (3½pts) of water is of little use to you in the longer term.

It takes a healthy person quite a long time to die of starvation, for the body can use up its stored resources, but exposure to wind, rain and cold can be fatal even in temperate climates and death comes in only minutes in the icy waters of the poles. Food is rarely the first priority. Even in those places where it is difficult to find there are usually other problems to face first. Shelter will often be the prime necessity in extremes of climate or temperature—not just in the frozen polar regions or the baking deserts, but for walkers trapped by mist on a hillside. The need for fire is closely linked.

Water is something that most people in the modern world take for granted. They are so used to turning on a tap that until an extreme drought causes water rationing they scarcely think about it. Yet the survivor at sea, or after a flood, though surrounded by water, may be desperate for drinkable water—and there are many places where, unless it rains, no obvious water is available. The other survival necessities are dealt with later in the book, but water is universally important.

# **WATER**

**W**ater is essential to life. A person can survive for three weeks without food but for only three days without water, therefore its discovery and conservation should be prioritised over food. Don't wait until you have run out of water before you look for it. Conserve what you have and seek a source as soon as possible, preferably fresh running water, though all water can be sterilized by boiling or by using chemical purifiers. In a survival situation a 1 litre-jug (1¾pt) can be made to last 4 days, but if necessary the last ¼ litre (½pt) can be made to last 3 days. This is achieved by dividing the last ¼ litre into three, then drinking half of the day's ration at midday, and the balance at night, for 3 days.

Water is the coolant that keeps the body at an even temperature, it is needed to keep the kidneys functioning to eliminate wastes, is required for breathing, and for digestion. But the fluids contained in the body are limited. Lost water must be replaced or health and efficiency will suffer. The average human requires the minimum of ¼ litre (½pt) of water per day to survive.

## **Water loss**

The average person loses 2-3 litres (3½-5¼pt) of water each day—even someone resting in shade loses about 1 litre (1¾pt). Just breathing loses fluids, and loss through respiration and perspiration increases with work rate and temperature. Vomiting and diarrhoea increase loss further. This must all be replaced to preserve the critical water balance, either by actual water or water contained in food.

## **HOW TO RETAIN FLUIDS**

- Avoid exertion. Just rest.
- Don't smoke.
- Keep cool. Stay in shade. If there is none erect a cover to provide it.
- Do not lie on hot ground or heated surfaces.
- Don't eat, or eat as little as possible. If there is no water available fluid will be taken from the vital organs to digest food, further increasing dehydration. Fat is hardest to digest and takes a lot of fluid to break it down.
- Never drink alcohol.
- Don't talk—and breathe through the nose, not the mouth.

## **FINDING WATER**

The first place to look is in valley bottoms where water naturally drains. If there is no obvious stream or pool, look for patches of green vegetation and try digging there. There may be water just below the surface which will build up in the hole. Even digging in gullies and dry stream beds may reveal a spring beneath the surface, especially in gravelly areas. In mountains look for water trapped in crevices.

On the coast digging above the high water line, especially where there are sand-dunes, has a good chance of producing about 5cm (2in) of fresh water that filters down and floats on the heavier salt water. It may be brackish but is still drinkable. Where cliffs fall into the sea look for lush growth of vegetation, even ferns and mosses, in a fault in the rock formation and you may find a soak or spring.

If no freshwater can be found, saltwater can be distilled (see [Solar still and Distillation](#), this section).

## **WARNING**

Be suspicious of any pool with no green vegetation growing around it, or animal bones present. It is likely to be polluted by chemicals in the ground close to the surface. Check edge for minerals which might indicate alkaline conditions. **ALWAYS BOIL WATER FROM POOLS.** In deserts there are lakes with no outlets; these become salt lakes. Their water **MUST** be distilled before drinking.

## Dew and rain collection

Despite the acid rain produced by industrialized countries, which can cause a build-up of pollution in the soil, rainwater everywhere is drinkable and only needs collecting. Use as big a catchment area as possible, running the water off into containers of every kind. A hole dug in the ground and lined with clay will hold water efficiently, but keep it covered. If you have no impermeable sheeting, metal sheets or bark can be used to catch water in. If you have any doubt about the water you have collected, boil it.

In climates where it is very hot during the day and cold at night, heavy dew can be expected. When it condenses on metal objects it can be sponged or licked off.

You can use clothing to soak up water and then wring it out. One way is to tie clean cloths around the legs and ankles and walk through wet vegetation. These can be sucked or wrung out.

# ANIMALS AS SIGNS OF WATER

## Mammals

Most animals require water regularly. Grazing animals are usually never far from water—though some kinds travel thousands of miles to avoid the dry season—as they need to drink at dawn and dusk. Converging game trails often lead to water; follow them downhill. Carnivores (meat eaters) can go for a long period between waterings. They get moisture from the animals on which they prey so are not a positive indication of local water.

## Birds

Grain eaters, such as finches and pigeons, are never far from water. They drink at dawn and dusk. When they fly straight and low they are heading for water. When returning from water they are loaded with it and fly from tree to tree, resting frequently. Plot their direction and water can be found.

Water birds can travel long distances without stopping to feed or drink so do not necessarily indicate water nearby. Hawks, eagles and other birds of prey also get liquids from their victims so cannot be taken as a sign of local water.

## Reptiles

Not an indicator of water. They collect dew and get moisture from prey, so can go a long time without.

## Insects

Good indicators, especially bees: they fly at most 6.5km (4 miles) from their nests or hives, but have no regular watering times. Ants are dependent upon water. A column of ants marching up a tree is going to a small reservoir of trapped water. Such reservoirs are found even in arid areas. Most flies keep within 90m (100yd) of water, especially the European Mason Fly with its iridescent green body.

## Human tracks

Will usually lead to a well, bore hole or soak. It may be covered over with scrub or rocks to reduce evaporation. Replace the cover.

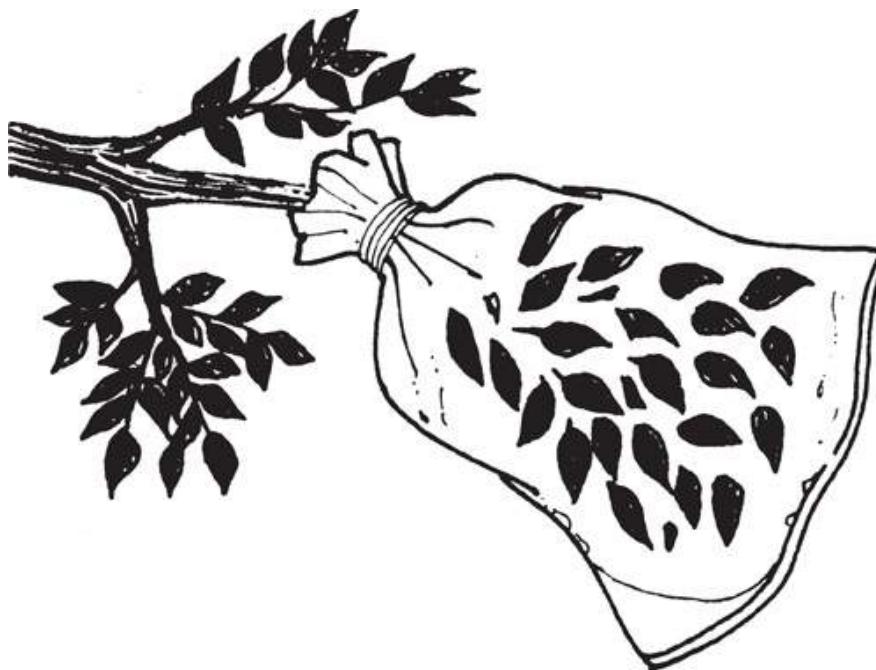
**REMEMBER: RATION YOUR SWEAT NOT YOUR WATER!**

If you have to ration water, take it in sips. After going a long time without water, don't guzzle when you do find it.

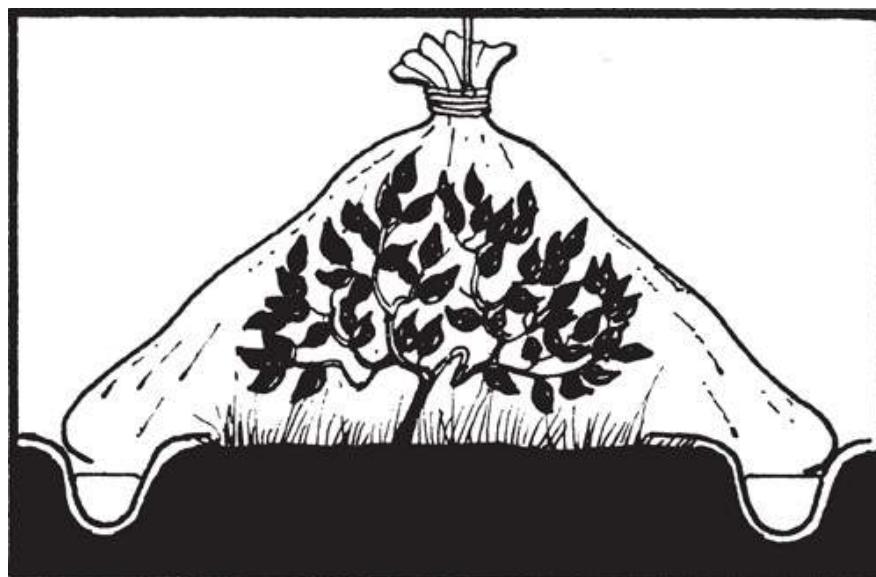
Take only sips at first. Large gulps will make a dehydrated person vomit, losing even more of the valuable liquid.

## **CONDENSATION**

Tree and plant roots draw moisture from the ground, but a tree may take it from a water table 15m (50ft) or more below, too deep to dig down to reach. Don't try; let the tree pump it up for you by tying a plastic bag around a leafy branch. Evaporation from the leaves will produce condensation in the bag.



*Choose healthy vegetation and bushy branches. On trees keep the mouth of the bag at the top with a corner hanging low to collect condensed evaporation.*



*Placing a polythene tent over any vegetation will collect moisture by evaporation which will condense on the plastic as it cools. Suspend the tent from the apex or support with a padded stick. Avoid foliage touching the sides of the trap or it will divert water droplets which should collect in plastic-lined channels at the bottom.*



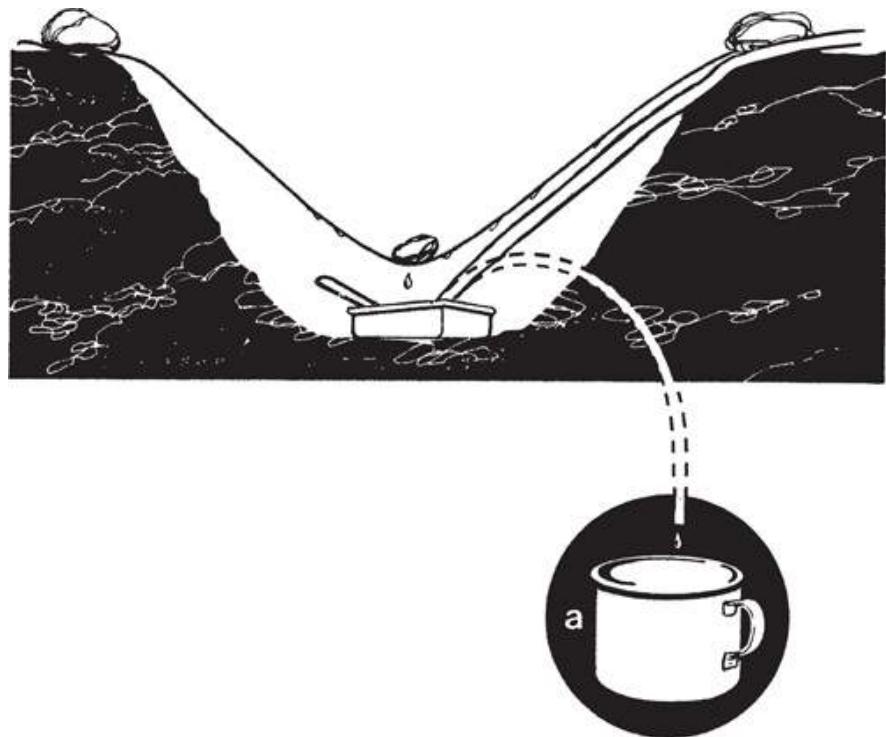
*Even cut vegetation will produce some condensation as it warms up when placed in a large plastic bag. Keep the foliage off the bottom with stones so that water collects below it, and keep the foliage from touching the plastic. Use stones to keep the bag taut. Support the top on a padded stick. Arrange the bag on a slight slope to encourage condensation to run down to the collecting point. When no longer productive carefully replace with fresh foliage.*

### **Solar still**

Dig a hole in the ground approximately 90cm (36in) across and 45cm (18in) deep. Place a collecting can in the centre, then cover the hole with a sheet of plastic formed into a cone. The sun's heat raises the temperature of the air and soil below and vapour is produced. As the air becomes saturated, water condenses on the underside of the plastic, running down into the container. This is especially effective in desert regions and elsewhere when it is hot during the day and cold at night. The plastic cools more quickly than the air, causing heavy condensation. This kind of still should collect at least 570ml (1 pt) over a 24-hour period.

The still may also double as a trap. Insects and small snakes are attracted by the plastic. They may slide down into the cone or wriggle underneath it and drop into the hole and then cannot climb out.

A solar still can be used to distill pure water from poisonous or contaminated liquids.



*Roughen underside of sheet with a stone to ensure droplets run down it. Use stones or weights to secure edges and keep cone shape. Fix can so that trapped creatures cannot tip it over.*

*If feasible use a syphon to a lower level (a) to draw off water without disturbing the still.*

# **WARNING**

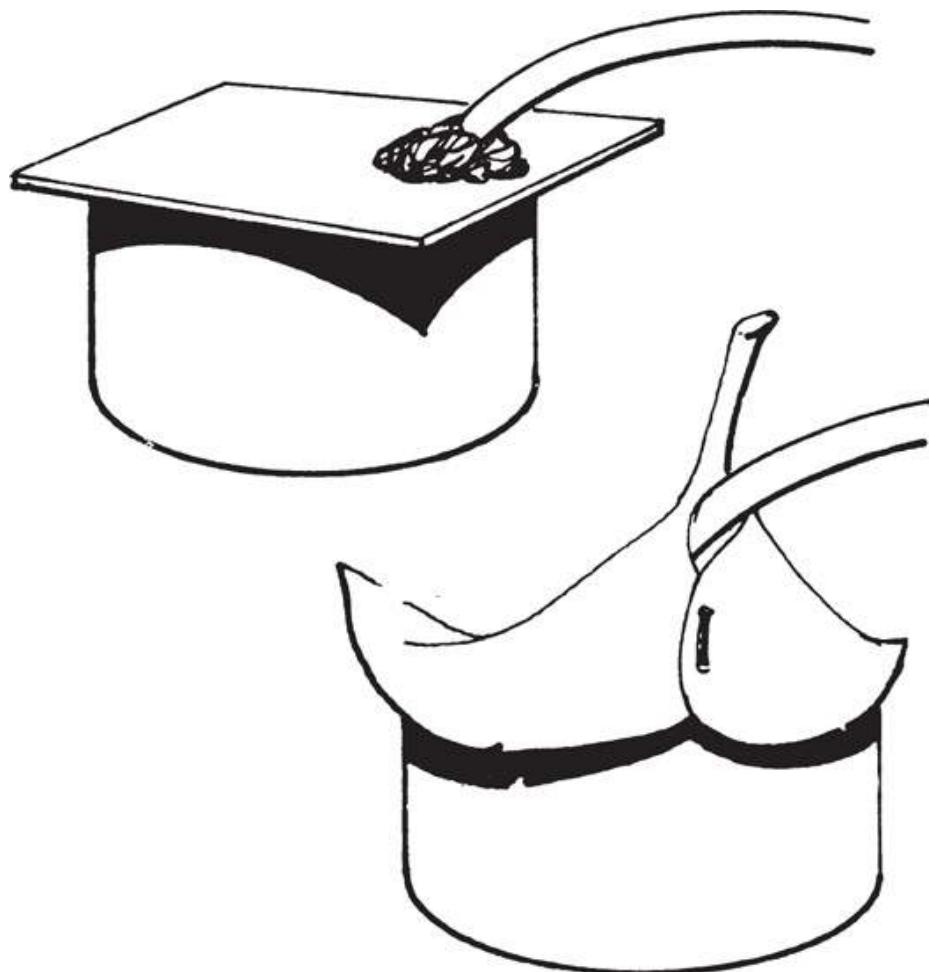
## **URINE AND SEA WATER**

Never drink either—Never! But both can produce drinking water if distilled—and sea water will provide you with a residue of salt.

## **Distillation**

Distillation kits are part of the equipment of life-rafts, but they can be improvised. To distill liquid you need to make something to do the job of a laboratory retort. Pass a tube into the top of a water-filled covered container, placed over a fire, and the other end into a sealed collecting tin which, preferably, is set inside another container providing a jacket of cold water to cool the vapour as it passes out of the tube. You can improvise the equipment from any tubing—pack frames, for instance. To avoid wasting water vapour, seal around the joins with mud or wet sand.

An easier method is a variation on the desert still. It takes a little longer for the water to condense but may be easier to set up.



*Take a tube from a covered vessel in which polluted/saltwater, or even urine, is to boil. Set the other end under a solar still. A sheet of metal or bark, perhaps weighted down, will cover the vessel. Even a cone of leaf over the water pot will help direct the steam into the tube.*

## **Water from ice and snow**

Melt ice rather than snow—it produces a greater volume faster for less heat: twice as much for half the heat. If forced to heat snow, place a little in the pot and melt that first, gradually adding more to it. If you put a lot of snow into the pot, the lower level will melt and then be soaked up into the absorbent snow above it, leaving a hollow beneath which will make the pot burn. Lower layers of snow are more granular than that on the surface and will yield more water.

## Water from sea ice

Sea ice is salt (no good for drinking) until it has aged. The more recently frozen, the saltier it will be. New sea ice is rough in contour and milky-white in colour. Old ice is bluish and has rounded edges, caused by weathering.

Good water can be obtained from blue ice—the bluer and smoother the better. But beware of even old ice that has been exposed to salt spray.

## WATER FROM PLANTS

### Water collectors

Cup-shaped plants and cavities between the leaves of bromeliads (many of which are parasitic on the branches of tropical trees) often collect a reservoir of water.

Bamboo often holds water in its hollow joints. Old and yellow stems are more likely to be water bearing. Shake them—if you can hear water slurping around cut a notch at the bottom of each joint and tip the water out.



*Traveller's Tree* *Ravenala madagascariensis*, one of the banana family, can hold 1–2 litres (2–4pt) of water between the bases of the chevron of leaf stalks.

### Vines

Vines with rough bark and shoots about 5cm (2in) thick can be a useful source of water. But you must learn by experience which are the water-bearing vines, because not all have drinkable water and some have a poisonous sap. The poisonous ones yield a sticky, milky sap when cut. You will know not to try that type again—otherwise it is a matter of trial and error and worth trying any species.

Some vines cause a skin irritation on contact if you suck them, so it is better to let the liquid drip into your mouth rather than put your mouth to the stem, and preferable to collect it in a container.

To obtain water from a vine select a particular stem and trace it upwards. Reach as high as possible and cut a deep notch in the stem. Cut off the same stem close to the ground and let the water drip from it into your mouth or into a container. When it ceases to drip cut a section from the bottom and go on repeating this until the vine is drained. Do NOT cut the bottom of the vine first as this will cause the liquid to run up the vine through capillary action.

## Roots

In Australia the Water Tree, Desert Oak and Bloodwood have their roots near the surface. Pry these roots out from the ground and cut them up into 30cm (12in) lengths. Remove the bark. Suck out the moisture, or shave to a pulp and squeeze over the mouth.

It is not easy to find some of the most useful desert roots unless you have been shown by someone with experience. Australian Aborigines can identify a tiny twig which grows from a football-like bulbous root, which can be a life-saver—but unless you have been shown how to find them it is not worth expending your energy and resources looking.

## Palms

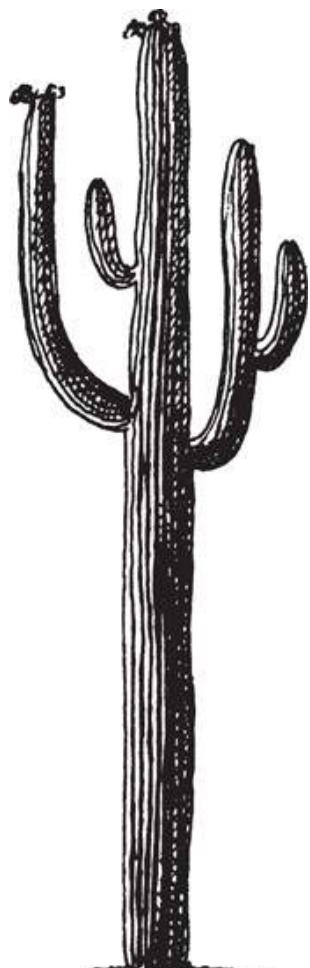
The Buri, Coconut and Nipa palms all contain a sugary fluid which is very drinkable. To start it flowing bend a flowering stalk downwards and cut off its tip. If a thin slice is cut off the stalk every 12 hours the flow will be renewed, making it possible to collect up to a quart each day. Nipa palms shoot from the base so that you can work from ground level, on grown trees of other species you may have to climb up them to reach a flowering stalk.

Coconut milk has considerable water content, but from ripe nuts it is a powerful laxative; drinking too much would make you lose more fluid.

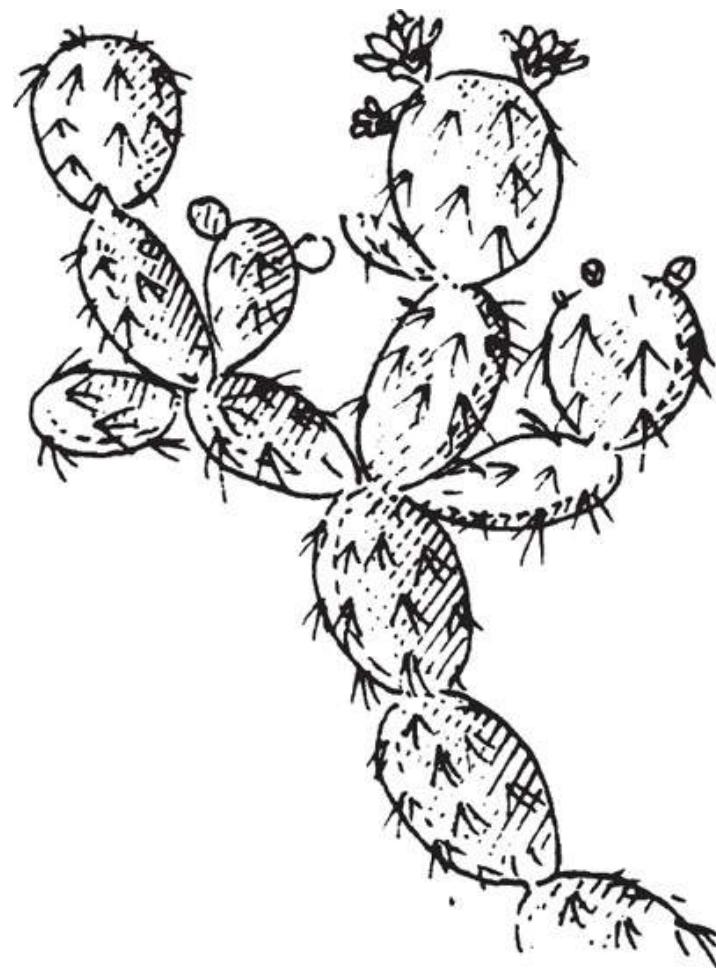
## Cacti

Both the fruit and bodies of cacti store water, but not all cacti produce liquid safe to drink—the Saquarro, the giant multi-fingered cactus of Arizona, is very poisonous. Take care to avoid contact with cactus spines, they can be very difficult to remove, especially the very fine hair-like ones, and can cause festering sores if they stay in the skin.

The Barrel cactus *Echinocactus grusoni* (see [Desert plants in Food](#)) can reach a height of 120cm (4ft), is found in the southern United States through to South America and requires considerable effort to cut through its tough, spine-covered outer skin. The best method is to cut off the top and chop out pieces from the inside to suck, or to smash the pulp within the plant and scoop out the watery sap, which varies from tasteless in some plants to bitter in others. An average-sized, 100cm (3½ft) Barrel cactus will yield about 1 litre (1¾pt) of milky juice and this is an exception to the rule to avoid milky-sapped plants.



*Saguaro cactus* *Sereus giganteus* of Mexico, Arizona and California, grows to 5m (17ft) high and holds large amounts of fluid — but it is poisonous. Collect and place in a solar still to evaporate and recondense during the cold night.



*Opuntia cacti* — Prickly pears, or Figilinda, have big, ear-like excrescences and produce oval fruits which ripen to red or gold. Their large spines are easier to avoid than those of many cacti. Both fruit and 'ears' are moisture laden.

### **WATER FROM ANIMALS**

Animal eyes contain water which can be extracted by sucking them.

All fish contain a drinkable fluid. Large fish, in particular, having a reservoir of fresh water along the spine. Tap it by gutting the fish and, keeping the fish flat, remove the backbone, being careful not to spill the liquid, and then drink it.

If you need water that badly you should be careful not to suck up the other fish juices in the flesh, for they are rich in protein and will use up water in digestion.

Desert animals can also be a source of moisture. In times of drought in Northwestern Australia, Aborigines dig in dry clay pans for the desert frogs that burrow in the clay to keep cool and survive. They store water in their bodies and it can be squeezed out of them.

## **SALT**

**S**alt is essential for water retention. A normal diet includes a daily intake of 10g (1½oz). The trouble starts when you start to get rid of it faster than you eat it. The body loses salt in sweat and urine, so the warmer the climate the greater the loss. Physical exertion will also increase the loss. However, replenishing the salt levels in your body is not always recommended, and much will depend on the situation you find yourself in. If you are on reduced food and or water rations, salt is the first thing that should be cut from your diet, because it increases dehydration.

### ***Recognize the signs of dehydration***

The first symptoms of salt deficiency are muscle cramps, dizziness, nausea and tiredness. The remedy is to take a pinch of salt in half a litre (¾ pint) of water. Salt supplements in tablet form used to be the prescribed method of increasing sodium levels but always dissolve these in water, or isotonic drinks—if they are available.

What happens if you do not carry salt or your supplies run out? By the coast or at sea there is plenty of saltwater available—a pint of sea water contains about 15g (1½oz) of salt, but do NOT just drink it as it is. Dilute it with plenty of fresh water. Evaporating sea water will leave you with salt crystals.

Inland salt supplies are more problematic. In farming areas you will find salt licks for cattle—but you will then be close to civilization and not likely to have reached the stage of salt deprivation. However, all animals need salt and observation of them may reveal a natural source. In one part of Africa elephants risk the dangerous depths of a dark cave to lick salt from its sides.

Salt can be obtained from some plants. In North America the best source is the roots of hickory trees, and in Southeast Asia those of the Nipa Palm can be used in the same way. Boil the roots until all the water is evaporated and black salt crystals are left.

If no direct salt sources are available to you then you will have to rely on getting it second-hand, through animal blood, which should never be wasted as it is a valuable source of minerals.

## **2 STRATEGY**

**W**hether a small-scale accident or a mammoth disaster—both may bring about a life-or-death situation—the same disciplines and quick thinking are needed.

To show the way in which basic survival strategies are applied to every kind of situation, a series of individual small-scale vehicle incident procedures are outlined.

The same approaches can be seen on a far wider scale in the handling of a major air crash. In these circumstances the survivor is more likely to find him- or herself in unfamiliar territory and involved with a greater number of people for a longer period.

---

## STRATEGY

### CAR ACCIDENT SURVIVAL

Brake failure

Car under water

Car on railway tracks

### DISASTER IN THE AIR

Protection

Location

Acquiring food and water

Navigation

People

## **STRATEGY**

**G**ood planning and preparation enable the survivor to confront difficulties and dangers that pose a serious threat to survival. They become contingencies for which you are equipped. But you cannot anticipate everything. You must be ready to respond rapidly to the unexpected danger and to deal with potential disaster rationally and realistically. You must overcome the tendency to panic and take the action appropriate to the situation.

Sometimes a collision or other accident occurs with no warning of any kind, but in most instances there is a moment of realization that something is going to happen and it is in that moment that instinctive reaction can save lives. In many situations there is a considerable time in which an awareness of potential disaster can develop and that is when the panic reaction is probably most dangerous.

As mist closes in on a hillside, reducing visibility to almost nothing and making it easy to lose any sense of direction, most people would begin to panic at the thought that they are going to be trapped. They begin to do foolish things and increase their danger. They should, however, already be assessing the possibilities and looking for some suitable shelter in which to wait until conditions become safe to continue. Keeping calm, in the knowledge that you have the ability to handle the situation, will not only enable you to see it through but also to see other solutions.

Some situations are predictable and knowledge of the techniques for handling them will minimize the risks. Learn them, they may save your life. They may take considerable nerve—like waiting for the right moment to escape from a car that is sinking under water—but they are based on experience. The answer to more general survival problems, however, will often lie in inspired improvisation drawing on those skills appropriate to the situation.

Disaster may involve you in a contained situation which you must handle alone—or you may find yourself one of hundreds of people in a large-scale disaster over which there can be no control at all.

## **SURVIVAL SCENARIO**

### **If the weather or conditions in your camp change, should you revise your survival strategy?**

You should have a strategy for every scenario, therefore as situations change, so should your strategy. You must be flexible and be prepared to adapt.

# **CAR ACCIDENT SURVIVAL**

---

## **BRAKE FAILURE**

If brakes fail while driving, change gear and apply the handbrake. You must do several things at once: take your foot off the accelerator, flick the switch of your warning lights, pump the footbrake rapidly (it may still connect), change down through the gears and apply handbrake pressure. Don't slam the brake on, begin with gentle bursts, gradually braking harder until you stop.

If there is no time for all this, take your foot off the accelerator and change down through the gears—and grab the handbrake—but DON'T apply maximum pressure until you are sure that you won't skid.

Look out for escape lanes and places where you can leave the road, preferably a soft bank or a turning that has an uphill slope.

If speed remains unchecked, on a steep hill for example, brush the car along a hedge or wall to reduce speed. Take advantage of a vehicle in front and use it to stop you—run into it as gently as the situation allows. Use warning lights, blow your horn and flash your headlights to give the driver in front as much warning as possible that you are on a collision course.

## **Collision**

If collision seems inevitable, stay with it and steer the car to do as little damage to others and yourself as possible. Try to avoid a sudden stop by driving into something which will give, like a fence or a hedge rather than a tree.

Seatbelts (compulsory in most countries) will help stop you hitting the windscreen. Most new cars are usually fitted with airbags for both the driver and the front passenger. Given the speed and force with which an airbag inflates, it is vitally important that you do not sit too close to the steering wheel. And if your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downwards so that the airbag points towards your chest rather than your head, but make sure you can see the instruments clearly.

If neither of these options are available, adopting the brace position will offer you the best chance of survival in a crash because it stops you from impacting too heavily on the interior of the car. The important thing is to get your upper torso as low as possible. There are two alternative types of brace position depending on the space that you are in. The first position requires you to place your head on your knees, while your hands hold on to your lower legs. The second position is more useful if you are driving the car. Place your hands on the steering wheel, then, place your forehead onto the back of your hands before the impact.

## **Jumping out**

Do NOT try to jump out of a runaway car unless you know it to be headed for a cliff or another substantial drop and that you will not survive the impact. If this is the only available option, then open the door, undo the safety belt, and begin to roll yourself into a ball. Drop from the car in a rolling movement. Do not resist the ground but keep balled up and continue the roll.

## **CAR UNDER WATER**

If possible abandon the car before it sinks, for it will not sink immediately and will take time to fill. Water pressure on the outside makes it very difficult to open the door so open the window if you can and wriggle out of it. It takes great presence of mind to manage that when subject to the shock and surprise of the 'splash down', but if there are small children in the car it may be possible to push one through. Do not try to save possessions.

If you have not been fast enough CLOSE the window firmly, get children to stand and lift babies near to the roof. Release seat belts and tell everyone by a door to be ready with a hand on the handle. Release at once any automatic door locks or master locks. Water could prevent them from working. Do not attempt to open doors at this stage.

As water fills the interior, air will be trapped near the roof. The water pressure inside the car will nearly equalize the pressure with that of the water outside the car. As the car comes to rest and is nearly full of water tell everyone to take a deep breath, open the doors and swim to the surface, breathing out as they do so. Everyone leaving through the same door should link arms. If you have to wait for someone to get out before you, hold your breath for that moment.

**PRECAUTION:** Always park alongside water, not running towards it. If you have to park a car facing water then leave it in reverse gear and with the handbrake on (if facing away from water, in first gear with the handbrake on).

## **CAR ON RAILWAY TRACKS**

If a car breaks down on an unmanned level crossing, put it into gear and use the starter motor to jerk it clear. This will work with a manual gear change but not with an automatic. If a train is approaching abandon the car, carry children or infirm persons to safety and keep away—about 45m (50yds) should be far enough—for if a train is travelling at high speed it could fling car wreckage quite a distance.

If there is no train visible, or you can see one several miles in the distance, you must try to avert the collision. If the car can be moved by pushing, push it clear of all tracks—you cannot be sure which one the train will be on. If there is an emergency telephone warn signalmen further down the track of the situation. If not, walk up the track towards the train. Stand well to one side (high speed trains have quite a slipstream) and wave a car blanket or bright coloured garment to warn the driver. If he is doing his job properly he will know that he is approaching a crossing and should look ahead to see that all is clear.

# **DISASTER IN THE AIR**

A plane crash or forced landing in difficult terrain is one of the most dramatic of disaster scenarios. Since it could happen anywhere the individual cannot prepare for any specific situation.

Airline cabin staff are trained for such emergencies and you should follow their instructions. Aircrew will be trying to land the plane as safely as possible; there is nothing you can do except to keep calm and support the crew in calming the other passengers.

To prepare for a crash landing, tighten the seat belt, link arms with people on either side, hold your chin firmly down on your chest, lean forwards over a cushion, folded blanket or coat, interlink legs with your neighbours if seating permits it and brace yourself for impact.

When the aircraft finally stops moving—and not before—evacuate the aircraft as instructed in the pre-flight brief. If a ground landing, then quickly get away from the immediate area of the plane, as there is danger of fire or explosion. Even if there is no fire, keep away until the engines have cooled and any spilled fuel evaporated.

If ditching into water, dinghies will be automatically inflated and anchored on the wings. Do not inflate your own lifejacket while you are in the aircraft. To do so would restrict your exit. Wait until you are in the water and then pull the toggle to inflate it and get into a dinghy.

If the plane is sinking, release the dinghy from its anchorage as soon as passengers and equipment are stowed. As you leave the plane the more kit you can take with you the better. But do not stop to gather personal belongings and luggage.

## **SURVIVAL TIP:**

If bailing out from a plane by parachute in wild country make your way to the wreck if you can—the wreckage will be much more noticeable to rescuers than a single person or a parachute.

### **After the crash**

However self-disciplined you are, the entry into this kind of survival situation will be dramatic, abrupt and confusing. You will be in a state of shock and may be on the verge of panic. If there is fire or the risk of fire or explosion, keep at a distance until that danger seems to have passed, but no further away than seems necessary for safety. Do not allow anyone to smoke if fuel has been spilled. You must not blunder off into unknown terrain, especially at night, and need to maintain contact with other survivors.

Move injured persons to a safe distance with you and try to account for all the people involved. The immediate treatment of the injured is a priority. Treat cases in order of severity of their injuries and with each individual deal first with breathing difficulties, then in sequence, with major bleeding, wounds, fractures and shock.

Separate the dead from the living if possible—the deaths are part of the frightening strangeness of the event and the survivors will be easier to calm down.

Even with a fire, all may not have been destroyed. Investigate the wreckage and salvage whatever you can of equipment, food, clothing and water. Take NO risks if there is still a chance that fuel tanks could ignite and beware of any noxious fumes from wreckage which has been smouldering.

If you have to wait for fire to burn out, take stock of the location in which you find yourself—which should in any case be the next step in your strategy. Is it practical and safe to remain where you are? If your anticipated route is known—and with a flight it will be—some kind of search and rescue operation can be expected and there are considerable advantages in staying where you are. Searchers will already have some idea of your location, and even if you have been forced off route they will have a record of your last reported position. The wreckage or grounded plane will be more noticeable from the air, especially in heavily wooded country where even a large group of people will be hidden by the trees.

If you find that you are in a very exposed or dangerous location then a move to a more protected position is necessary. However, do not move at night unless the threat to life outweighs the risks of trying to negotiate unknown terrain in the dark.

## **SURVIVAL TIP:**

Leave an indication on the crash site of the direction in which you have moved off, so that it is possible for rescuers to know that there are survivors and to know in which direction to go on looking.

The usual reason for making an immediate move will be because you are in an exposed position on a mountain or hillside offering no protection from the elements, or at risk from rock falls or other dangers there. Move down, not up the slope, as conditions are likely to be less exposed on lower ground.

Do not all go off looking for a safer location. Send out scouts to investigate the surrounding terrain carefully. They must keep together, working in pairs, and not go off on individual explorations. They can maintain contact vocally and should mark their routes as they proceed so that they can easily retrace their steps.

## **PROTECTION**

The first requirement will probably be some immediate shelter from the elements, especially for any injured. A more extended reconnaissance can follow to choose a proper campsite. Make the most of any natural shelter and augment it by using whatever materials are at hand.

If injuries are too severe for a person to be moved, some kind of shelter must be provided for them on the spot.

On bare ground, if there is no equipment or wreckage which can be utilized, then the only thing to do is dig down.

If possible, find a natural hollow and burrow deeper, using the excavated earth to build up the sides. This will at least get a casualty out of the wind. Get a fire going to provide warmth (it will also help raise morale) and use reflectors to maximize the heating effect, enabling you to conserve fuel.

If the circumstances make movement away unnecessary or impossible, follow similar procedures. Build up rocks, wreckage or equipment to form a wind break if no natural shelter is available. If in a group huddle together, it will reduce the loss of body heat. Survival time for badly injured persons in these circumstances is limited and you must hope for an early rescue. Fit people must go off in search of water, fuel, shelter materials and food—but always in at least pairs. Lay out as many signals as possible to attract attention.

Remember that shelter may be as necessary from the sun as it is from the wind and cold. Exposure is not only a matter of hypothermia.

## **LOCATION**

If you have a radio or mobile phone you can signal for help—but do not go back on board a damaged and potentially explosive aircraft to do so. Wait until you are sure it is quite safe. The rescue party will want to know your location. Those who were travelling overland should have a good idea of their position—even if temporarily lost—and with a map should be able to give a more accurate fix. If you are the victim of disaster at sea or in the air, however, it will help considerably if you know your planned course and have some idea of your position when disaster struck, as well as of wind or current directions.

As often as not you must light fires—three fires are an internationally recognized distress signal. Make them as large as possible. Lay ground signals to attract attention, use pyrotechnics when you know help is within range and even make a noise when help is very near. This is when you are glad that the responsible authorities were told of your intentions and that you kept precisely to your route. It is only a matter of time before rescue comes. Meanwhile make yourself as comfortable as possible.

However, even the most careful plans may go astray. Navigational instruments could fail, storms, high winds or fog could all throw you off course and there you are, safe in your shelter but with no one knowing where. You could have a longer wait than you anticipate and you need to provide for it.

You also need to assess where you are on a more local scale, to study the terrain for anything it can tell you, not only to pin-point your position—if that is possible—but to see if there are safer and more comfortable locations to pitch camp, sources for fuel, food and water. In the long term you will also be assessing the possibility of making your own way across the land.

At sea you will be looking out for any indications that, rather than staying put, there is land close enough for your survival chances to be greater if you try to reach it rather than holding your present position. But you are at the mercy of wind and current, though you can delay your drift with a sea anchor.

## **SURVIVAL TIP:**

On land, it is seldom most sensible to set out immediately to walk to safety, rather than wait for rescue. However, if you know that no one will be aware that you are missing, if the terrain is so barren that it provides no food, water or shelter, or if you feel convinced that your reserves of energy and rations are sufficient to see you back to civilization, or to a location where you are sure you will be able to live off the land, you may decide to set off as soon as the light is good enough or conditions are otherwise right.

### **ACQUIRING FOOD AND WATER**

On an isolated cliff ledge, cut off by the tide or forced by storm or mist to wait until you can move on, there may be little opportunity to exploit natural resources. Do not tuck into emergency rations immediately. You may be there for some time and, hungry though you may be, you should ration them out, allowing for a much longer wait than even a pessimistic assessment suggests. Even in such a situation there may be water and food within reach.

Elsewhere save your emergency rations for when there is nothing else and tap nature's resources first. Do not just find one source of food. Seek out a variety of plants for leaves, fruit, nuts, roots and other edible parts. Look for signs of animals which can be trapped or hunted.

When it is your very survival that is at stake there is no place for squeamishness about what you will or will not eat or about how you acquire your food, but that does not mean that you should totally abandon concern for wild life and the environment. When there is an abundance of other choices there is no reason to take already endangered species for your food—animal or vegetable—nor to set traps (which cannot discriminate in what they catch and maim) that will produce more meat than you can eat fresh or preserve. Making the most of nature's resources does not mean plundering them. Over-exploitation will be to your own disadvantage if you have to stay in the area for a long time.

Remember, too, that the most easily obtained nutritious food may be quite different from what you usually eat. If you have already learned to eat an unusual diet as part of your training you will find it much easier to feed yourself and will be able to encourage others to eat the same things.

Fuel for a fire will be needed for boiling water even if the temperature does not demand a fire for warmth—but do not be deluded into thinking that a warm day is going to be followed by a warm night. There can be dramatic temperature changes from day to night in some parts of the world.

## **SURVIVAL TIP:**

In the short-term water is much more vital than food for your survival. If fresh running water is not available there are many other sources you can tap, but sterilize or boil to ensure that it is pure. Make finding water sources a priority.

### **NAVIGATION**

The first thing to do is to coordinate signals (flares or fires for example) so that you are best prepared to receive rescue. Then organise water, food, and shelter.

You should stay where you are and only consider moving if you're en route to a final destination. The advantage of this is that you will be able to use any equipment and materials from the plane or vehicle and you will be able to use the wreckage as shelter. Also it will be easier for you to be spotted from the air.

## ***YOU MUST PLAN***

Remember this, it may save your life one day:

- P** Protection
- L** Location
- A** Acquisition
- N** Navigation

## **PEOPLE**

For an expedition, the planning will include a careful selection of compatible personalities, selected for their fitness, both physically and in experience and training, for the particular project. In a disaster situation anyone may react unexpectedly under stress. With a mishap affecting members of the general public there may be a very varied group of people thrown together. Men, women and children, elderly people and babies. There may be pregnant women and people with medical problems or physical disabilities that require particular attention. The accident situations which involve such a varied group are also likely to involve a higher risk of injuries than among a hand-picked group of the trained and fit.

Babies may look very fragile—but they are very tough. However, they must be kept warm and fed regularly. Children will need reassuring and comforting, especially if they have lost the people with them or they are themselves in pain. Often the adventure of the situation will help to keep them from becoming too worried and it will help to keep them occupied, but they should not be allowed to wander, to play with fire or otherwise expose themselves to further danger. Old people are usually mentally tough and can give reassurance to the young, but they must be kept warm and fed regularly. It often seems true that women handle emergencies much better than men and are able to accept responsibility for others more easily.

With a ship or commercial airline the ship's officers or flight crew can be expected to take charge of the situation, if they are among the survivors, but there will not be the military chain of command or the acceptance of leadership and responsibility which can be expected in a compact organized group. Some democratic procedure to make decisions, plan action and maintain morale must be attempted. The trauma of the experience may leave some people eager to follow any leadership which gives them hope, but it will also throw into relief antagonisms and prejudices which must be overcome.

In an air or sea disaster people of different cultures and backgrounds may be thrown together and forced into situations which their own social taboos would not permit. Considerable tact may be necessary to overcome these problems. SURVIVAL, however, must take precedence.

The wider your medical knowledge the better, but giving people the will to survive is important and much of this can be achieved by a good 'bedside manner'—if you can give the impression that you know what you are doing you are half-way there.

Calmness and confidence in yourself will inspire the confidence and cooperation of others. The more knowledge you have the better you will be able to cope.

## **3** **CLIMATE & TERRAIN**

**A**lthough basic survival strategy and techniques are applicable anywhere, conditions vary widely around the world. It is essential to know as much as possible about conditions in any regions in which you expect to travel. A general knowledge of what you may expect in different climates will greatly increase your ability to handle the survival situation, if accident throws you into totally unfamiliar territory.

A few pages in this book cannot provide a world geography. They can only set the scene for the major

types of climate and environment and suggest some of the principal ways of overcoming the problems they present.

Advice on specific topics, such as food and shelter, applicable to particular conditions will be found throughout the other sections of the book, supplementing the information here.

## CLIMATE ZONES

Survival case study

## POLAR REGIONS

Travel

Clothing

Shelter

Fire

Water

Food

Arctic health

## MOUNTAINS

Snow and ice fields

Avalanches

## SEASHORES

Water

Food

Dangers

## ISLANDS

## ARID REGIONS

Water

Shelter and fire

Clothing

Food

Health

## TROPICAL REGIONS

Shelter

Fire

Food

Dangers

## VEHICLES

# **CLIMATE ZONES**

**P**eople often view an alien environment as an enemy and feel they must fight it. This is not the way to survive—fight it and you will lose! There are dangers against which precautions must be taken, but nature is neutral. Learn to live with each climate and to use what it offers. Climate is not conditioned only by latitude; location within a continent and altitude are equally important.

## **Polar climates**

**P**olar regions are regarded as those at latitudes higher than 60°33' north and south, but cold weather skills may be needed at very high altitudes everywhere. Near the Equator, in the Andes for example, the snow line is not reached until an altitude of about 5000m (16,500ft), but the nearer the poles the lower the snow line will be—at the southern tip of South America there is permanent snow at only a few hundred metres (a thousand feet). Arctic conditions penetrate deep into the northern territories of Alaska, Canada, Greenland, Iceland, Scandinavia and Russia.

## **Tundra**

**T**hough the ground remains permanently frozen and vegetation is stunted. Snow melts in summer, but roots cannot penetrate the hard earth. High altitudes produce similar conditions.

## **Northern coniferous forest**

**N**othing between the arctic tundra and the main temperate lands is a forest zone, up to 1300km (800 miles) deep. In Russia, where it is known as the Taiga, the forests penetrate up to 1650km (1025 miles) north of the Arctic Circle along some Siberian rivers, but in the Hudson Bay area of Canada the tree line moves an equal distance south of the Circle.

Winters are long and severe, the ground frozen for much of the time, summers are short. For only 3-5 months of the year is the ground thawed sufficiently for water to reach the roots of the trees and plants, which especially flourish along the great rivers that flow to the Arctic Ocean. There is a wealth of game: elk, bear, otter, lynx, sable and squirrel, as well as smaller creatures, and many birds.

In summer, where the snow melt cannot drain, it creates swamps. Fallen trees and dense growths of sphagnum moss make the going difficult. Mosquitoes can be a nuisance (but they do not carry malaria).

Movement is easier in winter, if you have warm clothing. Travel along the rivers, where fishing is good, making a raft from the abundant deadfalls.

## **Temperate climates**

The temperate zone of the northern hemisphere, and the similar climates of the southern hemisphere, probably offer the most equitable circumstances for survival without special skills or knowledge. They will be the areas best known to many readers of this book. These territories are also those most heavily urbanized and where the survival ordeal is not likely to be very extended.

A fit and healthy person, equipped with basic skills, would not be so cut off that they could not reach help within a few day's trek. Heavy winter conditions may call for polar skills.

## **Deciduous forest**

As the climate gets warmer and winters less severe, deciduous forest replaces the conifers. Oak, beech, maple and hickory are the main species in America; oak, beech, chestnut and lime, in Eurasia. Soil rich in humus supports many plants and fungi. Survival is not difficult, except at very high altitudes where tundra, or snowfield conditions, appear. Many of these areas have been cleared by man.

## **Temperate grassland**

Mainly central continental areas with hot summers, cold winters and moderate rainfall, these have become the world's great food-producing areas—grain is grown and cattle reared. Water can be a problem in summer and shelter in winter.

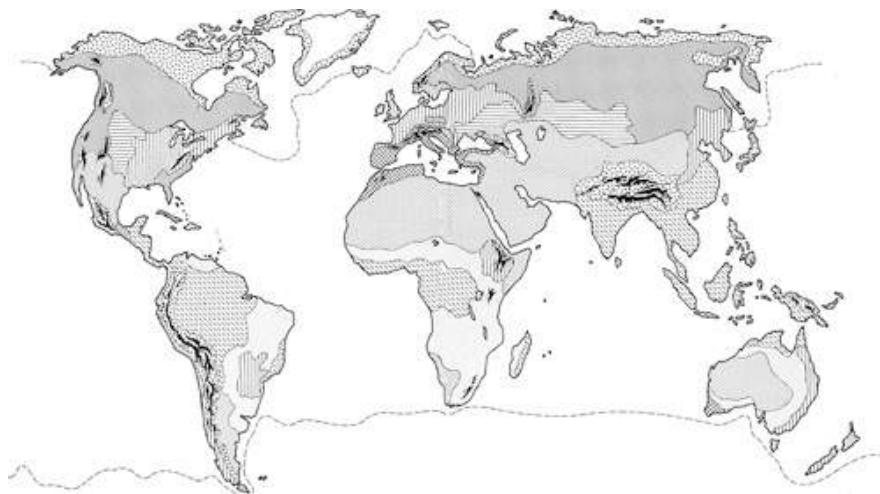
## **Mediterranean regions**

The lands bordering on the Mediterranean are semi-arid areas, with long hot summers and short dry winters. There is sunshine most of the year, and drying winds. At one time this region was forested with oaks.

When these were cut down the soil eroded, much of the area became covered with evergreen shrub. The Chapparal of California is very similar. Trees are few and water is a problem. At high altitudes, other conditions prevail.

### Tropical forests

The land between the tropics includes areas of cultivation and extremes of swamp and desert, but one-third is undeveloped forest: equatorial rainforest, sub-tropical rainforest and montane forest. All feature high rainfall and rugged mountains, which drain into large, swift-flowing rivers, with coastal and other low-lying regions often as swampland.



### Savannah

This is tropical grassland, lying usually between the desert and the tropical forest. Near the forests the grass is tall, up to 3m (10ft) high, and trees more frequent. Temperatures are high the whole year round. More than one-third of Africa is savannah as are large areas of Australia, which are dotted with eucalyptus trees. Similar areas are the llanos of Venezuela and Colombia and the campos in Brazil. Often water is not easily available but, where it is found, there will be lusher vegetation and plenty of wildlife. In Africa large herds of animals can be found.

### Deserts

One-fifth of the earth's land surface is desert—dry barren land where survival is very difficult. Deserts occur where air currents, which rose at the Equator and have already shed their moisture, descend and are rewarmed as they near the Earth, taking what little local moisture is present. There are rarely any clouds to give protection from the sun or to retain heat at night so that great extremes of temperature occur from the highest shade temperatures ( $58^{\circ}\text{C}/136^{\circ}\text{F}$  in the Sahara) to below freezing point at night. Only small parts of the world's deserts are sand (about one-tenth of the Sahara) the greater part is flat gravel cut by dried up water courses (wadis). The wind has blown the sand away, piling it up in low-lying areas. Elsewhere there may be wind-carved mountains, dried mudflats and lava flows.

## **SURVIVAL CASE STUDY**

---

*In the mid-1960s I was training a new army unit in Kenya. This training involved tactics, field craft and navigation. They were all experienced soldiers but lacked knowledge in small group operations. The training area was in the Northern Frontier district of Kenya, a very hot and dry area.*

*The recruits were dropped off in groups of 4 and had to navigate across country to a series of rendezvous points (RVs), where they were given water. My job with 3 others was to man these RVs, ensuring that everyone was accounted for and in good health. Each recruit was given half a pint of water strictly issued*

*from a jerry can which held 4.5 gallons (36 pints). On the third day the heat was taking its toll and everyone was complaining of various ailments like blisters, sores caused by backpacks and fatigue. But one student was particularly bad. He was delirious and verging on the point of collapse. While I was treating him, his partner grabbed a jerry can and tried to swallow the lot. What he couldn't swallow he spilt, and by the time we wrestled the can from him it was almost empty. This was the last of our supplies and there were still more than 30 men to come. The nearest source of water was 3 days away and with no re-supply possible the exercise turned from hard to critical. Although all the recruits came from nearby areas, they had no water discipline, which we found out to our cost.*

*By strictly rationing and sending the strongest for help, everyone survived, but it's a lesson they will never forget.*

**Lessons learnt:**

*Never underestimate the power of self-preservation*

*Protect your water supply*

*Enforce strict rationing*

*Of all the discomforts, thirst is the deadliest.*

*When treating a person with dehydration, wet their lips first and look for a gag reflex (swallowing).*

*Administer small sips only. When giving treatment, always make sure the patient is lying down in any available shade.*

# **POLAR REGIONS**

---

**A**ntarctica is covered with a sheet of ice. In the Arctic the Pole is capped by deep ice floating on the sea and all the land north of the timber line is frozen. There are only two seasons—a long winter and a short summer—the day varying from complete darkness in midwinter to 24 hours daylight at midsummer.

Arctic summer temperatures can rise to 18°C (65°F), except on glaciers and frozen seas, but fall in winter to as low as -56°C (-81°F) and are never above freezing point. In the northern forests summer temperatures can reach 37°C (100°F), but altitude pushes winter temperatures even lower than in the Arctic. In Eastern Siberia -69°C (-94°F) has been recorded at Verkhotansk! Temperatures in the Antarctic are even lower than in the Arctic.

Antarctic winds of 177kmph (110mph) have been recorded and, in the Arctic autumn, winter winds reach hurricane force and can whip snow 30m (100ft) into the air, giving the impression of a blizzard—even when it is not snowing. Accompanied by low temperatures, winds have a marked chilling effect—much greater than the thermometer indicates. For instance, a 32kmph (20mph) wind will bring a temperature of -14°C (7°F) down to -34°C (-30°F) and one at 64kmph (40mph) would make it -42°C (-44°F) with even greater drops at lower temperatures. Speeds over 64kmph (40mph) do not appear to make a greater difference.

## **TRAVEL**

Experience shows the best policy is to stay near an aircraft or disabled vehicle. If the spot is hazardous establish a safe shelter as close by as possible. A decision to walk-out will be based on nearness to civilisation and probability of rescue.

Decide early what to do—while you can still think clearly. Cold dulls the mind.

Movement in a blizzard is out of the question and, at all times, navigation is difficult on featureless ice and tundra. Ice movement pushes up ridges which make the going treacherous. Summer melt water makes the tundra boggy and even sea ice slushy underfoot.

Mosquito, black-fly, deerfly and midges can all be a nuisance in the arctic summer. Their larvae live in water—avoid making shelter nearby. Keep sleeves down, collar up, wear a net over the head and burn green wood and leaves on the fire—smoke keeps them at bay. When it turns colder, these nuisances are less active and they disappear at night.

In Alaska, northwestern and northeastern Canada, Greenland, Iceland, Scandinavia, Novaya Zemlya, Spitzbergen and on other islands there are mountains where ice cliffs, glaciers, crevasses and avalanches are hazards. Near the Arctic coastline frequent fog from May to August, sometimes carried far inland, increases navigation problems.

## **Navigation**

Compasses are unreliable near the Poles, the constellations are better direction-finders and the nights are light enough to travel by. By day use the shadow tip method (see [Reading the signs](#)).

Travelling on sea ice do NOT use icebergs or distant landmarks to fix direction. Floes are constantly moving—relative positions may change. Watch for ice breaking up and, if forced to cross from floe to floe, leap from and to a spot at least 60cm (2ft) from the edge. Survivors have been rescued from floes drifting south but sooner or later ice floating into the warmer oceans will melt—though that chance may be worth taking.

AVOID icebergs, they have most of their mass below the water. As this melts, they can turn over without warning, particularly with your added weight.

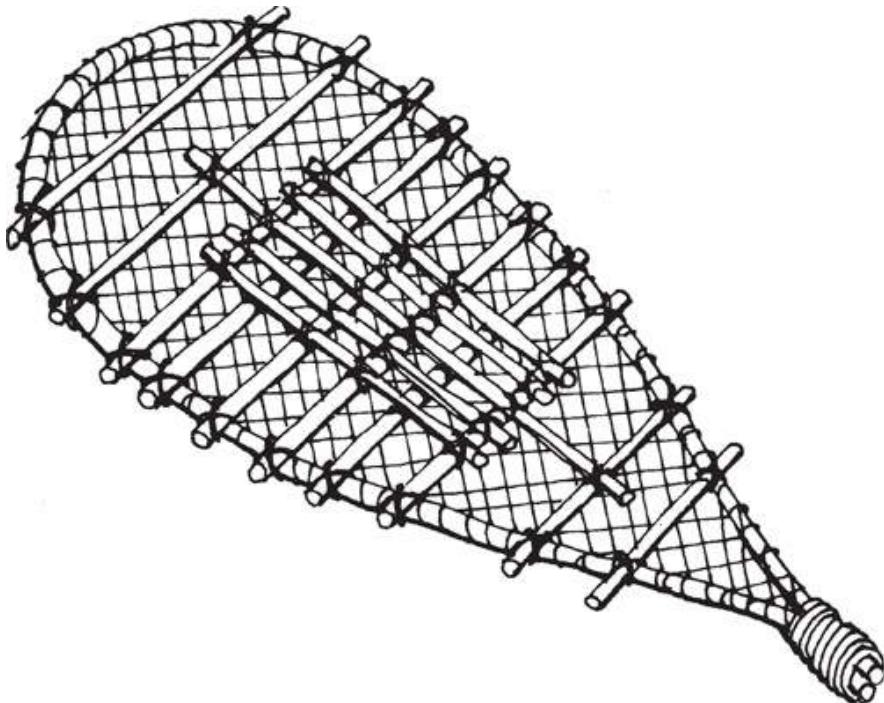
AVOID sailing close to ice-cliffs. Glaciers may ‘calve’ huge masses of ice, often thousands of tons, which break off into the sea without warning.

Bird observations can aid navigation. Migrating wildfowl fly to land in the thaw. Most seabirds fly out to sea during the day and return at night.

Sky reflections help to determine distant terrain. Clouds over open water, timber or snow-free ground appear black below; over sea ice and snowfields, white. New ice produces greyish reflections, mottled ones indicate pack ice or drifted snow.

## **Snow shoes**

All polar travel is strenuous and should only be attempted by a fit person. On snow with a hard crust, skis are the best means of travel, though difficult to improvise. Skiing in deep loose snow takes great effort and, in soft snow, snow shoes are better. To walk in snow shoes lift each foot without angling it, unlike a normal stride, keeping the shoe as flat to the ground as possible.



*Bend a long green sapling back on itself to form a loop and secure ends firmly. Add crosspieces and twine — the more the better — but do not make the shoes too heavy. You will not be able to walk far without getting very tired. Allow a firmer central section to attach to your foot.*

## Follow rivers

Travel downstream—by raft in summer, on the ice in winter—except in northern Siberia where rivers flow north.

On frozen rivers keep to smoother ice at the edges and to outer curve on the bends. Where two rivers join follow the outside edge or take to the outer bank. If the river has many bends, leave the ice and travel by higher ridges.

## WARNING

### ICE COLD WATER IS A KILLER

Falling into icy water knocks the breath out of you. The body curls up with loss of muscular control and violent shivering. Exposed parts freeze in about 4 minutes, consciousness clouds in 7, death follows in 15-20.

**RESIST!** Take violent action on hitting the water. Move fast for land. Then roll in snow to absorb water. Get to shelter and into dry kit immediately.

## CLOTHING

Severe cold and harsh winds can freeze unprotected flesh in minutes. Protect the whole body, hands and feet. Wear a hood—it should have a drawstring so that it can partly cover the face. Fur trimming will prevent moisture in the breath freezing on the face and injuring the skin.

Outer garments should be windproof, with a close enough weave to prevent snow compacting, but porous enough to allow water vapour to escape—NOT waterproof, which could create condensation inside. Under layers should trap air to provide heat insulation. Skins make ideal outer clothing.

Openings allow heat to escape, movement can drive air out through them. If clothing has no draw strings, tie something around sleeves above cuffs, tuck trousers into socks or boots.

If you begin to sweat loosen some closures (collar, cuffs). If still too warm remove a layer. Do so when doing jobs like chopping wood or shelter building.

Only a plane crash or forced landing is likely to leave someone in polar regions unequipped. Try to improvise suitable clothing before leaving the plane.

Wear wool—it does not absorb water and is warm even when damp. Spaces between the knit trap body heat. It is best for inner garments.

Cotton acts like a wick, absorbing moisture. When wet, it can lose heat 240 times faster than when dry.

## Feet

Mukluks, boots of waterproof canvas with a rubber sole which comes up to the caulk and with a drawstring to adjust fitting, are ideal. Ideally they should have an insulated liner.

Insulate feet with three pairs of socks, graded in size to fit over each other and not wrinkle. If necessary, improvise foot coverings with several layers of fabric. Canvas seat covers can make improvised boots.

Trench-foot can develop when the feet are immersed in water for long periods, as in the boggy tundra during the summer months (see [Cold climate hazards in Health](#)).

## Snow glare

Protect the eyes with goggles or a strip of cloth or bark with narrow slits cut for eyes. The intensity of the sun's rays, reflected by snow, can cause snow blindness. Blacken beneath the eyes with charcoal to reduce glare further.

## **C.O.L.D.—THE KEY TO KEEPING WARM**

Keep it - CLEAN – Dirt and grease block air spaces!

Avoid - OVERHEATING – Ventilate!

Wear it - LOOSE – Allow air to circulate!

Keep it - DRY – Outside and inside!

## SHELTER

You cannot stay in the open to rest. GET OUT OF THE WIND! Look for natural shelter you can improve on, but AVOID the lee side of cliffs where snow could drift and bury your shelter, or sites where rock fall or avalanche is likely. Avoid snow-laden trees—the weight could bring down frozen branches—unless the lower boughs are supported on the snow. There may be a space beneath the branch which will provide a ready-made shelter (see [Shelter in Camp Craft](#)).

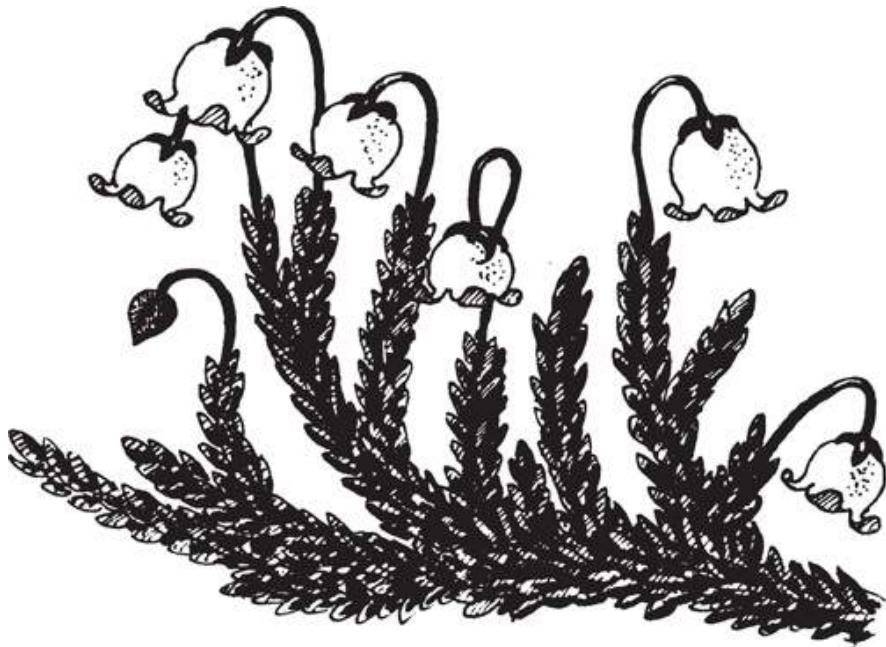
**REMEMBER:** Don't block EVERY hole to keep out draughts. You MUST have ventilation, especially if burning a fire inside your shelter. Otherwise you may asphyxiate.

## FIRE

Essential for polar survival. Fuel oil from wreckage can provide heat. Drain oil from sump and reservoir on to the ground as soon as possible—as it cools it will congeal and become impossible to drain. High octane fuel does not freeze so quickly—leave it in the tanks.

In the Antarctic and on the Arctic ice, seal and bird fat are the only other fuel sources. On coasts driftwood can sometimes be collected—Greenlanders used to build homes from timber which drifted across the Arctic from Siberian rivers. In the tundra low, spreading, willow can be found. Birch scrub and juniper also grow beyond the forests. Birch bark makes excellent kindling—the wood is oily. Feather a branch and it will burn even when wet.

Casiope is another low spreading heather-like plant that Eskimos use for fuel. Evergreen, with tiny leaves and white bell-shaped flowers, and only 10-30cm (4-12in) high, it contains so much resin that it, too, burns when wet.



Casiope

## WATER

Even in the cold you need over a litre (1¾pt) daily to replace losses. In summer water is plentiful in tundra lakes and streams. Pond water may look brown and taste brackish but vegetation growing in it keeps it fresh. If in doubt BOIL.

In winter melt ice and snow. Do NOT eat crushed ice, it can injure your mouth and lips and also cause further dehydration. Thaw snow sufficiently to mould into a ball before attempting to suck it.

**REMEMBER:** if already cold and tired eating snow will further chill your body.

## FOOD

**Antarctic:** Lichens and mosses, growing on dark, heat-absorbing rocks on some northern coasts, are the only plants. Seas are rich in plankton and krill which support fish, whales, seals and many seabirds. Most birds migrate in autumn, but flightless penguins stay. They make good eating. Most of the year they take to the water at the first sign of danger but, when incubating eggs, sit tight on their burrows or scrapes.

**Arctic:** Ice provides no habitat for plants or ground animals, even polar bears are likely only where they can find prey—and they are difficult and dangerous to hunt. Seabirds, fish and seals, where there is water, are the potential foods. Foxes—the Arctic fox turns white in winter—sometimes follow polar bears on to sea ice to scavenge their kills. Northern wildlife is migratory and availability depends on season.

**Tundra and forest:** Plants and animals can be found in winter and summer and the northern forests offer even more wildlife. Tundra plant species are the same in Russia as in Alaska. All are small compared to warmer climate plants: ground spreading willow, birch and berry plants with high vitamin content. Lichens and mosses, found widely, form a valuable food source—especially reindeer moss.

### **Poisonous plants**

The majority of Arctic plants are edible, but AVOID Water Hemlock—the most poisonous. AVOID the fruit of the Baneberry. AVOID small Arctic buttercups. Other temperate poisonous species found far north include Lupin, Monkshood, Larkspur, Vetch (Locoweed), False hellebore and Death camas. Best avoid fungi too—make sure you can distinguish lichens from them! There are no Arctic plants which are known to produce contact poisoning.

### **Animals for food**

Bark and greenery stripped from trees is evidence of feeding animals. Caribou (reindeer) are common from Alaska to west Greenland and found across northern Scandinavia and Siberia. Shaggy musk-ox roam in northern Greenland and, in the islands of the Canadian archipelago, elk (Moose) are found—where there is a mixture of forest and open ground.

Wolves are common in northern Canada, Alaska and Siberia (but rare and protected in most European

countries). Foxes, living in the tundra in summer and open woodland in winter, are an indication of other, smaller prey—mountain hares, squirrels and other small rodents which burrow beneath the snow to find seeds. Lemmings make runways beneath the snow. Beaver, mink, wolverines and weasels can all be found in the Arctic.

Bears roam the barren lands of the north as well as the forests. They can be dangerous. Give them a wide berth.

The best chances for survival are along coasts where the sea provides a dependable source of food. Seals are found on coasts, pack ice and in the open water.

Walruses may look cumbersome but are also very dangerous. LEAVE THEM ALONE UNLESS YOU ARE ARMED.

## Hunting and Trapping

Tracks are clear in snow and easy to follow—but leave a trail of fluttering flags of bright material from wreckage to find your way back to your shelter. Make them high enough not to be covered by a fresh snowfall.

Caribou can be very curious and may sometimes be lured by waving a cloth and moving on all fours. Imitating a four-legged animal may also bring wolves closer, thinking you might be prey. Ground squirrels and marmots may run into you if you are between them and their holes. Some prey animals can be attracted by the sound made by kissing the back of your hand. It is like the noise made by a wounded mouse or bird. Make it from a concealed position and downwind. Be patient. Keep on trying.

Stalking animals is difficult in the exposed Arctic. If you have a projectile weapon—gun, bow, catapult—which can be fired from ground level, lie in ambush behind a screen of snow. To be more mobile make a screen of cloth which can stand in front of you, and slowly be moved forward.

In winter, owls, ravens and ptarmigans—the birds available in the north—are usually ‘tame’ and can be approached slowly, without sudden movements. Many polar birds have a 2-3 week summer moult, which makes them flightless—they can be run down. Eggs are among the safest foods and are edible at any stage of embryo development.

## Seals

A main source of food on polar ice, some seals remain there right through the winter. The Antarctic Weddel seal, most southerly of mammals, can dive for 15 minutes before coming up to breathe from pockets of air beneath the ice, or at small holes which it keeps open by nibbling around the edges. Most seals must breathe more frequently. Few are as formidable as the Elephant seal, which can rear up to twice a man’s height in attack or defence.

Seals are most vulnerable on the ice floes with their young pups (produced between March and June in the Arctic according to species). Newborn seals cannot swim and are easy to catch—thousands are massacred by hunters and in culls each year by simply walking among them on the ice and clubbing them.

Out of the breeding season, breathing holes in the ice are the best place to catch seals; recognize them by their cone shape (narrower on the upper surface). In thicker ice they will be surrounded by flipper and tooth-marks where the seal has been keeping the hole open. You have to be patient, yet ever ready, for the visits to the hole are brief. Club the animal then enlarge the hole to recover the carcass.

Seals provide food, clothing, moccasins and blubber for fires. Adult males have a strong odour early in the year, but it does not affect their meat.

Eat all except the liver, which at some times of the year has DANGEROUS concentrations of vitamin A. Cook seal meat to avoid Trichinosis.

## POLAR BEARS

Confined to the high Arctic—in Europe only resident on Spitzbergen—they have a keen sense of smell and are tireless hunters on sea ice and in the sea. Feeding mainly on seals, with some fish, they swim well and can stay submerged for two minutes. Rarely found on land—though in summer they may feed on berries and lemmings. Like many cold-climate animals they are larger than their warmer-climate relatives. Most are curious and will come to you—but treat these powerful animals with respect and caution.

Always cook meat: muscles always carry the Trichinosis worm. NEVER eat polar bear liver which can have lethal concentrations of vitamin A.

## **Preparing meat**

Bleed, gut and skin while the carcass is still warm. Roll hides before they freeze. Cut meat into usable portions and allow to freeze. Do not keep reheating. Once cooked, eat leftovers cold (that's why you cut it up). Leave fat on all animals except seals. Fat is essential in cold areas but, if you eat a lot, make sure you take plenty of fluids. Except in extreme cold (when it will freeze) remove seal fat and render it down before it turns rancid. It can also be useful fire fuel.

When food is scarce animals will steal it—so cache it carefully. If there are signs of would-be thieves look out for them—they could be your next meal.

Rodents, especially squirrels, and rabbits and hares, can carry Tularemia, which can be caught from ticks or handling infected animals. Wear gloves when skinning. Boiled flesh is safe.

## **AVOIDING FROSTBITE**

- Wrinkle face to stop stiff patches forming, pulling muscles in every direction. Exercise hands.
- Watch yourself and others for patches of waxy, reddening or blackened skin, especially on faces, ears, hands.
- AVOID** tight clothing which will reduce circulation.
- Dress inside warmth of sleeping bag (if you have one).
- Never go out without adequate clothing—however briefly. Avoid getting clothing wet, through sweat or water. Dry it as soon as possible if this happens.
- Knock snow off before entering shelter, or leave outer clothing at entrance. Snow will melt in warmth giving you more clothing to dry.
- Wear gloves and keep them dry. **NEVER** touch metal with bare hands.
- AVOID** spilling petrol on bare flesh. In sub-zero temperatures it will freeze almost at once and does even more damage than water because of its lower melting point.
- Be especially careful if you have been working hard and are fatigued. If you are sick—**REST**.

## **ARCTIC HEALTH**

Frostbite, hypothermia and snow blindness are the main hazards, while efforts to keep warm and exclude draughts can lead to lack of oxygen and carbon monoxide poisoning.

It is easy to withdraw from reality, layered in clothing and with the head wrapped in a hood. Thinking can become sluggish and obvious things overlooked. Keep 'switched on'. Keep active—but avoid fatigue and conserve energy for useful tasks. Sleep as much as possible—the cold will wake you before you freeze unless you are completely exhausted and cannot regenerate the heat you lose to the air.

Don't let the cold demoralize you. Think up ways to improve the shelter, how to make a better pair of gloves, for instance. Exercise fingers and toes to improve circulation.

Don't put off defecation—constipation is often brought on that way. Do try to time it conveniently before leaving your shelter, so that you can take waste out with you.

# **MOUNTAINS**

---

**M**ountain peaks are exposed to high winds and often covered in snow. They provide neither food nor shelter. Climbing rock and negotiating ice and snowfields calls for special skills, which are best learned first-hand in mountaineering schools and practised under supervision. No inexperienced person should think of trying to tackle real mountaineering territory, except as a learner with a properly organized party. But disaster may leave you on a mountainside or force you to cross a mountain range to get to safety.

If no rescue is likely, the first aim in daylight should be to get down into the valleys where food and shelter are available. At night and in bad visibility this is too dangerous. Some kind of shelter must be found until visibility improves.

Dig into the snow if there is no shelter among rocks and no wreckage to provide cover. If below the snow line you must cover yourself to prevent exposure. A plastic bag will make an improvised sleeping bag, if you have no survival kit. Salvage blankets or covering from a crashed plane or use any clothing to cover yourself as much as possible, but do not pull clothes too tightly round you; air within the clothes will provide insulation.

On a slope, sleep with your head uphill; on rough and stony ground sleep on your stomach for greater comfort.

## **Judging terrain**

As you descend a mountainside it will often be difficult to see what is below you. Can you move around a valley or along a spur to look back at what was below? The opposite side of a valley will give you some idea of what is on your side too.

Be cautious if you find you are looking at a distant slope beyond a foreground bluff, the ground is likely to fall steeply between. Scree slopes can be particularly deceptive and appear continuous until you are very close to a cliff.

## **Descent**

Negotiating cliffs without a rope is extremely dangerous. On the steepest cliffs it is necessary to come down facing the cliff and very difficult to see footholds below. If there is an adjoining slope, a colleague can observe and give directions. Once down, you can then point out holds to others from below. A high cliff should never be attempted. In the case of a plane crash there is probably more risk in climbing than waiting for rescue.

To climb down rock faces which are less steep and with deeper ledges, adopt a sideways position using the inside hand for support. For easier crags, descend facing outwards with the body bent and where possible carry weight on the palms of the hands.

## **Ascent**

Climbing upwards, holds are easier to see, but it is always safer to go round than over obstacles if you are travelling without knowing the route. You could get stuck with an impossible descent.

Always work out your route from the bottom and in climbing keep the body away from the rock and look up. Move only one hand or one foot at a time—always keep three points of contact. Keep your weight evenly balanced on the feet rather than hang from the hands. Do not overstretch.

With the feet firmly planted on the rock and one hand grasping a good hold, reach with the other for a hold just above the head. Test it and then look for another hold for the other hand or the feet. Use small intermediate holds, avoid becoming spread-eagled and let the legs do most of the work. Always place the feet as flat as possible to make maximum contact with the rock.

To climb vertically up fissures, use the chimney technique. Place your back against one surface and wedge your legs across the gap to the other. Slowly move up. If a chimney opens out you may have great difficulty in transferring to one face and have to descend again.

## **Descending by rope**

With a rope firmly anchored at the upper level, it is possible to descend the sheerest cliff. The technique, known as abseiling or rappelling, can involve a special sit sling and a karabiner for the rope to pass through, but the basic method uses just a doubled rope. The rope does not move—you move down it. It is not comfortable, even with the body correctly angled, but it is the safest way to negotiate steep or very slippery slopes. Friction can damage clothing and skin, so if you can, pad out your shoulders and groin, and wear gloves.

## **SURVIVAL TIP**

Make sure that you are in a firm position before hauling the rope down—its sudden weight could affect your balance—and be sure that you have planned your next move. Once the rope is down you may have no way of retracing your steps.

The length of the rope controls the amount of descent and there must be a firm anchor point, a rock, or tree which can carry the weight and not cut the rope. If a series of platforms with firm anchors can be found, a slope can be negotiated in stages—but if several people are involved there must be room for all of them to wait at each stage.

After an abseil the rope can be pulled down after you. If someone is left above to untie the rope, or you are prepared to leave it behind, an undoubled rope can be used—making twice the descent possible with the same rope. Getting over the edge is often the most difficult part. You may have to climb down a few steps to gain a good position and sufficient confidence.



### **ABSEILING**

*Loop rope around firm anchor (test it with full body weight). Avoid sharp edges that could cut rope. Pass both ends of rope between legs from front, bring around to left of body and across chest, over right shoulder and down across back. Hold rope in front with left hand and at back with right. Plant feet about 45cm (18in) apart, firmly against slope and lean back. Let rope around body carry your weight. Do not try to support yourself with your upper hand. Step slowly downwards. The lower hand controls rate of descent. Pay the rope out one hand at a time.*

**CAUTION:** Abseiling can be dangerous. If not trained in the technique, NEVER attempt it, unless accompanied by an expert or in a survival situation.

### **Using a cradle**

On an unobstructed vertical descent, a cradle made from a bowline-on-the-bight (see [Knots in Camp Craft](#)) can be used to lower people down, or haul them up. Use this technique to rescue anyone who has fallen down a crevasse.

## Ascending with ropes

Belaying is a method of helping others to climb up. First, one person must make the ascent with a rope (this could be a light line to haul up the actual rope afterwards) attached around the waist with a bowline. At each stage of the ascent there must be a platform or ledge to accommodate all the party and a secure anchor for the rope. If there are a number of lengths of rope a series of stages could be operated at the same time to handle a larger party.

Test that the anchor is firm—a tree, spike of rock or thread (a hole through rock, or a stone or small boulder firmly wedged in a crevice). Anchor the rope with a loop tied in a figure-of-eight or an overhand knot.

The be-layer ties on with a bight or two bights to steady himself, and passes climbing rope over head and down to hips, making a twist around the arm closest to the anchor and takes up any slack. The climber ties on with a bowline around waist and begins to mount. The belayer takes in rope to keep it taut.



### TAKING UP ROPE

*Pull with both hands so that rope passes behind back (pull in with right hand, push away with left). Slide right hand out for more rope. Bring hands together and hold both parts of rope in right hand, while the left slides in towards body to take up slack. Begin again, pulling in with right hand, pulling rope around body with left. Be ready to arrest rope, in case climber falls. Bring rope tight around body by bringing hands together.*

The anchor, belayer and climber should be in a straight line. If a spike is used it should be higher than the belayer's head. If this is not possible standing, the belayer should work from a sitting position.

Older people and children should be roped around the chest. Small children are best carried papoose-style on another climber's back. Note: Belaying without an anchor is risky and requires more strength. The rope should then only pass through the belayer's fingers, NOT around the back, lest the belayer be pulled down by the climber.

## WARNING

## **FALLING ROCK CAN KILL!**

On loose rock always test holds gently and never pull outwards on a loose hold.

Be careful that your rope does not dislodge rocks. Even small falling rocks can inflict serious injury. If you knock a piece down, shout a warning to those below.

## **SNOW AND ICE FIELDS**

Sophisticated equipment is available for climbing in snow and ice, but on snow some of the mountaineer's ice-axe techniques can be improvised with a stout stick—a handled walking stick may give more grip than a simple shaft. If not equipped with a proper ice axe and crampons and skilled in their use, try to keep clear of mountain ice.

An ice axe or stick, driven into the snow when climbing, gives stability. On steep slopes climb in zig-zags, kicking steps and digging your stick in sideways. Dig in heels and use a stick on slighter slopes. On gentle slopes use heels and stick as a walking stick. On steep slopes descend backwards driving stick into snow for support and as a brake if you slip. Sliding down a snow slope is exhilarating, but dangerous.

Digging in the heels will help control speed and a stick driven into the snow is an additional brake—but there is always a risk that you have not seen a precipice ahead! Never use this method where there is any risk of avalanche.

### **Security ropes on ice**

Any party moving across a glacier should be tied together, at not less than 9m (30ft) intervals. The leader should probe the snow with a stick, for any slight depression could indicate a crevasse.

Ropes fixed to a firm anchor at both ends can steady movement across ice patches which have to be traversed. Use as a hand hold, or tie a short rope in a bowline around the waist and secure to the rope with a prusik knot. This will slide along the rope to allow descent but, if you slip, will arrest your fall. This is a technique also useful on scree and loose descents for children and the less able.

### **Ice and snow bollards**

If no firm rock is available for belaying, an upper anchor can be cut from the ice. Cut in a mushroom shape where natural ice formation makes it easiest. Make the diameter at least 40cm (16in) and depth at least 15cm (Gin). Discard and start again at the slightest sign of a crack in the ice. A snow bollard must be much bigger: at least 30cm (1ft) deep and from 1m (3ft) wide in hard snow to 3m (10ft) in soft. Pack equipment and baggage around it to prevent rope cutting through.

### **Crevasses**

Crevasses are found where a glacier starts at a valley wall, changes direction or spreads out in a widening valley. Travel slowly, probing the ground. If one of the group falls through the snow he is belayed by a rope and can be hauled out.

Pressure of the rope on the chest can cause asphyxiation. Pass a rope down with a loop to put a foot in to take the weight. If the faller is unconscious it will take three people to heave him out. Manharness hitches will enable them to pull together. Temperatures in a crevasse are very low and the victim will rapidly weaken. Speed is important.

## **AVALANCHES**

Avalanches are a serious hazard in all high mountain regions. They most frequently occur on slopes of between 20° and 60°, and especially between 30° and 45°, usually within 24 hours of a snow fall.

Several things trigger avalanches, like temperature, ground conditions and noise. If you find yourself in avalanche prone areas be aware of these causes. Avoid if possible areas where fresh snow has just fallen on steep ground. After a major fall, waiting 24 hours for it to settle will help. The majority of victims of avalanches start them off themselves.

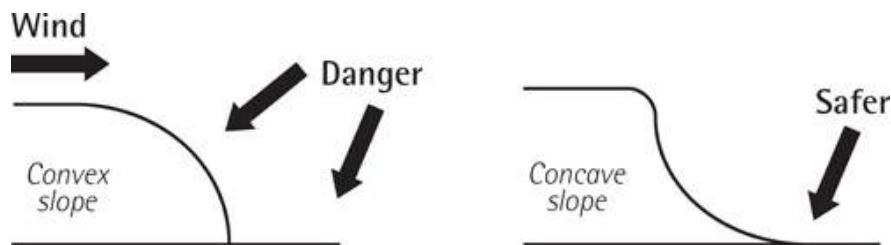
Rain, or a rise in temperature, after a snow fall greatly increases the risk. The melting process helps to lubricate the slide. Heavy snow falling during low temperature can also avalanche because it does not have enough time to stabilize.

Slopes with irregular surfaces are safest and timbered slopes are also stable. Steep rocks at the top of a slope make it more prone to slipping, because falling snow, rocks or icicles can set it in motion. On a convex slope the gravitational movement downward compacts the snow at the bottom and creates tension at the top making it more likely to slip. Where snow is building up on the lee side of a ridge or the head of steep gullies, it's under tension and the slightest disturbance can cause it to slide. Slopes with rocky outcrops and trees are safer to cross than bare ones. Carefully choose the best place to cross and before committing yourself, test the snow.

Dig in your stick/ice axe and see if it's compacted or in layers. Throw rocks and make noise to try to encourage a slide, making sure you are well protected. On all dangerous ground it is best to rope together and use belays. Keep at least 15m (50ft) apart to help spread the load. If possible, let one person go across the more dangerous areas alone paying out the rope as he goes. When he is across he belays himself before the next person crosses.

## MAIN AREAS OF DANGER

- Snow-covered convex slopes. Here the snow is under tension.
- Lee slopes where snow has accumulated. They are unstable.
- Deep snow-filled gullies.



*Never make camp on the lee side of a convex slope, a concave slope is safer.*

As a precaution always carry a location beacon that omits a signal that rescuers can use to find you. Also carry an avalanche tape that can be streamed out in an emergency. It is made of bright nylon tape and makes detection easier if buried.

## PRECAUTIONS

- The heat of the sun on the snow can cause avalanches so before noon travel in shaded areas—keep off those exposed to the sun.
- After noon, keep to slopes that have been exposed, avoiding those that are now in sun for the first time.
- Avoid small gullies and valleys with steep side walls.
- Stick to ridges and high ground above avalanche paths—you are more likely to trigger a slide but, if you do, have a better chance of being on top of the debris or not being carried down at all.
- Always look out for avalanche activity, even if you do not see it happening. Assess where avalanches started, their direction, how long ago they took place. They will be a guide to where other avalanches are likely.

**A mud slide is very similar to an avalanche, but instead of tons of snow, masses of mud sliding on water bury all in its path. Avoid low-lying areas and water courses. Stay on the spurs and ridges. If caught up in a slide, use swimming actions to stay on top and go feet first.**

# **SEASHORES**

---

**M**ost seashores offer abundant sources of food and excellent prospects for survival. Even where they appear bleak and barren, there is food to be had. Coastal waters are the home of many life forms—seaweeds, fish, seals, birds, molluscs and the plankton that supports the marine animals. Inland lakes and waterways of all kinds will also teem with life, with the exception of the Dead Sea and other areas of extreme salination, and those heavily polluted by man.

Coasts can range from sheer cliffs to long and gently sloping beaches. From the sea a towering cliff offers no opportunity to escape the water. Even a stretch of beach at its foot is likely to be cut off by high tide in tidal waters, though it could offer a few hours of respite before swimming off to find another landing place. All kinds of shore, however, offer resources to exploit and there are few better places to be stranded.

## **Sandy beaches**

Sandy shores tend to be gentle and sloping. The tide goes out a long way, revealing large areas which are the habitat of burrowing species, left below the exposed sand. They include many worms and molluscs and they also attract feeding birds. Look for signs of buried molluscs. It is usually easier to spot the marks left by the siphons of buried bivalves under the shallow water at the sea's edge.

Where the sand is not inundated by the tide and is blown into dunes, it may be possible to find fresh water and it is here that plants will grow.

Sand is easily blown by the wind and gets into everything. Dunes also tend to be full of aggravating insects—so do not choose them for making camp or building shelter, if you can move beyond.

## **Muddy shores and estuaries**

Where a slow-moving river joins the sea it deposits sediment, rich in nutrients, forming large mud flats. These can support many species of worms and molluscs and provide a rich feeding ground for birds and animals.

## **Rocky shores**

Rocky shores, if their cliffs are not too sheer, trap pools of water when the tide recedes. These pools may teem with life. Rocks form a strata to which the many univalve shells can cling, an anchor for weed and sea urchins and crevices where octopus and other cephalopods can live.

Soft rocks, such as chalk, marl and limestone, erode quickly and their surfaces are smooth, but hard rocks fracture in chunks and provide good nesting sites for birds.

## **Pebble beaches**

Stretches of pebble beach, often found between sandy and rocky sections of the shore, sustain least life. The continual movement of pebbles makes a difficult habitat for most plants and animals.

## **Tides**

Tides vary considerably according to both location and time of year for they are caused by the counter-gravities of the sun and moon. In enclosed seas, such as the Mediterranean, they range over only a few metres. The Bay of Fundy, between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, has a difference of 16m (52½ft) between low tide and high tide.

A line of debris along the beach; a change in appearance and texture from the long dry sand to that which is daily inundated; weed, shells and colour changes on vertical rock faces, all these will help to indicate the level to which the water is likely to rise.

Always check access to and from a beach or rocky shore—keep an eye on the rising water level so that you do not run the risk of being cut off.

Tides not only scour the beach but throw up valuable flotsam and jetsam, often providing fuel for fires, and may leave large fish stranded in rock pools along with their usual inhabitants.

- Never underestimate the power and danger of the sea. Time the tides and become familiar with their pattern, then you will be less likely to be cut off by an incoming tide or swept out by the ebb. It is easy to be caught when some way offshore.
- Cliffs offer problems of access. If there is only one way down make sure you can get back to it.
- Look out for strong currents, especially off headlands. Sand banks and submerged rocks are also dangerous. Where a beach falls steeply into deep water there will be a strong undertow. If you are forced to enter the water to rescue someone or retrieve kit, have a safety line around the waist and someone anchoring you on shore—or tie the line to a firm anchor.

## **Swimming**

If caught in the undertow of a large wave, push off the bottom and swim to the surface. Swim to shore in the trough between waves. When the next large wave comes, face it and submerge. Let it pass and swim in the next trough shore-wards.

When fishing or swimming stay within your depth, if you are not a strong swimmer. Watch out for large waves which can knock you off your feet and carry you further out. If this happens do not panic. People tend to panic when they do not know how deep water is, but are reassured when they do. It does not really matter for you can drown in 10cm (4in) of water as much as in 10m (33ft). If you want to test the depth place your arms above your head, point your toes and dive feet first. It may not be as deep as you thought!

If a strong current forces you offshore do NOT fight against it—you will lose. Swim ACROSS it, using side stroke, and make for land further along the coast. Side stroke is not the strongest or fastest stroke—but it is the least tiring.

If in the sea and being swept on to rocks, face shorewards and adopt a sitting position with your feet in front. They will absorb the initial shock and enable you to grab hold and scramble ashore. This is also useful for exploring water that may conceal hidden rocks—keep your shoes on and at least one layer of clothing.

## **Floating**

A relaxed body floats best—so try to stay calm. It is difficult to sink in salt water. The main danger is swallowing salt water and choking on the vomit.

Women are more buoyant than men (they have an extra layer of fat) and float naturally on their backs. Men float naturally face down—but don't forget to lift your head out to breathe!

## **WATER**

Fresh water along the coast is best obtained from small river outlets—large rivers tend to be full of silt and may be polluted by industry or other human activity upriver.

On sandy shores with no freshwater outlets there may be pools among dunes. Digging above the high water mark on any beach, especially if there is vegetation, may bring results. Dig down until you reach moist sand. Let water accumulate. Freshwater floats on top of salt. Scoop the lighter layer off the top.

Rock pools are unlikely to be freshwater. Even above the high water mark, they may be the result of wave splash, but you can sometimes identify fresh water by the growth of green algae which is not grazed by molluscs, as it would be elsewhere on the beach. Saltwater molluscs cannot survive in the reduced salinity.

Look for water trickling through rock faces, especially where there are ferns or mosses growing out of them, it will be drinkable. If stranded on a rocky outcrop off the shore, the only reliable source of water will be the sea itself—but NEVER drink sea water without distilling it. Far from quenching your thirst, it will take valuable body fluids away from the vital organs and eventually cause the kidneys to pack up.

Saltwater can be used for cooking—but do not eat until you have an adequate supply of fresh water. The residue of salt from distilled sea water can be used for preserving meat and fish.

## **FOOD**

Seashore plants will differ according to the climate, but they will be available when weather or tide prevent you gathering food from the sea. In the water, you will find seaweeds of one kind or another where there is rock to give them purchase and water shallow enough to allow the sun to reach them. Seaweeds (more correctly called algae) are very valuable as food. In many parts of the world they form a major part of the diet and many are considered a delicacy from the cuisine of Japan to the laver bread of Wales. Seaweeds can be dried and stored for months.

## **Seafood**

The best hunting for fish and molluscs will be at low tide, when rock pools can be inspected and buried molluscs and other creatures dug from sandy shores.

## **WARNING**

Seaweeds are a valuable contribution to diet—but do NOT eat the blue-green algae sometimes found on freshwater pools. It is very poisonous.

Bivalves, which feed by filtering water through their digestive systems, can build up dangerous concentrations of toxic chemicals in areas polluted by industry or sewage.

In tropical zones, mussels are poisonous during the summer, especially when seas are reddish or highly phosphorescent. In the Arctic, black mussels can be poisonous at any time of year. Learn to recognize the cone shells, which shoot out a poisonous barb, in a few species potent enough to kill you. There are more than 400 types of cone shell, mainly found in the tropical Indo-Pacific with about 12 species off the southeast of USA and in the Caribbean. They are all identified by their shape. Tenebra or Auger and Turrid shells also have poison darts. Their venom is not dangerous to man, but a sting may still be painful.

Only eat molluscs collected live. Bivalves, such as oysters, clams and mussels, should close tightly if tapped gently. Gastropods, such as winkles and whelks, have a ‘trap-door’ (the operculum) to close the entrance to the shell. It should close tightly if the shell is shaken.

Other gastropods, such as limpets and Abalones, have no operculum but are tightly anchored to the rocks. Use a knife under the edge of the shell to prise them off. If they are hard to dislodge, they are good to eat. If they come off easily, they are probably dead or sick. After high tide any limpet found still fastened is good food—the tide washes away sick or dead specimens.

Cook shell foods by plunging them into boiling water and boiling for at least five minutes.

If you eat shell foods raw you expose yourself to parasites and pollutants which they may carry.

## **Fishing**

Fish and sea snakes require more catching. Some fish are dangerous and all sea snakes are venomous. Distinguish snakes from eels by their scales and their broad flattened tails. They are said not to bite swimmers. Bites usually occur, and then only rarely, when fishermen are removing fish from nets in which the snakes are also caught.

On most coasts the best time to fish from the shore is about two hours after high water. If you fish when the tide is still coming in you are constantly retreating and probably getting wet. Remember that saltwater will rot boots and clothing.

Sea fishing requires a larger hook than freshwater fishing. A wide variety of bait can be used. Limpets, for instance, can often be found clinging to the rocks, or lugworms (*Arenicola*) can be dug up on sandy and muddy beaches. At low tide look for the coiled worm casts that show you where their L-shaped burrows are.

Make use of the tide to help you catch fish by building large arrow-shaped fish traps from stakes or rocks. Point them away from the shore. Fish will be caught when the tide recedes.

## **Octopus and squid**

Octopus can be hunted at night, when they are in search of their own prey. Attract them with a light, then spear them. In daytime empty shells around a hole are an indication that an octopus may live inside. Drop in a baited hook, wait until it is taken and pull sharply up. The best way to kill an octopus is to turn it inside out: place a hand inside the fleshy hood, grab the innards and pull hard. Try it on a small octopus first! It takes practise so until you are proficient stab the octopus between the eyes or bang it against a rock.

All octopuses have a hard, parrot-like beak, and a few can give a poisonous bite. The worst is the Blue-ringed octopus of eastern Australia—its venom can be lethal. AVOID IT!

Octopus flesh is tough but chewy and very nourishing. Pounding it will help make it more tender. Boil the body and roast the smaller tentacles.

In the open sea squid can be huge, but a few small squid may occur inshore. Look for them in rock pools attached to seaweed. Catch them at night with a bright light, by jigging. Cuttlefish do not come close inshore but can be caught at sea in the same way.

## Echinoderms

Another useful source of food, the echinoderms include starfish (not worth bothering with as food), sea urchins and sea cucumbers. Sea cucumbers creep about on the seabed or burrow in the sand. They look like warty black cucumbers, up to 20cm (8in) long. There are also spiky white sea gherkins and worm cucumbers (which burrow into sand). Sea cucumbers should be boiled for five minutes before eating.

Sea urchins, or sea eggs as they are sometimes called, are usually prickly balls which cling on to rocks, just below the low water mark but they have burrowing relations, the cake and heart urchins and the sea potato, which can be found beneath the sand. Split open and eat the egg-like 'yolk' inside. You can eat it raw, but it is safer to boil. AVOID any if their spines do not move when touched or if they smell bad when opened.

## SEA URCHINS

Handle carefully. Their spines can inflict a painful wound—especially if you tread on them with bare feet! If you get pricked and the spine breaks off don't try to squeeze it out, it may push the spine in deeper. With luck spines will begin to work their way out of the skin after a few days.

## Crustaceans

These include crabs, crayfish, shrimp and prawns, all of which make their homes in rock pools. Lobsters are usually found beyond the tidal zone but sometimes can be found in deep pools or crevices. Look under stones and seaweeds—though you'll have to be quick to catch them! A net would help. Improvise one from clothing and a piece of wire or a sapling.

Sand crabs are abundant in the tropics. Active at night, they can be chased back to their burrow at the top of the beach and dug out. Some even climb trees and can be knocked down.

Freshwater crabs, crayfish and shrimps are also found in many parts of the world. They are smaller than sand crabs and usually found in shallow water.

All crustaceans spoil quickly and they may contain harmful parasites. They must be eaten as soon as possible—so keep them alive in water until you are ready to cook them. They are cooked alive—either by plunging into boiling water, so that they die almost immediately, or by putting them in cold water and heating it up, which is claimed to lull them to unconsciousness so that they feel no pain. Boil for 20 minutes.

Crabs have poisonous sections which must be removed: twist off claws and legs, then, with the crab on its back, place your thumbs under the flap at the tail and push upwards. Pull the flap up and away from the body and lift it off. This prevents the stomach contents from touching the flesh. Next press on the mouth with the thumbs, pushing down and outwards. This makes mouth and stomach come away in one piece. The lungs (known as 'Dead men's fingers'), which are harmful to eat, can then be pulled out and discarded.

Lobster is easier to prepare. Cut along the back towards the head and split open. The stomach lies just behind the mouth and is removed with the head and intestinal cord.

## Turtles

Turtle meat is highly nutritious, and turtle eggs another good source of food—if you are lucky enough to have turtles come ashore. (See [Reptiles in Food](#).)

## Seabirds

Most ocean coasts are alive with seabirds. Fish for them. Leave baited hooks among offal on flat rocks, even throw baited hooks into the air to be taken on the wind. Try wrapping bait around stones. The sudden change in weight can make birds 'crash'

Ground nesting birds can provide a rich source of eggs. Look for the ones that are easy to collect before risking raiding nests on cliffs. You can also try to catch the birds themselves at night when roosting—but do NOT risk climbing.

## DANGERS

Unless very still, water higher than your thighs will be too murky to see through. You'll risk stepping on something unpleasant and waves could sweep you on to rocks or coral.

Wear shoes when foraging in the water—you need soles if you are improvising foot coverings. Cloth wrapping is NOT enough to protect from spines.

-**Jellyfish** are often swept inshore after a storm. Some, especially in the tropics, sting severely. The Sea wasps, or Box jellies, of northern Australian beaches, are the most dangerous. The bell-shaped body of the largest reaches only 25cm (10in) but its tentacles can reach 9m (30ft). Almost transparent, and difficult to see, each tentacle is armed with millions of stinging cells. Although their venom is one of the most deadly known and high concentrations cause skin lesions and death, usually only a very high dose is fatal to humans. Some jellyfish are not venomous but beware—size is not an indication of potency! If stung do NOT pull the tentacles off or wipe away the slime with your hand—you will only get stung more. Use seaweed, cloth, etc, to wipe the sting with sand.

-**Portuguese-man-of-war**, looks like a jellyfish but is actually a colony of polyps. It, too, can have tentacles 9m (30ft) long but, though its stings may cause irritation for several days, they are rarely fatal. Treat as for jellyfish.

-**Weaver-fish** lie buried in the sand off the shores of Europe, West Africa and the Mediterranean. Their spines are venomous. Apply very hot water to sooth spine wounds.

-**Stingrays** occur inshore everywhere, but especially in warm waters, and electric rays in warm to temperate zones. Superbly camouflaged, they don't only hide in sand- some like rocky and pebbly places. Play safe—prod the bottom with a stick as you go. Stingray wounds can be soothed with very hot water.

-**Moray eels** may be found in shallow water. They have a savage bite and guard their holes tenaciously. Keep clear of any you see and do NOT put your hands into crevices!

-**Giant clams** on tropical reefs can be big enough to trap a limb if they snap shut on you.

-**Fish with venomous spines** often live in very shallow waters. Most common, and most dangerous, in the tropics, a few occur in temperate waters. Bottom-dwelling kinds are almost impossible to detect and are often superbly camouflaged. Zebra fish are easier to see, but equally dangerous to contact. Use a stick to stir up the sand and rocks in front of you.

-**Sea snakes** often occur in some numbers close in shore in the tropical Pacific and Indian Oceans. They are inoffensive and bites are rare—but their venom is the most toxic of all snake venom. Keep clear of snakes in the water. Found on shore, pin them with a forked stick—they make a good meal.

-**Many corals** are sharp and can easily cut you. Some, such as the fire corals, sting on contact. Always approach a reef with caution. Exploit other sites for food first. Both the reef and its inhabitants—which may include cone shells—can present dangers.

-**Sharks** Although most sharks feed mainly in deep waters, some species frequent shallow waters and swim up rivers and any might come onshore looking for an easy meal. Most shark attacks on humans occur in very shallow water. Be watchful!

-**Lagoons** Reefs are often formed around tropical islands or out from the shore, making a breakwater which leaves still waters in a lagoon. Fish in the lagoon are often of the poisonous varieties. Barracuda and Red snapper, which are edible in the open sea, should be avoided if caught in lagoons—their eating habits cause them to become toxic. Fish from the reef on the seaward side.

# **ISLANDS**

Islands offer a special challenge to the survivor, especially small islands and those lacking resources. The feeling of loneliness is emphasized on an island and the sense of isolation acute. The problems are mental as well as physical. To help overcome them explore the island thoroughly and establish a daily routine.

Climb to the highest point to make a sketch of the island and get a mental picture of the terrain. Explore every creek, cranny, bay and beach of the coastline. Then take your reconnaissances inland until the island is familiar.

The island may have been in-habitated in the past—remains of buildings offer a basis for shelter. Fence posts and wire will be useful to repair your boat or build a raft. Vegetables may still be found growing and rats seem to follow man everywhere—sometimes they are the only permanent wildlife to be found.

Shelter will make life seem better and even a scrape in the ground will give some protection. If you find caves ensure that they are not tidal before you decide to use one. Remember that even caves that seem safe may be flooded or cut off by spring tides, which are higher than normal.

On a barren rocky outcrop shelter may simply mean finding a place out of the wind. Water may depend upon collecting rainfall and distillation. Food will be whatever clings to the rocks, birds and birds' eggs if you are lucky, and what you can haul from the sea.

## **Resources**

On any small island resources will be limited. Take care not to over-exploit any one of them. Water is often a problem—lack of it is the reason many islands are uninhabited. Lush vegetation will draw attention to springs and streams. Digging above the high water mark may produce water. Catch and store rainwater.

To desalinate sea water by distillation you need a lot of fuel, which may be scarce. Driftwood may be available and some seaweeds will burn when dried—but you need wood to get the fire going. Seal blubber also makes good fuel. Have a fire only when you really need one. Search beaches after every tide—not just for wood. Everything has a use to the survivor.

Once familiar with your island, venture out at night—more creatures can be seen and foraging may be more rewarding.

## **Coconuts**

Tropical islands are rarely desert islands—they will usually offer plenty to eat, both ashore and in the water. The coconut palm is found right through the tropics and subtropics and can provide: fronds for shelter, husks for ropes, growing points, which taste like cabbages, the milk and meat, and the shell (which you can also use as cups and containers).

To remove the fibrous husk around the coconut force it over a sharpened stake or split it with a hand axe. Extract the milk by piercing one of the dark 'eyes' of the nut itself before smashing the nut open to get at the meat.

Coconut milk is a safe and refreshing drink—a large nut may hold 1 litre (1¾ pt). Do not drink from very young (green) or old (dark brown) nuts, their liquid will give you diarrhoea. The meat itself is indigestible in large amounts—eat only a little at a time.

Extract coconut oil by exposing chopped white meat to heat—sun or fire—and collecting oil as it runs off, or by boiling and skimming the oil as it rises to the surface. Rub it on to protect from sunburn, and chafing from saltwater, to repel insects, as a salve for sores and blisters or, mixed with wood ash, as a substitute for soap.

**Climbing palms:** If coconuts don't fall on your head and you can't knock them down, or if you need to reach some high bananas, don't try to climb the tree trunk like a rope. Instead, tie a strong bandage of cloth into a strap and slip it around your ankles. Adjust it to hold your feet close to the trunk and then you can press the soles of your feet inward and grip with them.

## **ATTRACTING RESCUE**

- Lay out signals to attract searchers by arranging rocks, seaweed -anything that contrasts with its surroundings.

- Sand is excellent for polishing metal to make mirrors to signal with.
- If you can see a ship you can try and make contact on a VHF radio.

## Moving on

In a group of islands, you may be able to move on to another when the first's resources are exhausted. In warmer climates it may be possible to swim, but build a raft in cold climates. If there is nothing to build a raft from, make some kind of flotation aid—even if it is only an empty box or coconuts.

If there are seals on your island you could use them to make a raft. From autumn through to spring, when the seal stores a lot of fat in its body, a seal carcass will float. If several are lashed together they will support your weight.

Study tides and currents between islands carefully, they can be treacherous. Float something you can observe and note its progress. Time your swim so that the ebb takes you out from your island and the high tide takes you in to the new island.

# ARID REGIONS

**M**ost desert lands were once fertile and some of the creatures that lived there then adapted to the new conditions. Like them, the survivor must learn to make the most of any available shade, to create protection from the sun, reduce moisture loss and restrict activity to the ends of the day and the night. Learn from the peoples who live or travel through the deserts.

In some deserts, especially the Sahara, the deserts of the Middle East, of Peru and northern Chile and parts of the Gobi Desert in Mongolia, there are great temperature differences between night and day. At night condensation of any moisture in the air can make some water available—and in the Namib desert of southern Africa fog coming in from the sea often provides moisture for life. Elsewhere, in such deserts as those of Western Australia, northern Mexico and the Mohave of the southwestern USA, where the temperature changes are comparatively slight, there is very little condensation and consequently both plants and game are very rare. Sometimes, as in the Kalahari, there will be sparse grass and thorny bushes and, even in the most barren conditions, some kind of life seems to survive, though often invisible if you do not know where to look.

Dust and sand storms may occur at certain times of year, reducing visibility to zero and demanding maximum protection to prevent sand entering every orifice. Dust devils—desert whirlwinds like tornadoes—are quite common.

When rain does come—and in some territories years may pass with none at all—it may be in torrential downpours which create flash floods, before being quickly absorbed into the parched ground. This provides for a brief blossoming of vegetation and the emergence of species, such as the Spade-foot toad of Arizona, for rapid reproduction.

## **Desert rainfall and temperature**

Typical of desert extremes are conditions in the Rub'al Khali, the 'Empty Quarter', of southern Arabia. For most of the year there is only a trace of rain but over 30mm (T $\frac{1}{4}$ in) may fall on a single day in the winter. July temperatures may reach over 48°C (118°F), dropping to 15°C (60°F) at night, and December extremes range from 26° to -6.6°C (79-20°F).

## **WATER**

Water needs are paramount. Finding it is VITAL. If you have it, ration it immediately. If you are stranded by mechanical failure during a planned desert crossing, you will have plotted your route with an awareness of oases, wells and waterholes. Wells can be very deep and the water level require a container lowered on a line to reach it. Small water holes in wadi bottoms are often seasonal. They are usually covered with a stone or brushwood.

Away from known waterholes, try digging at the lowest point of the outside bend of a dry stream bed or at the lowest point between dunes. Do NOT dig in the heat of the day, the exertion will use up too much fluid and you may find none to replace it. You must always balance fluid loss against possible gain.

Exploit cactus and roots as water sources and, in deserts where the day/night temperature range is great, exploit this to produce water by condensation. (See [Water in Essentials](#).)

## **Life expectancy**

Life expectancy depends upon the water available and your ability to protect the body from exposure to the sun to minimize perspiration. Allow a slight negative balance. Drink 1.5 litres (2½pt) for every 2 litres (3½pt) lost and then drink at the rate the body is sweating. Efficiency is then impaired little and no water is wasted. Less fluid will not result in less sweating. Sweating is a cooling mechanism, not a way of losing moisture. If more fluid is drunk than needed it will be excreted and used to no purpose.

Without water you will last about 2½ days at 48°C (118°F) if you spend the whole time resting in the shade, though you could last as long as 12 days if the temperature stays below 21°C (70°F).

If you are forced to walk to safety the distance you cover will relate directly to water available. With none, a temperature of 48°C (120°F), walking only at night, resting all day, you could cover 40km (25 miles). Attempting to walk by day you would be lucky to complete 8km (5 miles) before collapse. At the same temperature, with about 2 litres (3½pt) of water you might cover 56km (35 miles) and last 3 days. Your chances are not appreciably increased until available water reaches about 4.5 litres (8pt) per person, though training and a determination to survive could contradict predictions.

## **SHELTER AND FIRE**

Make a shelter from the sun and rest in its shade. You'll also need protection from winds and low night

temperatures. Do NOT stay in a metal vehicle or aeroplane which may rapidly become overheated. Use it to support a shelter or make use of the shadow beneath an aircraft's wing. Make use of rock outcrops and the shadow provided by the sides of a wadi. Use the double layer technique to aid cooling (see [Tropical Regions](#)).

In a sand desert you may even be able to use wreckage to make a shelter beneath the sand. Many desert creatures spend the day beneath the surface, where the day temperature is much lower and the nights much warmer than outside. Sand will not permit tunnelling and you have to make a support structure.

Having provided immediate shade, build your shelter in the cool of the evening to conserve energy and fluids. Pile rocks to make a windbreak and make use of wadi walls (except when rain, and consequent flash floods, seem likely).

If using fabrics, leave the bottom edges lifted and loose by day to increase air circulation. Weigh them down with rocks at night. Avoid lying directly on hot ground. If you make a raised bed air can circulate beneath you.

You will need fire for warmth at night, and for boiling water. Smoke will also be very noticeable and useful for signalling. Desert scrub is dry and burns easily. If the land is totally barren, vehicle fuel and oil mixed with sand in a container will burn well (and is an easy way to light other fires) or use a string wick. Camel, donkey and other animal droppings burn well.

## **CLOTHING**

Clothing helps reduce fluid loss and gives protection from sunburn—as well as warmth at night and a barrier against insect bites and thorns. In the desert it should be light and loose fitting, with air space between the garments and the body to provide insulation. Copy the flowing, layered garments of the Arab world. Trousers give more protection from insects than shorts (and guard against serious burns on the legs if forced into daytime exposure). Cover the head and feet.

## ***KEEP COVERED***

Do not strip off your clothes. Apart from the risk of severe sunburn, an uncovered body will lose sweat through evaporation requiring even more to cool it—but keep the covering as loose as possible so that there is a layer of insulating air. Sweating will then cool you more efficiently.

### **Headgear**

Any hat with a piece of cloth attached to the back will give some protection to the head and back of the neck but it is better to copy the headgear of desert peoples. You need a piece of material about 120cm (4ft) square, a smaller piece, such as a handkerchief, and a piece of cord or cloth (a tie is ideal) to keep them in position.

Make the handkerchief into a wad on top of the head. Fold the large cloth diagonally, place it over the handkerchief, the long edge forward. Tie cord or cloth around the head to secure them.

Allowed to fall freely this will protect from the sun, trap pockets of air, take advantage of breezes and protect from sandstorms. At night wrap it around the face for warmth.

### **Eye protection**

Sunglasses or goggles will help—though many made for use in temperate climes may offer insufficient protection. Soot from the fire smeared below the eyes will reduce glare reflected from the skin. Shield the eyes from glare and windborne sand with a strip of material. Cut narrow slits to see through.

### **Footwear**

Do not walk barefoot on hot sand until your feet have become hardened. It will burn and cause blisters. Do not wear sandals which leave the top of the foot exposed. Improvise coverings if you have none. Puttees will help keep sand out of boots or could be extended to wrap round the foot over open sandals.

## **FOOD**

Heat usually produces a loss of appetite—so do not force yourself to eat. Protein foods increase metabolic heat and increase water loss and liquids are needed for digestion. If water is scarce, keep eating to a minimum and then try to eat only moisture-containing foods, such as fruit and vegetables.

Food spoils very quickly in the desert and any stores, once opened, should be eaten straight away or kept

covered and shaded. Flies appear from nowhere and settle upon uncovered food.

## Plants

Vegetation, away from oases and waterholes, is likely to be little more than scrub and grasses—even in the semi-desert—but grasses are edible and sometimes plentiful. The Acacia tree in the scrub provides edible beans. Beware of the Acacia's thorns but try all its soft parts: flowers, fruit, seeds, bark and young shoots.

The grasses of the Sahara and Gobi are neither nutritious nor palatable, but in the Sahara and the Asian deserts you may find the Desert Gourd, a member of the squash family. Its vine can run over the ground for 4.5m (15ft). Chew its water-filled shoots and eat its flowers and orange-sized fruits, the seeds of which are edible roasted or boiled.

The Mescal plant of the Mexican desert (an agave from which tequila is made), grows with a rosette of thick, tough, sharp-tipped leaves. Its central stalk, which rises like a candle to a flowering head, can be eaten. Cut the ends of the leaves to suck out water.

## Animals

Deserts often support a variety of animal life which burrows into the sand or hides in any available shade during the day, including insects, reptiles, small rodents and specially adapted mammals such as the Fennec Fox of North Africa, the Australian Bandicoot, a hedgehog in the Gobi and the Jack Rabbit of North America—all of which have big ears to act as cooling aids. Most large mammals are an indication that there is a water supply within daily reach of their grazing areas.

The Sahara has gerbils and gerboas; the Middle East, caracals and hyenas; the New World, kangaroo rats and coyotes.

## SURVIVAL SCENARIO

**If you were in the desert and had to choose between carrying hessian or water, which would be more useful?**

In desert conditions the hessian is vital of course. Water will be of no use at all if you can't build shelter to shade you from the blazing sun.

## HEALTH

Most desert illnesses are caused by excessive exposure to sun and heat. They can be avoided by keeping head and body covered and remaining in shade until sundown.

- Constipation and pain in passing urine are common and salt-deficiency can lead to cramps.
- Continued heavy sweating on the body, coupled with rubbing by clothing can produce blockages in the sweat glands and an uncomfortable skin irritation known as prickly heat.
- Heat cramps, leading to heat exhaustion, heat stroke and serious sunburn are all dangers. A gradual increase in activity and daily exposure to the sun will build up a defence—provided that plenty of drinking water is available.
- Various micro-organisms attack the moist areas of the body—the crevices of the armpits, groin and between the toes. Prevention and treatment are to keep these areas clean and dry.

## WARNING—DESERT SORES

In the desert even the most trivial wound is likely to become infected if not dealt with straight away.

Thorns are easily picked up and should be pulled out as soon as possible. Where the skin is broken a large and painful sore may develop which could prevent walking. Bandage all cuts with clean dressings and use what medical aids are available.



# **TROPICAL REGIONS**

**E**verything in the jungle thrives, including disease—germs breed at an alarming rate—and parasites. Nature provides water, food and materials for making shelters. Indigenous peoples have lived for millennia from hunting and gathering, but for the outsider it can take time to get used to the conditions and the non-stop activity.

Native peoples wear little, except as ornament, but the newcomer, uninured to insects and leeches and unaccustomed to moving through dense jungle growth, needs to keep as covered as possible. Clothing may become saturated by perspiration but it is better than being stung, scratched and bitten all over. Do not remove wet clothing until you halt and then, with humidity at 80-90 per cent, there is no point hanging it up to dry except in the sun or by a fire. Clothes saturated regularly by perspiration will rot.

Except at high altitudes, both equatorial and subtropical regions are characterized by high temperatures, heavy rainfall and oppressive humidity. At low altitudes, temperature variation is seldom more than 10°C (50°F), and is often 37°C (98°F). At altitudes over 1500m (5000ft) ice often forms at night. The rain has a slightly cooling effect but, when it stops, the temperature soars.

Rainfall is heavy, often with thunder and lightning. Sudden rain beats on the tree canopy, turning trickles into raging torrents and rivers rise at an alarming rate, but—just as suddenly—it is gone. Violent storms may occur, usually towards the end of the ‘summer’ months. Hurricanes, cyclones and typhoons develop over the sea and rush inland causing tidal waves and devastation. In choosing camp sites, make sure you are above any potential flooding. Prevailing winds create variation between winter and summer with the dry season (rain once a day) and the monsoon (continuous rain). In southeast Asia, winds from the Indian Ocean bring monsoon, but it is dry when the wind blows from the landmass of China.

Tropical day and night are of equal length, darkness falls quickly and daybreak is equally sudden.

## **Equatorial rainforests**

The climate varies little in these forests, spread across the equator in the Amazon and Congo basins, parts of Indonesia and several Pacific islands. Rain of 1.5-3.5m (60-138in) is distributed evenly throughout the year. Temperatures range from 30°C (86°F) to 20°C (68°F) at night. Where untouched by man, jungle trees rise from buttress roots to 60m (200ft), bursting into a mushroom of leaves. Below them, smaller trees produce a canopy so thick that little light reaches the jungle floor. Seedlings struggle beneath them to reach light and masses of vines and lianas twine up to the sun. Ferns, mosses and herbaceous plants push through a thick carpet of leaves and a great variety of fungi grow on leaves and fallen trunks.

It is fairly cool in this PRIMARY JUNGLE, with little undergrowth to hamper movement, but visibility is limited to about 50m (170ft). It is easy to lose a sense of direction and also difficult to spot anyone from the air.

## **RESCUE SIGNALS**

Smoke is diffused by the tree canopy and may not be seen, especially if there is mist about as well. Set signals in a clearing, more often found near river bends, or—better—out on rafts on the river itself.

## **Secondary jungle**

Growth is prolific where sunlight does penetrate to the jungle floor—mainly along river banks, on jungle fringes and where primary jungle has been cleared by man for slash and burn farming. When abandoned, this is reclaimed by a tangled mass of vegetation—look out for cultivated food plants which may survive among the others.

Grasses, ferns, shrubs and vines of secondary jungle reach heights of 2-3m (7-10ft) in a single year. Moving is slow, often hacking a way with a machete or parang—hot work, with visibility only a few metres (see [On the Move](#)). Jungle vegetation seems to be covered with thorns and spikes and bamboo thickets can be impenetrable barriers.

Sometimes, as in Belize in Central America, the jungle trees are low. Light does reach the fertile ground, producing abundant undergrowth even in primary jungle.

## **Sub-tropical rainforests**

Found within 10° of the Equator, in Central and South America, Madagascar, western India, Burma, Vietnam, southeast Asia and the Phillipines, these forests have a season of reduced rainfall even drought, with the rain coming in cycles—monsoons. With more marked seasons there are more deciduous trees so that more light reaches the forest floor and undergrowth is dense.

## **Montane forests**

When altitudes reach about 1000m (3300ft) in the tropics, and the areas bordering them, tropical forest begins to give way to montane forest. It becomes true montane at about 1240m (4100ft), as in the Monts Gotel in Cameroon, the Amhara Plateau of Ethiopia or the Ruwenzori Range of central Africa. The Ruwenzori—the ‘Mountains of the Moon’—are typical: sharply contoured slopes making a crater-like landscape covered in moss between ice-capped peaks.

Plant growth is sparse, trees stunted and distorted, their branches low and difficult to walk beneath. Nights are cold and day temperatures high with lots of mist and long periods of cloud cover. Survival is difficult in this terrain. Leave it and make your way down the mountainside to the tropical rain forest.

## **Saltwater swamps**

Where coastal areas are subject to tidal flooding, mangrove trees thrive. They can reach heights of 12m (40ft) and their tangled roots are an obstacle both above and below the waterline. Visibility is poor and passage difficult—it may take 12 hours to cover 900m (3000ft). Sometimes channels are wide enough to raft, but generally progress is on foot.

There are mangrove swamps in West Africa, Madagascar, Malaysia and the Pacific Islands, Central and South America and at the mouth of the Ganges. The swamps at the mouths of the Orinoco, Amazon and rivers of Guyana consist of stinking mud and trees which offer little shade. Tides can rise as much as 12m (40ft).

Everything in mangrove swamps seems hostile, from water leeches and insects, to cayman and crocodiles. Avoid them if you can. If forced there by mishap look for a way out. Where there are river channels intersecting the swamp you may be able to make a raft.

You won't starve among the mangroves. There is plenty of fish and vegetation. At low water crabs, molluscs, catfish and mudfish can be found. Arboreal and aquatic animals include water opossum, otter, tapir, armadillo and, on firmer ground, peccaries.

Inland of the mangroves, nipa palm swamp is common—all the palm's growing points are edible.

If forced to stay in a swamp, determine the high-tide level, by the line of salt and debris on the trees, and fit up a raised bed above it. Cover yourself for protection against ants and mosquitoes.

In any swamp a fire will have to be built on a platform. Use standing deadwood for fuel. Decay is rapid in a swamp so choose wood that is not far decayed.

## **Freshwater swamps**

Found in low-lying inland areas, their mass of thorny undergrowth, reeds, grasses and occasional short palms makes going difficult and reduces visibility to only a few metres—but wildlife abounds and survival is easy. A freshwater swamp is not such a bad place once you get used to it. It will often be dotted with islands and you are not chest-deep in the water ALL the time. There are often navigable channels and raw materials available from which to build a raft.

## **SHELTER**

There are ample materials for building shelter in most tropical regions (see [Shelter in Camp Craft](#)). Where temperatures are very high and shelters directly exposed to the sun, make roofs in two layers with an airspace in between to aid cooling. Much of the heat will dissipate on striking the upper layer, and with the air passing between this lowers the temperature of the layer beneath. The distance between should be 20-30cm (8-12in). Double layers of even permeable cloth will help keep out rain if well angled (see [Camp Craft](#)).

## **FIRE**

Everything is likely to be damp. Take standing dead wood and shave off the outside. Use that to start your fire. Dry bamboo makes excellent tinder (store some), so does a termite's nest.

## **FOOD**

A large variety of fruits, roots and leaves are available. Banana, papaya, mango and figs are easily recognized. (Papaya is one of the few plants with white sap that is edible.) The large, thorny fruit of the durian, of southeast Asia, smells disgusting, but is good to eat. Palms provide an edible growing point and manioc produces

massive tubers—though they must be cooked before eating. Taro, wild potato and some kinds of yam must also be prepared to remove poisons before they are eaten. You may find the wealth of tropical foods hard to identify, if you're not sure use the tests described in *Food*, before you risk eating them.

## Animal foods

Deer, pigs, monkeys and a wide range of animals can be hunted and trapped according to location (see [Traps and trapping in Food](#)).

In primary jungle, birds spend most of their time in the tree canopy among the fruit and berries. Place traps in clearings and lure birds with fruit. Some, such as the Asian Hornbill, also feed on lizards and snakes. Near rivers, traps can be baited with fish or offal for Fish Eagles and similar species which patrol rivers for prey.

Parrots and their relatives abound in the tropics—their mad screeching makes their presence known from early morning. They are cunning—get them used to taking bait before setting the trap.

Snakes are easier to catch—go for the non-poisonous constrictors—and very tasty. Catch them using a forked stick (see [Hunting in Food](#)).

## Food from rivers

Rivers support all kinds of life: fish, plants, animals and insects. If you have no fishing tackle small pools can be dammed and then emptied with a bailer—fish and turtles in surprising numbers can be found in the mud. Try constructing traps or crushing certain roots and vines to stupefy the fish (see [Fishing in Food](#)).

Fish are easily digested and have good protein content. Many jungle people depend on them for nourishment, but in the tropics they spoil quickly. Clean thoroughly, discard entrails and eat as soon as possible, do not preserve them by smoking or drying. Fish from slow moving water are more likely to be infested with parasites. If suspect, boil for 20 minutes. In areas where locals use the water as their sanitation system, fish may carry tapeworms and other human parasites and the water itself could be infected with amoebas which cause dysentery. Always boil water.

Rivers can bring dangers too. Piranha may be found in the Amazon, Orinoco and Paraguay river systems of South America. A similar fish is found in Burma. Electric eels are slow-moving and not aggressive, but they can grow very large and discharge 500 volts or more. Stingrays also occur in some tropical South American and West African rivers. Look out for crocodiles or alligators and water snakes and take care in handling catfish, which have sharp dorsal fins and spines on their gill covers, the Electric catfish can also deliver a powerful shock.

## DANGERS

### Cover your feet

Good footwear and protection for the legs is essential—they are most exposed to leeches, chigoe, and centipedes. Wrap bark or cloth around the legs and tie it to make puttees.

### Insect attack!

Slashing your way through jungle you may disturb bee, wasp or hornet nests. They may attack, especially hornets, whose stings can be especially painful. Anywhere left bare, including your face, is vulnerable to attack. Run! Sunglasses would help protect the eyes.

Perspiration is a problem, insects desperate for salt will fly to the wettest parts of your body. However, they also sting. Protect armpits and groin.

### Beware invaders

Keep clothing and footwear off the ground, then scorpions, snakes and other nasties are less likely to invade them. Always shake out clothing and check boots before putting them on and be wary when putting hands in pockets. On waking, take care. Centipedes tend to curl for warmth in some of the more private body regions.

### Beware caterpillars too!

If mosquitoes and leeches sucking your blood, painful bites from centipedes and the risk of scorpion and snake bites are not enough (see [Bites in First Aid](#)) look out for hairy caterpillars. Be careful to brush them off in the direction they are travelling or small irritant hairs may stay in your skin and cause an itchy rash, which may fester in the heat.

### Mosquito protection

Wear a net over your head, or tie a tee-shirt or singlet over it, especially at dawn and dusk. Better, take a strip of cloth long enough to tie around your head and about 45cm (18in) deep and cut it to make a fringe of vertical strips hanging from a band that will hang around your face and over your neck and impregnate your clothes and bags etc with repellent. At night keep covered, including your hands. Use bamboo or a sapling to support a little tent of clothing plus large leaves, rigged over your upper half. Oil, fat or even mud spread on hands and face may help to repel mosquitoes. In camp a smoky fire will help keep insects at bay. If you are bitten make sure you don't scratch as this may let infection in.

## **Leeches**

Leeches lie on the ground or on vegetation, especially in damp places, waiting to attach themselves to an animal (or person) to take a meal of blood. Their bite is not painful but they secrete a natural anticoagulant that makes it messy. Left alone, they drop off when they have had their fill—but if you are covered in them you must do something! Do NOT pull them off. There is a risk the head will come off leaving the jaws in the bite, which could turn septic. Remove with a dab of salt, citric acid from fruit, alcohol, an ember or a flame.

## **Beware the candiru!**

This minute Amazonian catfish, about 2.5cm (1 in) long, very slender and almost transparent, sucks blood from the gills of other fish. It is reported to be able to swim up the urethra of a person urinating in the water—where it gets stuck by its dorsal spine. The chance of this happening is remote but the consequences could be dire! Cover your genitals and don't urinate in the water.

# VEHICLES

---

**F**or desert travel, fit long-range fuel tanks and make provision for storing drinking water. Carry further supplies of both in jerry cans. A jack is no use in soft sand and an air bag should be carried which is inflated by the exhaust. Extra filters will be needed in the fuel line and air intake. Sand tyres must be fitted and sand channels carried to get you moving again when bogged down in loose sand.

For high altitudes the carburettor needs adjustment. In scrub country, thorn gaiters will reduce puncture risks. Antifreeze and suitable wheels and chains are needed for snow and ice. The engine will need special tuning to match climatic conditions and its own spares. A spare wheel and a good tool kit are obvious requirements.

## HOT CLIMATES

Even when you have had modifications made to prepare your vehicle for hot climate conditions you may still find that you have problems.

In crossing some deserts the considerable temperature change from day to night can put a strain on any metal and increase the risk of leaks.

**WARNING:** NEVER leave a sleeping or injured person or any animal in a closed car in a hot climate—or even on a sunny day in temperate regions. Always leave windows open to ensure ventilation (heat exhaustion can be lethal) even if parked in the shade, as the sun will move.

**Overheating:** Stop and allow the engine to cool. If you are driving a particularly tricky stretch and stopping is out of the question, switch on the heater. This will give greater volume to the cooling water and, although the inside of the car will get even hotter, the engine will cool. When convenient stop and open up the bonnet. Do not undo the radiator cap until the temperature drops. Check the radiator and all hoses for leaks. If the radiator is leaking, adding the white of an egg will seal small holes. If there is a large hole, squeeze that section of the copper piping flat to seal it off. It will reduce the size of the cooling area but, if you drive very steadily, you will be able to keep going.

**Metal gets hot:** Be careful! All metal parts of a car can become hot enough to cause blisters.

**Care in sandy conditions:** When adding fuel, sand and dust can get into the tank. Rig a filter over or just inside the inlet to the tank.

## COLD CLIMATES

Low temperatures not only make driving conditions difficult. They can make starting and maintenance difficult and hazardous.

**Starting:** Always try to park on a gradient so that you can use a bump start to back up the starter. Once you get the engine going keep it running—but check that the handbrake is firmly on and never leave children or animals in an unattended vehicle with the engine running.

**Demisting:** Don't try to drive looking through a small clear patch on a misty screen. Onion or raw potato rubbed on the inside of the screen will stop it misting up.

Cover the outside of the windscreen and windows with newspaper to prevent frost building up on them. If damp, however, paper will stick.

**Coddle the engine:** Wrapping a blanket around the engine may help to stop it from freezing up—but remember to remove it before you start the engine. Cover lower part of the radiator with cardboard or wood so that it does not freeze as you go along. If very cold, leave covered. Otherwise remove to prevent overheating. **Cover metal:** Don't touch ANY metal with bare hands. Your fingers could freeze to it and tear off skin. Where handling metal components with gloves is awkward, wrap fingers with adhesive tape. Treat radiator cap and dip stick in this way to ease your daily checks.

**Diesel engines:** Diesel contains water and freezes solid at low temperatures. Always cover front of engine, but check for overheating. Always wrap engine at night or when left standing. Some lorry drivers light small fires under frozen tanks. Only you can judge if the risk is worth taking.

## CUT OFF IN SNOW

If you are trapped by a blizzard, stay in the car. If you are on a regular traffic route you will probably soon be rescued. Going for help could be too risky.

Run the engine for heat if you have fuel. Cover the engine so that as little heat as possible is lost directly—but make sure that the exhaust is clear. Take no risk of exhaust coming into the car. If you feel drowsy stop the engine and open a window. Do NOT go to sleep with the engine running.

Switch off the heater as soon as you have taken the chill off the interior. Start it again when the temperature drops. If there is no fuel to run the engine wrap up in any spare clothing, rugs etc, and keep moving inside the

car.

If you have to leave the car to go a short distance, when you know help is very close for instance, rig up a signpost—a bright scarf or garment on a stick to help you find it again.

When the blizzard stops, and if it is daylight (otherwise wait until morning), it is worth walking out if there is a clear guide to the route (such as telegraph poles).

If miles from anywhere and off normal routes, and if the snow is building up to bury the car, it is worth getting out and building yourself a snow cave—where you may be warmer than in the car and can sit out several days. When the blizzard stops scrape large signs in the snow and use other signals to attract attention.

## GENERAL

**Clutch slip:** Often caused by oil or grease getting on the clutch plates. To degrease these plates use the fire extinguisher. Squirt it through the inspection plate opening.

**Fan belts:** Improvise one with a pair of tights, a tie or even string.

**HT leads:** If a high tension lead breaks, you may be able to replace it with a willow twig. Any plant stem with water content can be used to carry current from the coil to the distributor. Spit on the ends and insert into the push-fit contacts. DANGER! When you switch on, there is a current of about 1300 volts. DO NOT TOUCH. Replace twig frequently as it dries out.

**Dead battery:** You don't need the battery if you can get up enough speed. A tow or a steep slope will do. On a vehicle with four gears, use gear two or three when releasing the clutch to try for ignition.

**Half-shaft breakage:** Not much you can do on a front or back wheel drive but, if your vehicle is 4-wheel drive, remove the half-shaft. Disconnect the drive and keep motoring on the other axle.

## 4 FOOD

You need some understanding of your body's nutritional needs and how to meet them. In most circumstances plants will be the most readily available—but you need to know which plants to avoid. Colour illustrations provide a miniature field guide to some of the most useful plants.

Almost any animal can provide food and you must get used to eating unusual ones such as worms, insects, and even piranha fish. Despite their reputation they won't attack unless they have no other food. If the river is low, steer clear. A wide range of effective snares and traps will catch food, while you gather plants, collect water or carry out other survival tasks.

To hunt you may first have to improvise your own weapons. Learn how to do so and practise using them.

Meat needs preparation to make it convenient to handle and safe to cook. Learn how to preserve it when there is a surplus.

Fish offers another source of food, so simple methods are described which require no prior angling skills.

### FOOD AND FOOD VALUES

#### Energy Needs

#### FOOD PLANTS

##### Testing new plants

##### Gathering plants

##### Plants to avoid

##### Identifying plants

## ANIMALS FOR FOOD

[Finding game](#)

[Mammals](#)

[Reptiles](#)

[Birds](#)

[Insects](#)

[Snails and worms](#)

[Dangers](#)

## EDIBLE PLANTS

### ROOTS AND TUBERS

#### FRUIT

#### NUTS

#### POISONOUS PLANTS

#### TREES

[Poisonous trees](#)

#### FUNGI

[Identifying amanitas](#)

#### EDIBLE FUNGI

#### POISONOUS FUNGI

### ARCTIC AND NORTHERN PLANTS

### DESERT PLANTS

### TROPICAL PLANTS

#### POISONOUS TROPICAL PLANTS

### SEASHORE PLANTS

### SEaweeds and algae

## TRAPS AND TRAPPING

[Snares](#)

[Deadfall traps](#)

[Spear traps](#)

[Bird traps](#)

[Survival case study](#)

## HUNTING

[Weapons](#)

[Hunting birds](#)

[Animal dangers](#)

## HANDLING THE KILL

[Preparing the kill](#)

[Offal](#)

## FISH AND FISHING

[Angling](#)

[Fish traps](#)

[Other techniques](#)

[Fish narcotics](#)

[Arctic fishing](#)

---

## **FOOD AND FOOD VALUES**

---

**T**he body needs food to supply heat and energy and to provide the materials with which it can build new tissues, whether for growth, repair or reproduction. A healthy body can survive for a time on reserves stored in its tissues, but lack of food makes it increasingly difficult to keep warm, to recover after hard work or injury and to fight off disease.

Fortunately human beings are omnivores—we can digest both flesh and plants—and we can eat almost anything from the animal and vegetable kingdoms. With a little care, those things that are poisonous or dangerous are easily avoided. We enjoy food, so a good meal is an excellent morale booster, and when there are not other pressing priorities it is worth taking the trouble to cook food, which will make it more tasty, and to seek out foods with interesting flavours.

Do not rely on the easiest source of food, for a balanced diet is as important to the long-term survivor as having enough to eat in the first place. If you are camped in the middle of a rabbit warren, and dinner almost jumps into the pot, you could die from deficiencies not supplied by rabbit meat. Your diet MUST be made up of a wide range of elements which provide the right proportions of nutrients and sufficient energy to get you through the day. These nutrients must include proteins, carbohydrates, fats, minerals and other trace elements and vitamins.

### **ENERGY NEEDS**

Without making a physical effort of any kind, the average person in a completely restful state requires 70 calories per hour to maintain their basic metabolism—the involuntary functions such as breathing and blood circulation that we do not even have to think about. A calorie is a unit of heat—it is the amount needed to raise the temperature of one litre of water by one degree centigrade—and is the way in which energy is expressed when discussing nutrition.

Calories are not produced equally by all kinds of foods. The energy values of the basic types are:

Carbohydrates	1g (.035oz) produces 4 calories
Fat	1g (.035oz) produces 9 calories
Protein	1g (.035oz) produces 4 calories

The simplest domestic activities—standing up, sitting down, lighting a fire and so forth—that make up an ordinary day demand another 45 calories per hour. That makes a total of about 2040 calories a day without any work or other major activity, which could burn up a further 3,500 calories daily. Since not only physical effort but mental effort and anxiety also use up calories, keep calm and relax and, if food is scarce, DO NOT SQUANDER ENERGY.

### **Carbohydrates**

Carbohydrates form the bulk of the diet and are the main source of energy, not just for physical effort but for fuelling internal functions and the running of the nervous system. Carbohydrates are made up of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen and are synthesized by plants. They are very easily converted into energy by the body and do not require a large water intake. They prevent ketosis—indigestion, vomiting and nausea caused by the excessive breakdown of body fats during starvation—but have two disadvantages: they do not contain vitamin B and they may cause constipation.

There are two types of carbohydrates:

**Sugars** are found in sugar, syrup, honey, treacle and fruits.

**Starches** are found in cereals, roots and tubers. Starch granules are insoluble in cold water but heat causes them to rupture—this is why roots and tubers are always cooked.

### **Fats**

Fats contain the same elements as carbohydrates but combined differently. They also are a concentrated source of energy, providing twice as many calories as carbohydrates, stored in the body as a layer of fat under the skin and around the organs. They are insoluble in water and before they can be absorbed by the body require a lengthy digestive process which demands an adequate intake of water. Fats heat and insulate the

body, protect organs, lubricate the alimentary tract and build an energy reserve. They are found in animals, fish, eggs, milk, nuts and some vegetables and fungi.

## **Proteins**

Proteins are the basic chemical units of living matter. They are the only food constituent containing nitrogen and therefore essential for the growth and repair of the body, and are made up of complex chemical structures known as amino acids.

The main sources of protein are meat, fish, eggs and dairy produce, and plants in the form of nuts, grains and pulses. Worms contain the highest amount of proteins, having the eight essential amino acids humans require. Do not squeeze the goodness out of them; isolate them in a container so that they will dehydrate. This will ensure that they don't lose their health properties. Fungi can be an important source of protein.

If carbohydrates and fats are missing from the diet, protein is used to generate energy but at the expense of the body's other needs, so that in starvation the body burns up its own tissues.

## **Minerals**

Minerals include some which one requires in quantity, such as calcium, phosphorus, sodium, chlorine, potassium, sulphur and magnesium, and others, including iron, flourine and iodine, which are required in much smaller amounts. Calcium is needed for bones and teeth but has other roles in muscular function and blood clotting. All minerals have vital roles in body functions.

## **Trace elements**

Trace elements include strontium, aluminium, arsenic, gold and other chemicals in tiny amounts. Their exact function is not yet understood.

## **Vitamins**

Vitamins are essential to health and have an important role not only in maintaining the body but in protection from illness. There are about 40 different vitamins, of which about a dozen are essential for humans, found in minute amounts in many kinds of food. Vitamin D can be synthesized in the skin when it is exposed to the sun's rays and vitamin K can be synthesized by bacteria in the gut, but others must be obtained from external sources. The average person naturally carries a 28-day supply of vitamins within their body and of those, Vitamin C is first that will need to be replenished. Many herbs are rich in Vitamin C. The second vitamin to go is Vitamin A. This vitamin aids vision and prevents eye disease. To counter this, eat the shoots and leaves that you see rabbits eating.

---

# **FOOD PLANTS**

---

**T**here are few places in the world where you will be far from some kind of vegetation—bush, vine, creeper, flower, grass or lichen—which can be eaten to provide nourishment. In Europe alone there are 10,000 edible wild plants. The only skill required in making use of them is knowing which is which and where to find them. Some, though edible, have very little food value, so learn which yield the most nourishment, especially those which are widespread and available throughout the year—and learn which are poisonous, in order to avoid them.

Plants contain essential vitamins and minerals, and are rich in protein and carbohydrates. Some plants also contain fat and all provide roughage essential to keep the body in good working order.

Do NOT eat large quantities of any one plant at a time and if you are not used to eating a plant start by nibbling a fresh specimen and adding some to stews, and build up your intake gradually. If you give your stomach a chance to get used to a new food it will adjust and not reject it.

Do NOT assume that because birds, mammals or insects have eaten a plant that it is edible by humans. Monkeys are some indication, but no guarantee, that plants are suitable for human consumption.

## **TESTING NEW PLANTS**

Always adopt the following procedure when trying out potential new food plants, only one person testing each plant. NEVER take short cuts—complete the whole test. If in any doubt, do NOT eat the plant. Should stomach trouble occur, relief can be gained by drinking plenty of hot water; do not eat again until the pain goes. If it is severe, induce vomiting by tickling the back of the throat. Charcoal is a useful emetic. Swallowing some will

induce vomiting and the charcoal may also absorb the poison. White wood ash mixed to a paste with water will relieve stomach pain.

## **Inspect**

Try to identify. Ensure that a plant is not slimy or worm-eaten. It will be past its best, with little food value other than the grubs or worms upon it. Some plants, when old, change their chemical content and become toxic.

## **Smell**

Crush a small portion. If it smells of bitter almonds or peaches—DISCARD.

## **Skin Irritation**

Rub slightly or squeeze some of the juice onto a tender part of the body (under the arm between armpit and elbow, for instance). If any discomfort, rash or swelling is experienced—DISCARD, reject in future.

## **Lips, Tongue, Mouth**

If there is no irritation to the skin proceed in the following stages, going on to the next only after waiting five seconds to check that there is no unpleasant reaction:

- Place a small portion on the lips
- Place a small portion in the corner of the mouth
- Place a small portion on the tip of the tongue
- Place a small portion under the tongue
- Chew a small portion

In all cases: if any discomfort is felt, such as soreness to the throat, irritation or stinging or burning sensations—DISCARD, reject in future.

## **Swallow**

Swallow a small amount and WAIT FIVE HOURS. During this period eat or drink NOTHING else.

## **Eating**

If no reactions such as soreness to the mouth, repeated belching, nausea, sickness, stomach pains, griping pains in the lower abdomen or any other distressing symptoms are experienced, you may consider the plant safe.

## **GATHERING PLANTS**

It is easy to pick plants here and there, but it is better and safer to gather them systematically.

Take a container on foraging trips—an empty bag, a piece of cloth folded into a sack, a birch-bark box or large leaves stitched together. This stops harvest being crushed, which makes it go off quickly.

## **Leaves and Stems**

Young growth, usually paler green, will be tastier and more tender. Older plants are tougher and more bitter. Nip off leaves near the stem. Leaves simply torn off are easily damaged. They may wilt and lose goodness before they reach the pot.

## **Roots and Tubers**

Choose larger plants. Some are very difficult to pull up. To lessen chance of breaking them dig around the plant to loosen, then prise them out with a sharpened stick.

## **Fruit and Nuts**

Choose larger plants. Pick only ripe, fully coloured fruits. Hard, greenish berries are indigestible, even after long cooking. Many fruits, especially in the tropics, have tough, bitter skins. Peel them. Nuts lying at the base of a tree are a sign they are ready. Others can be shaken down if the tree is a small one. You may be able to knock others down by throwing a stick.

## **Seeds and Grains**

**PRECAUTION:** Some contain deadly poisons. Tasting will not harm you but DO NOT SWALLOW. Carry out the edibility test, reject any seed that is unpalatable, bitter or with a hot, burning taste (unless a positively identified pepper or spice).



*Heads of some grain plants may have black spurs in place of normal seeds. These carry ergot poisoning, a fungal disease that turns the grain into enlarged, black, bean-like structures. It is a source of an hallucinogen, and is very poisonous — sometimes fatal. **REJECT THE WHOLE HEAD!***

## Fungi

Medium-sized are easier to identify and less likely to suffer from insect damage. Pick the whole fungus. If the stem is left on the ground it will be harder to identify the fungi gathered. Keep fungi separate. If a poisonous kind has been picked it will not then contaminate other food.

## PLANTS TO AVOID

## WARNING

**POISON!** There are two fairly common poisons in the plant world, but both are easily detectable:

**HYDROCYANIC ACID** (Prussic acid) has the taste and smell of bitter almonds or peaches. Most notable example is the Cherry Laurel (*Prunus laurocerasus*), with laurel-like leaves, which contains a closely allied poison. Crush the leaves and remember the smell. Discard ALL plants with this smell.

**OXALIC ACID**, whose salts (oxalates) occur naturally in some plants, for instance Wild Rhubarb (mostly in the leaves) and Wood Sorrel (*Oxalis acetosella*). Recognizable by the sharp, dry, stinging or burning sensation when applied to the skin or tongue. Discard ALL plants which fit this description.

- **AVOID** any plant with a milky sap, unless positively identified as safe (such as dandelion).
- **AVOID** red plants, unless positively identified, especially in the tropics. Anything gaudy is nature's warning sign. The red-streaked stalk of Wild Rhubarb is edible but its leaf is poisonous. Hemlock has reddish-purple splotches on its stem.
- **AVOID** fruit which is divided into five segments, unless positively identified as a safe species.
- **AVOID** grasses and other plants with tiny barbs on their stems and leaves. With a magnifying glass you can see them as hooks rather than straight hairs and they will irritate the mouth and digestive tract.
- **AVOID** old or wilted leaves. The leaves of some trees and plants develop deadly hydrocyanic acid when they wilt—including blackberry, raspberry, cherry, peach and plum. All may be safely eaten when

young, fresh and dry.

- **AVOID** mature bracken (*Pteridium aquilinum*). It destroys vitamin B in the body, setting up a peculiar blood condition which can cause death. Eat only tightly coiled ‘fiddle heads’. All 250 varieties of north temperate ferns are edible when young, although some are too bitter to be palatable and some have irritating hairs which must be removed before eating. Break off the tips as low as they remain tender, close your hand over the stalk and draw the frond through to remove the ‘wool’.

## IDENTIFYING PLANTS

**Only a small selection of the world's many plants can be described and illustrated here and only a specialist botanist could identify more than a handful of plants in far-flung corners of the world. Begin by learning a few plants that can be found in most conditions and at most times of year. Close familiarity with even one or two could make all the difference between survival and starvation. Learn these first and learn them thoroughly.**

**Temperate zones:** dandelions, nettles, docks, thistles, burdocks, fruit bearing plants, plantains

**Sub-tropical and tropical zones:** palms, wild figs, bamboo

**Arid and desert zones:** mescal, prickly pears, baobabs, acacias (but not in North or South America)

**Polar zones:** spruces and willows (north), lichens (north and south). In summer in north as for temperate zones

**Coasts:** kelps and lavers

## **IDENTIFICATION AIDS:**

- Location: Plants grow only in suitable conditions, if you know what habitats they like, and geographical distribution, you can reduce the possibilities immediately.
- Shape and size: Is plant tall and woody like a tree or shrub? short and soft-stemmed? bushy and branched or only one or a few stems?
- Leaves: Are they large or small? spear-shaped, rounded or strap-like? with toothed, or lobed edges? made up of several leaflets? uniform in colour?
- Flowers: Seasonal, but if present note colour, size, shape, single or clustered, where on plant.
- Fruits and seeds: Are they fleshy, hard and cased like a nut, or small and tough like a seed? Note colour, size, shape, whether singly or in clusters, in pods or capsules.
- Roots: Rarely help identification—unless unusual.

## ANIMALS FOR FOOD

**A**ll animals can be a source of nourishment. A few, including worms and insects, can be collected with little skill, but most must be trapped or hunted, demanding both knowledge and expertise of animals and of methods.

The more you know of animals the better, but general natural history knowledge must be used to help you find out more by observation in the wild. There is no one way to do things—you must learn by trial and error.

You must study each species' habits, find out where it sleeps, what it eats and where it waters. You must learn how best to make a kill, what traps to set and balance your humanitarian instincts against the expediencies of survival.

The best animals for flavour and amount of meat are mature females. The younger the animal, the more lean the meat. An adult male is at his fattest just before the mating season (which varies according to species and climate). During the mating season the male becomes progressively poorer, the fat is run off and even the normally rich bone marrow suffers. Animals put on fat to see them through the winter and trim down for the

summer. The older the animal the more fat it has and the tougher the meat becomes.

## FINDING GAME

There are very few places on earth where there are no wild animals, but sometimes the signs of their presence are far from obvious. If you can recognize and read the signs that animals leave, and identify the animal, you will know what methods to adopt in hunting and trapping your prey, what bait to use and what kind of traps to set.

Most mammals are mainly on the move at first and last light. Only the larger and more powerful venture out during the day. Larger herbivores need a whole day of grazing to satisfy their appetites. Some very small ones have to eat so frequently that they are intermittently active all day long—but most smaller mammals, such as rabbits, eat mainly at night and only change their habits when the weather is bad. Animals that feed on other animals hunt at the times that their prey is active. So must you, if you intend to hunt them, but you can find out a great deal without ever seeing a living animal and can set traps to catch them when they are about.

### Tracks and signs

Most animals are creatures of habit and use regular routes between their watering spots, feeding places and homes. Look out for the signs of these trails. Tracks will be more obvious on wet ground, snow and damp sand, and other signs are more noticeable in heavy vegetation. The size of the impression left is in proportion to that of the animal. The age of the track can be accurately judged by its sharpness and moisture content. Has water seeped into it or has rain filled it? Has it become smudged? The clearer the track the more likely it is to be recent.

In the early morning tracks can be checked by looking at them from ground level. If dew and spider's webs have been disturbed, the tracks are, at most, a few hours old. Some animals, such as rabbits, never range very far and any tracks are likely to indicate that they are in the area. Some animals make tunnels through dense undergrowth. Their height indicates the size of the animal that made them. The height of broken twigs along a track will also suggest an animal's size. Check to see how fresh they are: Have trampled leaves wilted? Are broken twigs still green and supple? Marks on trees and logs, feeding signs and discarded food are other useful indications. Droppings indicate the type of animal that left them.

### Feeding signs

The way in which bark has been stripped from trees, the gnawed shells of nuts, partially eaten fruits, bitten off shoots and the remains of prey animals of carnivores or the destruction of the nests of prey are all indications of species living or hunting in the vicinity.

Discarded fruits or nuts are often found when food is plentiful—an animal finds one piece not to its liking and drops it to try another. They not only reveal an animal's presence but suggest baits for traps.

A skilled eye can often identify the species by the pattern left by tooth or beak marks on a nut, or the way in which a pine cone has been stripped to get at its seeds.

Bark, twigs and buds, especially of young trees and bushes, form an important part of the diet of many animals, including several species of deer and goats, hares, squirrels and numerous other small rodents. In most cases the marks made by the animal's teeth will show clearly in the bark.

Many deer will bite offshoots leaving a torn and frayed edge. (Hares for instance, leave a clean bite.) Bark pulled off in long shreds, completely exposing the wood is another sign of deer, when eating in summer—in winter the bark is attached more firmly and is eaten in patches, so that usually only sections on one side of the trunk are affected and large tooth-marks are clearly visible. Deer also scrape their antlers against trees to remove the velvet and as part of marking their territory—leaving frayed bark and wood with long scratches from the antler points.

Sheep and goats also bark trees. Their tooth-marks generally run obliquely, those of deer vertically. Low level gnawing will usually be that of rodents—stripped roots are probably the work of vole-like animals. Severed stumps with conical tops that look as though they have been chopped with a small axe are the felling work of beaver.

Squirrels strip bark higher up the tree, pieces often falling to the ground beneath. A scattering of cone pieces on the ground is often a sign of squirrels too. Beneath a tree, nutshells may also indicate a squirrel—perhaps its nest is overhead, but if nuts or cones are also wedged into the trunk that shows the work of nut-eating birds. Near a pile of empty shells you may also find a rodent's burrow.

If sapling growth looks as though it has been trimmed level like a clipped hedge, or the lower branches of trees look neatly trimmed below a certain height, you may guess this to be the work of browsing animals such as deer.

### Droppings

Droppings give one of the best indications of an animal's type. Size can be judged from their size and quantity;

dryness is an indication of how long since they were passed. Old droppings will be hard and odourless—fresh, wet and still smelling. Flies draw attention to droppings.

**Mammals:** Many mammal droppings have a strong scent, produced by glands in the anus. This plays an important role in marking territory and giving sexual signs. It can be used to advantage in baiting snares.

Animals that live on vegetation, such as cattle, deer and rabbits, produce roundish and strawy droppings. Meat eaters, such as wild cats and foxes, produce long tapering ones. Some animals, including badgers and bears, have mixed diets. Break open a dropping to see if there are any clues to what the animal has been eating, then bait accordingly.

**Birds:** Also fall into two groups: flesh eaters and seed/fruit eaters, which can be distinguished by their droppings. Smaller seed-eating birds' droppings are small and mostly liquid, whereas the owls and hawks produce pellets which may contain indigestible parts of the meal taken, be it fish, bird, insect vole or rodent. Loose droppings are an indication that water is probably within a reasonable range, for small birds need to be close to it. Birds of prey, however, do not need to be close to water. Roosts and nesting sites will often be indicated by copious droppings on the boughs or ground beneath. Birds generally feed in older trees where there is some decay and plenty of grubs.

## Rootings

Some animals root up the ground in search of insects and tubers. Pigs, especially, turn over large areas of earth. If the earth is still crumbly and fresh an animal is likely to have been active on the spot quite recently. A big muddy wallow is usually a sign of pigs. Small scratches may be where a squirrel has been digging for shoots.

## Scent and Smell

Listen to the noises around you, register the smells. They are certain to include indications of the wildlife present, and where one kind of animal exists there will be others—where there are prey species there will be predators. Many people neglect their sense of smell—but you must try to redevelop it. Some animal smells are very strong, particularly those of foxes. Keep your eyes sharp too. In cold climates, for example, the breath of large animals forms a cloud of condensation. This 'smoke' can be seen some way off if you are in a good vantage point.

## Burrows and Dens

Many animals make their homes in burrows, usually on high ground away from water. Some, such as rabbits and ground squirrels, take little trouble to conceal them, although one or two exits will be hidden for use in an emergency. Rabbits' emergency holes are easily dug out, or a piece of bramble or barbed wire can be pushed down the hole to hook the rabbit out.

Predatory animals normally hide their holes, which are generally in wooded country. Tracks or droppings nearby may give their location away—and are an indication that a hole is in use (although some animals, such as badgers, use regular toilet sites elsewhere).

## MAMMALS

NOTE: Where tracks are shown, no scale has been imposed on them. Most are typical of a whole family of animals, but will vary greatly in size according to species. Track 1 is right front. Track 2 is right hind.

## WILDCATS

Range from domestic size to the tiger. Occur on all continents except Australia and Antarctica, but nowhere common. Secretive and generally nocturnal, they avoid man. You will see lions in a wildlife reserve but seldom encounter cats elsewhere. All are potential food—but don't take on the larger ones. Kills of big cats may be scavenged if unattended—but BEWARE—the owner is likely to be nearby. Meat may be stringy, stew thoroughly, but small cat meat tastes like rabbit. Sinews strong, good for bowstrings.

**Traps:** Powerful spring snares, platforms or baited-hole-noose. Bait with offal, blood or meat. Cats have very fast reactions and may leap clear of deadfalls.

**Tracks and signs:** Walk on toes, leaving marks of four well-developed pads and a larger pad to rear. Claws (except in Cheetah) retracted when walking. Droppings elongated, tapering, but usually hidden. Urine strong smelling.



## **WILD DOGS**

Foxes and other wild dogs are found widely, from deserts to the Arctic but, not in New Zealand, Madagascar and some other islands. Wolves are now mostly confined to wilderness North America and north and central Asia. Superb senses make it pointless to stalk canines at close quarters but their curiosity will tempt them to traps. Moving on all fours may attract them—they may think YOU are potential food! Chewy. Remove anal glands. Dog is a delicacy in the Far East.

**Traps:** Snare for foxes, try stepped-bait or toggle, bait-release, baited-hole-noose. Minimize human scent in area.

**Tracks and signs:** Walk on toes. Print shows four pads and claw tips—outer pad shorter than inner with large main pad to rear. Elongated, tapering droppings show remains of fur, bones, insects depending on diet. Fox droppings pungent, as is earth (den)—in soft ground earth can be dug out.



**Hyenas:** Scavengers (not true dogs) of Africa east to India. Can be very dangerous. Boil thoroughly, risk of parasites in flesh.

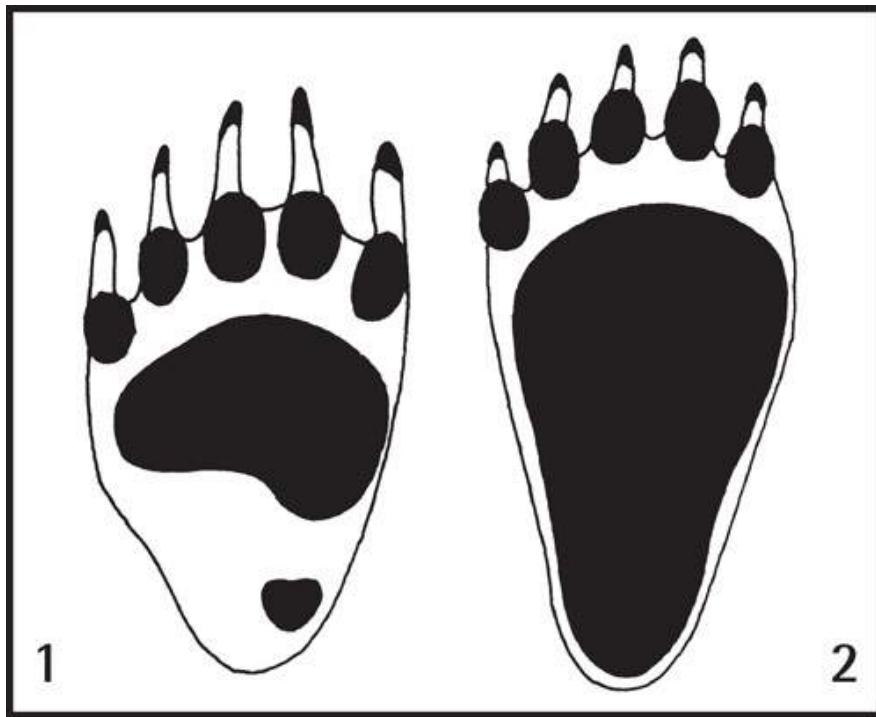
**Civets:** Scavengers of tropical Africa and Asia, trap as dogs and remove anal glands before cooking.

## **BEARS**

Solitary animals of North America, Eurasia and some northern parts of South America, preferring well-wooded country (except Polar Bear). Strong and fast-running they may scavenge a campsite. Most kinds can climb trees. Bears can kill a man with ease. Give them a WIDE berth. Potential rich food with nutritious fat, if you can trap one, but hunting with improvised weapons is foolhardy. Cook thoroughly to eliminate parasites. Do NOT eat liver of Polar Bear—it contains lethal levels of vitamin A.

**Traps:** Deadfall and spear, but only largest work—bears tear off most snares. Must kill or completely incapacitate—wounded bears very dangerous.

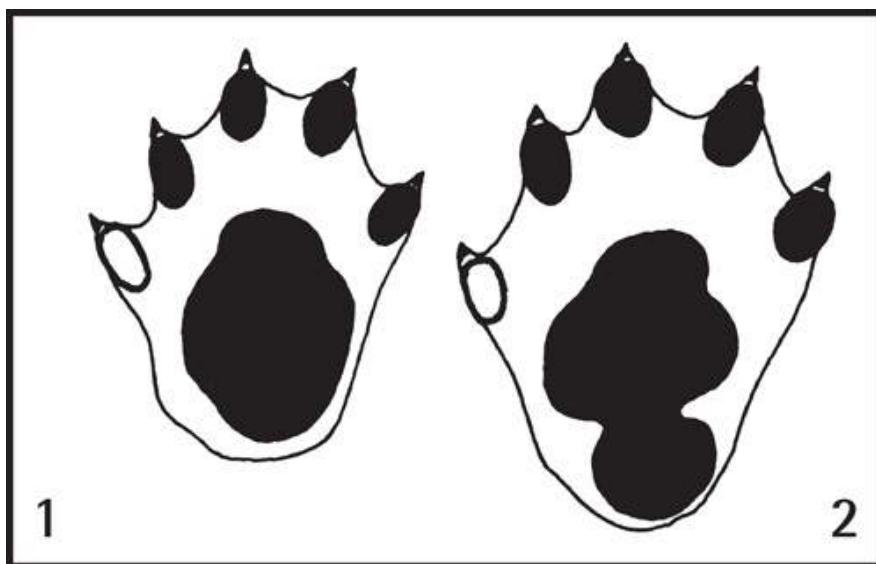
**Tracks and signs:** Prints may be 30cm (1ft) x 18cm (7 in), with five long-clawed toes. Toe pads close together, claw marks distinct. Rear paws taper and could be mistaken for human prints. Bears eat almost anything and grub up ground, rip up stumps and break into insect nests in search of food.



## OTTERS

Difficult to see or trap, spending time in water or bolt holes along riverbanks, but curious, so riverside spring snare, baited with fresh fish may tempt them.

**Tracks and signs:** Five-toed, webbed, almost circular 7-5cm (3in) x 6cm (2½in). Fishy-smelling elongated droppings on regular sites, usually stones.

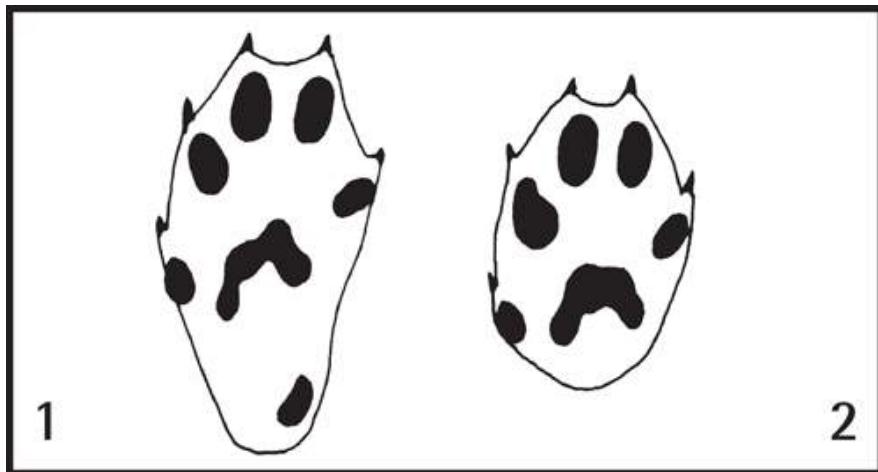


## WEASEL GROUP

Weasels, stoats, mink, martens and polecats are secretive—but may be an important food source in the far north. Beware of their sharp teeth.

**Traps:** Spring snares with bait bars, deadfalls. Bait with offal or birds' eggs.

**Tracks:** Indistinct except in soft ground. Five well-spaced claws and toes, hair on main pad often smudges. Gait bounding, so fore and rear prints overlap. Weasels are the smallest.

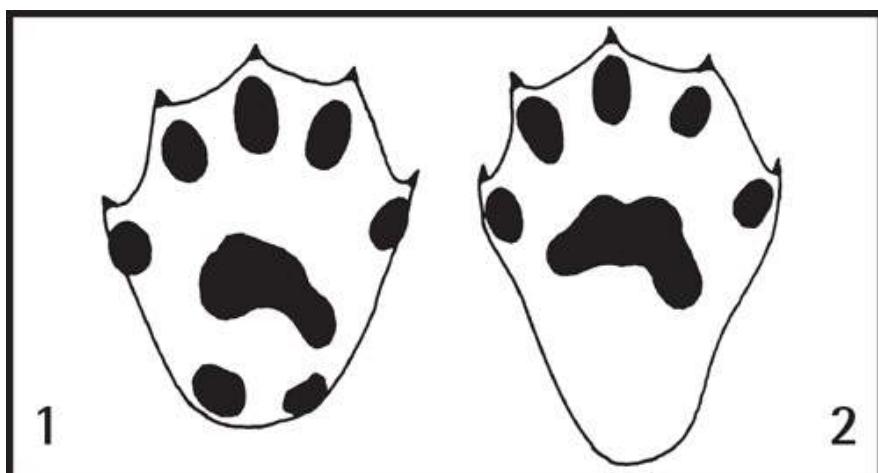


### **WOLVERINES (Gluttons)**

Chunky, badger-shaped animals of the far north, quite capable of pulling down a caribou though mainly carrion eaters. Nowhere common. Don't take one on unless you are armed!

**Traps:** Strong baited-spring snare or hole-noose—if you can find bait in the tundra.

**Tracks:** Average 8cm (3½in) × 7cm (2¾in), five toes with powerful claws. Hair on sole may obscure main pad.



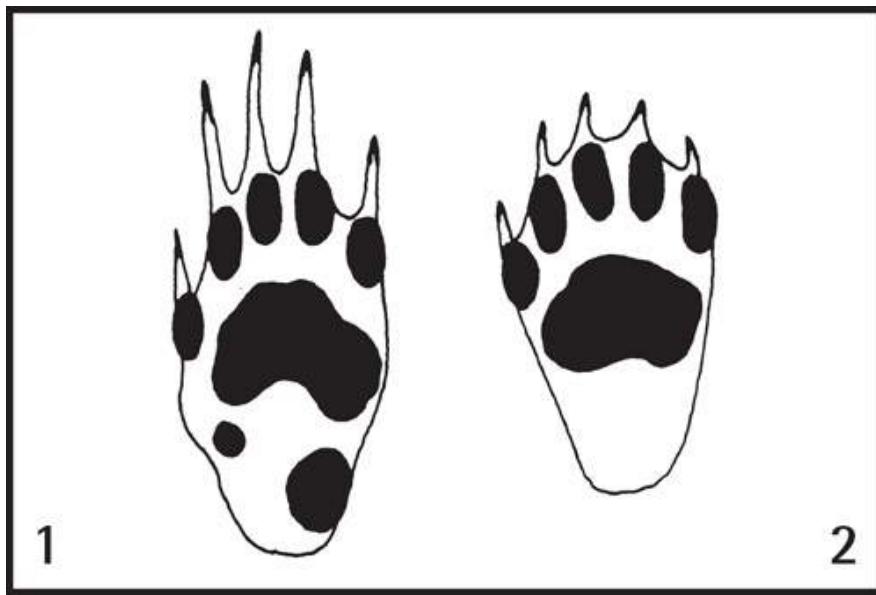
### **BADGERS**

Stocky, nocturnal creatures of habit of North America, Africa and Eurasia east to Indonesia. Hibernate in colder areas. Well-worn runs and toilet sites make good trapping places. Can be fierce, with a disabling bite. Do not get close. Young badger tastes like pork.

**Traps:** Leg spring snares, baited release and deadfalls, hole noose. Make them tough.

**Tracks and signs:** Five-toed with prominent claws and large rear pad. Could be confused with small bear.

Stride length averages 50cm (20in). Droppings like dog's but in shallow excavated scoop. Uprooted ground and insect nests torn open may indicate badgers.



## SKUNKS

North and South American, skunks look like small badgers with a hairy tail. When threatened they spray a foul-smelling fluid from glands by the anus. Look for an easier meal.

## MONKEYS/APES

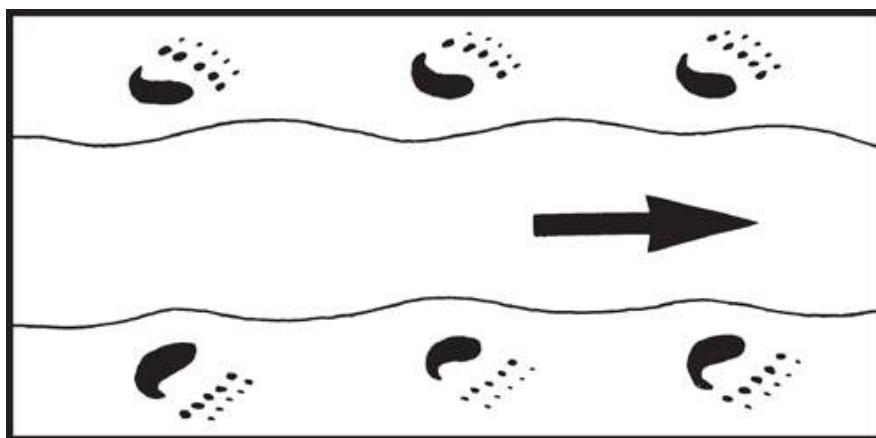
Almost entirely confined to tropics, generally living in extended family groups, often in trees. Even small monkeys can inflict a bad bite. Intelligent and difficult to stalk—they set up a howling long before you can get close—but bold and curious, which can be to your advantage. Very edible.

**Traps:** Perch or baited spring spear trap, spring snare or hole noose. Bait with fruit or anything likely to arouse curiosity.

**Signs:** Activity will lead you to them—few take trouble to conceal themselves and most are noisy.

## SEALS

Track shows belly drag in centre. Arrow indicates direction of travel. (See [Polar Regions](#) in Climate and terrain.)



## BATS

Found in all except very cold climates. Active at night. Hibernate in temperate areas. Meat-eaters take insects, fish, small animals include a blood-sucking Vampire bat of South America, which can transmit rabies. Keep WELL covered when sleeping rough in bush within its range. Fruit eaters (also known as flying foxes) are larger, some with 1m (40in) wing span, found from tropical Africa east to Australasia. Good eating, especially plump fruit bats. Remove wings and legs, gut and skin like rabbit.

**Traps:** Net a fruit tree where flying foxes feed. Knock others from roosts when sleeping during day.

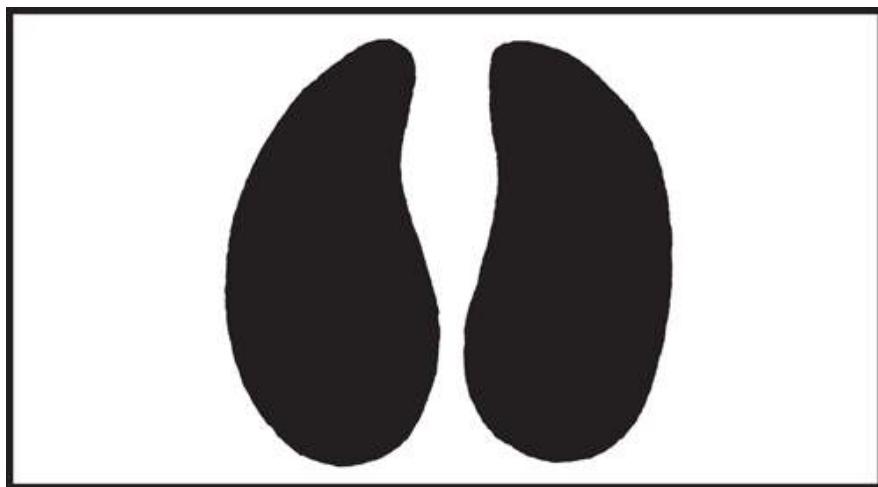
**Signs:** Roosting colonies easy to spot, often in caves, fruit bats also in trees.

## CATTLE

Cattle live in herds and need access to water. Bison and other wild cattle are found in wilderness areas of North America, Africa and southern Asia. The few buffalo remaining in Europe and America are protected. Introduced water buffalo are wild in northern Australia. Stray domestic cattle may occur, particularly in Africa. Big cattle can be dangerous—particularly cunning old solitary bulls.

**Traps:** Only the most powerful snares, spring traps and deadfalls, except for young animals.

**Tracks and signs:** Heavy, two distinct hoofmarks, narrow at top, bulbous at rear. Droppings rather like familiar cowpats—they make excellent fuel.



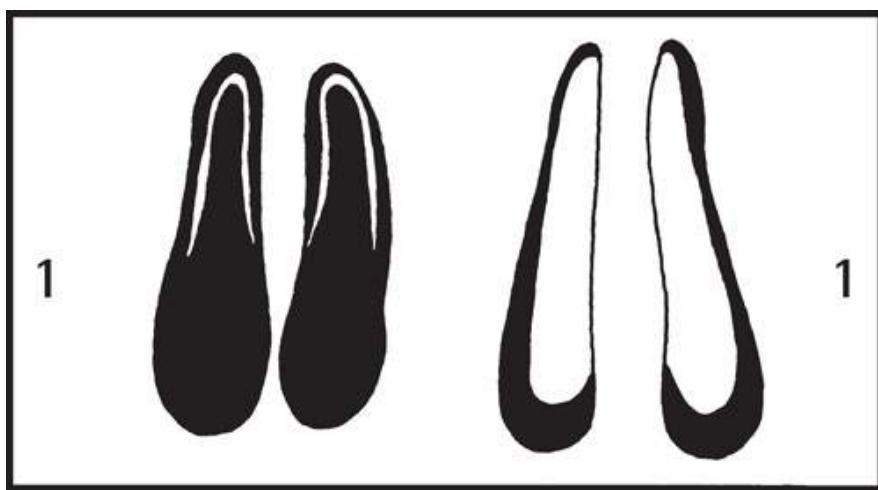
### WILD SHEEP/GOATS

Sheep generally live in small flocks on high alpine pastures and steppes in North America, parts of Europe and north Africa (rare) through Arabia to mountains of central Asia. Alert, nimble and liking inaccessible places—making them impossible to approach.

Goats are few in Europe and North Africa, and mainly found in mountains of central Asia. Even more sure-footed than sheep. Good to eat.

**Traps:** Snares or spring snares on trails. In rocky areas natural obstructions give good places for deadfalls. But don't expect great success!

**Tracks and signs:** Cloven hooves, two slender pointed marks not joined, tip always splayed in sheep, sometimes in goats. Goats' more rounded at front which is narrower than rear. Illustration below shows, in scale, Domestic sheep (left), Chamois (right). Globular droppings like those of domestic sheep.



### DEER/ANTELOPES

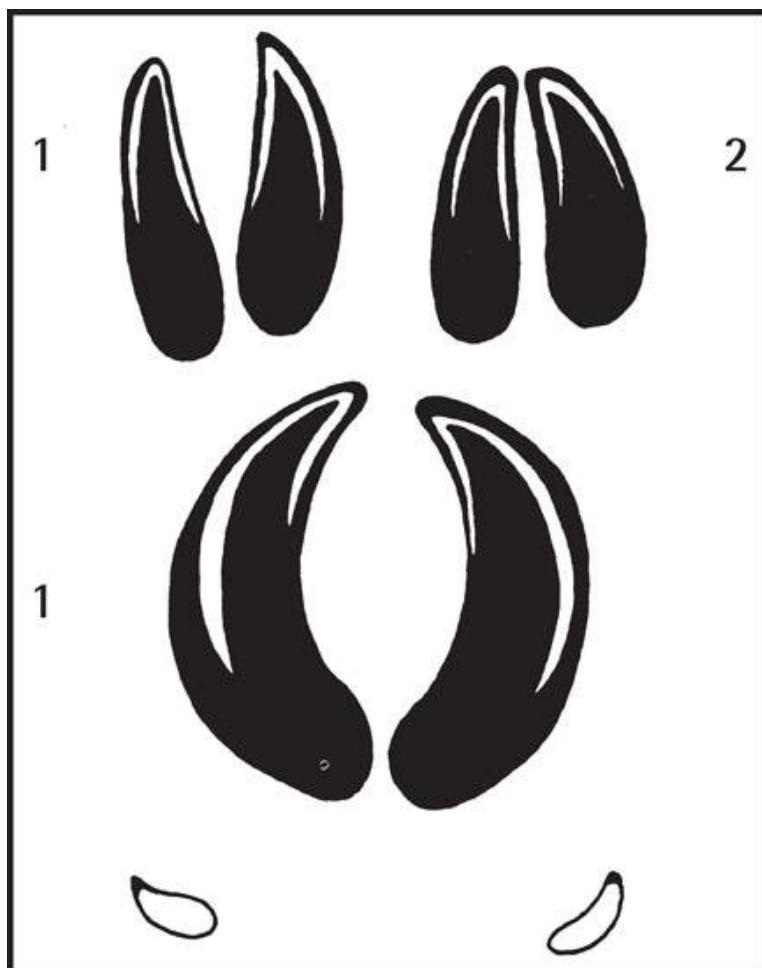
Deer, found in well-wooded country on every continent except Australia, vary from the Moose of the north to tropical forest deer only 45cm (18in) high. Antelopes and gazelles occur in equal variety in Africa east to India with one, the Pronghorn, in North America. Shy, elusive, with superb hearing and smell, they usually live in groups. Most active at dawn and dusk and—except for those in arid areas—never far from water. Excellent meat which smokes well. Hides of deer particularly supple, horns and antlers useful implements.

**Regard their horns as WEAPONS. Large animals can be aggressive and can gouge and stab with great power.**

**Traps:** Snare or deadfall for small types, leg spring snares, spear traps and deadfalls for larger. Bait with offal—curiosity will draw them.

**Tracks and signs:** Cloven hooves form two oblongs. Reindeer noticeably rounded. Illustration below shows, in scale, Roe Deer front and hind track (top) and Reindeer (bottom). Note dew-claw impressions on reindeer track.

Walking animals' prints overlap front and rear, running animals' spaced. Droppings oblong to round pellets, usually in clumps. In temperate area, winter droppings lighter and more fibrous. Scrapes on saplings, nibbled and frayed bark.

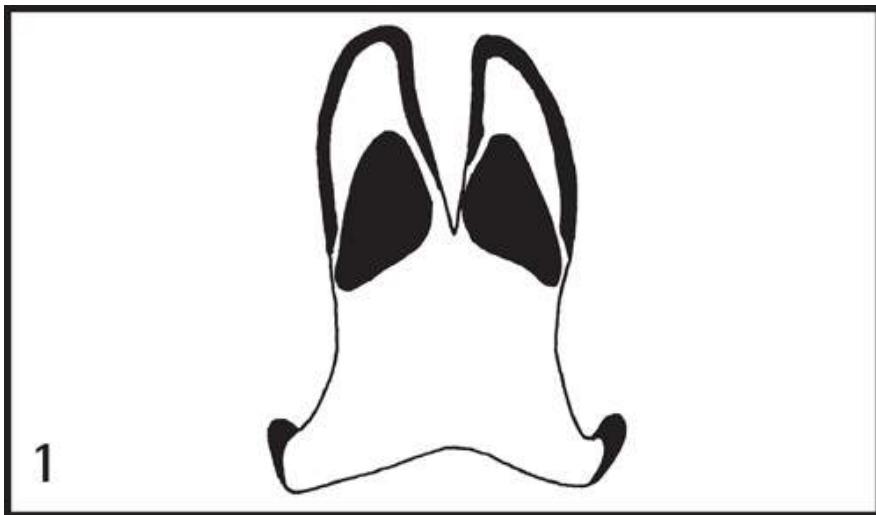


### WILD PIGS

Pigs, peccaries and other hogs vary in size. Many are thickly haired, but all have piggy shape, long snout and two large teeth, or tusks, at the side of the mouth. They live in family groups, usually in wooded country—though Warthogs prefer savannah. Difficult to stalk, though not so alert as deer, except when lying up during heat of day when you have more chance. Listen for their snores. Large boars and those guarding young need little provocation to charge and can knock a man down. Tusks inflict severe injury, often dangerously close to the femoral artery on the upper leg. Meat good, with plenty of fat in winter, but must be thoroughly boiled because of parasites.

**Traps:** Strong spring snares, deadfalls, pig spear traps on the game trail or hope for a passing group. Pigs eat virtually anything, so bait with whatever is available.

**Tracks and signs:** Cloven hooves leave marks like deer. On soft ground the short side toes distinguish them. Young animals have more pointed hooves. Droppings often rather shapeless, never long, firm or tapering. Ground disturbed by rooting, mud-wallows best signs. Warthogs have large, burrow-like sleeping holes.



## CAMELS

Range wild in deserts of north Africa, east to central Asia, and have been introduced to Australia—but they require a very powerful spear trap or projectile weapon. Camels can spit and could inflict a powerful bite on your hands, face or body.

## LLAMAS

Alpacas, Guacanos and Viçunas of the Andes, south to Patagonia, can be trapped like antelopes. Semi-domesticated, Llamas and Alpacas indicate that people are probably not far away.

## TAPIRS

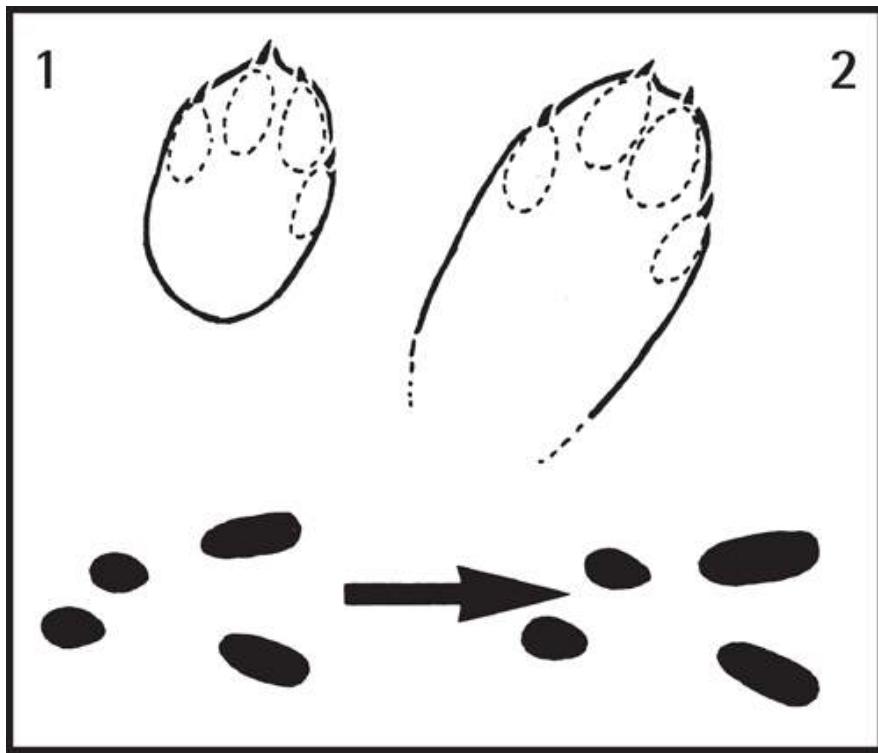
Shy animals of the deep forests of tropical America and south-east Asia, they resemble large, hairless pigs with floppy snouts. Snare or trap with spear traps or deadfalls on their trails.

## RABBITS/HARES

Widely spread by man and found from well-inside the Arctic Circle to deserts and jungles. In most areas these are the first animals to try to trap—Arctic (snowshoe) hares and Jackrabbits of the far north could save your life. Rabbits are easier to catch, most live in burrows, often in large numbers and using well-worn runs—the places to set snares. Young rabbits will often lie quite still and can be picked up. Hares do not live in burrows and tend not to have regular runs. Myxomatosis has led to many rabbits also living above ground.

**Traps:** Simple snares—though a spring snare will take the animal off the ground and reduce the chance of your meal being stolen.

**Tracks and signs:** Hairy soles leave little detail on soft ground but combination of long hind and shorter front feet is distinctive. Hares have five toes on front feet, but inner is short and seldom leaves a mark. Hind foot narrower, four toed. Rabbit similar but smaller (4 x 2-5cm (1¾ x 1in). Running leaves hind in front of forefeet instead of side by side. Droppings small, hard, round pellets. Bark nibbled at bottom of trees leaving two incisor marks. Rabbits thump a warning sounding like someone hitting a cushion.



## DANGER

---

### RABBIT STARVATION!

Rabbits can provide the easiest of meals but their flesh lacks fat and vitamins essential to man. The Hudson Bay Company recorded cases of trappers dying of starvation although eating well on an easily available diet of rabbit.

The body uses its own vitamins and minerals to digest the rabbit and these are then passed out in the faeces. If they are not replaced weakness and other symptoms of vitamin deficiency appear. If more rabbit is eaten, the condition becomes worse. Trappers literally ate themselves to death when eating vegetation would have ensured their survival. This situation often occurs when vegetation has been buried by snow and survivors rely on rabbits for food.

Myxomatosis, a viral disease that causes swelling of the mucous glands, especially on the head, makes rabbits sluggish and often blind. Their appearance is off-putting but the disease does not harm man. Once skinned the only indication of it will be white spots in the liver.

Rabbits and many rodents carry Tularemia (see [Rodents](#)).

### SMALL RODENTS

The largest group of animals and some of the easiest to catch, though most are too small for a snare. Tracks of different kinds are not easy to distinguish. Rats and mice occur almost everywhere. They may be tempted into cage traps or under deadfalls. Rats carry disease. When gutting take care not to rupture the innards and cook thoroughly. Unwelcome, except as food; try to catch them if they invade your camp.

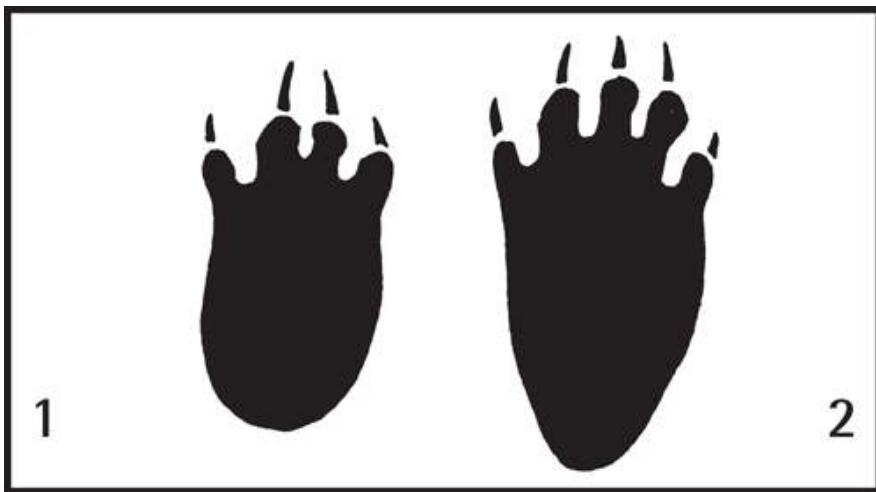
**Guinea pigs and Cavies:** are widely domesticated in the Andes, where they live. They can be tempted to traps baited with fruit and leafy vegetables and make excellent eating.

**Capybara:** found in tropical lowlands in parts of South America grow to the size of a small sheep and live in family groups. Semi-aquatic, they are easily panicked into trap-lines or ambushes if their escape route to water is cut off. Meat is lean and tasty.

**Copyu:** similar to Capybara and also from South America, is smaller. Occurs feral in Europe. Tasty.

### **PORCUPINES**

Various kinds are found in Americas, Africa and tropical Asia. Some climb trees. Ground-living ones are bumbling—easily run down and speared. Quills can inflict injury.

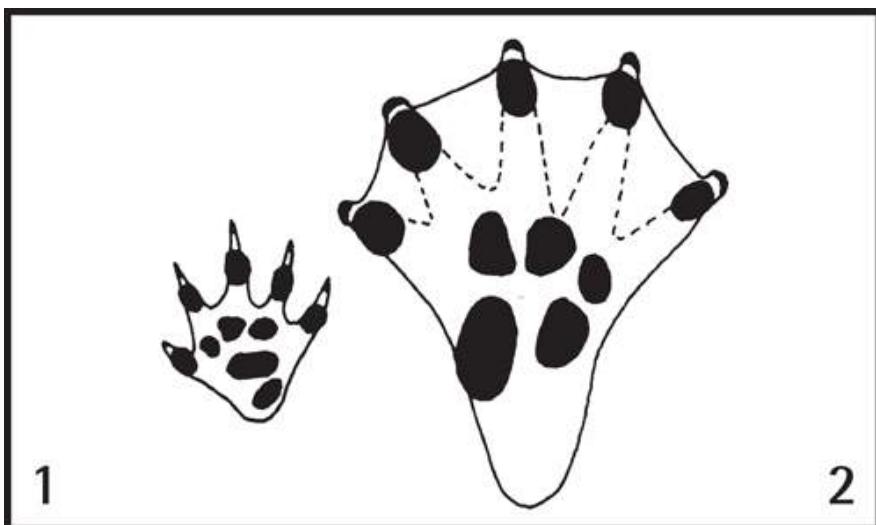


### **BEAVERS**

Chunky, dam-building aquatic animals with scaly, paddle-like tails. Found in North America and northern Eurasia using regular runs along streams, where they can be trapped. Good to eat, especially the tail.

**Traps:** Strong net or line of nooses across water run. Spring snares or deadfalls where they emerge to chew trees.

**Tracks and signs:** Five toes with claw marks, often only four show. Rear track webbed, roundish, larger 15 x 10cm (6 x 4in). Look out for dam building and lodges, felled and chewed saplings, bark and shavings near water.

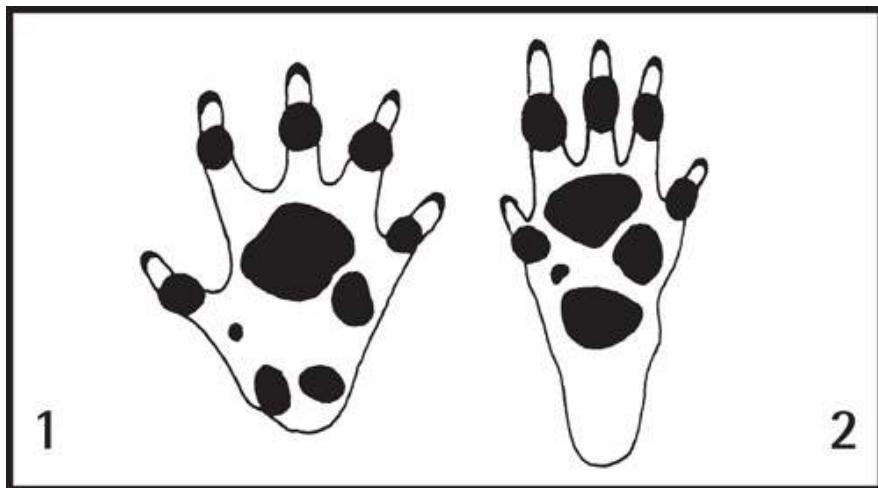


### **HEDGEHOGS**

Shy, mainly nocturnal animals of Eurasia and Africa east to Indonesia they lie in well-concealed nests during the day and hibernate in temperate regions. They move fairly slowly so can be run down. Those that curl up are easiest to catch. Edibility fair, handle carefully usually parasite infested. Skin can be removed with spines intact. Cook thoroughly.

**Traps:** Snares are unlikely to grip. Use deadfall—hedgehogs like to snuffle about obstructions.

**Tracks:** Five toes with long claws but usually only four show.

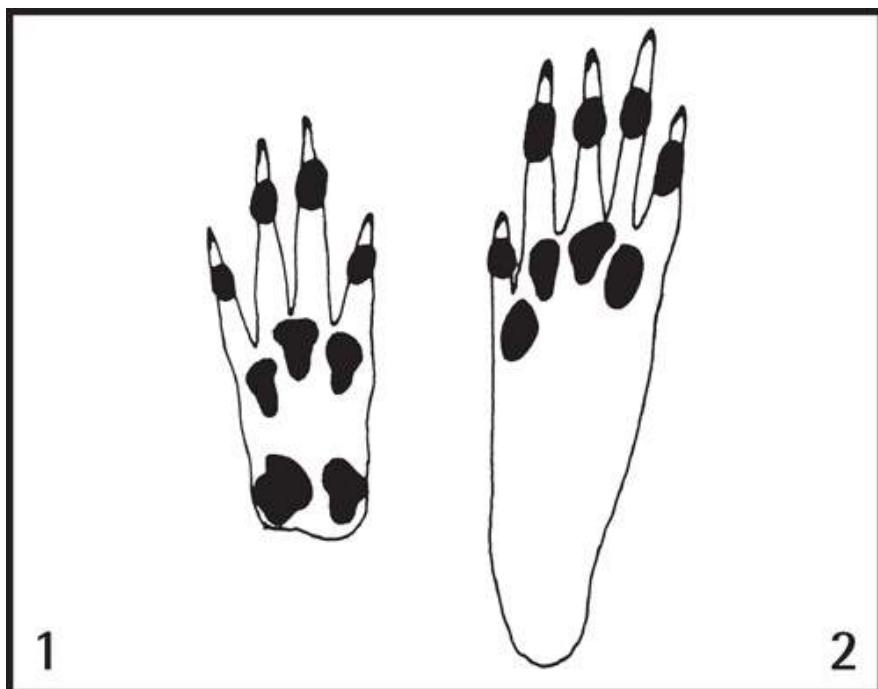


## SQUIRRELS

Squirrels and Prairie dogs occur everywhere except Australasia and the Poles, hibernating in colder areas. Alert and nimble, most are active by day and night—feeding on nuts, fruits, shoots etc and some on birds' eggs. Raid their nests in tree hollows for young—beware of their sharp teeth they are savage in defence. Ground-living kinds live in burrows, often in large colonies. Most are excellent eating.

**Traps:** Small spring snares attached to bait bars. Use split fruit or a bird's egg to attract. For tree squirrels set 5cm (2in) loop snares along a pole and lean against trunk of squirrels' trees—even when one has been caught they will go on using it as a short cut.

**Tracks and signs:** Four slender toes, with claws on front foot, five on rear. Chewed bark, gnawed nuts, cones beneath tree or an untidy nest of twigs in a fork may indicate squirrels.



## KANGAROOS

With wallabies and other relatives kangaroos are limited to Australia, Tasmania and parts of Papua New Guinea. Large kinds can strike powerfully with hind feet. Some adept tree climbers. Too fast to run down. Most active at night, some shelter in caves etc during day. Plains kangaroos range far from water. Edibility fair, but not easy to catch!

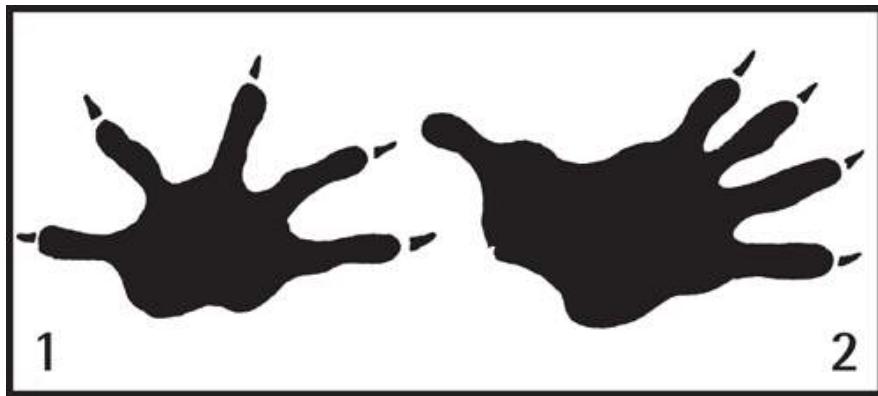
**Traps:** Deadfalls, spring snares—though in open country no trail to set them on. Tempt tree kangaroos down with fruit, leaves and roots.

**Tracks and signs:** Only two prints, resembling giant rabbit tracks (front legs not used for support) or locomotion.

## OPOSSUMS

Small nocturnal scavengers of southern US to South America. Similar but unrelated animals in Australasia. Good tree climbers. Possum pie a traditional US dish.

**Traps:** Bait with juicy fruit, eggs; or anything to hand. They are inquisitive.



### **WOMBATS**

Plump, badger-size animals of Australia. Eucalyptus forest, dry country and Tasmanian forms. Live in burrow. Emerge at night to forage. Trap as badger.

### **RACCOONS**

Cat-sized, with bushy banded tail and black mask, found widely in North America. Prefer woodland near water. Introduced parts of northern Europe. Inquisitive, nocturnal, emerge at night from tree or rock hole to hunt frogs, molluscs, insects; small mammals, berries nuts. Crab-eating Raccoon of tropical America is related.

**Traps:** Bait a spring snare.

**Tracks:** Five long toes with clear claw marks; front foot small, rounded; rear larger, tapering.



### **REPTILES**

#### **CROCODILES/ALLIGATORS**

Members of this group are found in most subtropical and tropical regions. Those under about 1.3m (4½ft) are potential food. Larger ones should be avoided—they are virtually armour-plated and some such as the cunning and aggressive estuarine crocodile of Indo-Australasia, can grow to enormous size. In areas where they live **ALWAYS** assume they are about for they have excellent camouflage and can lie underwater for long periods waiting for an incautious meal to step within range. Their tails can inflict a scything blow, almost as damaging as their teeth. The best meat comes from the tail and is firm and very tasty.

**Traps:** Set by water for small crocs or catch on line with a stick wedged in the bait to lodge in gullet. Kill with a sharp stick wedged in the bait to lodge in gullet. Kill with a sharp blow between the eyes.

#### **LIZARDS**

Gila monsters and Beaded lizards are docile but venomous (see Poisonous and dangerous animals in Health), but all lizards can be eaten. Most are timid though some big iguanas and monitors can inflict a bad bite and have powerful claws. Do NOT tangle with the giant Komodo dragon (2m/6ft long), confined to a few Indonesian islands.

Try to catch lizards by the tail, but small lizards move fast. They can sometimes be trapped in a pit, look out for them in a solar still. Set traps for larger ones.

#### **TURTLES/TORTOISES**

All these reptiles are good eating. Most spend their lives largely in salt or fresh water, emerging to lay eggs, but a few are terrestrial, the box turtle not even entering the water to mate. Some turtles are encountered far out at

sea, a bonus for the sea survivor. Net or drag them from the water. On land use a stick to turn them on their backs—keep out of the way of jaws and flippers. Then they will be defenceless. Kill with a blow to the head. Cut through belly and discard guts, remove head and neck (some have poison sack in neck). Best boiled. Very rich, so eat in small amounts. Blood even richer. Eggs found inside females can be eaten. Tortoises can retract their heads—you will probably have to stab into it. Roast ungutted in embers, when the shell splits they are ready. **Tracks:** Females coming ashore to lay eggs leave tractor-like tracks on sand. They will lead to where the eggs are buried, but you may have to go quite deep to find them. Boiled, they will keep for a few days.

## AMPHIBIANS

Frogs are all edible, from tiny tree frogs to African giants with legs as big as a chicken's, but some have poisons under the skin so remove skin before cooking. Active at night, their croaking will locate them, always near water. Dazzle with a light—a firebrand will do—and club. In daytime hunt with hook and line and an insect-like lure. The legs of large frogs are a particular delicacy and taste like chicken.

Toads have warty skins and may be found far from water. Bad-tasting, most have highly toxic skin secretions. Do NOT eat.

Salamanders and newts, found in and near water, can be caught like frogs and are just as edible.

## SNAKES

Overcome your fear and learn their habits. A snake is a steak! But do NOT try to catch one you know is highly poisonous, if it is too large to tackle safely or you are ill-equipped.

The large constrictors—the pythons of Africa, Asia and Australasia, and the boas, like the Anaconda of South America can be very large up to 10m (30ft). They tend to be timid and even the largest would find an adult human too big to swallow. Easy to catch—but do NOT tackle large ones! They are not poisonous but their back-raked teeth can give a very serious bite. If you can prise open the jaws, rather than pulling the snake off, the results will be less severe.

Snakes have excellent camouflage, often only movement gives them away. You may pass many every day without noticing them.

Use a forked stick to pin snake down just behind head. Strike the back of the head with another stick. Tree snakes can be clubbed and then knocked to the ground. Club them again to make sure!

Coiled snakes with head concealed present a problem. Pin one fat coil and watch it unwind before going for the head.

**NEVER pick up—or even get close to—a snake until you are sure it is dead. A few, including poisonous ones, can feign death convincingly.**

## BIRDS

All birds are edible, but some taste very much better than others. They occur everywhere—open sea, deserts, high in mountains and in polar regions—but are not always easy to catch.

Game birds make best eating: pheasants, grouse, partridges, quail, ducks, geese, jungle fowl—but they are wary and many are superbly camouflaged. Birds of prey need thorough boiling to tenderize and to destroy parasites. Sea birds can be oily and fishy-tasting.

**Traps:** Easiest to trap are birds of prey, such as eagles and hawks; carrion eaters, such as vultures; inquisitive scavengers, such as crows and gulls.

Cage traps, deadfalls and spring snares can be used for birds that take bait, nooses on branches may catch roosting birds. In wooded country site traps in clearings or by river banks. Bait with meat, fruit or berries. Most birds are light—so set delicately.

Use also pole-nooses, lines with baited hooks and gullet jammers.

Small birds are easy to lime and can be attracted by bait, but making a dummy owl can be more effective. Small birds come to mob it—even a crude model works.

**Tracks and signs:** Except for those with webbed feet, tracks are broadly similar and indicate only the size of the bird, with a few exceptions. However, in desert and on snow, tracks may help to locate birds hiding in close cover. Calls and flights are much more useful. Alarm calls may help locate other animals. Droppings may indicate a night roost.

**Autumn moult:** Birds go through a complete moult in autumn and are unable to fly, or can manage only short distances. Some, especially ducks, geese and game birds are much easier to catch at this time. If not far out on water, you can run them down.

**Bird nesting:** Eggs are easily available from ground nesters—and many nest in colonies. Approach carefully—crawling not walking—and you may get within stone-throwing or clubbing distance.

Some, such as gulls, guard nests tenaciously. If you enter a colony be prepared to be attacked. **Burrow** nesters: Puffins, petrels and a few other birds nest in burrows, usually in inaccessible places on rocky coasts and small islands. They feed at sea during the day, but can be pulled or dug out of their burrows at night.

**Flightless birds:** Ostriches (in Africa), Rheas (South America) and Emus and Cassowaries (Australia) are large

and flightless but treat them with caution: an ostrich, in particular, can deliver bone-breaking kicks. Fairly rare—but their eggs will feed a large group and make useful containers.

## INSECTS

Insects are likely to be the survivor's most reliable source of animal food. Although usually very small they occur almost everywhere and are often so plentiful that enough for a meal can soon be gathered.

Weight for weight they give more food value than vegetables. Rich in fat, protein and carbohydrates they are life-savers, especially their larvae—those succulent grubs. You'll soon overcome your squeamishness—remember that some people consider them a delicacy. You have certainly eaten them unknowingly in food.

## GATHERING

The most useful are termites, ants, beetles, grasshoppers, locusts, crickets, honey bees, caterpillars and various aquatic insects.

Many insects are inactive during the heat of the day, although most will emerge to collect moisture when it rains. Look for them in nooks and crannies of trees and behind their bark, in the tissue and seed pods of plants, in any moist shady spots and on the beds of pools and streams. Ants' and termites' nests are often immediately recognizable mounds.

Look for beetle grubs—usually pale in colour with three short legs, they range from tiny larvae to juicy 'sausages' 15.5cm (7in) and weighing 84g (3oz). You will find them on trees with peeling bark, and in decaying stumps. Some tropical palms and bamboos are infested with them. If you have a knife, cut material away until you find them under the surface.

Collect only living specimens. AVOID any that look sick or dead, have a bad smell or produce skin irritation or rash when handled.

Take care when foraging for insects. Their hiding places may also harbour unwelcome creatures such as scorpions and spiders or, in larger crannies, snakes.

## WARNING

Do **NOT** gather insects feeding on refuse, carrion or dung—they are likely to carry infection.

**REMEMBER:** Brightly coloured insects—including their caterpillars—are usually poisonous. Their bright colours are the warning sign.

**AVOID:** Grubs found on the underside of leaves—they often secrete poisonous fluids. Bad smelling and slimy to touch, they can be used as fish bait.

**BETTER:** Large beetles often have powerful jaws, handle them with respect!

## PREPARATION

Most insects are edible raw and usually more nutritious that way but they are more palatable cooked. Boiling is safest, it destroys harmful bacteria and parasites, but roasting is easier if proper containers are not to hand. Just place your dinner on hot stones or in the embers of a fire.

Remove legs and wings from larger insects such as locusts, grasshoppers and crickets. Hairs on the legs can irritate or even block the digestive tract. Fine hairs on some caterpillars can cause rashes. If you want to eat a hairy caterpillar squeeze it to extract the innards—don't eat the skin. Take the armour-like casing off beetles.

Smaller insects such as ants and termites can be mashed to a paste and then either cooked or dried to a powder. Use this to thicken other foods or for storage—it will keep for some time. People who cannot abide the idea of insects in their food will find a powder easier to eat, especially in soups or mixed with other food.

## TERMITES

Found in the warmer parts of the world, termites are nutritious and tasty. Most eat only vegetation but big ones have sharp jaws and will bite at anything. You can turn this to advantage by inserting a twig into the nests and gently withdrawing it. The termites will bite it and then hang on—but you will not collect very many in this way.

Flying termites, and flying ants, often take wing during thundery weather. At such times quite large quantities can be gathered from leaves and twigs where they settle.

Remove the wings from large termites before eating. They can be boiled, fried or roasted but are more nutritious eaten raw. Their eggs have good food value too.

**Gathering:** Termites build large mounds, often several feet high and honeycombed with passages and chambers. Although rock hard, pieces can be broken off with a stone or stick and then dunked in water to force the termites out.

A piece of termites' nest put on the coals of a fire will produce fragrant smoke that will keep mosquitoes and similar insects away. It will smoulder all night and help to keep the fire going.

When fishing, suspend a piece of nest above a pool; termites falling from it will be good ground bait.

## BEES AND WASPS

All are edible—pupae, larvae and adult—but the honeybee also provides honey. This is the finest of all natural foods, easily digestible and highly nutritious—but NOT easy to collect for bees will guard their nest tenaciously.

During the day worker bees venture far from the nest, but all gather there at night. Then is the time to strike. Make a torch from a bundle of grass and hold it very close to the entrance so that the nest fills with smoke. Then seal the hole. That kills the bees, providing an immediate meal, and making their honey safely available. Remove wings, legs—AND STING—before eating the bees. Boiling or roasting improves the flavour.

Honey can be drained from the combs inside the nest. Even though it may harden, it will keep for years. Honey gives instant energy. Because it is so rapidly assimilated by the body it is an excellent restorative in cases of exhaustion. The comb itself can also be eaten but its wax is also useful for waterproofing clothing, softening pelts and making candles.

In some parts of the world there is a slight risk that honey may contain concentrations of plant poisons. This is likely only in areas where bees are dependent on a single plant source, as with dense stands of rhododendrons in the Himalayas. Smell will be one guide, but if in doubt use the edibility test given for plants.

Wasps are much more dangerous than honeybees, but they and other kinds of social bee, which do not produce honey, can be collected and eaten in the same way together with their larvae. There are also many solitary wasps and bees which do not make communal nests. **Locating:** Wasps' nests are usually found suspended from tree branches. Frequently the size and shape of a football, they may also be pear-shaped. The entrance is at the base. Bees' nests are most frequently found in a hollow tree or cave or under an overhanging rock

## HORNETS

Are types of social wasp. If you can find their nest without the adults finding you, then you have a ready source of food—both larvae and pupae are highly nutritious. But be warned: hornets guard their nests ferociously. They sting on sight and the pain is extreme. Unless you are desperate—and hornets do occur in areas where other food is scarce—go in search of a safer meal.

There are two main kinds of hornet: those active by day and those active at night. Day hornets can be collected at night, in the same way as honeybees. Night hornets (which you could collect by day) inflict a sting like a white-hot rivet being driven into the body, and usually go for the face. They are best left well alone!

**Locating:** Hornets make large globular nests, generally in trees.

## ANTS

Ants quickly gather round the merest scrap of food, where they can be collected, or you can break into a nest. Take care. Most ants have a stinging bite and some large jungle ants can inflict one that will lay the victim out for 24 hours. Go for the smaller ones.

Some ants, such as the Melanophus species, have a distended abdomen full of nectar. Known as honey- or sugar-pot ants, they make much better eating.

## WARNING

Some ants have a bite that feels like a nettle sting. Some fire formic acid. Ants MUST therefore be cooked for at least six minutes to destroy the poison. They are then quite safe to eat.

## LOCUSTS/CRICKETS/GRASSHOPPERS

All kinds have plump bodies and well-muscled legs. Some grow to 15cm (6in) long. In some areas they are abundant.

Swat them with a leafy branch or a piece of clothing. Remove the wings, antennae and leg spurs, then eat raw or roasted. Roasting not only kills any parasites they may carry but gives them a delicious taste.

## AQUATIC INSECTS

Collect adults and larvae of water beetles, mayflies, stoneflies, caddisflies, damselflies, dragonflies and the rest of the great variety of water insects, only from fresh water. Although small they are found in large numbers.

Place a screen of fine material—a shirt or other piece of cloth—in the water to act as a 'net'. Secure with sticks if necessary. Walk towards it, from upstream in flowing water, stirring up the bottom as you go. The current will carry the insects with it and they will collect in the net. If you do not want to enter the water trawling the surface may produce a harvest.

It is best to boil thoroughly all insects caught in the water, just in case the water is polluted.

## SNAILS/WORMS

Snails, slugs, worms and similar creatures should not be ignored. Many cuisines rate snails a delicacy and most people will eat water molluscs such as mussels or oysters without qualms. As for worms—think what they do for birds! Both land and water snails and other shell foods must be fresh. There are a few which can be dangerous to eat. Others which, at no risk to themselves, may have eaten something harmful to humans, require preparation.

### **SNAILS**

Found in fresh water, salt water and from deserts to alpine meadows. There is a giant snail in Africa 20cm (8in) long. They are rich in proteins and minerals. When collecting land snails, avoid any with brightly-coloured shells—they may be POISONOUS. Sea snails, especially in tropical waters, are trickier and should be left alone unless positively identified. The cone shells *Toxoglossa*, for example, of Pacific and Caribbean coasts, have a venomous sting like a hypodermic needle. Some kinds can kill.

Starve snails for a few days, or feed only on herbs and safe greens so that they can excrete any poisons, and then put them in a saltwater solution to clear out their guts before cooking. Boil for 10 minutes adding herbs for flavour.

Hibernating snails can be eaten provided that the operculum (the seal at the entrance to the shell) has not receded.

### **SLUGS**

Slugs are simply snails without shells. Prepare and cook them in exactly the same way as snails.

### **WORMS**

Contain the highest class of protein with a large proportion of essential amino acids and are easily collected. Starve them for a day before you eat them. Allow them to purge themselves. Worms can be sun- or force-dried—one easy method is to leave them to dry on a hot stone—and then ground into a powder to add to other food as required. This will make eating them more 'acceptable' and dried they will also keep for some time.

## DANGERS

### **Carriers of disease**

The numerous diseases carried by mosquitoes, ticks and other insects, the unseen dangers of parasites you may pick up from food or water and various waterborne diseases are much more serious dangers than attacks by animals.

## **DANGEROUS CONFRONTATIONS**

Attacks by animals are rare but large animals can be dangerous. Keep out of their way. If you confront one it will be as surprised as you. Self-control will be needed or you may unintentionally provoke the animal to attack.

- Avoid eye contact, but don't run away.
- If you come face to face with a large animal—FREEZE. Slowly back off and talk in a calm manner. In most cases the animal will back off too. Avoid making sudden movements and remember that animals can smell fear—many a hunter has fouled his breeches and given himself away. Do your best to calm yourself.
- If an animal appears to charge it may be that you are blocking its escape route. Move out of the way.
- If an animal seems determined to give chase (or you haven't got the nerve to freeze or sidestep), zig-zag

- when you run—animals such as rhinos charge in a straight line and have poor eyesight.
- A skilled nocturnal predator such as a leopard or tiger has excellent vision if you are on the move—though their colour vision is poor and they cannot see stationary objects well. Freeze if you have not already been sighted.
  - Shouting and making a commotion may put off a predator.
  - Taking to a tree is the final option—but you may be ‘treed’ for a long time if the animal is persistent.
  - If chased, drop your pack, clothing or food, to confuse animal.

## **EDIBLE PLANTS**

---

**There are many temperate edible plants in addition to those illustrated in colour, including the wild forms of cultivated plants such as currants and gooseberries. The following are a further selection of the food plants available.**

**If you are unlucky enough to find none of the plants illustrated or described here use the standard tests for edibility on the plants that are available.**

**REMEMBER that although one part of a plant can be eaten another may be poisonous. Test leaves, stems, roots and fruits separately.**

### **FRUITS**

**Currants and Gooseberries** (*Ribes*), found in woods, scrub and waste places, are medium-sized usually bushy shrubs with toothed leaves resembling those of a maple, small, greenish-white to purple five-petalled flowers and red, purplish black or yellow berries. Ripe currants are edible raw; cook gooseberries.

**Plums** (*Prunus*) exist in many varieties in scrub and woodland in virtually all temperate areas. Small shrubs or trees, similar to wild cherries, their fruits are larger, downy, blackish-purple, red or yellow; some are too tart to be edible raw.

### **ROOTS, LEAVES AND STEMS**

**Horseradishes** (*Armoracia*) grow to 50cm (20in) in damp waste places with large, long-stalked, wavy-edged oval leaves and clusters of tiny white flowers. Chop up the hot-tasting root and add to stews; the young leaves are edible raw or boiled.

**Common Evening Primrose** (*Oenothera biennis*) is a tall plant of drier open areas, leafy, hairy, with spear-shaped, crinkly-margined leaves and sometimes reddish flower-stalks topped with large yellow, four-petalled flowers. The roots are edible boiled, changing the water to ease their pungency. Peel young leaves and treat likewise. The plants overwinter as rosettes.

**Limes or Basswoods** (*Tilia*) are tall trees, up to 26m (85ft) high, which like damp woods, with large, heart-shaped, toothed leaves and clusters of scented yellow flowers. Young leaves and unopened leaf buds are edible raw; the flowers can be used in tea.

**Hops** (*Humulus*), climbing plants of woody and scrubby places have long twisting stems, toothed leaves, deeply cut into three lobes, and green, cone-shaped female flowers. Peel, slice and boil the young shoots, brew up the flowers.

**Thistles** (*Cirsium*) have spiny, often ridged stems, oblong or spear-shaped, prickly, deep-cut leaves and large brush-like heads of purplish flowers. Remove prickles and boil young leaves. Peel tender shoots and eat raw or boiled. Roots of younger, stemless plants can be cooked and the base of each flowerhead contains a nutritious ‘nut’ which can be eaten raw.

**Saxifrages** (*Saxifraga*) grow to 90cm (3ft), usually much less, often liking open, rocky country, up into mountains. Most have rounded tapering or long-stalked leaves arcing from the base, often reddish stems and clusters of five-petalled flowers, usually white. Leaves edible raw or cooked.

**Great Burnet** (*Sanquisorba officinalis*) reaches 60cm (2ft) in damper grassy places, with toothed, spade-shaped leaflets in opposite pairs and oblong heads of tiny, deep red flowers. Eat the tasty young leaves raw or boiled. Take an infusion for stomach complaints.

**Redleg or Lady's Thumb** (*Polygonum persicaria*) reaches 60cm (2ft). With reddish mature stems, narrow, spear-shaped, usually dark-spotted leaves and spikes of tiny pink flowers. Often common on waste ground. Young leaves are edible raw or cooked like spinach.

**Wild Rhubarb** (*Rheum palmatum*), found in open grassy places and margins from southern Europe east to China, resembles cultivated rhubarb, but its leaves are more ragged and dissected. The large flower-stalks are edible boiled; other parts are harmful. Eat ONLY the stalks.

**Bladder Campion** (*Silene vulgaris*), grows to 45cm (18in) in grassy places, is grey-green, with pointed oval,

stalkless leaves, clusters of white flowers with a swollen balloon-like base. Boil the young leaves for 10 minutes.

**Field Pennycress** (*Thlaspi arvense*) grows to 45cm (18in) in open grassy places, with broad, toothed, spear-shaped leaves clasping the stem, a head of tiny white flowers and distinctive, notched, coin-like seed pods. Leaves are edible raw or boiled. **Clovers** (*Trifolium*) abundant in grassy areas, recognized by their distinctive trefoil leaflets and dense rounded heads of small flowers, ranging from white through greenish-cream to shades of red. Leaves edible raw but better boiled.

**Stork's Bill** (*Erodium cicutarium*) reaching 30cm (1ft), in open grassy places, is hairy, often pungent, with fern-like, twice-cut leaves and heads of tiny, five-petalled pinkish to white flowers whose fruits form a long, twisting 'bill'. Eat leaves raw or boiled.

**Burdocks** (*Arctium*), medium to large, bushy plants of open waste areas, have floppy oval leaves, often arching stems and many purplish thistle-like flowerheads that develop into clinging burs. Eat leaves and peeled stalks raw or boiled. Boil pitch of peeled root. Change the water to remove bitterness.

**Violet** (*Viola*) are small flowers found in many areas, including damp and wooded ones. Veined, crinkly, often heart-shaped leaves rise on long stalks with flowers in shades of blue-violet, yellow or white, made up of five unequal petals. Cook young leaves. Rich in vitamins A and C.

**Corn Salad or Lamb's Lettuce** (*Valerianella locusta*) grows to 10-20cm (4-8in) in bare rocky and grassy places. Well-branched, with oblong, stalkless leaves and clusters of tiny lilac-bluish flowers; its leaves are edible raw or cooked like spinach. A particularly useful plant to know because it appears from late winter onwards.

**Ox-eye daisies** (*Leucanthemum*) often common in open areas, average 90cm (3ft) tall, with narrow dark green, lobed leaves, the lower ones rounded, and large white and yellow daisy-like flowers. Overwinters as a rosette. Eat young leaves (a lighter green) raw.

**Cuckoo Flower or Lady's smock** (*Cardamine pratensis*) grows on damp ground to 50cm (20in) with many small leaflets in opposite pairs, roundish on the basal ones which form a rosette, and clusters of lilac or white, four-petalled flowers. Young leaves are tasty raw, older ones rather peppery.

**Brooklime** (*Veronica*) grows in shallow water and swamps. Its creeping to upright stems carry pairs of thick, oval, toothed leaves, from the stalk bases of which spring 7-25cm (3-10in) spikes of four-petalled blue flowers with two prominent stamens. Eat young shoots before flowering and leaves after. Slightly bitter (especially the European form *V. beccabunga*) but eat like watercress.

**In spring and summer young shoots are tender and easy to pick. Some can be eaten raw, but many are better gently cooked, especially Solomon's seal, Willowherb, Cat's-tail and bracken. Wash them in clean water, rub off any hairs and boil in a little water so that they cook mainly in the steam.**

**Leaves are very rich in vitamins and minerals. Together with young shoots they are the survivor's easiest source of food. Most will taste better cooked but do not overcook them or you will destroy the vitamins they contain: C, E, K, B and large amounts of A.**

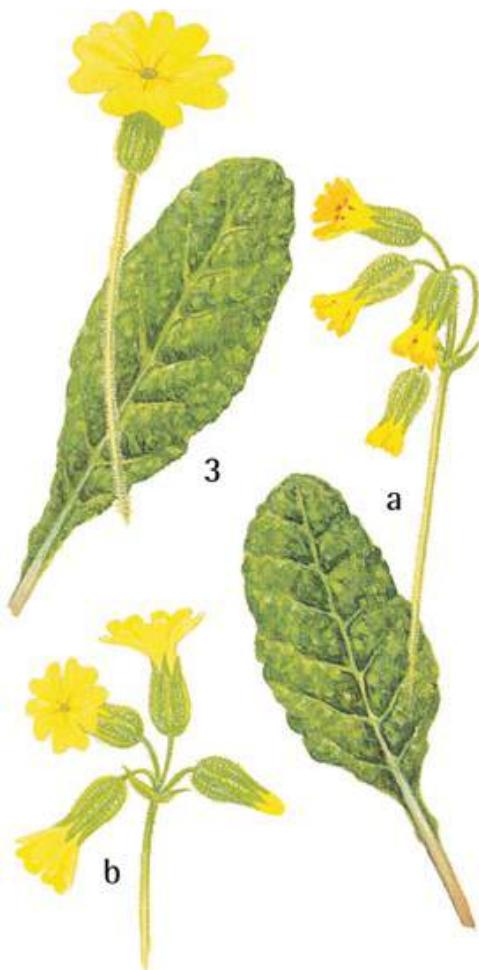


1

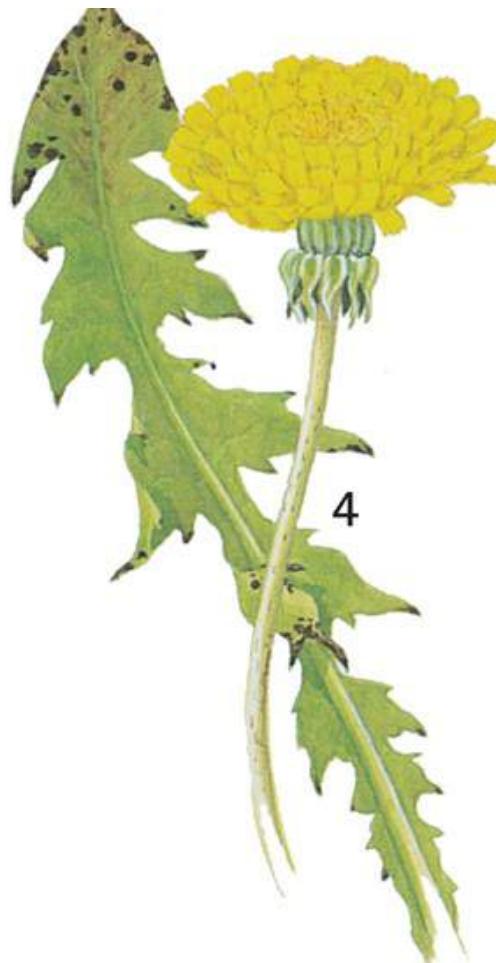
**1 White Mustard** (*Synapsis alba*) grows to 60cm (2ft), with a hairy stem, crinkly, deeply lobed leaves and pale yellow flowers; in waste and grassy places in Eurasia. The young, peppery leaves and flowers are edible raw; the whole plant is tasty cooked. Pick young specimens.



**2 Shepherd's Purse** (*Capsella bursa-pastoris*) may reach to 60cm (2ft), with a rosette of lobed, spear-shaped leaves and a spike of small white flowers; common in waste places. Boil the leaves, which taste like cabbage, and mix with other plants.



**3 Primroses** (*Primula*) are found in grassy and shady places. Identified by their rosette of crinkly, tapering basal leaves and long-stalked, five-petalled flowers which range from pale to bright yellow and, in some forms, pink. All parts are edible but the young leaves are best part to eat. The primulas include the Cowslip (3a) and the Oxslip (3b).

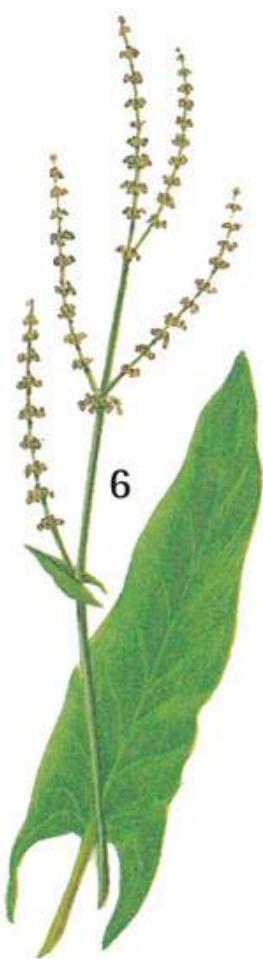


**4 Dandelions** (*Taraxacum*) occur in many forms almost everywhere. Look for the large, yellow to orange flowerhead or the rosette of deeply lobed leaves. Eat the young leaves raw; boil the older ones, changing the water to remove their bitter taste. Boil the roots or roast for coffee. Dandelion juice is rich in vitamins and minerals.



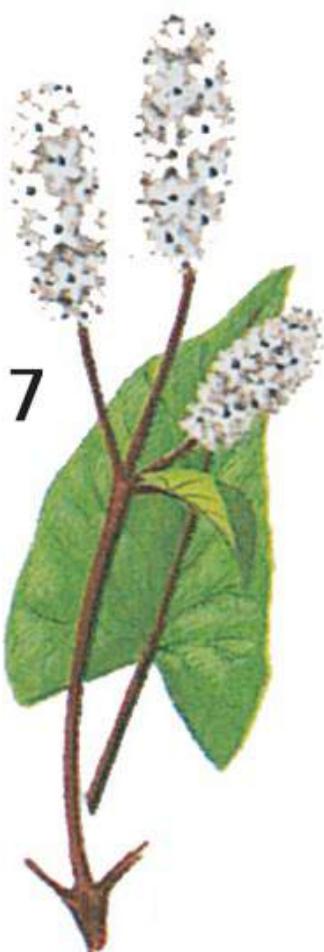
5

**5 Chicory** (*Cichorium intybus*) is common in grassy and waste places. It grows 1.3m (4ft), with thick hairy, deeply basal leaves and leafy spikes of clear blue dandelion-like flowers. Prepare as Dandelion.



6

**6 Wild Sorrel** (*Rumex acetosa*) is common in waste and grassy places, reaching 1m (3ft), with long, arrow-shaped leaves and spikes of tiny reddish and green flowers. Gather young plants. Their mineral-rich leaves are edible raw but cooking will reduce the sharp taste.



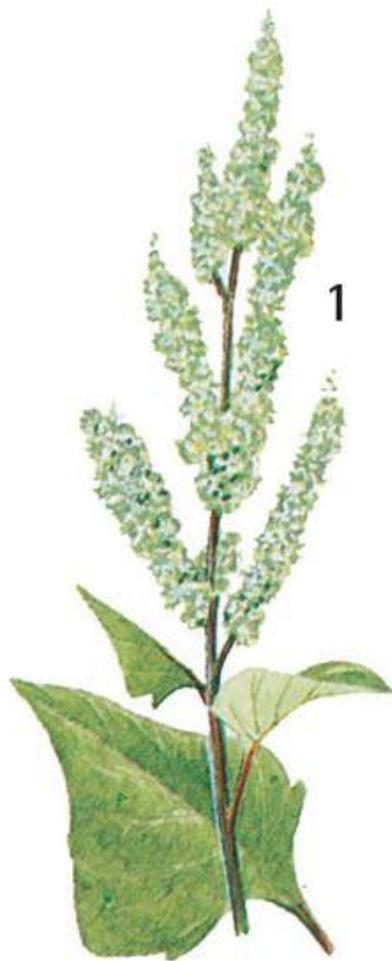
**7 Buckwheat** (*Fagopyrum esculentum*) occurs in open grassy places in most temperate parts. Its 60cm (2ft) stems are usually red, with spear-shaped leaves and clusters of small pink or white flowers. Its seeds make good edible grain.



**8 Curled Dock** (*Rumex crispus*) grows to over 1m (3ft), with long narrow, wavy-margined leaves and whorls of small greenish flowers; in grassy and waste places. Boil the tenderest leaves from young plants, changing the water to remove the bitterness. Rubbing with dock leaves will soothe nettle stings. There are many other Docks temperate and tropical; prepare as here but use sparingly.

**Some plants have edible stems, although many are too woody to eat. If they are soft, peel off the outer, stringy parts, slice and then boil. The inner pith of some stems is nutritious and sweet, elder, for example. In this case the stem must be split open and the pulp extracted.**

**Stems produce fewer nutrients for the survivor than the roots, shoots and leaves so put them at the bottom of the food choices and exploit their other uses. Fibrous stems, like those of stinging nettles, make good twine.**



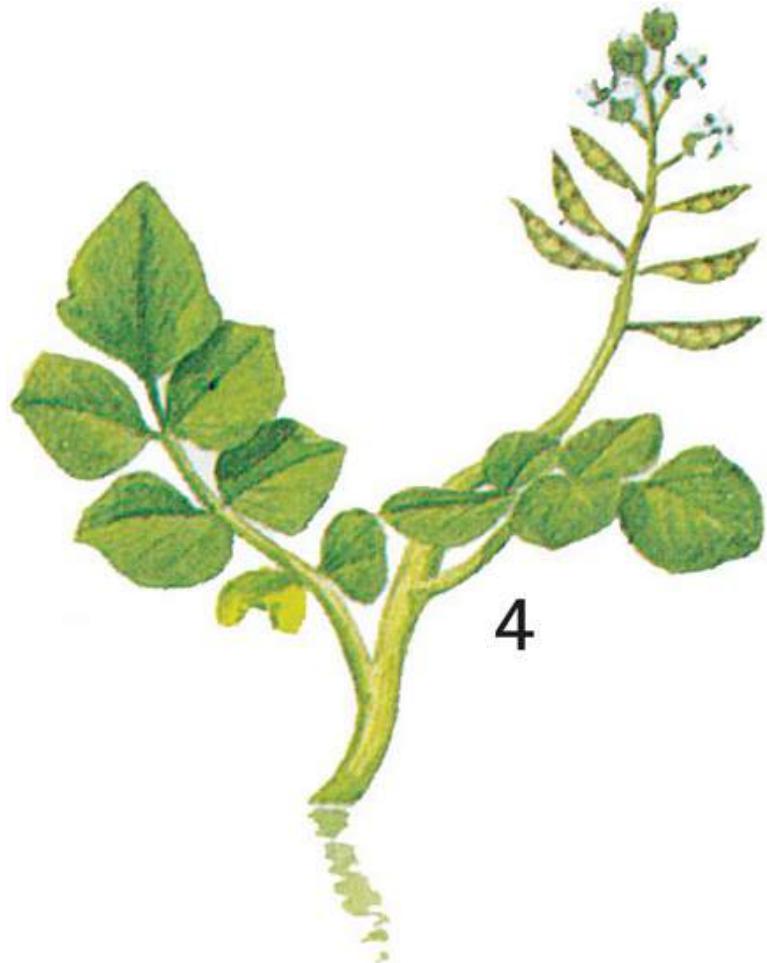
**1 Good King Henry** (*Chenopodium bonus-henricus*) is spiky, to 60cm (2ft) tall, with dull green triangular leaves, sometimes reddening, and spikes of tiny greenish flowers; common on waste ground. Leaves and young shoots are edible raw or boiled as spinach; peel the shoots to remove the stringy parts.



**2 Fat Hen or Lamb's Quarters** (*Chenopodium album*) is spiky, to 1m (3ft) high, with often reddish stems, dull green, mealy, oval to spear-shaped leaves and spikes of tiny greenish flowers; abundant on waste ground. Cook the tasty leaves like spinach.



**3 Chickweed** (*Stellaria media*) is straggling, to 30cm (1 ft) high, with a line of hairs on the main stem, pointed, oval leaves and tiny white, five-petalled flowers, common in waste places. Boil the delicious tender leaves.



**4 Watercress** (*Roripa nasturtium-aquaticum*) occurs, often abundantly, by running fresh water. It is creeping, semi-aquatic, with shiny leaves in opposite pairs and small, white, four-petaled flowers. Do NOT confuse with Water Hemlock. Leaves and stems are edible raw but boil if the water looks contaminated.



**5 Rosebay Willowherb or Fireweed** (*Epilobium angustifolium*) is found in open woods, waste and rocky places. It is tall, to over 1.5m (5ft), with spear-shaped leaves in opposite pairs and a spike of brilliant pinkish flowers. Young leaves, flowers and stems are edible raw but better boiled. Mature stems have a sweetish inner pulp.



**6 Sweet Cicely** (*Myrrhis odorata*) is sweet-smelling, grows to 1.5m (5ft), with slightly hairy and often purplish stems, feathery, fern-like leaves flecked with white and heads of tiny white flowers; in open woods, bare and rocky places in Europe. Do NOT confuse with Hemlock. Roots, stems and leaves taste of aniseed and can be boiled.



7



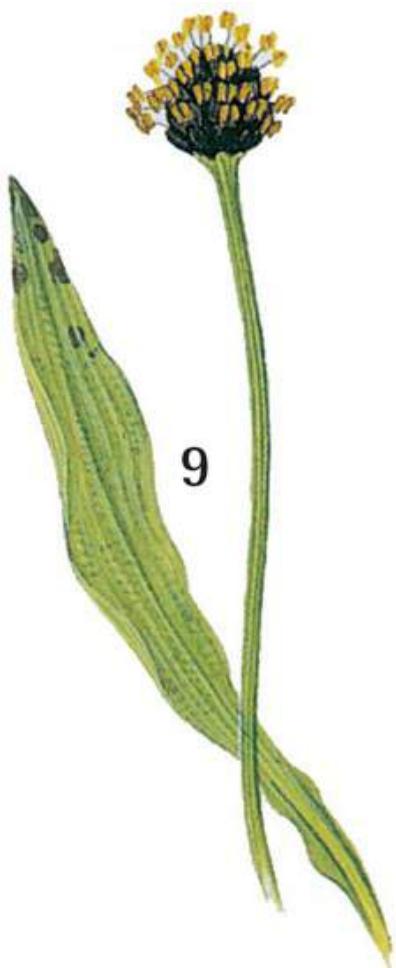
7a

**7 Dead-nettles** (*Lamium*) are smaller than Stinging Nettles, with heart-shaped leaves and no stinging hairs, and white (7) or pinkish-purple (7a) flowers. Prepare as Chickweed.

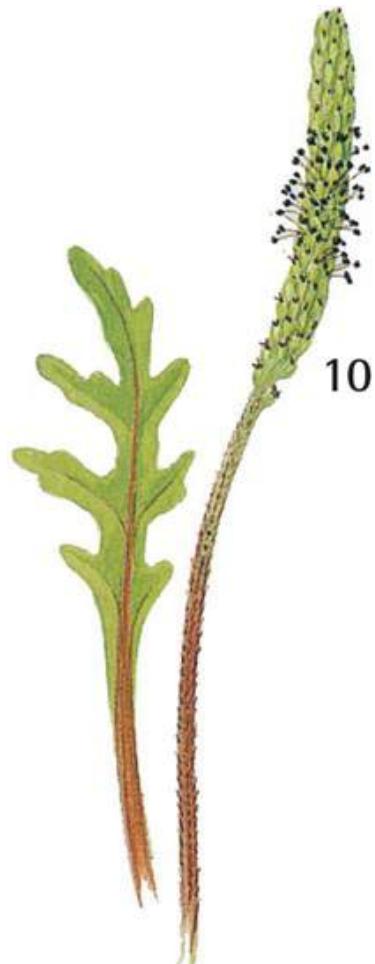


8

**8 Stinging Nettles** (*Urtica*) are abundant for most of the year. Look for the toothed, narrow oval leaves covered in stinging hairs and the spikes of green flowers. Pick young growth or young plants 15-20cm (6-8in) high—BOIL for minimum six minutes to destroy the formic acid in the hairs. Leaves can be dried and stored; crushed stems provide fibres for rope.

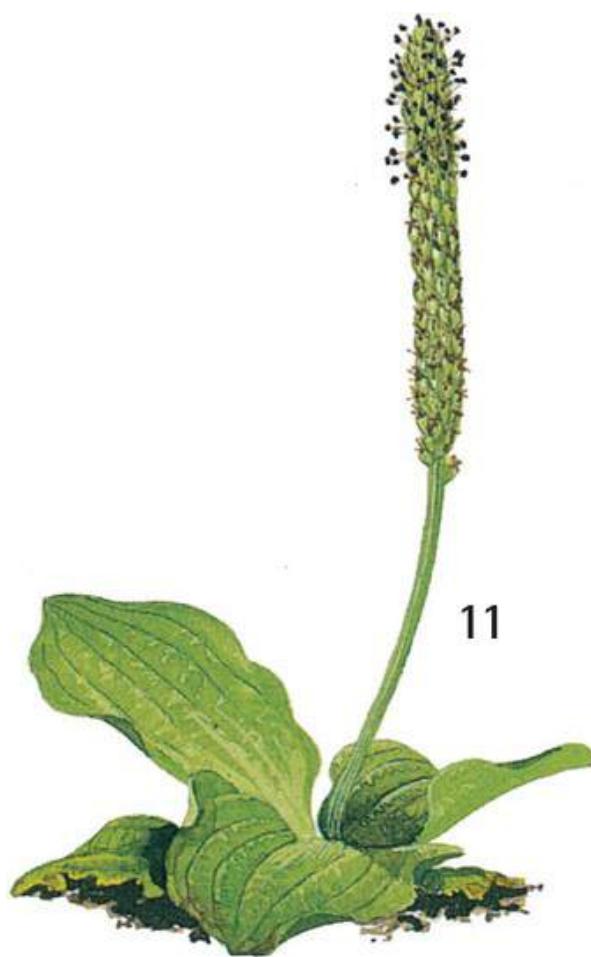


**9 Plantains** (*Plantago*) are common in most areas. Ribwort or English Plantain (*Plantago lanceolata*) has spear-shaped leaves and much shorter flower-spikes than the Greater Plantain; it likes dry ground. Prepare as Greater Plantain.



10

**10 Buck's-horn Plantain** (*Plantago coronopus*) is small, star-shaped, with narrow, jagged leaves and shorter flower-spikes; in dry sandy and rocky places, often near the sea. Prepare as Greater Plantain.



11

**11 Greater or Rat's-tail Plantain** (*P. major*) has broad, oval leaves and distinctive upright spikes of tiny yellowish-green and brown flowers; in waste and grassy places. Prepare the rather bitter young leaves like spinach; use their expressed juice for wounds, or a decoction of the whole plant for chest complaints.

## FLOWERS

The flowers of some plants are edible. These include limes or basswoods, roses, hops, elder, primrose and camomile. But they are only a seasonal supply and contain few nutrients compared with other parts of the plant. They are best used for teas and in medicinal infusions.

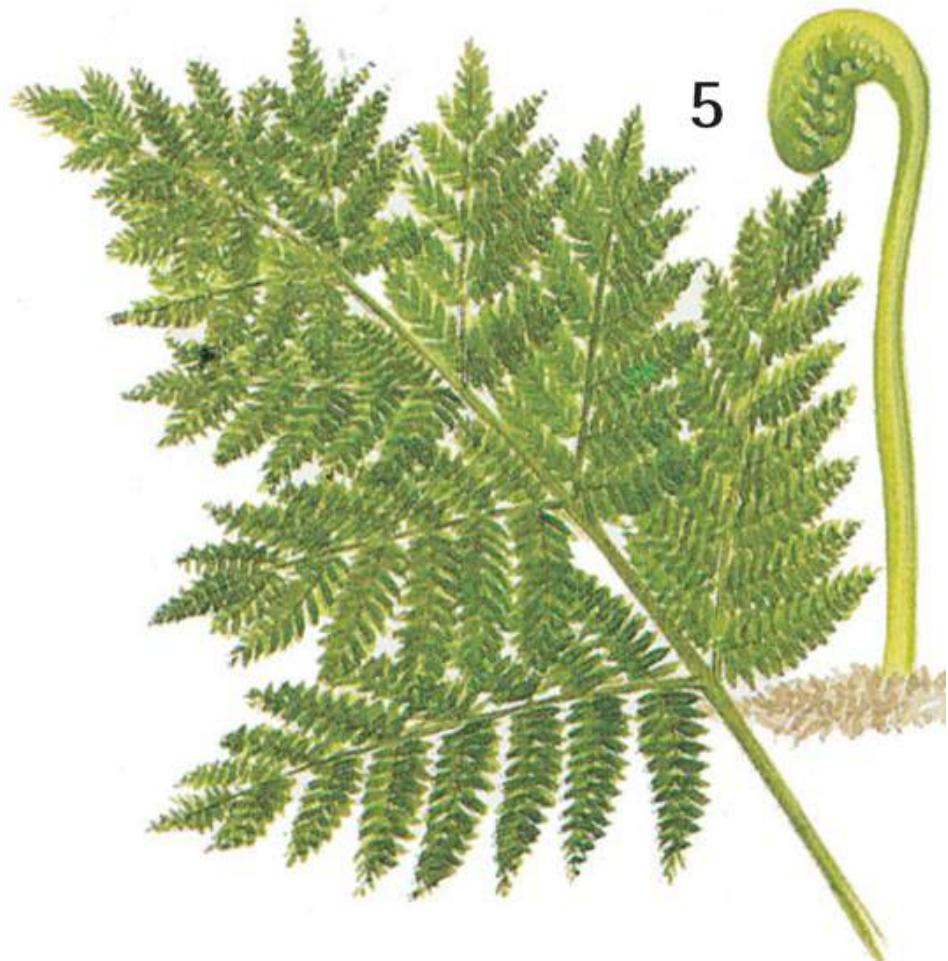


**1 Galingale, Nutgrass or Chufa** (*Cyperus*) grows to 1.5m (5ft), with three-angled stems, long, strap-like leaves and a forking, clustered olive-brown flowerhead turning yellow with fruit; in and by fresh water almost everywhere. Peel and boil its nutty tubers, or dry and grind for flour or a coffee substitute.

**2 Cat's-tail or Reedmace** (*Typha*) grows to 2-5m (6-15ft), with long, narrow, greyish leaves and a conspicuous, dark brown, sausage-shaped flowerhead; in and by fresh water. The rootstock and stems are edible raw or boiled; cook leaves like spinach and young shoots like asparagus. The pollen can be mixed with water to make a dough and baked or cooked on a griddle or the end of a stick.

**3 Reeds** (*Phragmites*) grow to 4m (13ft), with greyish-green leaves and spreading, brownish-purple flowerheads on tall canes, in and by fresh water almost everywhere. Cook the edible root, punctured canes exude an edible, sugar-rich gum.

**4 Flowering Rush** (*Butomus umbellatus*) grows to 1.5m (5ft), with very long, strap-like, three-angled leaves arising from the roots and pink, three-petaled flowers; in and by fresh water in Eurasia. Peel and boil the edible rootstock.



**5 Bracken** (*Pteridum aquilinum*) is common almost everywhere often in large clumps. Bracken is poisonous but can be used as a decoction to get rid of intestinal worms. You can only do this once. The roots are edible boiled or roasted.

**Many familiar kitchen herbs grow wild. Their smells help to identify them. They can be dried and will keep well—but do not dry them in direct sunlight or they lose their essential oils.**



6

**6 Tansy** (*Tanacetum vulgare*) grows to 90cm (3ft), with toothed dark green, feathery leaflets and a cluster of button like, bright yellow flowers, in waste and grassy places. Strong-smelling, with a hot, bitter taste. Use sparingly as a potherb, poisonous in quantity, leaves and flowers make a wormifuge tea. Its smell keeps flies away.

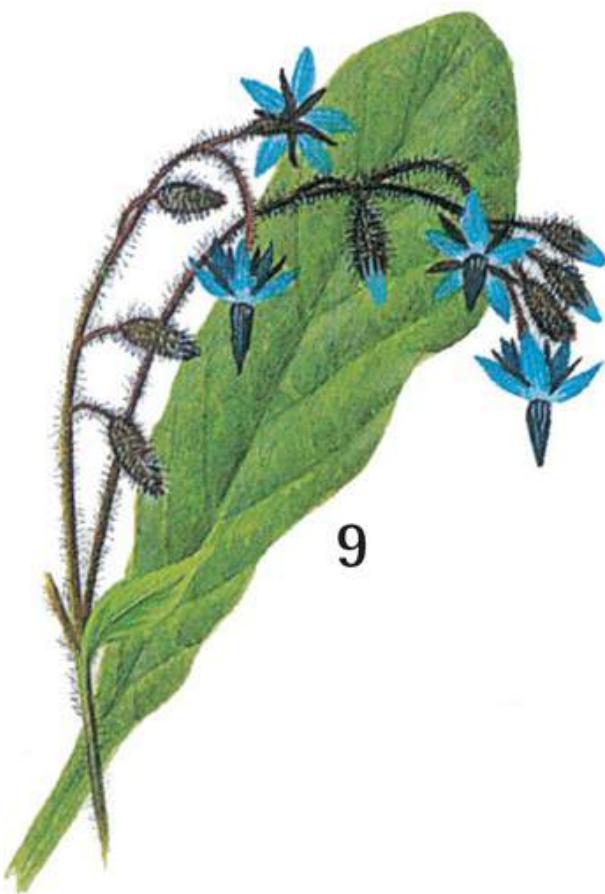


7

**7 Marjoram** (*Origanum vulgare*) is slightly downy and grows to 60cm (2ft), with small, oval, stalked leaves and clusters of small purplish-pink flowers; in warmer, dry, grassy places in Eurasia, introduced elsewhere. A sweet-tasting herb for stews; use an infusion for coughs and digestive complaints; chewed leaves relieve toothache.

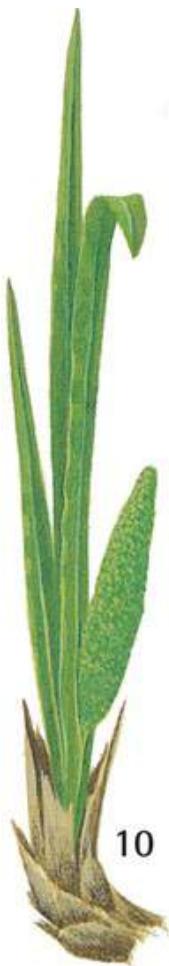


**8 Ramsons** (*Allium ursinum*) is one of many wild garlics. It has broad, light green leaves like a Lily-of-the-valley and a cluster of white star-like flowers at the top of the stem; in woody places in Eurasia, revealed by its strong garlicky smell. Use any part as a potherb.



9

**9 Borage** (*Borago officinalis*) is round-stemmed, hairy, to 30-60cm (1-2ft), with pointed oval leaves, blue star-shaped flowers and a cucumber smell; in waste grassy places in Eurasia. All parts are edible raw or cooked, use an infusion for fevers. The stems produce salt when cooked.



**10 Sweet Flag** (*Acorus calamus*) grows to 1.3m (4ft), with three-angled stems, wavy-margined, spear-shaped, strap-like leaves and a finger-like flower spike arising from the stem; in and by fresh water. Slice the pungent, aromatic rootstock and boil down to a syrup.



**11 Wild Angelicas** (*Angelica*) grow to 1.5m (5ft), with hollow stems, sometimes purplish, broad, toothed leaves in opposite pairs and heads of tiny greenish, white or pink flowers; in damp grassy and woody places. The aromatic leaves, stems and roots are edible boiled; use an infusion for colds or externally for stiffness. Do NOT confuse with Water Hemlock.

---

## **ROOTS AND TUBERS**

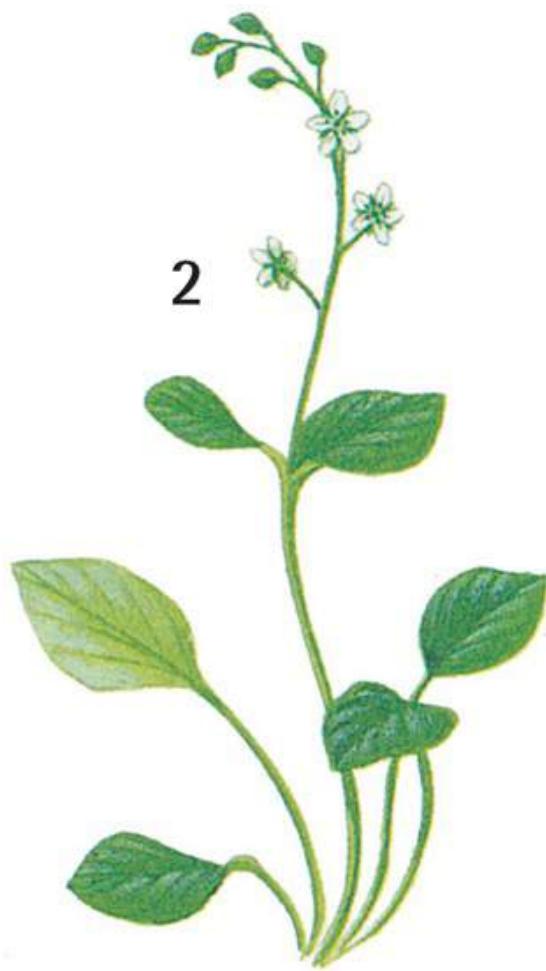
---

**Roots and tubers are invaluable survival food. They are full of nutrition, particularly starch. All roots should be thoroughly cooked if in any doubt as to their identity.**

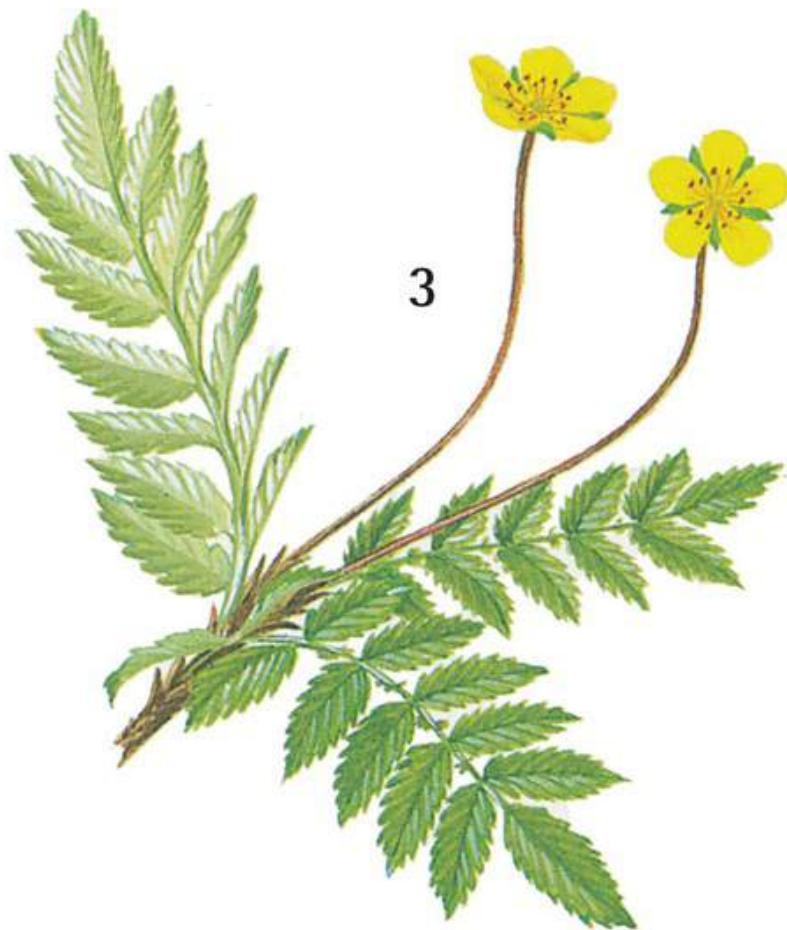


1

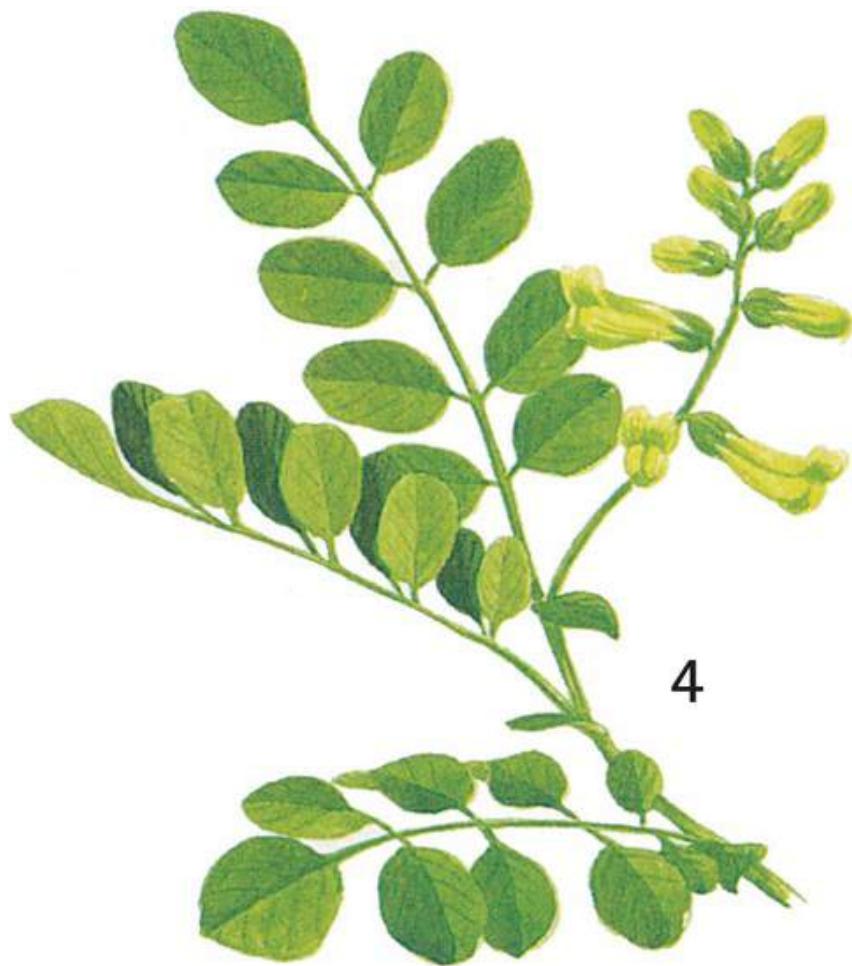
**1 Bistorts or Knotweeds** (*Polygonum*) average 30-60cm (1-2ft) with narrow, triangular leaves and a slender spike of pink or white flowers; in grassy and woody places, into the far north. Soak roots to remove bitterness, then roast.



**2 Spring Beauties** (*Montia*) average 15-30cm (6-12in) with a pair of oval, long-stalked leaves halfway up the stem and small white or pink flowers; in disturbed, especially sandy, places. Dig out tubers with a sharp stick, peel and boil. Young leaves are edible and supply vitamins A and C.

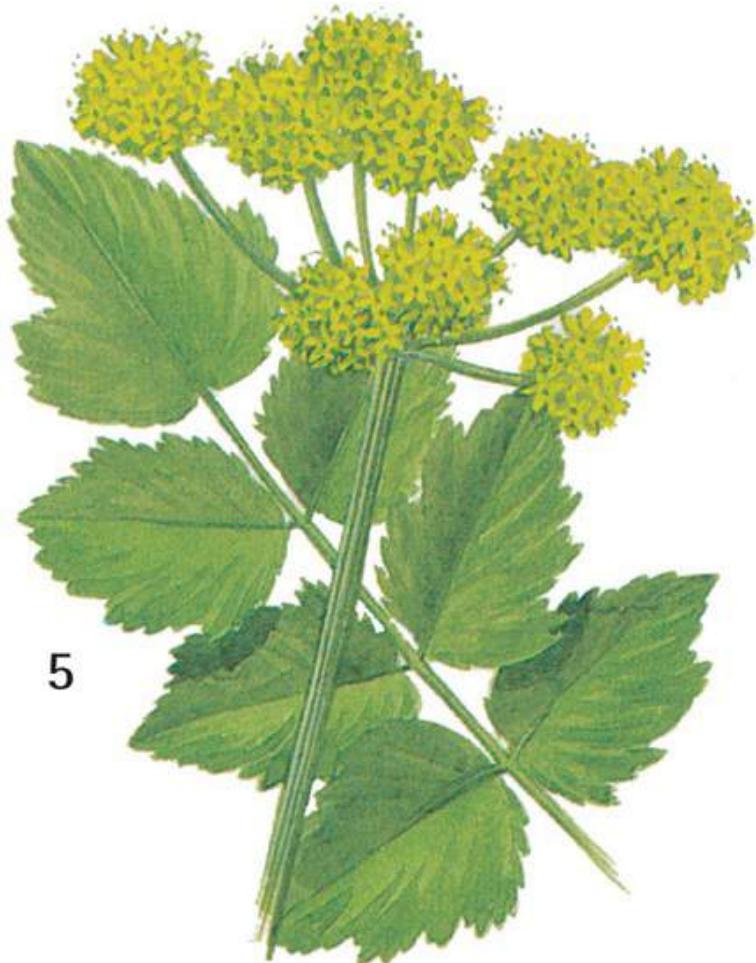


**3 Silverweed** (*Potentilla anserina*) is small, creeping, with silver-white undersides to its segmented leaves and solitary, five-petalled yellow flowers; in damp places. The fleshy roots are edible raw but better cooked. Use an infusion of the leaves externally for haemorrhoids and internally for digestive complaints.



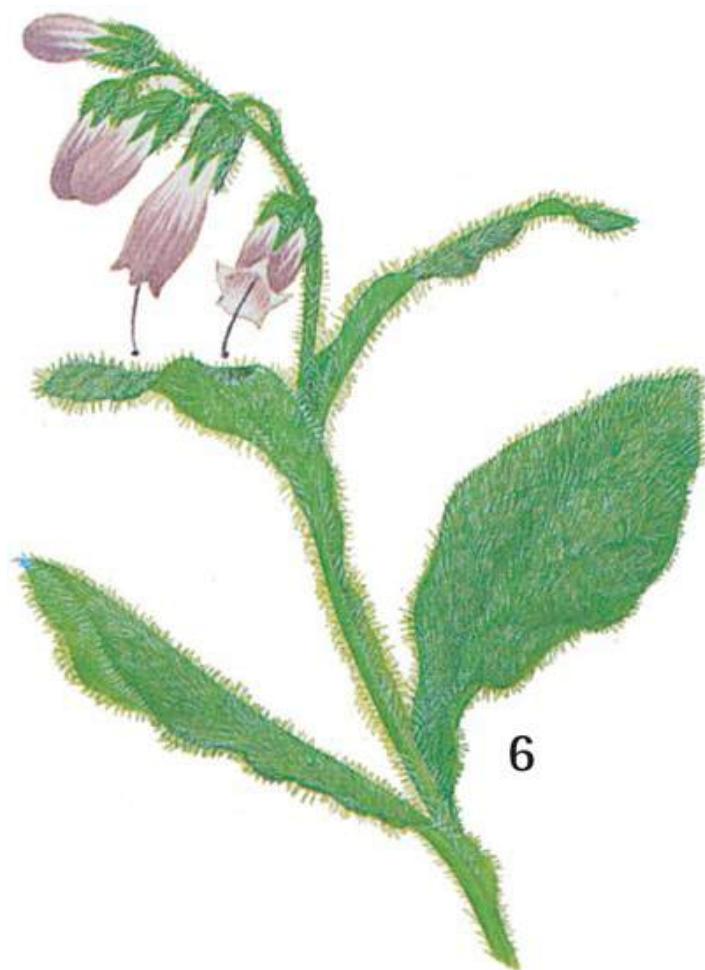
4

**4 Sweet Vetch or Liquorice Root** (*Astragalus glycyphyllos*) is straggling, to 30-60cm (1-2ft), with small oval leaves in opposite pairs and greenish-cream flowers; in grassy, scrubby and sandy places. The root is edible raw, tasting of carrots when cooked.



5

**5 Wild Parsnips** (*Pastinaca sativa*) are hairy, pungent, averaging 1m (3ft), with toothed leaflets and dense heads of tiny yellow flowers; in waste and grassy places. The roots are edible raw or cooked.

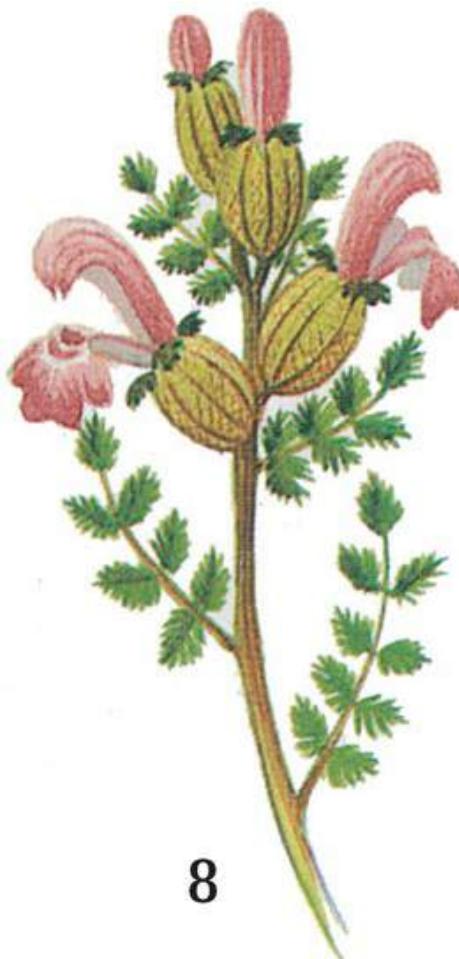


6

**6 Comfrey** (*Symphytum officinale*) is coarse, hairy, growing to 1m (3ft), with spear-shaped leaves tapering on to the stem and clusters of cream or mauve bell-shaped flowers; in ditches and damp places. The root is edible raw or cooked as a potato substitute. Its leaves are a source of tissue regrowth medicine. Other parts are medicinal (see [Natural Medicine in Health](#)). Do NOT confuse with Foxglove.



**7 Salsify or Oyster Plant** (*Tragopogon porrifolius*) averages 60-90cm (2-3ft), with long, grass-like leaves running down on to the stem and large, solitary, purple, dandelion like flowers; in dry waste places. The bulb-like root and young leaves are edible cooked.



8

**8 Woolly Lousewort** (*Pedicularis lanata*) is hairy, low-spreading, with rose-pink flowers and a yellow root edible raw or cooked; widespread on the northern American tundra. CAUTION: some other louseworts are poisonous.

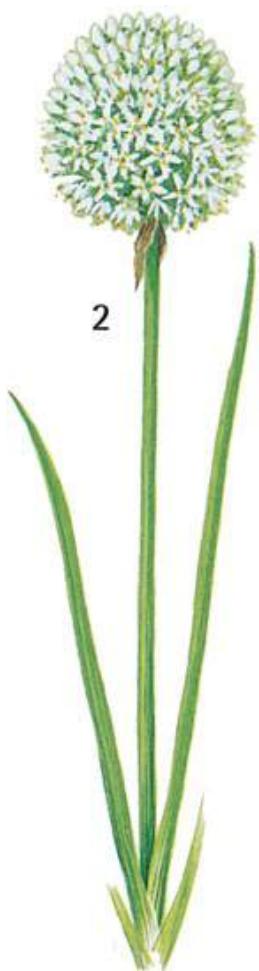
**Roots are at their starchiest between autumn and spring. In spring some of the starch converts into sugar to sustain new growth. Some edible roots can be several centimetres thick and a metre or more in length. Tubers are swollen, bulb-like roots—a large one may sustain a survivor for a long time. Don't forget edible bulbs, like the onion—but beware, some bulbs, including the Wild Onion-like Death Camas of North America are poisonous.**

Many roots are particularly tasty roasted. Parboil them until they are just becoming tender, then roast on hot stones in the embers of a fire. Some, including Galingale and Dandelion (see [here](#)), are fine substitutes for coffee when roasted and ground. Others, such as Wild Calla, can be ground and used as flour.

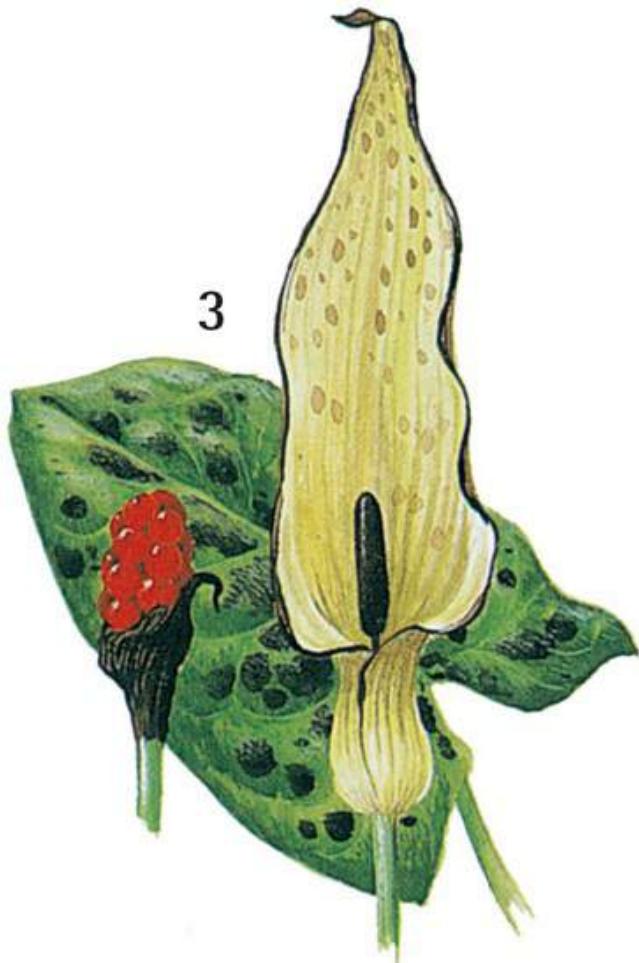
The root of Comfrey is particularly valuable. It is so rich in starch that after boiling it sets as hard as plaster of Paris and makes an ideal splinting agent for broken limbs.



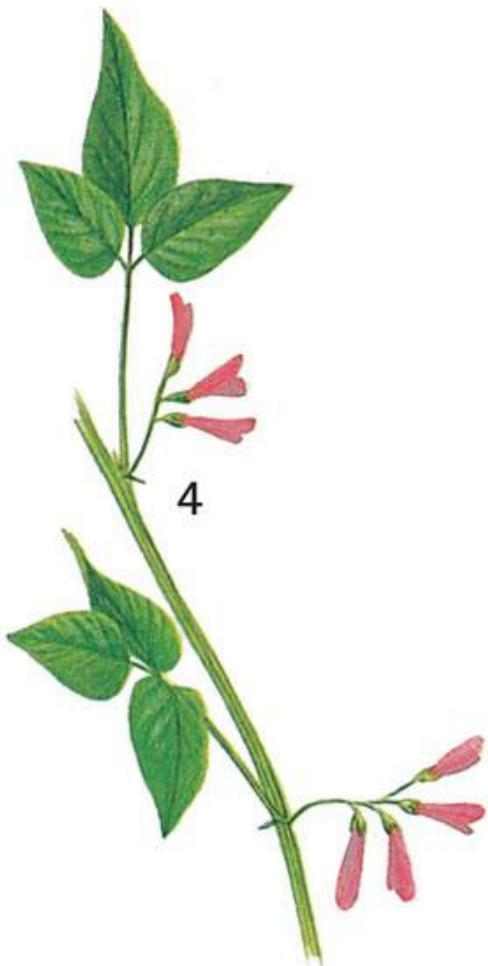
**1 Star of Bethlehem or Starflower** (*Ornithogalum umbellatum*) averages 10-30cm (4-12in), with grass-like leaves with a white midrib arising from the roots and white, six-petalled flowers, each petal green-striped; in grassy areas. The root is harmful raw and MUST be cooked. Avoid other parts.



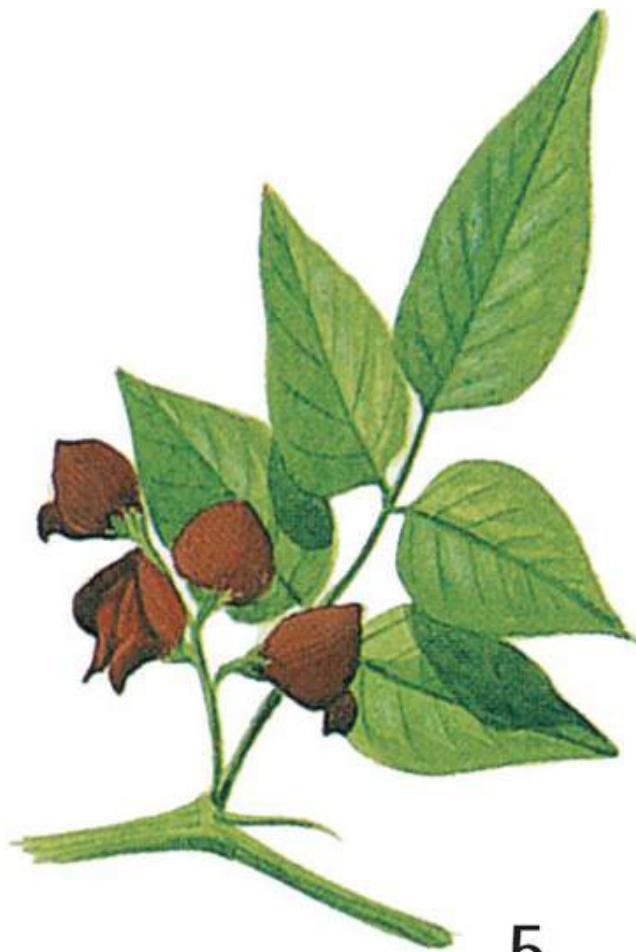
**2 Wild Onions** (*Allium*) occur in most parts, easily detectable by their smell. Long, grass-like leaves arise from the base; a cluster of six-petalled pink, purplish or white flowers tops the stem. The edible bulb may be up to 25cm (10in) underground.



**3 Lords and Ladies or Cuckoopint** (*Arum maculatum*) grows to 15-40cm (6-16in), with dark green, arrow-shaped, sometimes dark-spotted leaves and a purple finger-like flowering organ enclosed in a pale leaf-like hood from which red berries arise, in shady and woody places in Eurasia. The root is harmful raw and MUST be cooked. Do NOT eat any other part.

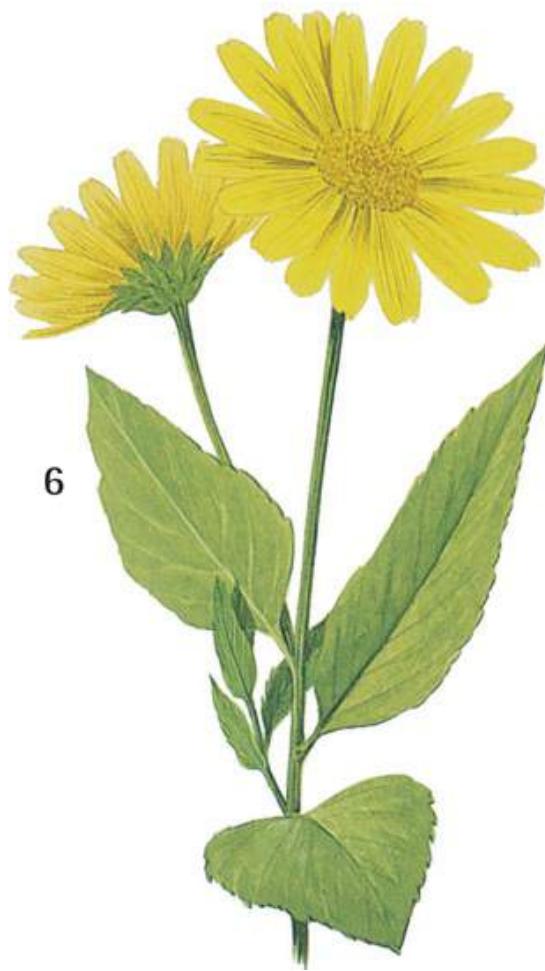


**4 Hog-peanut** (*Amphicarpa bracteata*) occurs in moist places in North America: twining, vine-like, thin-stemmed, with light green oval leaves and lilac to white flowers. Extract each seed from its brown pod (underground) and boil.



5

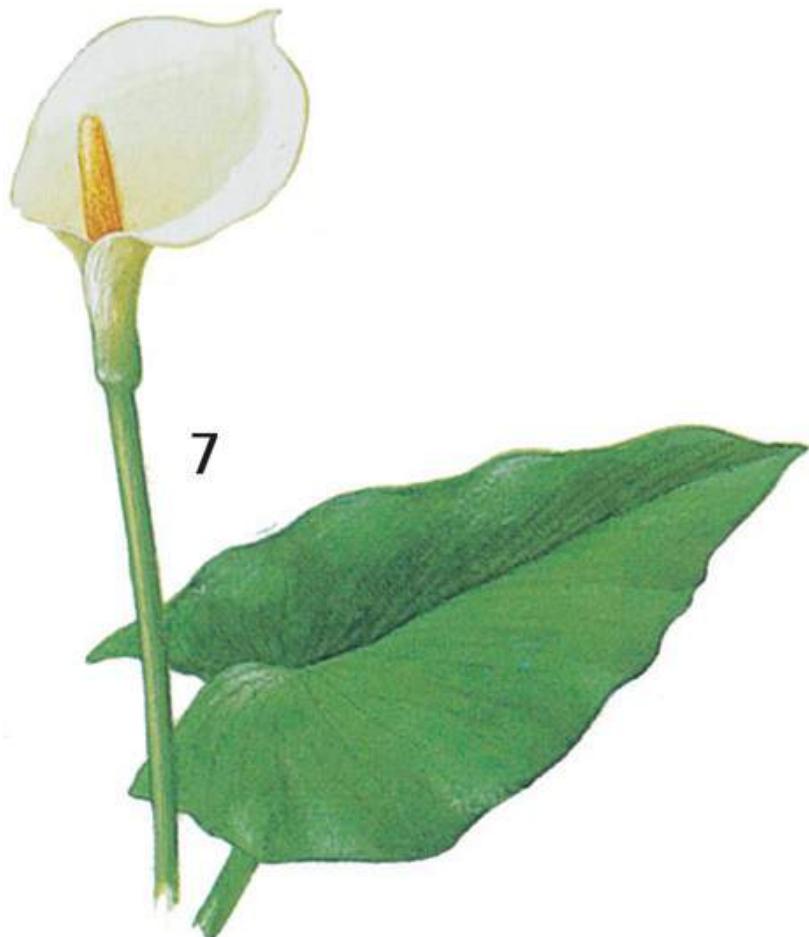
**5 Groundnut** (*Apio americana*) is small, vine-like, with oval, sharp-pointed light green leaflets and maroon to brownish flowers; in moist, usually woody places in North America. Peel the small tubers then roast or boil.



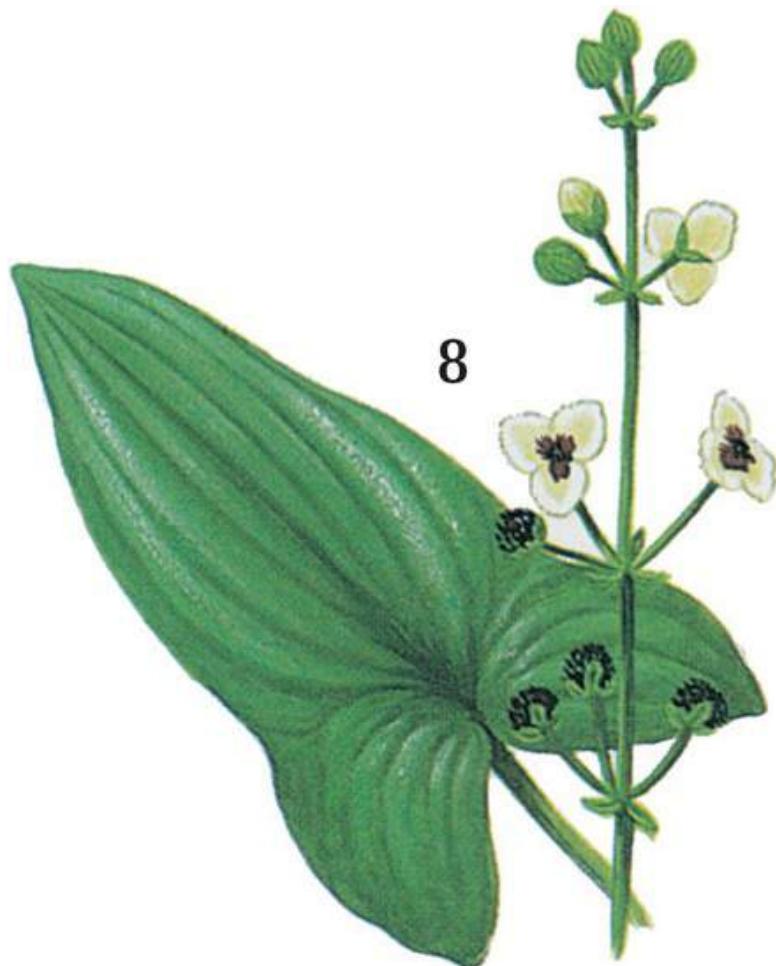
6

**6 Jerusalem Artichoke** (*Helianthus tuberosus*) resembles a Sunflower, very tall, hairy, with large, rough, oval leaves and large, disc-like yellow flowers; wild in waste ground in North America, widely introduced elsewhere. The cooked tubers are delicious. Do not peel them or you lose food value.

#### AQUATIC AND WATERSIDE ROOTS



**7 Wild Calla or Bog Arum** (*Calla palustris*) is small, with long-stalked, heart-shaped leaves and a greenish finger-like flowering organ enclosed in a leaf-like hood pale on the inside, from which red berries arise; always by water. The roots are harmful raw and MUST be cooked. AVOID OTHER PARTS.



**8 Arrowheads** (*Sagittaria*) are aquatic, averaging 30-90cm (1-3ft), with large leaves varying from sharply arrow-shaped to spear-shaped and sometimes strap-like below the water, and flowers with three rounded petals; always by fresh water. Tubers are edible raw but much better cooked.



**9 Water Chestnut** (*Trapa natans*) is aquatic, with diamond-shaped floating leaves and divided, feathery submerged ones, and small white flowers; widespread in fresh water in Eurasia. The grey, hard 2.5cm (1in), two-horned seeds are edible raw or roasted.

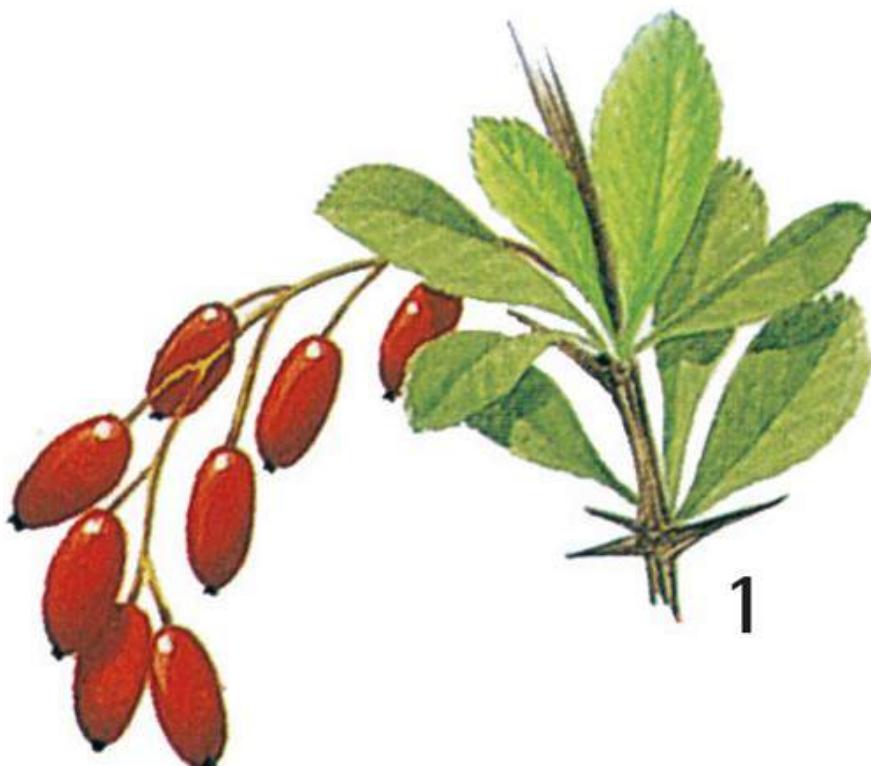
It is best to cook all roots before eating, as some are harmful raw—not just well known ones, like the tropical cassava and taro, but many temperate species. Most roots will need cooking to make them tender enough to eat. Scrub in clean water and boil until soft. Some potato-like roots have their vitamins and minerals near the surface of the skin and so should NOT be peeled. Roots will cook more rapidly if you cube them first. Use a sharpened stick to test them. If it goes in easily they are ready.

---

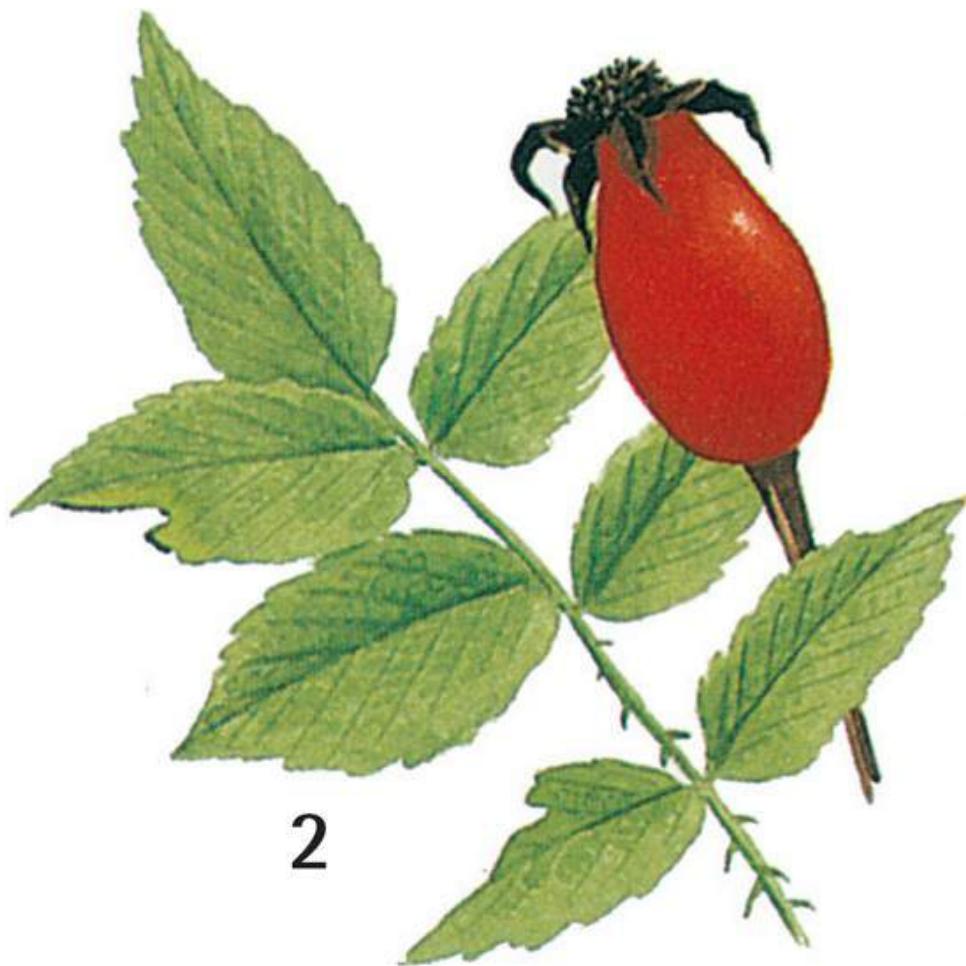
## FRUIT

---

From summer on, fruits and nuts are one of the survivor's most important foods. Many will be familiar in their cultivated forms or from the traditional hedgerow harvest. Some are abundant, even on the tundra of the far north.



**1 Barberry** (*Berberis vulgaris*), found in scrub and dry moorland grows to 3m (9ft), with oval leaves, yellow flowers and fierce thorns in groups of three on its stems. Its bright red, very acid berries are rich in vitamin C.



2

**2 Wild Roses** (*Rosa*) are found in most temperate areas. They resemble straggly, unshowy garden roses with thorned stems and simple white or pink flowers. Their hips (seedcases) contain more vitamin C than any other fruit. Ensure the seeds are removed. Chew to extract the juices and obtain maximum vitamin content, or crush and boil in water until only a syrup is left.

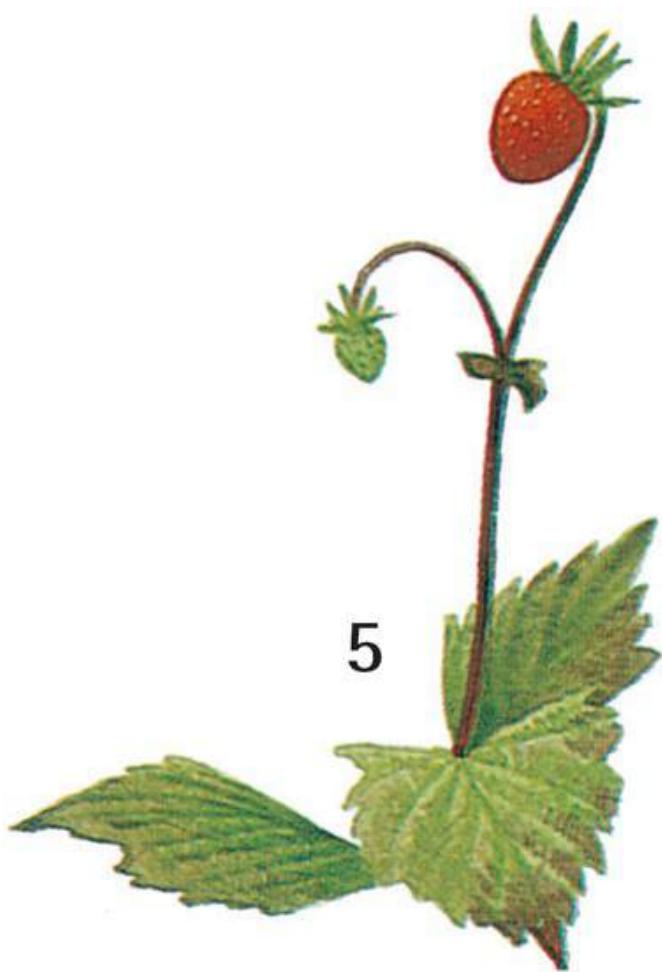


**3 Brambles (Blackberries) and Wild Raspberries** (*Rubus*) occur in scrub, woods and on open ground; leaves toothed and flowers white or sometimes pinkish in blackberries. Look for straggly bushes with arching thorny stems and juicy segmented berries, which ripen from green through red to purplish black berries, borne in late summer. Raspberries, less straggly and with fewer prickles, ripen to a rich red earlier in the summer. All are edible raw. Bramble canes can be used to pull rabbits out of sleeper holes.



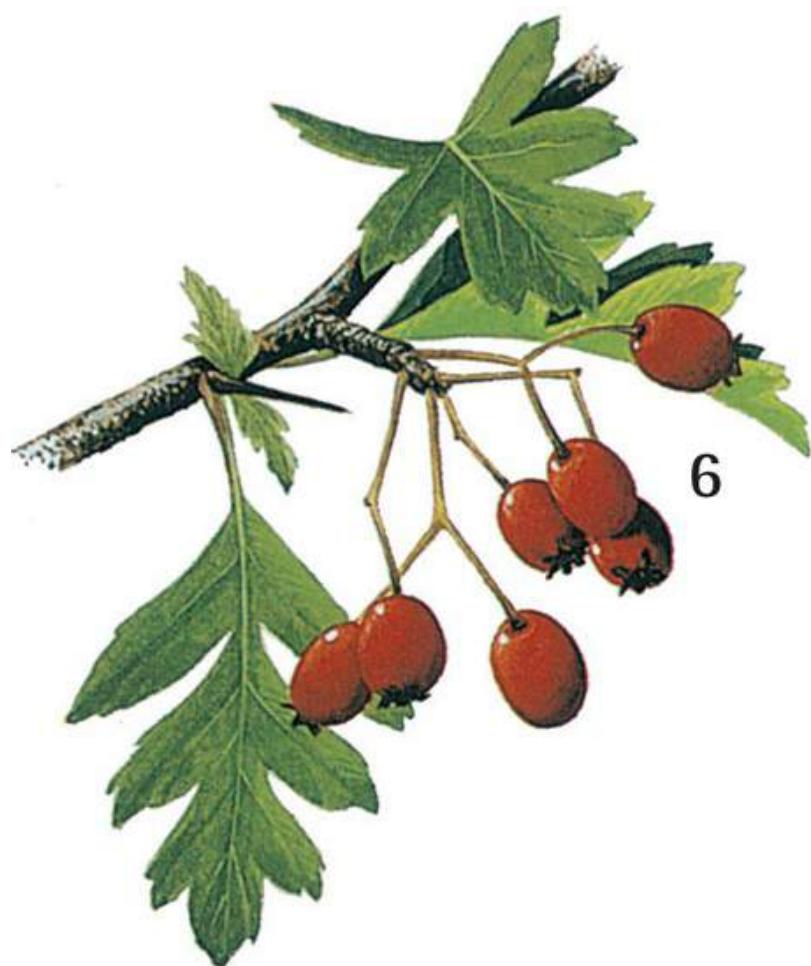
4

**4 Dewberries** (Rubus) are like brambles but their berries are smaller and with fewer segments than the blackberry.



5

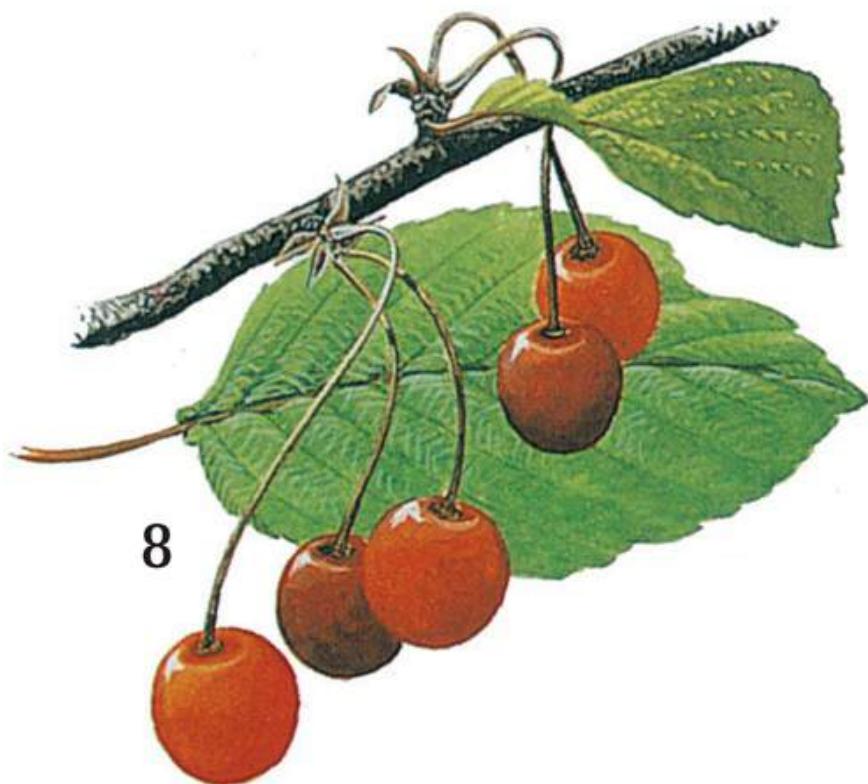
**5 Wild Strawberries** (*Fragaria*) are small, scrambling plants of dry grassy places and woodland whose fruits resemble small cultivated strawberries. You may have to look under the leaves to find the sweet, delicious fruit. Some kinds occur high in mountains. The fruits are rich in Vitamin C and best eaten fresh.



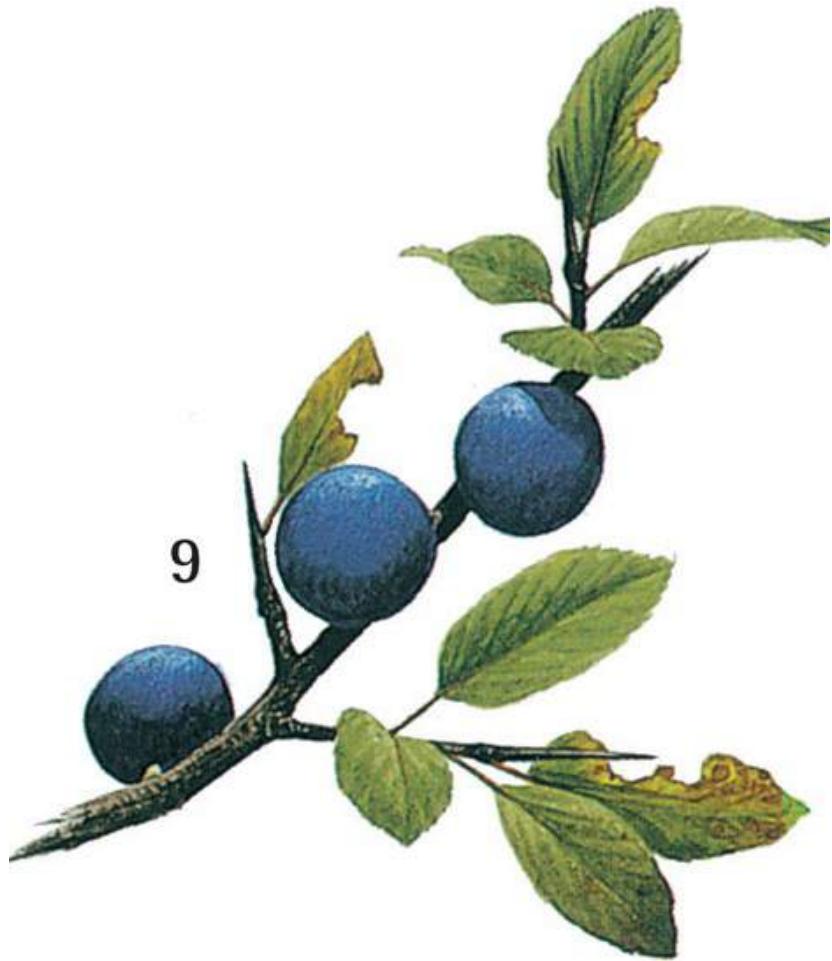
**6 Hawthorns** (*Crataegus*) are spiny shrubs or small trees found in scrub and waste places, with deeply lobed leaves, clusters of white or pink flowers and, in autumn, reddish fruits. Their flesh is creamy and edible raw. Young spring shoots are edible, too.



**7 Crab Apples** (*Malus*) are short, rather spiny trees of scrubland and woods, with oval, toothed, often downy leaves, usually reddish-brown twigs and white, pink or red flowers. Fruit, often very bitter, looks like the cultivated apples. It can be sliced and dried for storage. Too many of the yellowish-green (sometimes red), pectin-rich apples will produce diarrhoea and are best cooked with other fruits.

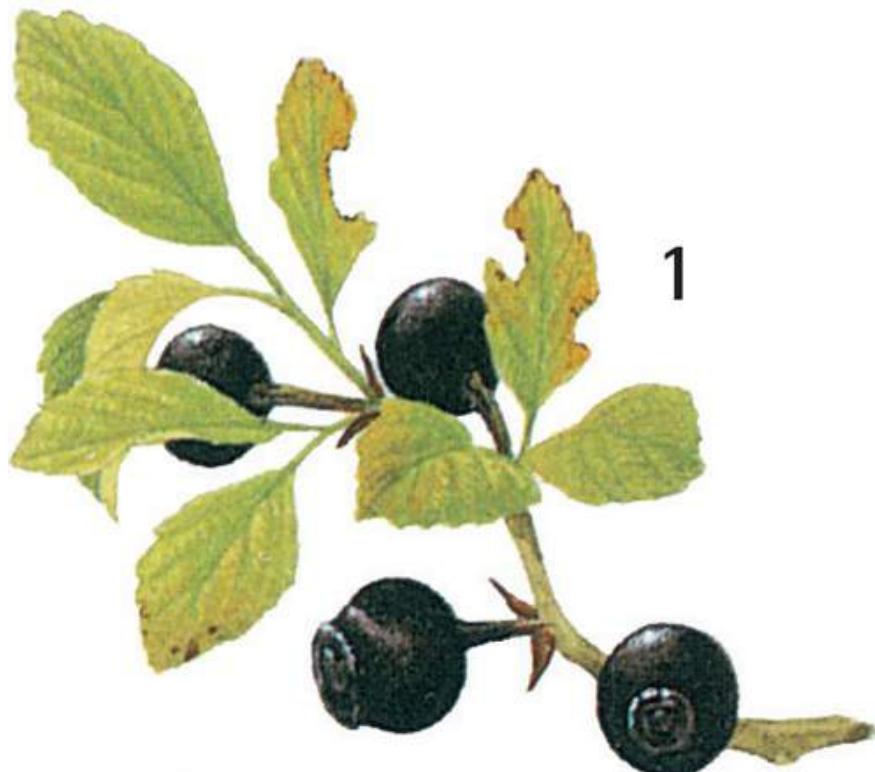


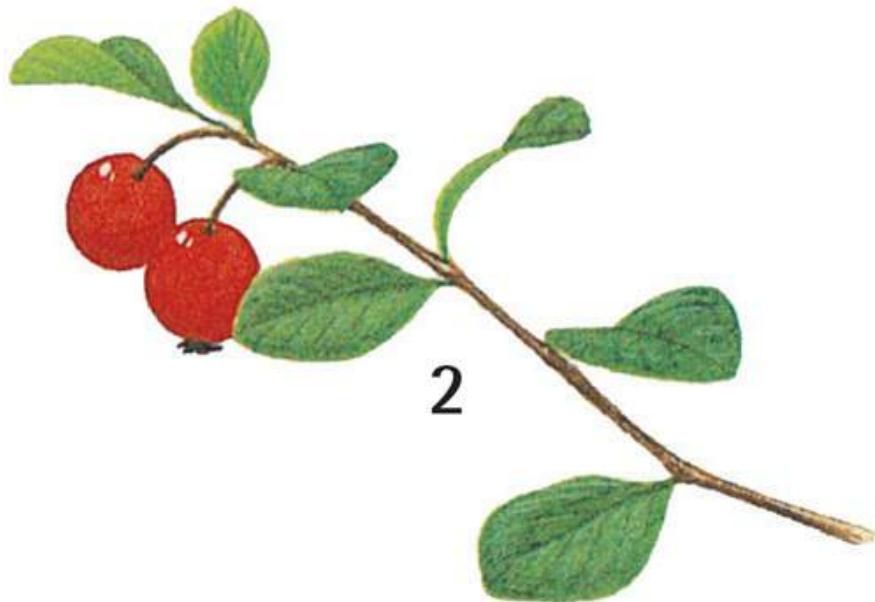
**8 Wild Cherries** (*Prunus*) occur in woodland in most areas, growing to 24m (80ft) with small, pale green to reddish leaves, usually shiny reddish-brown bark, and white or pinkish flowers. The fruits are red or black depending on the kind; some kinds taste sour.



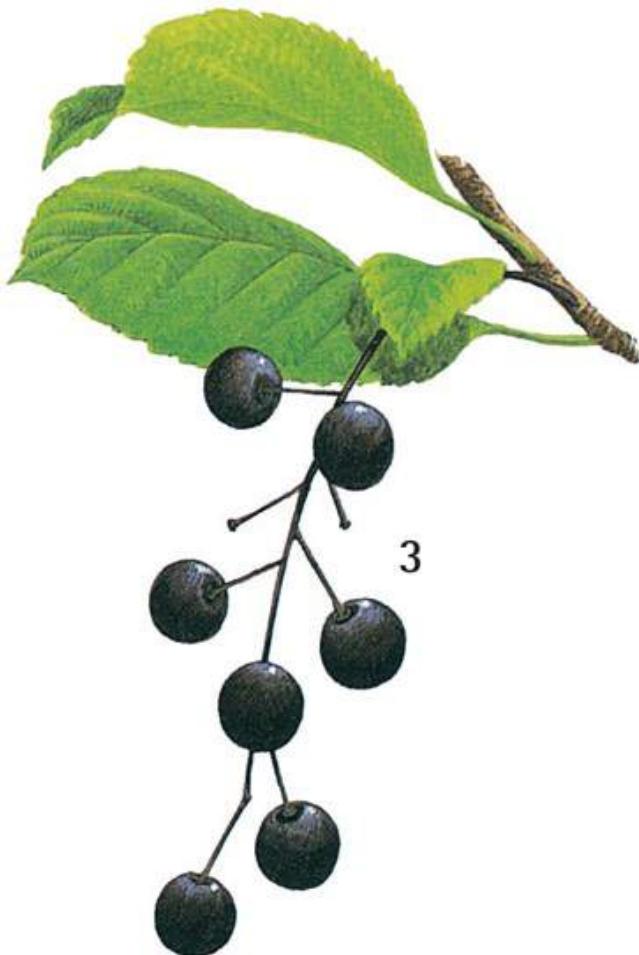
**9 Blackthorn or Sloe** (*Prunus spinosa*) is a large bush, growing to 4m (13ft) with dark brown twigs, long thorns, oval leaves and white flowers, in woodland and scrub over Eurasia. The small blue-black fruits are very acid and better cooked down to a jelly.

Fruits supply essential food values, particularly vitamins A, B2 and C. They are the staple diet of many animals and birds—so, where you find fruit, you will find animals too.

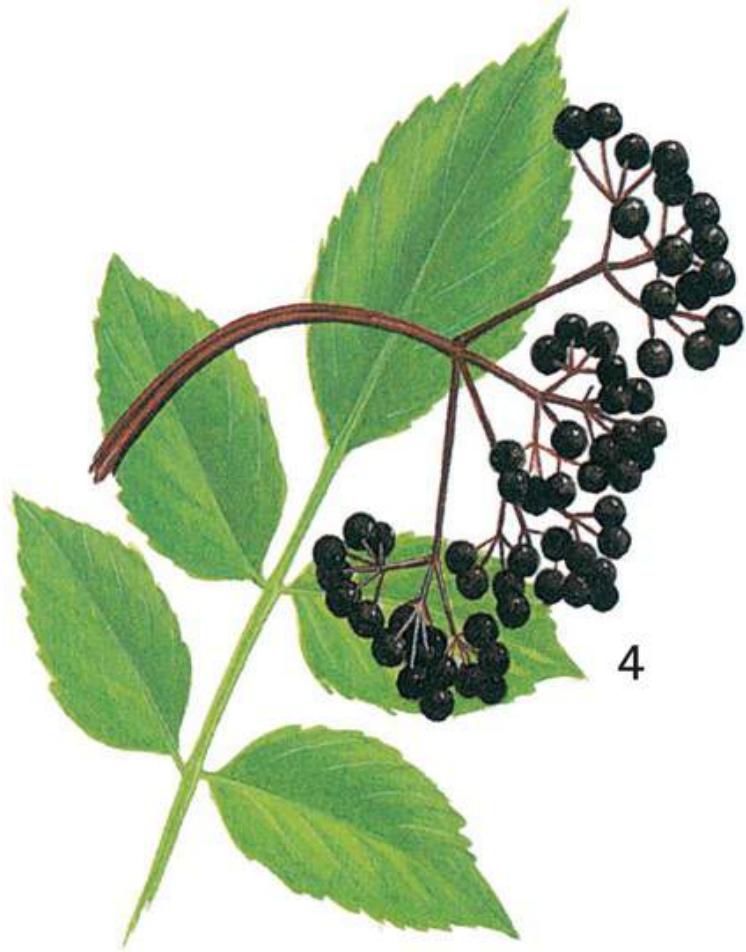




**1 and 2 Bilberries, Cranberries, Cowberries and Huckleberries** (*Vaccinium* and *Gaylussacia*) are abundant on northern moors, bogs tundra, and sometimes in woods. Variable in size, but all are woody and shrubby with smallish oval leaves and small globe-shaped flowers varying from white to pink or greenish. The cranberry prefers marshy ground, the closely related, ground-hugging Cowberry (or Mountain Cranberry, 2) grows on moors. The spherical berries may be black (Bilberry, 1), dark blue (Huckleberry), mottled red (Cranberry) or red (Cowberry). They are edible fresh, cooked or dried for storage like raisins. The woody stems make useful fuel.



**3 Chokeberries** (*Pyrus*) are North American shrubs growing up to 2.4m (8ft) but usually much less, with spear-shaped, finely toothed leaves and five-petalled, pinkish or white flowers; in wet or dry woody areas, or on swampy ground. The red, purplish or black spherical berries, which grow in clusters, are excellent raw, dried or jellied. Do not confuse with the poisonous Buckthorns (*Rhamnus*).



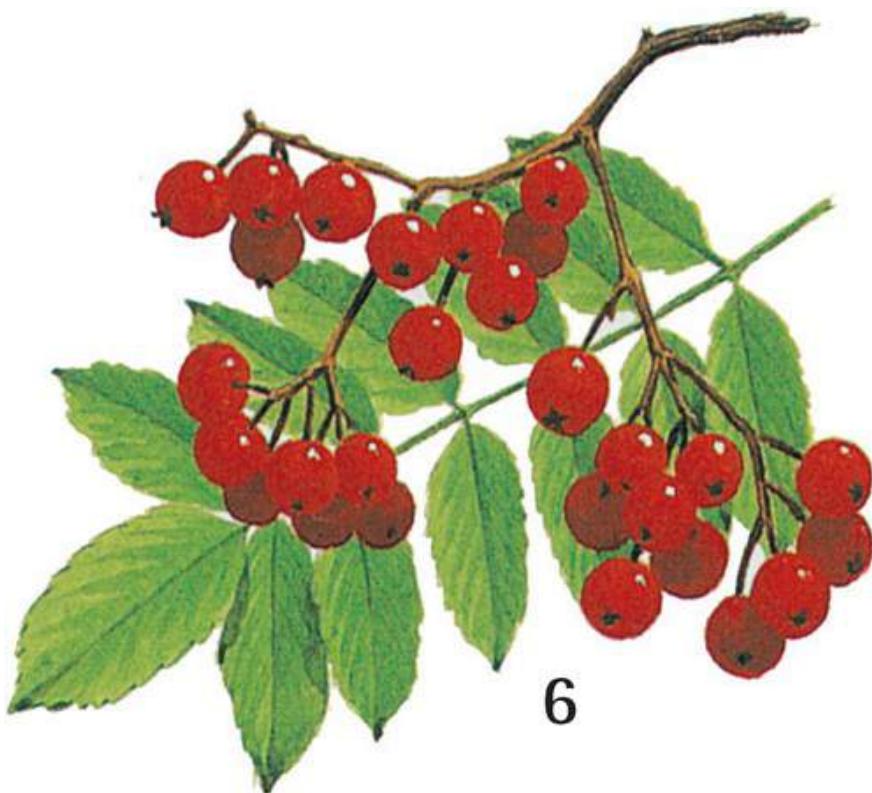
4

**4 European Elder** (*Sambucus nigra*) occurs in scrub and woods, growing to 7m (23ft) with spear-shaped toothed leaves and clusters of tiny whitish flowers. The bunches of small purplish-black berries are best cooked down to a syrup. There are similar edible elders in other parts, but avoid the smaller ones as their red berries may be toxic.



5

**5 Juniper** (*Juniperus communis*) occurs in mountainous and northern areas, a woody shrub 5m (15ft) tall or a small prostrate bush with grey-green, needle-like leaves. Avoid young green berries; the ripe blue-black ones are best cooked with other food.



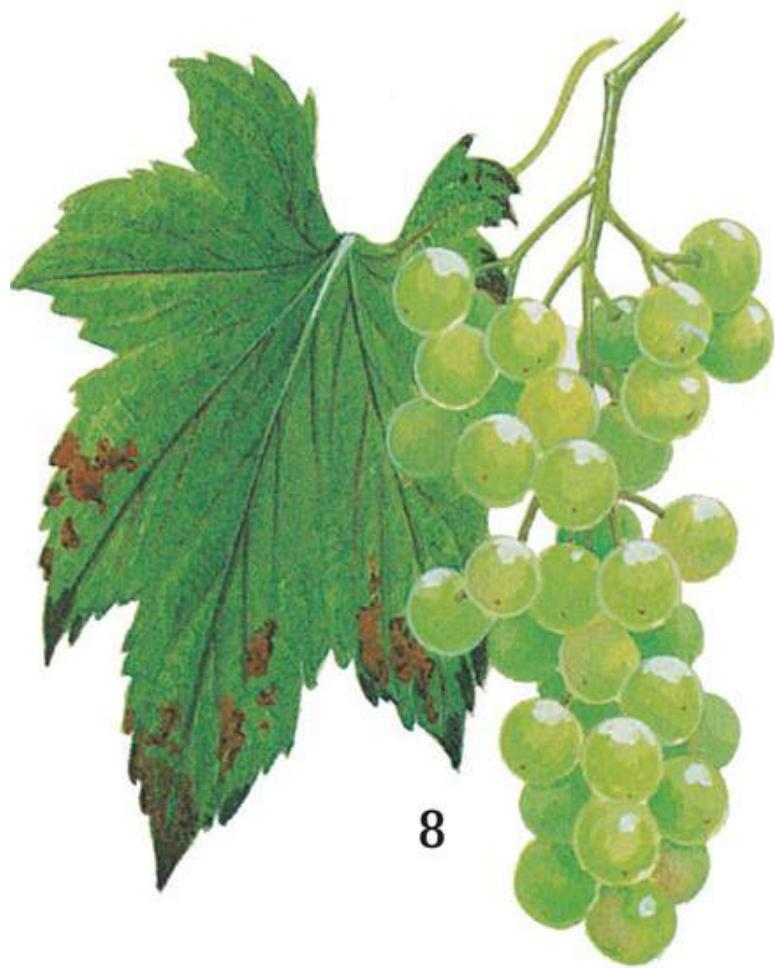
6

**6 Rowans or Mountain Ashes** (*Sorbus*) are common in woody and rocky places, growing to 15m (50ft) with smooth greyish bark, small toothed leaflets, white flowers and clusters of small orange berries. These are edible but sharp-tasting raw and can be cooked down to a jelly.



7

**7 Wild Mulberries** (*Morus*) average 6-20m (18-60ft), with oval leaves, sometimes deeply lobed, flowers on catkins, the red or black fruits look like large blackberries, 5-7cm (2-3in) long. They are edible raw. Found in woody areas in many temperate parts.



**8 Wild Grapes** (*Vitis*) are straggly, high-climbing, with large, heart-shaped coarsely toothed leaves, greenish flowers and bunches of amber to purplish grapes. Very widespread in the warmer parts of the world. As well as the fruit, young leaves are excellent boiled.

#### PRESERVING FRUIT

Fresh fruits soon go off, but they can be kept by making them into jellies. Most kinds contain an ingredient called pectin, which reacts with the acid in the fruit to help it settle into a jelly after boiling.

#### TO MAKE JELLY

First boil the fruit and then simmer until mushy. Some fruits have less pectin than others. These can be supplemented by adding another fruit rich in pectin, such as Crab Apple. The boiling action kills off any bacteria that would turn the fruit. Allow to cool and keep in a clean, if possible airtight, container.

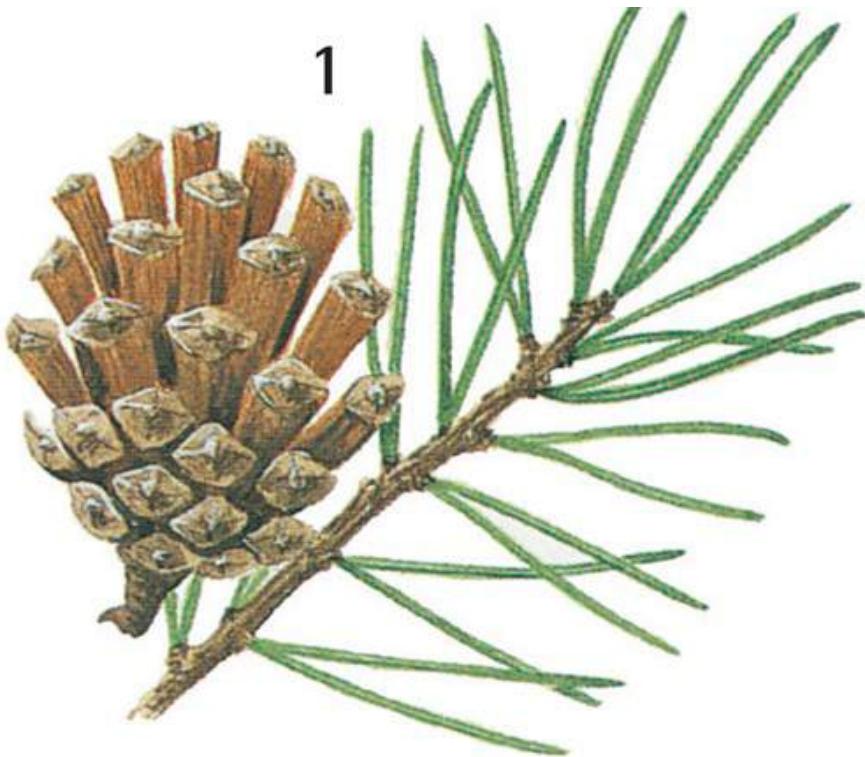
Some fruits can be dried for storage, although this will take a week to ten days. Lay them in a single layer on a sheet, not in direct sunlight, and protect them from any moisture—both rain and dew.

---

## NUTS

---

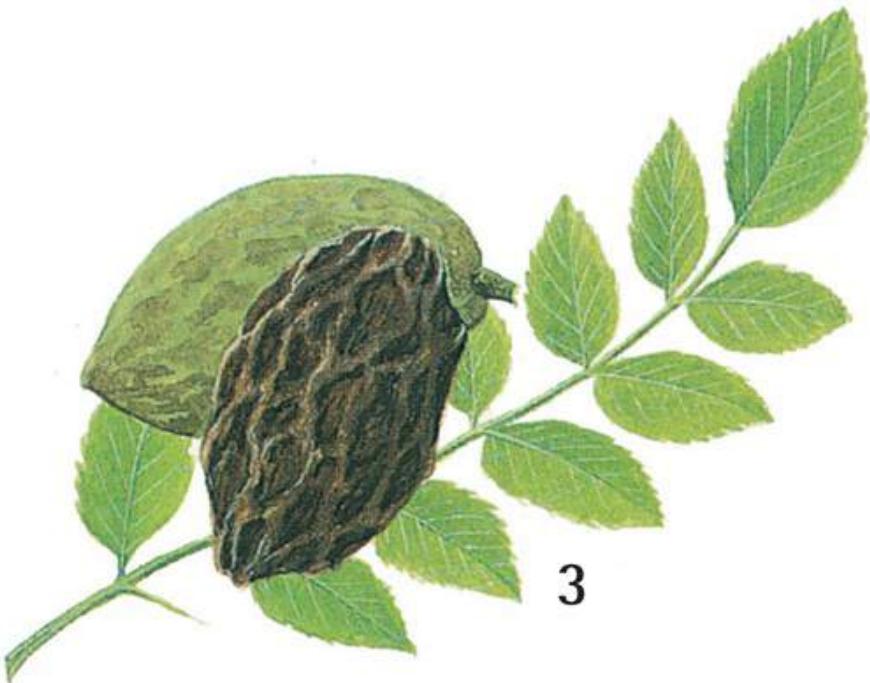
Nuts supply proteins and fat.



**1 Pines** (*Pinus*) are the familiar cone-bearing trees with clusters of slim evergreen needles; in most temperate and northerly areas. Heat mature cones to release the seeds. They are tasty raw but delicious roasted. Roasted nuts can be ground for flour and can be stored. Young catkin-like cones are just about edible boiled. Needles and bark are also edible.

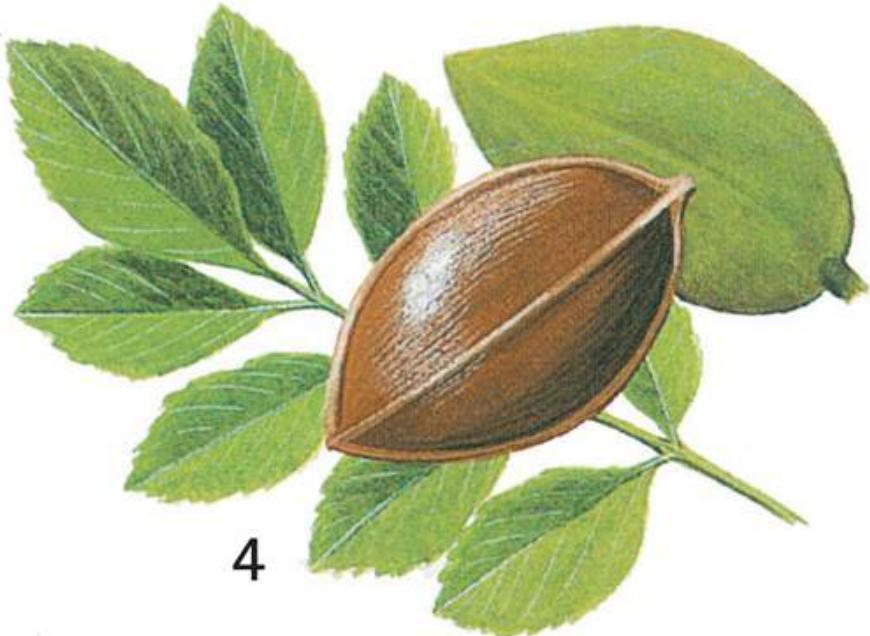


**2 Walnuts** (*Juglans*) grow to 30m (90ft), with leaves composed of many toothed, narrow leaflets and furrowed bark. The blackish brown nuts are at first enclosed in a thick green husk. In most temperate areas. One tree can yield up to 58kg (140lb) of nuts. Walnuts contain 18% protein, 60% fat and provide 6600 calories per kilo (3000 per pound)!



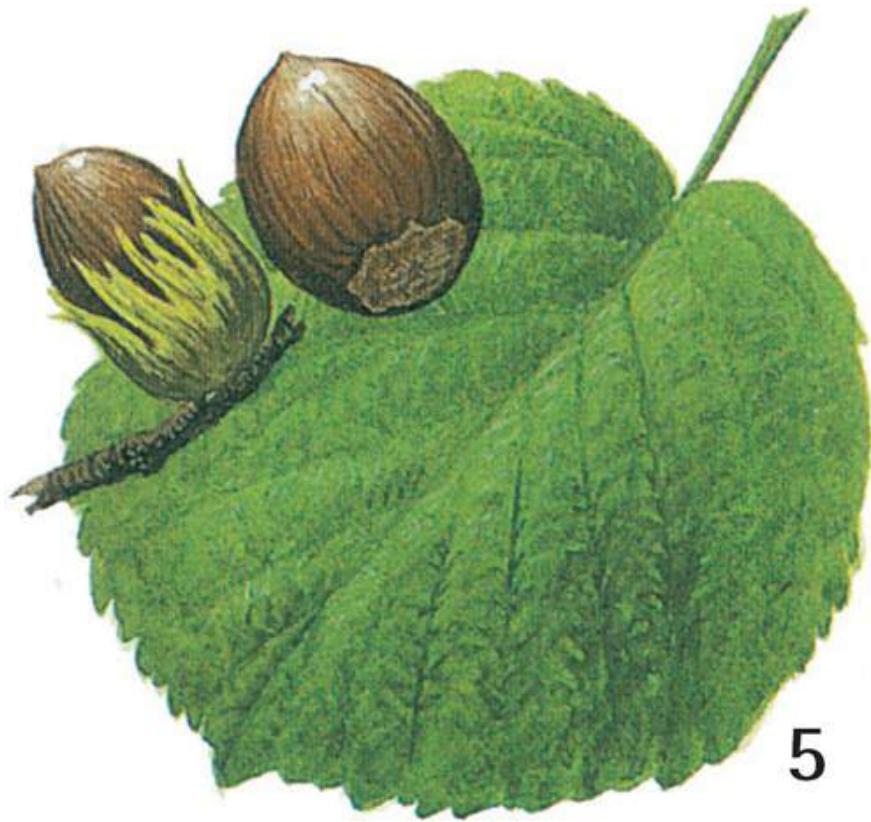
3

**3 Butternut** (*Juglans cinerea*) is another North American relative, smaller, with more greyish bark and oblong, sticky fruit husks.



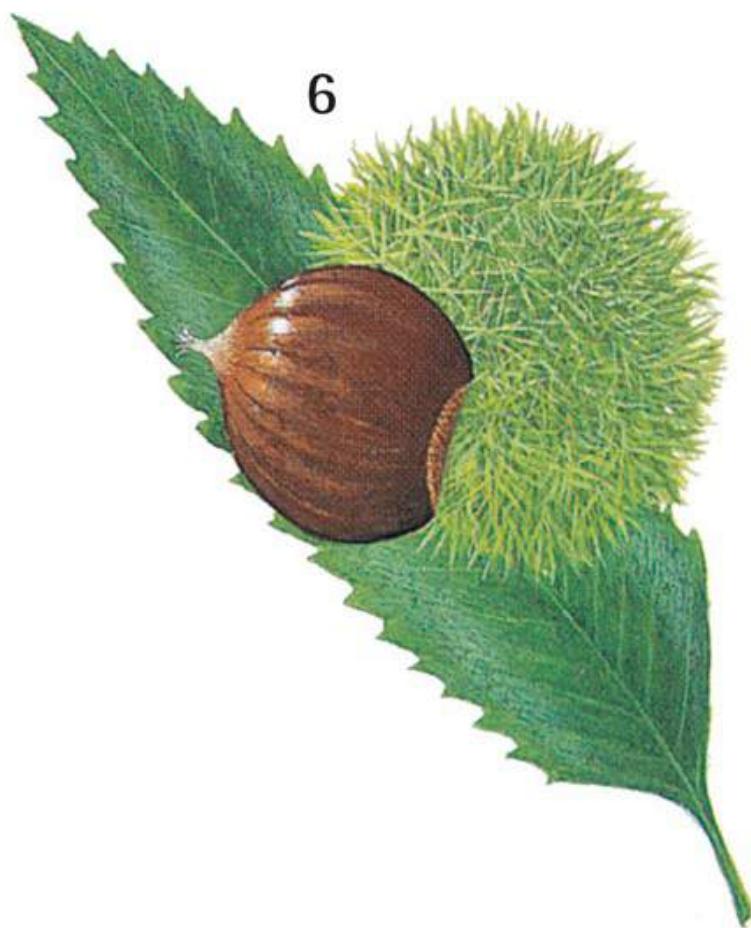
4

**4 Pecan** (*Carya illinoensis*) reaches 36m (120ft), with dark ridged bark and many small leaflets in opposite pairs, in moist places in North America. The oval, thin-husked nuts are richer in fat than any other vegetable product.



5

**5 Hazels** (*Corylus*) are tall shrubs of thickets and waste ground, with toothed, oval to heart-shaped leaves and brownish-yellow catkins. The highly nutritious nuts come in ovoid, leafy, bristly or hairy husks.



6

**6 Sweet Chestnuts** (*Castanea*) range from 5-30m (15-90ft), spreading, with large, toothed hairless leaves and bearing catkins, in wooded areas. Nuts, in some forms 2-3 together, are borne in globe-shaped, thick prickly green husks. Smash open husks, peel nuts, boil and mash. Do not confuse with Horse Chestnut which has large palmate leaves, like the fingers on a hand, and poisonous nuts.



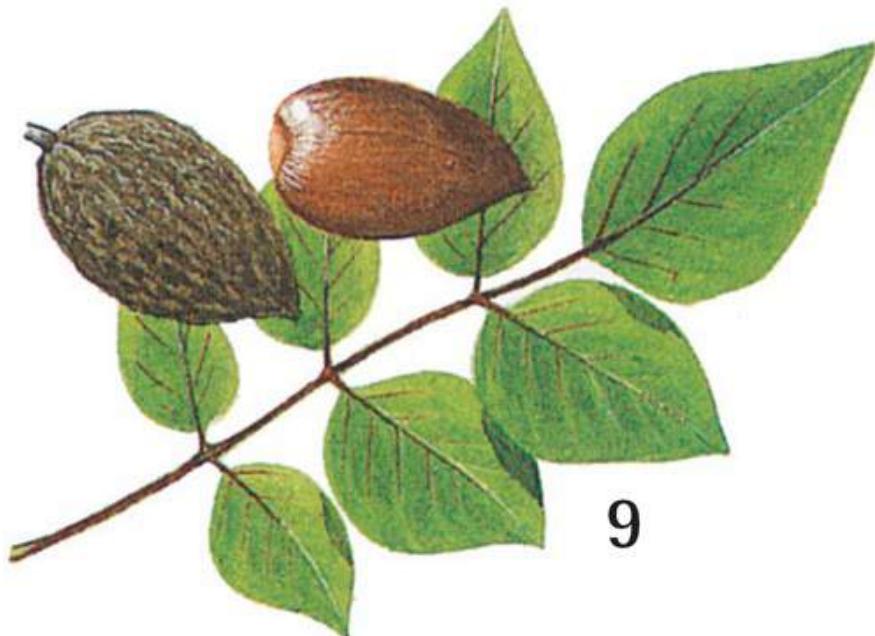
7

**7 Beeches** (*Fagus*) are very tall and spreading, with smooth lightish bark and thick-veined, wavy-margined sharp oval leaves; in broad-leaved woodland. Nuts small, triangular, 2-4 in each hairy husk depending on the species. Protein-rich; edible raw, roasted or crushed for oil.



8

**8 Oaks** (*Quercus*) occur in great variety in wooded areas. Many have deeply lobed leaves but all bear unmistakable acorns. Shell them and boil several times, changing the water to ease their bitterness, or steep in cold water for 3-4 days. Alternatively, bury them with ash and charcoal, watering from time to time. Then roast; roasted acorns make good flour or coffee substitute.



9

**9 Pistachios** (*Pistacia*) grow wild in warmer parts from the Mediterranean east to Afghanistan; introduced elsewhere. Trees, to 10m (30ft), with many small oval leaflets and clusters of nuts with a green kernel and reddish skin. Eat raw or parch on fire embers.



10

**10 Almonds** (*Prunus*) grow wild in warm, arid parts of Europe and Asia, widely introduced elsewhere. Resemble large peach trees, with sprays of blossom, small spear-shaped leaves and clusters of nuts in green leathery husks. Avoid bitter ones, which contain prussic acid.

**Extract oil from rich nuts such as beech. Crack open, separate meat from shells. Boil gently in water, skimming off the oil as it rises to the surface or allow to cool and separate. Store somewhere cool and dry, preferably in an airtight container. A yield of 270ml (3fl oz) of nutritious oils can come from 450g (1lb) of nuts.**

---

## **POISONOUS PLANTS**

---

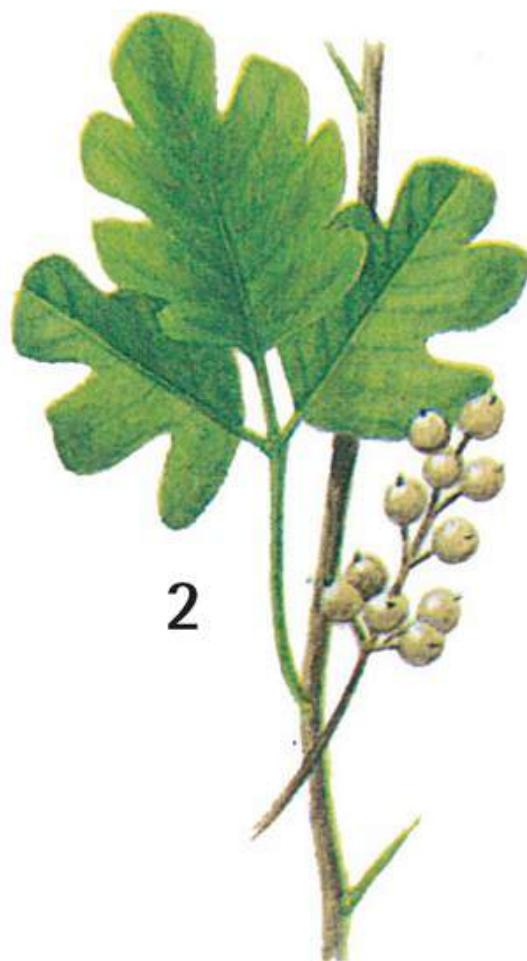
Compared to the many edible ones, there are few poisonous plants in temperate areas. Learn well the ones shown.

### **CONTACT POISONS**

Contact with Poison Sumac, Poison Ivy and Poison Oak produces severe irritation and rashes. Wash effected parts immediately (see Poisons in Health).



**1** **Poison Sumac** (*Toxicodendron vernix*) reaches 2-6m (6-18ft), hairless, with many oval leaflets in opposite pairs, dark-spotted smooth bark and clusters of white berries; in swamplands in south-eastern North America.

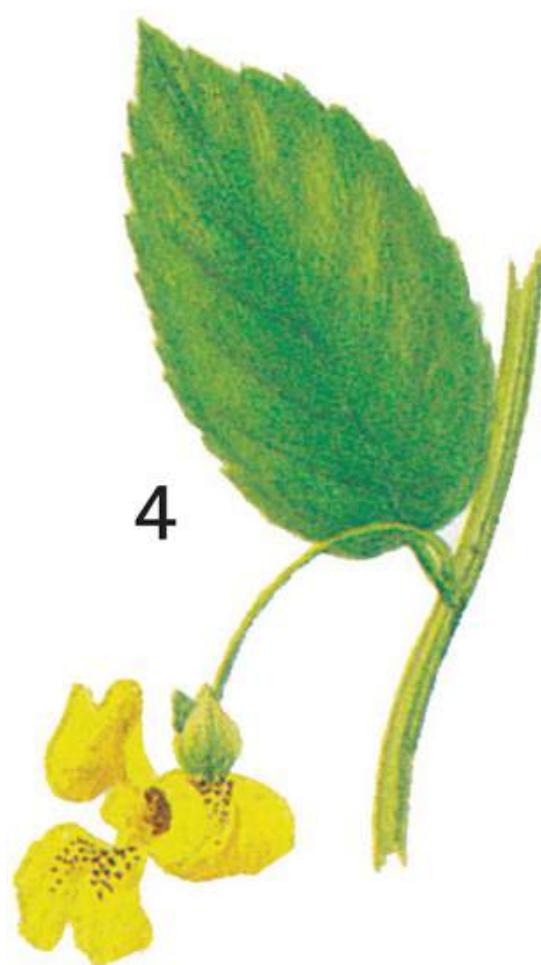


**2** **Poison Oak** (*Toxicodendron quercifolium*) resembles Poison Ivy but is smaller, always upright, and with oakleaf-shaped leaflets and white berries, in wooded parts of North America.



3

**3 Poison Ivy** (*Toxicodendron radicans*) is smaller, 0.6-2.1m (2-7ft), trailing or upright, with three-part very variable leaves, but always with greenish flowers and white berries; in wooded areas of North America.



4

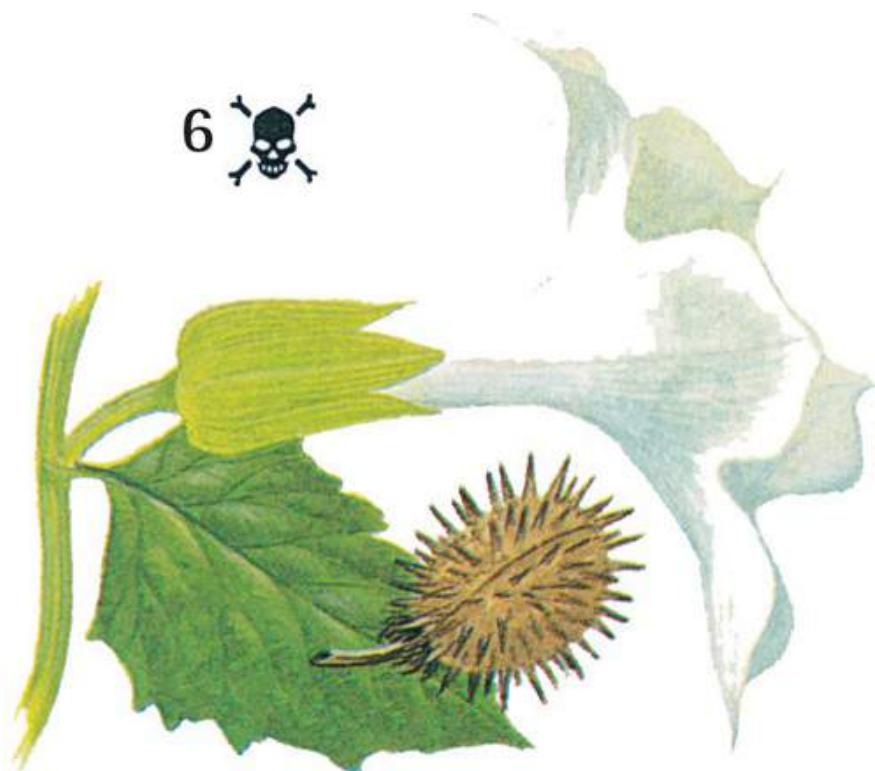
**4 Jewelweed** (*Impatiens*), often found near Poison Ivy, with pale yellow or orange spotted flowers and seed pods that pop, provides a juice to ease irritation from contact with these and other plants.

## POISONS BY INGESTION



**5 Death Camas** (*Zigadenus venosus*) reaches 30-60cm (1-2ft), with long, strap-like leaves arising from the base and loose clusters of greenish-white, six-part flowers; in North America, in grassy, rocky and lightly wooded places. DEADLY: do not confuse with Wild Onions or Lilies.

6 

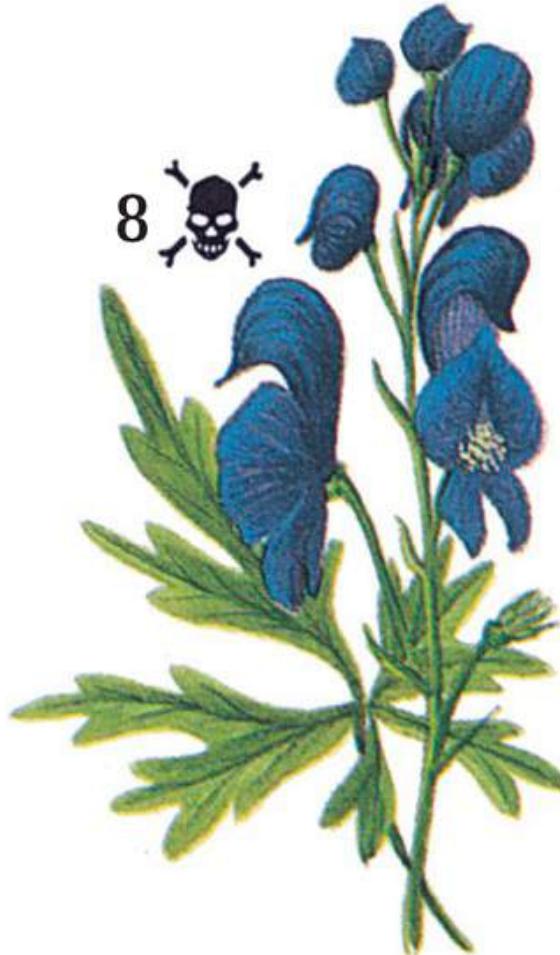


**6 Thistle** (Carduus acanthoides) averages 90cm (3ft), with large, deeply lobed leaves and a single, round, spiny seed head; widespread in most temperate areas and also in the tropics. All parts highly toxic.

7 



**7 Foxgloves** (Digitalis) grow to 1.5m (5ft), with a rosette of basal leaves topped by a tall, leafy spike of purple, pink or yellow tube-shaped flowers; widespread in waste and disturbed places. ALL parts are highly toxic, affecting the heart.



**8 Monk's-hood** (*Aconitum*) reaches 1.5m (5ft), leafy, with palm-shaped, deeply segmented leaves and hairy, hood-like purplish-blue or yellow flowers; in damp woods and shady places. The most common kinds have purplish-blue flowers. VERY poisonous.

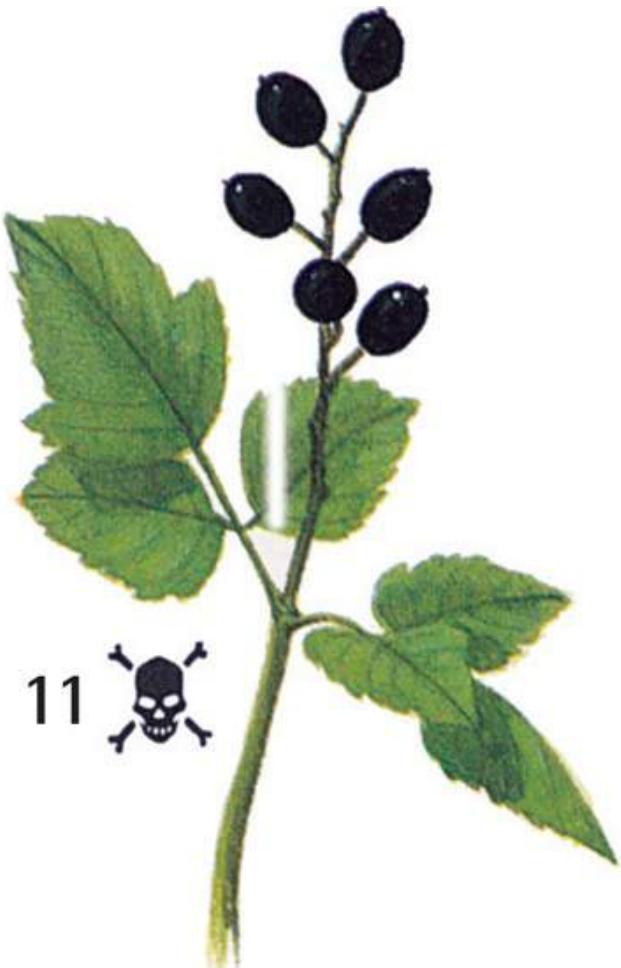


**9 Hemlock** (*Conium maculatum*) may reach 2m (6ft), much branched, with hollow purple-spotted stems, coarsely toothed leaves, lighter below, dense clusters of tiny white flowers and white roots; in grassy waste places. Bad-smelling. Very poisonous.



10

**10 Water Hemlocks or Cowbanes** (*Cicuta*) average 0.6-1.3m (2-4ft), branching, with purple-streaked stems, a hollow-chambered rootstock, small 2-3 lobed, toothed leaflets and clusters of tiny white flowers, always found by water. Smells unpleasant. ONE MOUTHFUL CAN KILL.



**11 Baneberries** (*Actaea*) reach 30-60cm (1-2ft), with leaves made up of several toothed leaflets, small, usually white flowers clustered at the end of a stem, and white or black berries; mostly in woods. ALL parts cause dizziness, Vomiting and severe internal irritation.



**12 Deadly Nightshade** (*Atropa belladonna*) may reach 1m (6ft), well branched, with oval leaves, solitary, bell-shaped, purplish or greenish flowers and shiny black berries, in woodland and scrub in Eurasia. ALL parts, especially berries, are VERY poisonous.

**Some poisonous plants are easy to mistake for food plants if you are not careful in your identification.  
Do not take risks.**

**Hemlock and Water Hemlock** are the two most important poisonous plants to learn, found in both Eurasia and the Americas in a wide range of country. Both are umbellifers, of which there are many kinds, and with many tiny flowers in dense clusters, like an umbrella inside-out and difficult to tell apart.

The umbellifers include some edible plants, but NEVER collect any unless certain they are neither of these two, which can be lethal in very small amounts.

Learn to recognize the following common poisonous plants in addition to those illustrated.

**Buttercups** (*Ranunculus*) occur in great variety, from a few centimetres to over a metre tall, in north and south, including far into the Arctic. All have glossy, waxy bright yellow flowers with five or more overlapping petals. AVOID all, they cause severe inflammation of the intestinal tract.

**Lupins** (*Lupinus*), 30-90cm (1-3ft) tall, like the garden kind, growing in clearings and grassy places. Often with small leaflets in a palm shape or radiating like the spokes of a wheel, and spikes of 'pea-flowers': blue, violet, occasionally pink white or yellow. Any part can cause fatal inflammation of stomach and intestines.

**Vetches or Locoweeds** (*Astalagus* and *Oxytropis*), 15-45cm (6-18in) tall, growing in grassland and mountain meadows, usually with many small spear-shaped leaflets in opposite pairs and showy spikes of five-petalled 'pea-flowers': yellowish-white, pink to lavender and purplish. Some are very poisonous. AVOID all.

**False Helleborines** (*Veratrum*) 60cm-2.6m (2-8½ft), grow in wet, swampy places, some species in grassy ones. Oval ribbed leaves resemble a Lily-of-the-Valley's, drooping clusters of whitish or greenish-yellow flowers. Can be lethal.

**Henbane** (*Hyoscyamus niger*) medium to large, growing on bare ground, often near sea (Europe). Sticky hairs, toothed oval leaves (upper ones unstalked), creamy flowers streaked purple. Unpleasant smell. Deadly poisonous.

#### **POISONOUS BERRIES**

**Canadian Moonseed** (*Menispermum canadense*) North American vine-like climber, clusters of soft black berries. Could be mistaken for Wild Grape but lacks tendrils and has only a single crescent-like seed in each berry.

**Nightshades** (*Solanum*) medium to large, untidy, bushy plants liking scrubby places, leaves usually long-stalked, spear-shaped. Berries ripen from green to black, red, yellow or white. Plants producing similar but edible berries are usually more compact and woody, the berries smaller and more numerous. If in any doubt assume to be poisonous and AVOID.

**Virginia Creeper** (*Parthenocissus quinquefolia*) vine-like North American climber (introduced to Europe). Long-stalked, palm-shaped leaves, toothed leaflets, tendril and clusters of small blue berries, smaller than wild grapes. No plant with edible blue berries is vine-like and with tendrils.

**Buckthorns** (*Rhamnus*), shrubs sometimes small trees growing in scrubby and woody places, sometimes damp. Leaves oval, finely toothed; berries black and bitter tasting, clustered along stems. Can be violently purgative.

**There are many field guides available which will help you extend your knowledge of temperate plants, detailing many local forms.**

---

## TREES

---

**T**rees provide other nourishing foods, as well as fruit and nuts, which can be invaluable to the survivor, particularly in areas where there is little other plant life available.

The following refers to the trees of temperate and northern regions. Tropical trees, such as palms, are included in the section on tropical plants.

### Bark

The thin inner bark (cambium) of certain trees is both edible and nutritious, but best in the spring, when sap has started to flow. Choose bark from near the bottom of the tree or from exposed roots. Peel it back with a knife to reveal the inner layer. This is mildly sweet and can be eaten raw—but can be made more digestible by long boiling, which will reduce it to a gelatinous mass. It can then be roasted and ground for use as flour.

Outer bark has too much tannin to be edible, but some kinds have medicinal uses.

### Trees with best inner bark

**Slippery Elm** (*Ulmus rubra*), of northern America, grows to a maximum 18m (60ft). Twigs are hairy and rough, oval, toothed leaves are hairy below.

**Basswood** (*Tilia americana*), a North American lime with large, heart-shaped leaves and dark, grooved bark which becomes smooth grey on upper parts.

**Birches** (*Betula*), which are often abundant in colder areas. They can be identified by their long delicate twigs and shiny, flaky bark that is often broken up into plates.

**Aspens** (*Populus tremula*), small to medium trees resembling poplars. They have rounded leaves on very, very long stalks that quiver in the wind.

**Tamarack** (*Larix laricina*), is found in cold parts of North America. It grows to 24m (80ft) with a pointed shape, bears cones and has needles in tufts along the twigs.

**Poplars** (*Populus*) have triangular leaves and prominent catkins. They occur in many northern areas.

**Maples** (*Acer*) grow widely and are recognized by their distinctive lobed leaves in three parts and by the two-winged fruits.

**Spruces** (*Picea*) are evergreen trees of cold climates. They are shaped like steeples, bear cones and have stiff, four-sided needles that grow all around the twigs.

**Willows** (*Salix*) are broad-leaved trees or shrubs with toothed leaves, lighter on the underside, and distinctive yellow or green catkins. There are many kinds, including ground-hugging arctic ones.

**Pines** (*Pinus*) are widely found evergreen trees bearing cones and clusters of long needles. Their inner bark is rich in vitamin C.

**Hemlocks** (*Tsuga*) are evergreens, resembling spruces, with sprays of foliage, flat needles and short, oblong cones. They bear no relation to the poisonous plant of the same name.

**NOTE:** In addition to the inner bark, the buds and shoots of all these trees can be eaten raw or cooked—EXCEPT for those of Tamarack and Hemlock, which are POISONOUS.

### Other uses for inner bark

The inner bark of some trees is very strong but pliable. It is easily torn into strips for lashings. The bark of the Mohoe tree, for example, is made into 'grass' skirts by Pacific islanders, having first been steamed in a hangi

(see [Fire in Camp Craft](#)).

Birch bark can be removed from the tree in large sheets and forms an ideal material for roofing shelters or for making small containers. The North American Indians clad their canoes with it.

## SPRUCE TEA

Steep spruce needles in hot water to make a tea. Collect only fresh, green needles and boil. The liquid produced is rich in vitamin C. The vitamin can be obtained more directly by chewing tender young needles, whose starchy green tips are particularly pleasant in spring. Spruces occur far into the north and are an important source of nourishment when little other plant life is available.

### Gums and resins

With some trees, when cut, sap seeping out on to the bark hardens into a lump. If this is soluble in water it is a gum; if not, it is a resin. Both are very nutritious, rich in sugars and a useful survival food. A few have medicinal properties and others are highly inflammable and make excellent material for lighting fires.

### Birch and maple syrup

Tap birch or maple in the same way as a rubber tree. Cut a V-shape in the bark to collect the sugary sap that runs out. Below the V make a hole in the trunk to insert a leaf as a drip spout to run the sap into a container.

Collect sap daily and boil it. It will give off lots of steam but thicken down into a syrup. This is instant energy and well worth the effort.

## POISONOUS TREES

**T**he following trees contain irritant or poisonous substances. Do NOT eat any part of them, except for the meaty roots of hickory, which are edible.

**Yews** (*Taxus*) are straggling evergreen trees or shrubs with flaky bark, dark green needles and red berry-like fruits. The fruits are particularly poisonous.

**Cedars** (*Cedrus*), originally from the Mediterranean and Himalayas, the true cedars are large, spreading, scented evergreens with erect cones.

**Horse Chestnuts** and **Buckeyes** (*Aesculus*) are tall with hand-shaped leaves, sticky buds and white, pink or yellow flowers. Do not confuse their poisonous, spiky-cased nuts with those of Sweet Chestnut which has narrow, toothed leaves and much more densely prickled seed cases.

**Laburnums** (*Laburnum*) are small, broad-leaved trees with three-part leaves and long sprays of yellow flowers.

**Black Locust** (*Robinia pseudoacacia*) is a North American tree with dark grey bark, oval leaflets in opposite pairs, clusters of white flowers and bean-like seed pods.

**California Laurel or Oregon Myrtle** (*Umbellularia californica*), is a short-trunked North American evergreen, averaging 16m (50ft) with oval leathery leaves, clusters of yellowish flowers and greenish to purple berries. Foliage is pungently aromatic.

**Moosewood or Moosebark** (*Acer pensylvanicum*), of northeastern North America averages 12m (40ft), with light, white-striped bark, oval to spear-shaped leaves, olive to brownish above, broad-petalled, yellow-greenish flowers and winged fruits.

**Hickories** (*Carya*) have divided, often palm-shaped leaves, catkins and, usually, rounded nuts. The nuts of some kinds are edible, as are the sap and roots, but do not eat unless the species is positively identified.

(See also [contact poison in Poisonous Plants](#) and [Tropical Poisonous Plants](#).)

## FUNGI

**F**ungi make good eating, but MUST be positively identified as of an edible kind. There is no room for error. Unlike vegetable plants, on which the 'edibility test' can be used, they must be either identified or left well alone. The deadly kinds do not taste unpleasant and no symptoms may appear until several hours after eating.

Wild fungi are a great delicacy—if you know which ones to pick. Fungi are composed of many thread-like cells which, in the case of ground fungi, form a subterranean web of which only the reproductive part—what we call the fungus—appears above the ground. This edible part appears only at certain times of year.

Most fungi grow directly from the ground—alone, in rings, sometimes in clumps. They consist of a cup- or bowl-shaped cap topping a stem. The underside bears gills of spongy tissue containing spores. The form and colour of this tissue is an important clue to identify. A few fungi, such as truffles, grow completely underground—but they are very hard to find. Others grow on the sides of trees and stumps; some are known—from their shape—as bracket fungi, others grow large and singularly.

### Food value

Fungi come between meat and vegetables in the nutritional table. They contain more protein than vegetables and, in some cases, more fat.

The better kinds, *Boletus edulis* for example, provide a similar amount of calories to the same weight of vegetables. As for minerals: fungi have more phosphorous than carrots, cauliflowers and spinach, but less calcium. Vitamin B complex is present in tiny amounts in most fungi, vitamin C occurs occasionally and D is present in many in appreciable amounts. *Cantharellus cibarius* contains vitamin A.

The great advantage of fungi is their abundance. At the right time of year, usually summer and autumn, you can quickly gather enough for a meal.

### Preparing fungi

Reject suspicious, discoloured or maggoty parts, clean, slice and boil. Many bracket fungi are bitter and tough and must be cooked thoroughly. It helps to steep them in cold water first. Tender ground fungi can simply be added to soups and other foods.

### Storing fungi

Fungi have high water content and are easily dried. Collect all you can when they are available and add them to your food-store. Separate caps from stems and place on rocks in the sun, caps gill-side up. With *Boletus* species, first remove the spongy tissue under the cap. When thoroughly dry, store in airtight containers if possible. Eat raw (soak them in water first to let them swell up) or add to soups and stews.

## IDENTIFYING AMANITAS

The poisonous Amanitas—and their particularly deadly species the Death Cap and the Destroying Angel—can be mistaken for edible kinds. **ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE RULES:**

- AVOID any fungi with white gills, a volva (a cup-like appendage at the base of the stem) and stem rings
- AVOID any fungi that are wormy or decomposing
- Unless positively identified—DISCARD

**Differences between Amanita and Agaricus fungi:**

### SPORES

**AMANITA** - White

**AGARICUS** - Purplish-brown

#### CAP AND STEM

**AMANITA** - Unchanging

**AGARICUS** - Some kinds stain yellow when bruised

#### CAP

**AMANITA** - Slimy with loose patches

**AGARICUS** - Always dry, with only a few small scales

#### MATURE GILLS

**AMANITA** - White

**AGARICUS** - Greyish-red, pink or chocolate

#### GILLS

**AMANITA** - Partly or wholly

**AGARICUS** - Not veiled

#### SMELL

**AMANITA** - Potato or radish

**AGARICUS** - Almonds or marzipan

#### LOCATION

**AMANITA** - Never in grassy open areas

**AGARICUS** - Under conifers and hardwoods; in grass and gardens

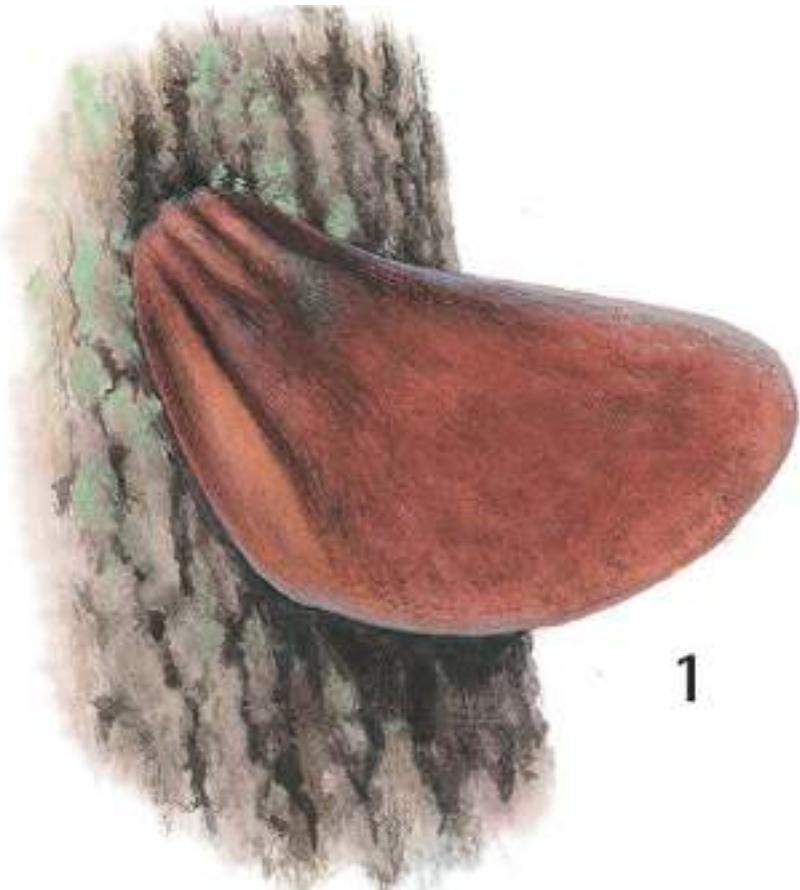
## **EDIBLE FUNGI**

**There are no reliable rules for identifying fungi, poisonous or edible. Ignore folk tales to the effect that a fungus is not poisonous once peeled, or that toxic kinds change colour when cooked. They do not. Nor does cooking destroy their poisons.**

**Learn to recognize a small number—those illustrated here—and stick to them. Learn also the Amanita family—they include fungi which can kill you. Then build up your knowledge.**

#### TREE FUNGI

**Tree fungi grow off the ground, on the sides of trees and stumps. They are often large and leathery, but are not harmful and are fairly common.**



1

**1 Fistulina hepatica** (Beefsteak Fungus) is often found on oaks. It is reddish above, pinkish below and rough-textured, resembling a large tongue; its red flesh exudes a blood-coloured juice. Tough and bitter; young specimens are better. Soak to soften then stew thoroughly. Occurs in autumn.



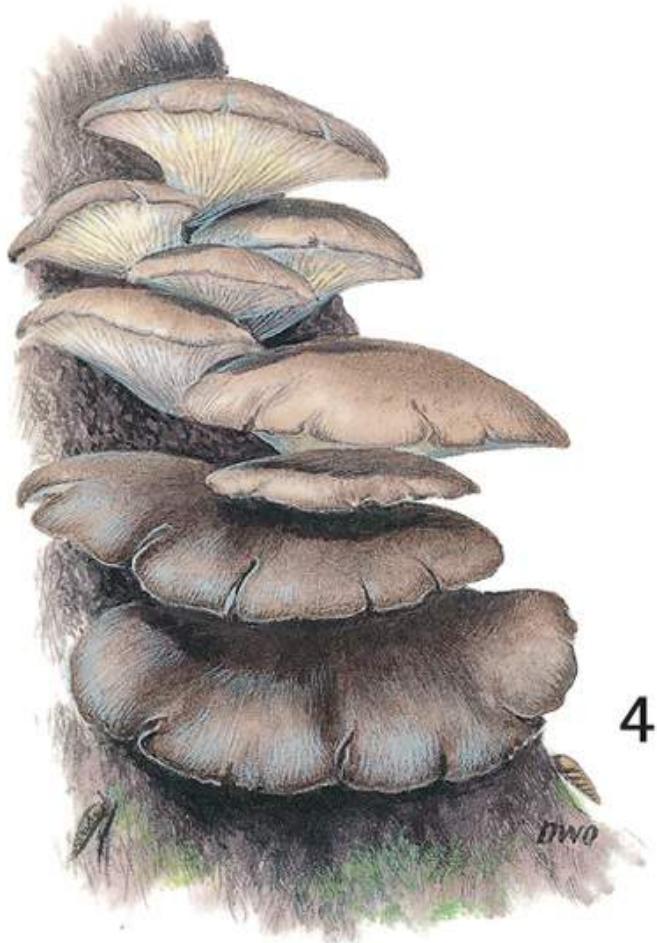
2

**2 Laetiporus sulphureus** grows to 30-40cm (12-16in) across, a bright orange-yellow fading to yellowish-tan, with spongy, yellowish flesh. On broad-leaved, especially Oak, and evergreen trees from summer on.

3



**3 Polyporus squamosus** (Dryad's Saddle) grows to 60cm (2ft) across, often in clumps, its ochre cap flecked with dark scales to resemble cork and a whitish underside. On broad-leaved trees, especially Elm, Beech and Sycamore, from spring to autumn. Choose young ones and stew them thoroughly.



4

**4 Pleurotus ostreatus** (Oyster Fungus) grows in clumps, with deep blue-grey shell-shaped caps 6-14cm (2½-5¾in) wide, white gills and white rubbery flesh. On broad-leaved trees for most of the year. Tasty; slice and stew. Also dries well.

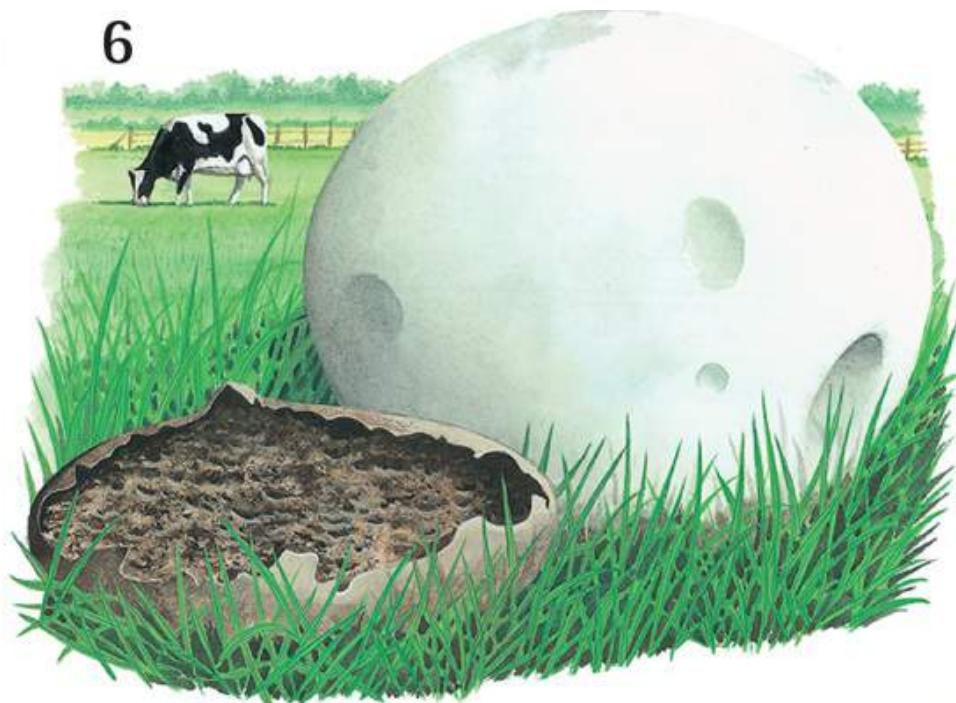


5

**5** *Armillaria mellea* (Honey or Bootlace Fungus) has tawny-yellowish brown-flecked caps 3-15cm (1¼-6in) across, white gills later speckled with brown, white flesh and bootlace-like 'roots'. On broad-leaved and coniferous trees and stumps from spring to autumn. Slice and stew.

#### GROUND FUNGI

Ground fungi live in the soil. There are many kinds, some VERY poisonous.



**6** *Calvatia gigantea* (Giant Puffball) resembles a football, up to 30cm (1ft) across, smooth, white and leathery, yellowing with age and may weigh up to 9kg (20lb). In woods and grassy places from late summer to autumn. Choose young ones with spongy, pure white flesh. Very tasty; simmer or fry.



**7** *Cantharellus cibarius* (Chanterelle) is apricot-scented, egg yellow, funnel-shaped, 3-10cm (1¼-4in) across, with pronounced, forking gills. It grows in groups under trees, especially Beech, from summer on. Very tasty; stew for ten minutes. Do NOT confuse with *Cortinarius speciosissimus*.



8

**8 Craterellus cornucopioides** (Horn of Plenty) is horn- or funnel-shaped, with a rough, crinkly, dark brown cap 3-8cm (1½-3in) across and a smooth, tapering grey stem. In broad-leaved woods, especially Beech, in autumn. Stew well, or dry.

#### WARNING

Fungi make excellent eating but should be attempted ONLY if identified with certainty.

Agaricus fungi: AVOID any that stain yellow when cut (see [A. xanthoderma](#)). Some young 'buttons' are hard to tell apart and can be confused with the deadly Amanitas.



1

**1 Agaricus arvensis** (Horse Mushroom) resembles A. campestris but with a cap to 15cm (6in). Young ones have light pink gills, later turning pinkish-brown; in same places as A. campestris. Edible raw or cooked.



2

**2 Agaricus augustus** has a scaly, light brownish cap to 20cm (10in) across, young gills pink later turning dark, and a ringed stem; in clusters in woodland clearings in summer and autumn. Tasty; smells of anise.



3

**3 Agaricus campestris** (Field Mushroom) resembles the familiar cultivated kind, with a white cap to 10cm (4in) across, browning slightly in older specimens, and pink gills later turning dark brown; in grassy places in autumn, rarely by trees. Edible raw or cooked.

4

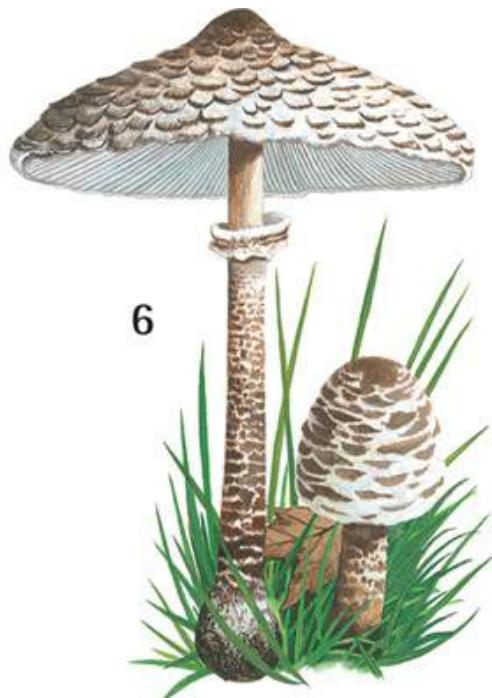


**4 Agaricus silvicola** (Wood Mushroom) resembles A. arvensis but is found in woodland, often with conifers.  
Edible raw or cooked.

5



**5 Agaricus xanthoderma** (Yellow Staining Mushroom) resembles other Agaricus species, but shows a yellow stain when bruised and is strongly yellow at the base. It is POISONOUS and smells of carbolic. In both woody and grassy places in summer and autumn. AVOID.

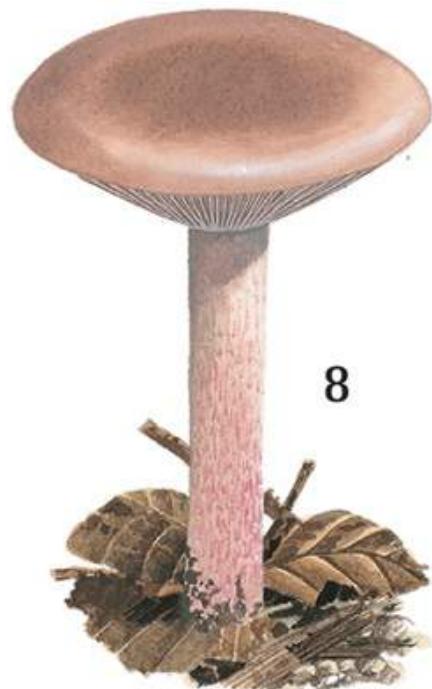


6



7

- 6 Macrolepiota procera** (Parasol Mushroom) has a brownish cap, later with darker scales, to 30cm (1ft) across, with creamy-white gills and a slender stem with a double white ring and brown bands. By broad-leaved woodland and in grassy clearings from summer to autumn. It tastes of almonds or Brazil nuts.
- 7 Coprinus comatus** (Shaggy Ink Cap) has a cylindrical cap with whitish or pale brownish scales and gills that begin white, turn pinkish and finally dissolve into a black, inky mess. In groups in open grassy areas in summer and autumn. Gather young ones whose gills are still pale. **POISONOUS** if eaten with alcohol.



**8 Lepista nuda** (Wood Blewit or Blue Cap) has a lilac-blue cap, later turning reddish-brown and wavy-edged, to 10cm (4in) across, bluish gills and a stocky, fibrous bluish stem. In rings in mixed woodland from autumn to mid winter. Tasty and sweet-smelling. Produces an allergic reaction in a few people.



**9 Boletus edulis** (Cep) is brownish with a cap to 20cm (8in), a swollen stem and white flesh; in woodland clearings in autumn. All Boletes have a sponge-like layer of pores or tubes instead of gills. Many edible species—they dry well—occur around the world. AVOID any with pink or red spores unless positively identified. Some are poisonous.

#### OTHER USES FOR FUNGI

- Many bracket fungi make excellent tinder—once lit they will smoulder for hours.
- Razor-strop fungus is so tough that it can be used to sharpen knives, or chopped up for corks, corn plasters and kindling.
- Giant puffball is styptic—it will staunch and soothe bleeding wounds.
- Tree fungi are rich in tannin and can be used in treating burns.

# POISONOUS FUNGI

## **WARNING**

The following are among the worst of the poisonous fungi but there are many others. Do NOT use any fungi you cannot positively identify as a survival food. Some Amanita fungi are among the most deadly of all. They have a cup, or volva, at the base.



1 ☠



2 ☠

**2 Amanita phalloides** (Death Cap) has a greenish-olive cap to 12cm (5in) across, a paler stem, large volva, and white gills and flesh; usually in woodland, especially with Oak or Beech. The MOST DEADLY of all.



3 ☠



4 ☠

**3 Amanita pantherina** (Panther Cap) has a brownish, white-flecked cap to 8cm (3in), white gills and 2-3 hoop-looking rings at the base of the stem; in woodland, especially with Beech. Poisonous, often FATAL.

**4 Amanita muscaria** (Fly Agaric) has a distinctive bright red cap, flecked with white, to 22cm (9in) across. Found in autumn, typically in Pine and Birch woods.



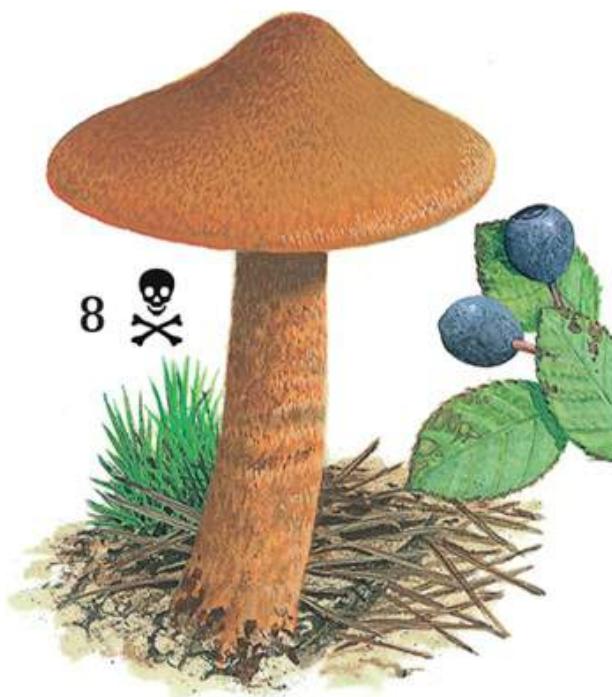
**5 Entoloma sinuatum** (Leaden Entoloma) has a dull greyish-white, deeply convex cap to 15cm (6in) across, yellowish gills turning salmon-pink and firm white flesh smelling of meal, bitter almond and radish; in groups in grassy places and woods, especially with Beech and Oak, in summer and autumn. Poisonous, can be DEADLY. Confusable with an Agaricus, but has no ring on the stem.



**6 Inocybe erubescens** begins whitish then turns yellowish-brown, with a cap to 7cm (2 $\frac{3}{4}$ in), often split at the margin, and whitish gills turning olive-brown; stains red when bruised. In broad-leaved woods, especially Beech, in summer and autumn. Lacks a ring on the stem, but when young confusable with an Agaricus. DEADLY poisonous.



**7 Paxillus involutus** has a solid yellow-brown cap with a rolled rim, to 12cm (5in) across, yellow-brown gills and a straight, stout stem. Very common in woodland, especially Birch. DEADLY: do NOT confuse with edible yellowish fungi such as the Chanterelle.



**8 Cortinarius rubellus** is reddish- to tawny-brown, with a flattish cap 2-8cm (¾-3¼in) across, and rusty-brown gills, in coniferous wood in autumn. Not common but very poisonous. Slightly lighter-coloured, *C. orelanus*, also poisonous in broad-leaved woodland. Both have a radish-like smell. Do not confuse with the Chanterelle. DEADLY.

(See also [Agaricus xanthoderma](#), illustrated with edible species)

#### POISON SYMPTOMS

Poisonous fungi produce a variety of symptoms but the following are fairly typical:

**Death Cap/Destroying Angel:** Symptoms develop slowly, 8-24 hrs after eating: vomiting, diarrhoea, excessive thirst, sweating and convulsions. Apparent recovery after one day, then a relapse and, in 90% of cases, death from liver failure in 2-10 days. No known antidote.

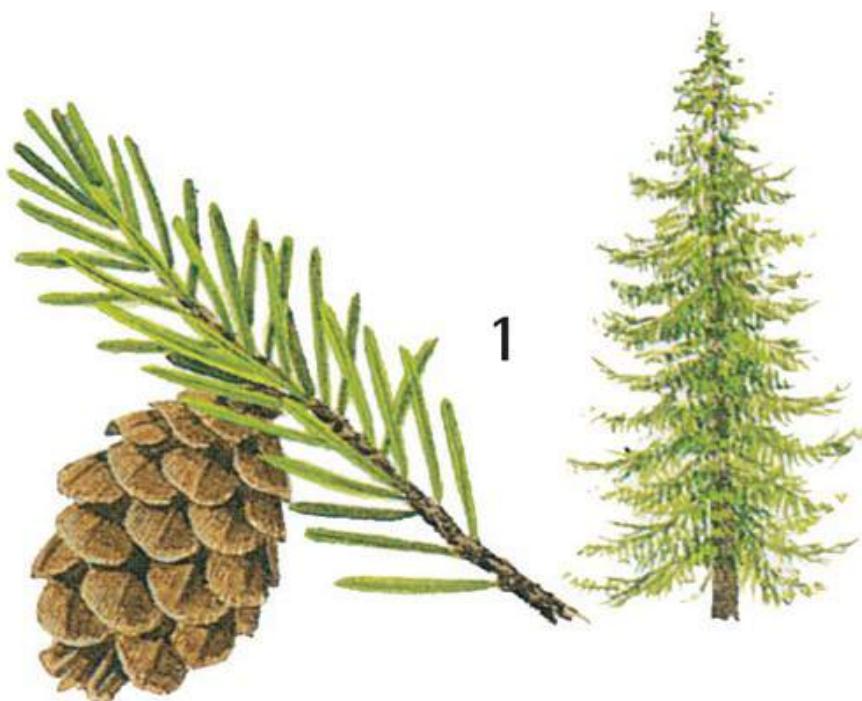
**Muscarine poisoning:** Caused by several fungi. Effects vary, toxins all attack nervous system.

*Amanita muscaria* produces severe gastro-intestinal disturbance, delirium, vivid hallucinations, uncontrollable twitching and convulsions, followed by coma-like sleep. The victim usually recovers. *Inocybe patouillardii* and

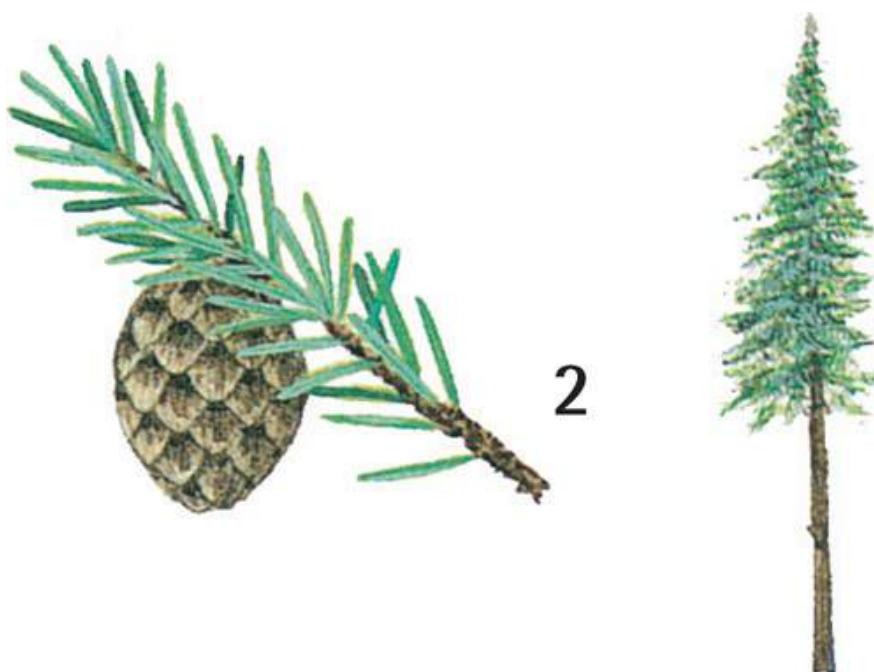
its relatives produce vertigo, blindness, sweating, low temperature, very dilated pupils, followed, in the worst cases, by delirium and death.

## ARCTIC AND NORTHERN PLANTS

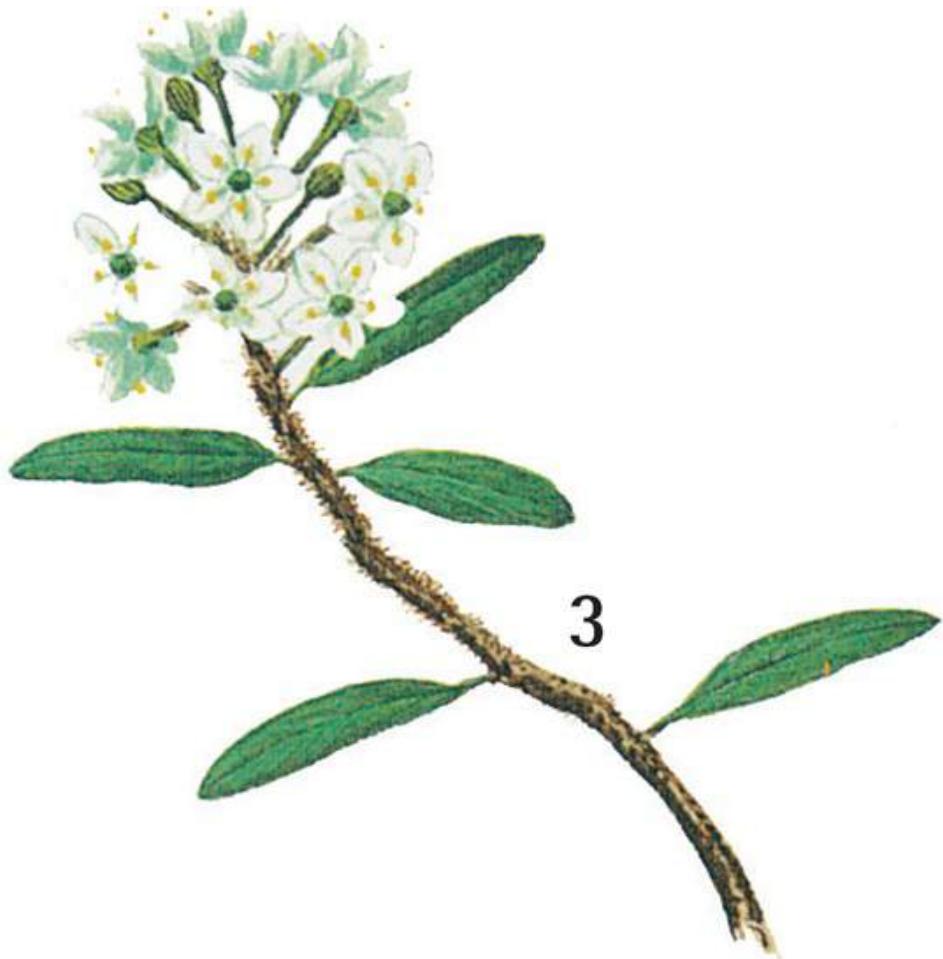
In addition to these hardy arctic plants, many temperate species occur in summer in the far north.



**1 Red Spruce** (*Picea rubens*) reaches 23m (70ft), with dark or yellow-green needles all around its hairy twigs, rough dark bark and pendant cones; in drier areas of North America. Young shoots are edible raw or cooked; infuse the needles for teas and boil the edible inner bark.

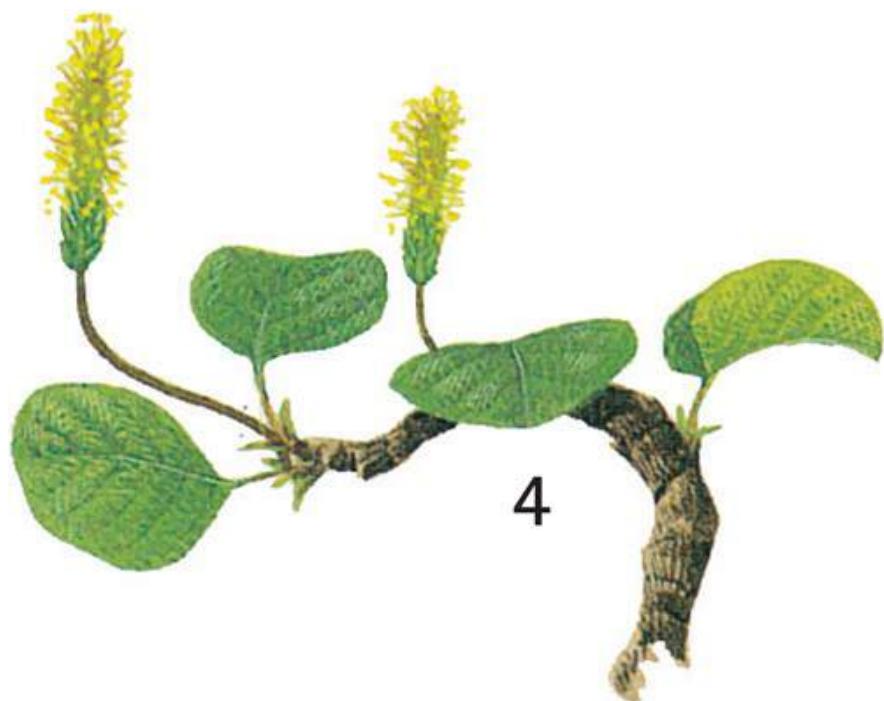


**2 Black Spruce** (*Picea mariana*) is smaller than Red Spruce, with shorter needles; in moist areas of North America. Many similar spruces occur in North America and northern Eurasia. Use all as Red Spruce.



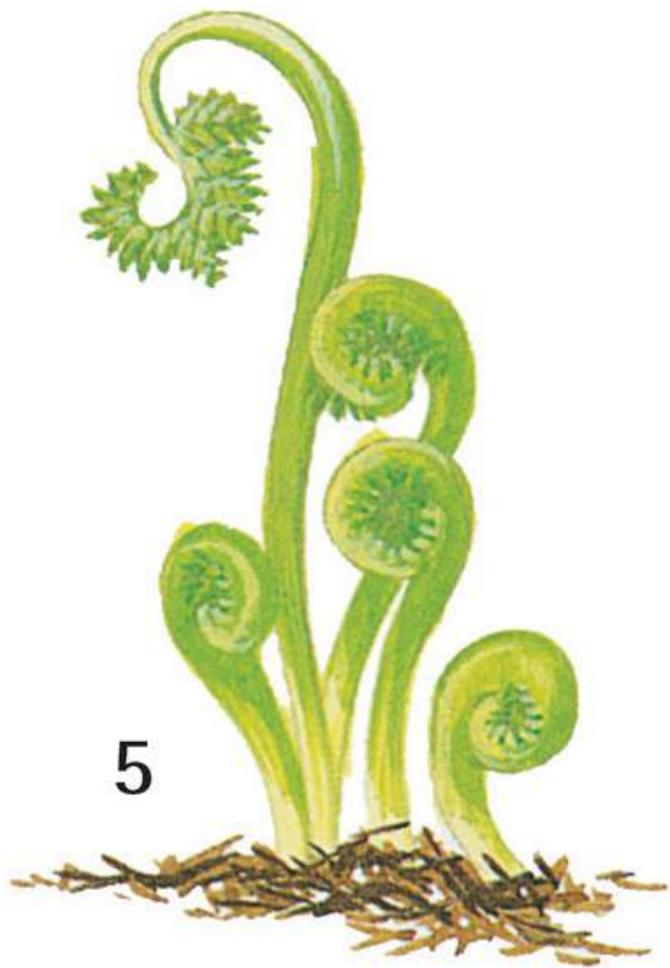
3

**3 Labrador Tea**(*Ledum groenlandicum*) is a fragrant evergreen shrub averaging 30-90cm (1-3ft), with narrow leaves with rolled edges, whitish or hairy below, and five-petalled white flowers, in North America. The leaves make a revivifying tea.



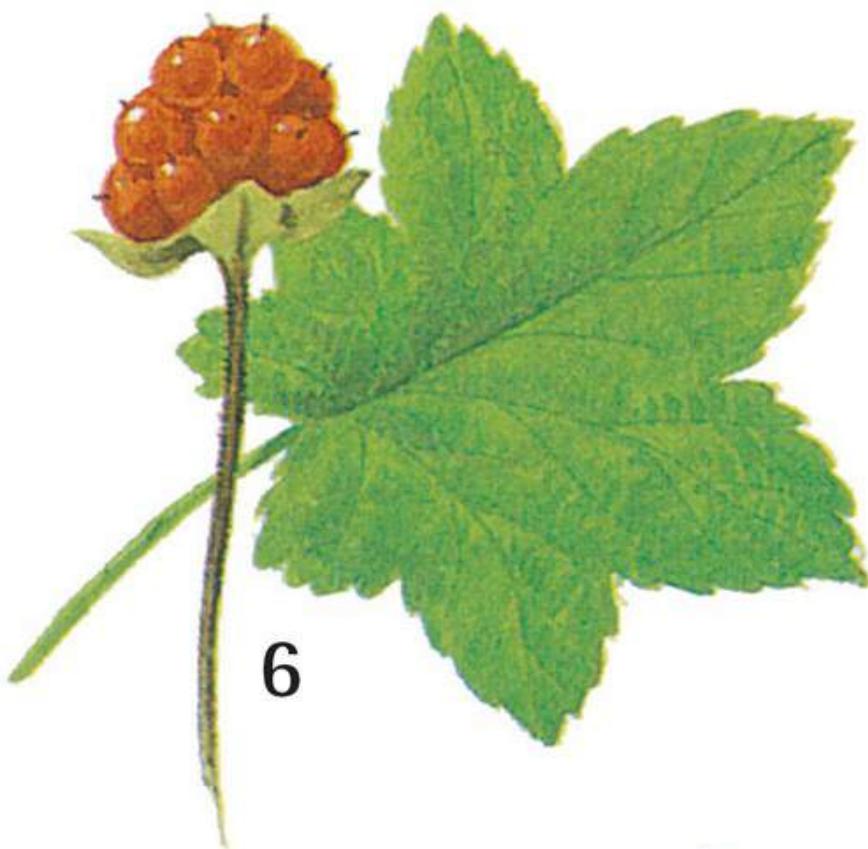
4

**4 Arctic Willows** (*Salix*) are mat-forming tundra shrubs averaging 30-60cm (1-2ft), with rounded, leaves, shiny above, and yellow catkins. Spring shoots, leaves, inner bark and young peeled roots are all edible. The leaves have 7-10 times more vitamin C than an orange.



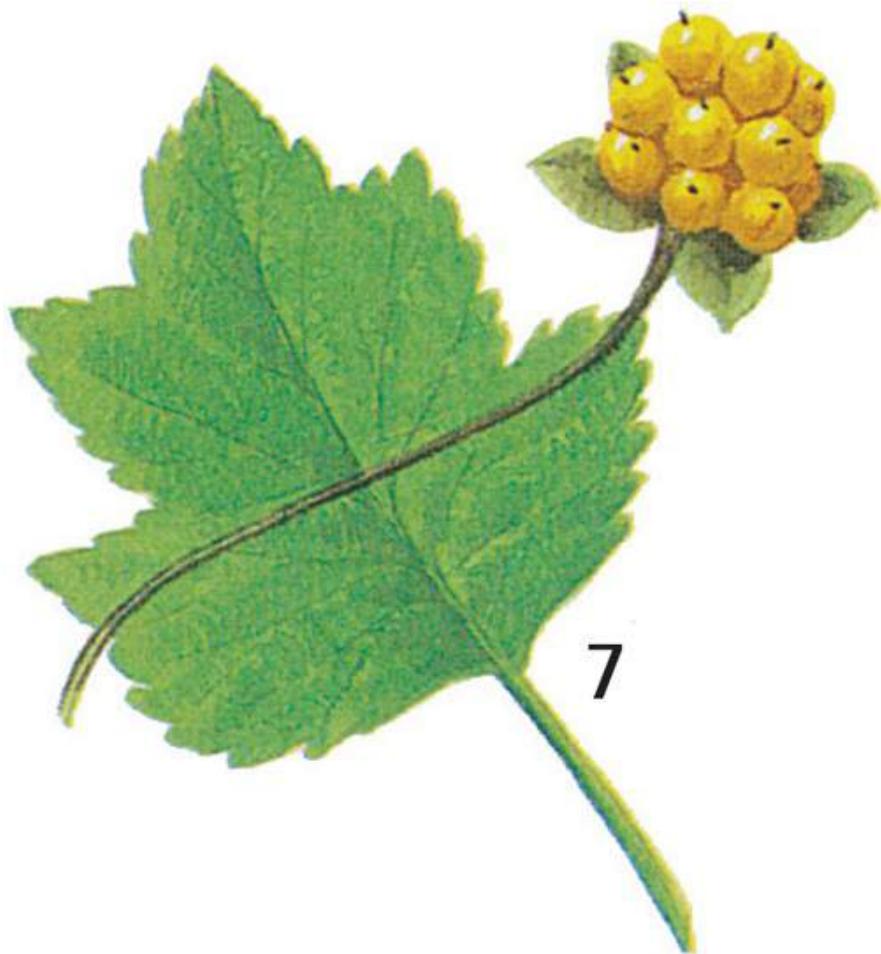
5

**5 Ferns** occur in moist places in summer in far northern woods and by the tundra. Eat ONLY young fiddleheads up to 15cm (6in) long, remove any hairs. Steaming is the best way to cook them.



6

**6 CloudbERRIES** (*Rubus chamaemorus*) seldom reach 30cm (1ft). Bramble-like, with palm-shaped leaves, white flowers and berries at the top of the plant—pink, ripening through orange to amber. The berries are edible raw.



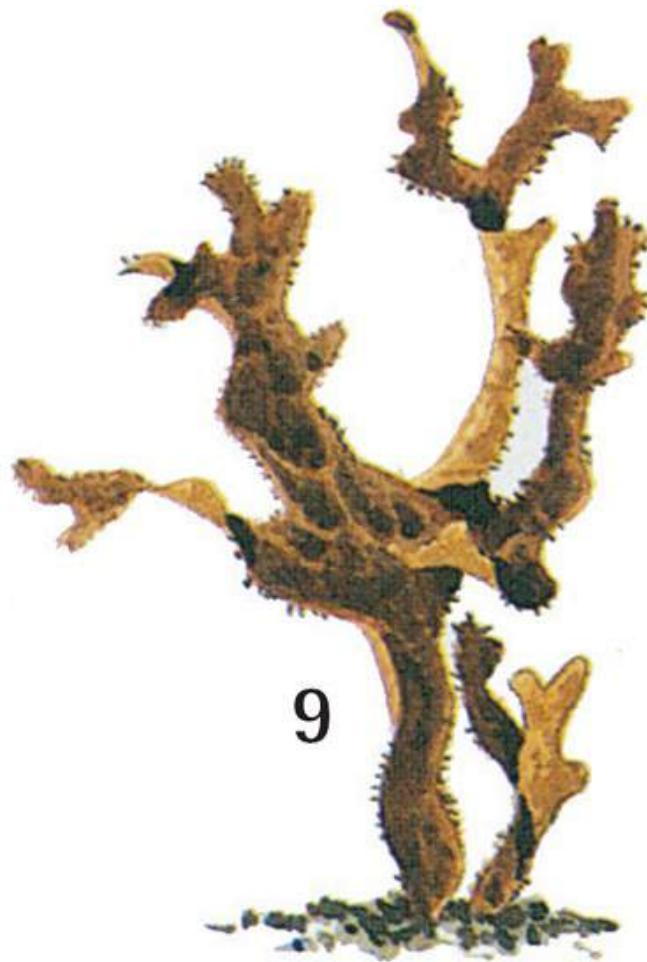
7

**7 Salmonberry** (*Rubus spectabilis*) resembles a small Wild Raspberry, thornless, with three-part leaves, purplish-red flowers and juicy red or yellow berries, edible raw. In North America, now in parts of Europe.

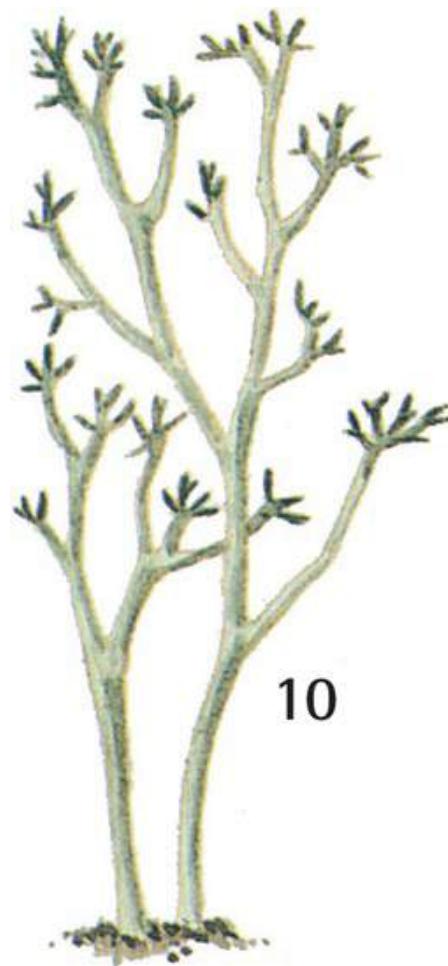


8

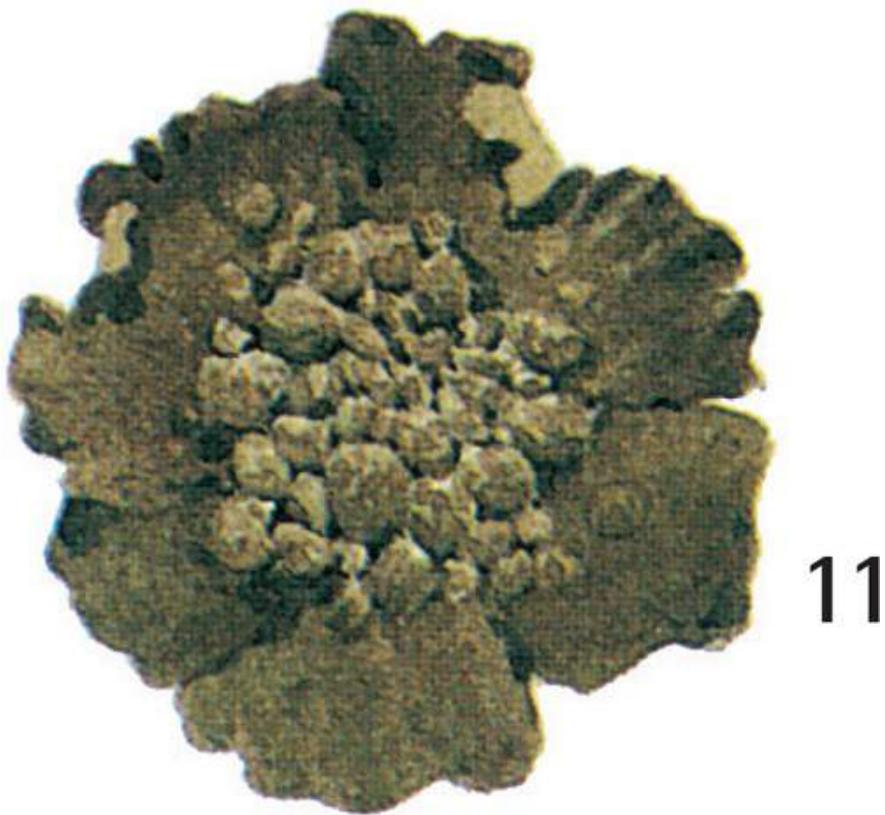
**8 Bearberry** (*Arctostaphylos uvaursi*) in arctic regions is small, mat-forming, woody, with club-shaped evergreen leathery leaves, pink or white flowers and clusters of red berries, edible cooked.



**9 Iceland Moss** (*Cetraria islandica*) is a lichen, forming tufted leathery, grey-green or brownish mats up to 10cm (4in) high, composed of many strap-shaped branches. Soak for several hours then boil well.



**10 Reindeer Moss** (*Cladonia rangiferina*), lichen growing 5-10cm (2-4in), often in large clumps, with hollow, roundish, greyish stems and branches resembling antlers. Soak for several hours, boil well.



11

**11 Rock Tripes** (*Umbilicaria*) are lichens, forming roundish, blister-like greyish or brownish growths attached to rocks by a central stalk; some kinds warty and pebble-like, others smooth. Very nutritious, soak for several hours then boil well.

Lichens are an important survival food, not only in arctic regions—though vital there because they are probably more nutritious than other arctic plants. Explorers have survived on Rock Tripe for long periods. But beware! They can cause painful irritation if eaten raw because they contain a bitter acid. Remove it by soaking them in water overnight and then boiling thoroughly. A further roasting will crisp them up if you prefer a crunchy texture.

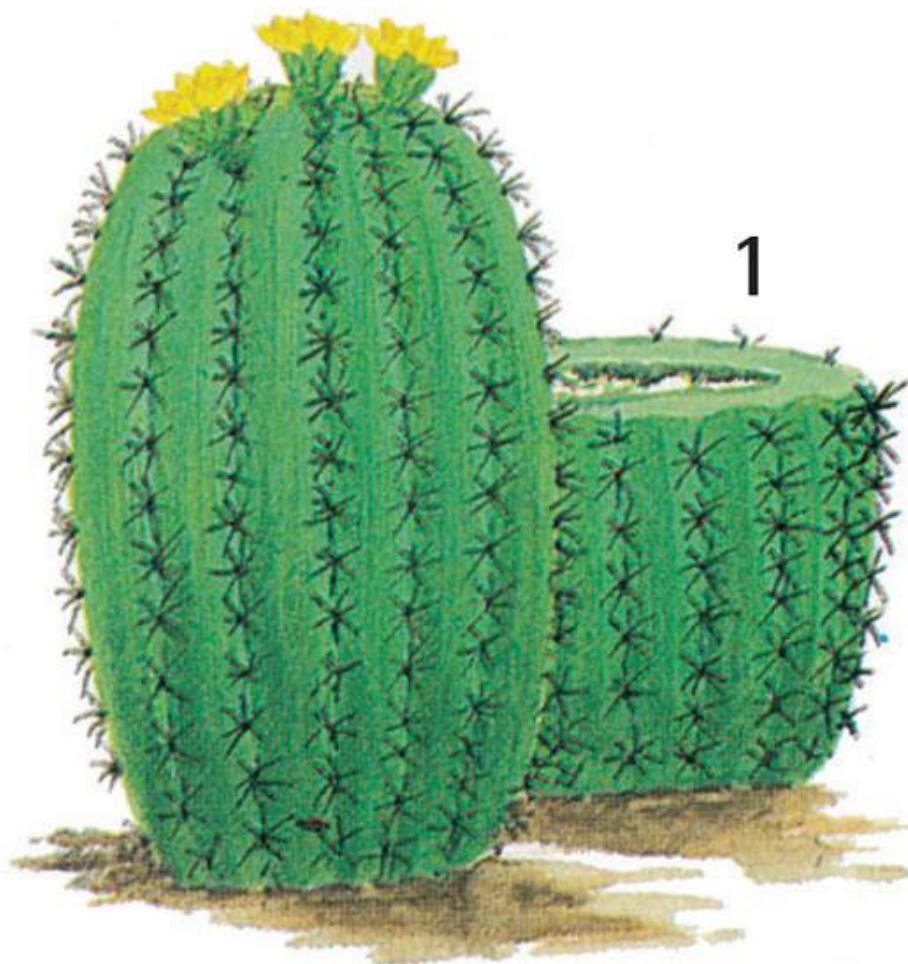
If you successfully hunt a caribou eat the fermented lichens in its stomach. They are easily digested and some Eskimos count them a great delicacy.

---

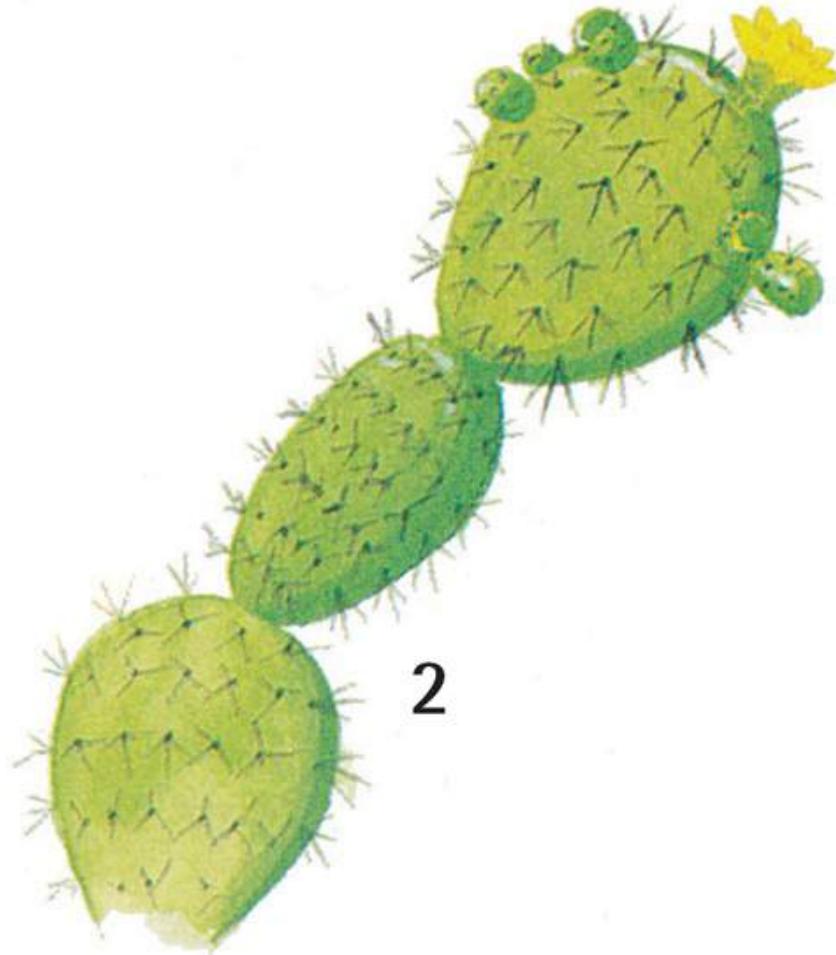
## DESERT PLANTS

---

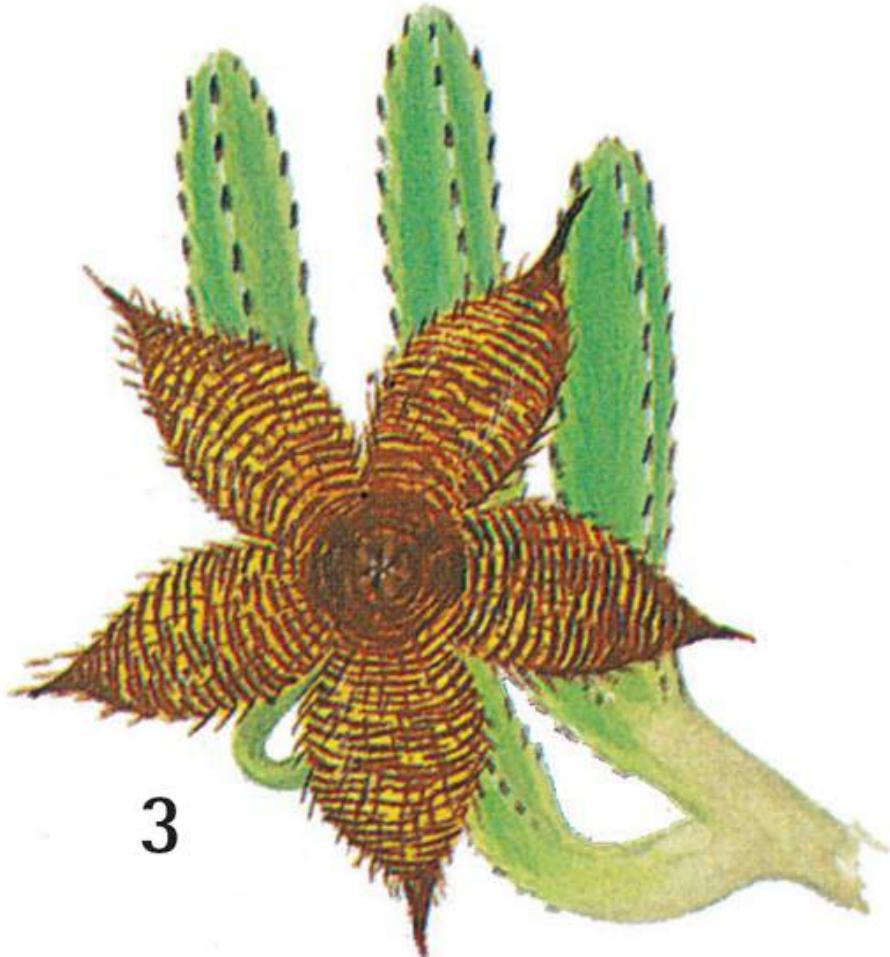
Desert survival depends upon water. Learn the water-bearing trees and cacti before considering food plants. Do not eat if you have no water; digestion will further deplete the body's liquid reserves and accelerate dehydration.



**1 Barrel Cacti** (*Ferocactus*) of southwest North America average 1.2m (4ft), at that size yielding over 1 litre (2 pt) of edible, sometimes bitter, milky sap. This is an exception to the rule to avoid milky sap. It can provide a source of moisture to cool down the body – but is not good for drinking. Slice off the top and smash the inner pulp.

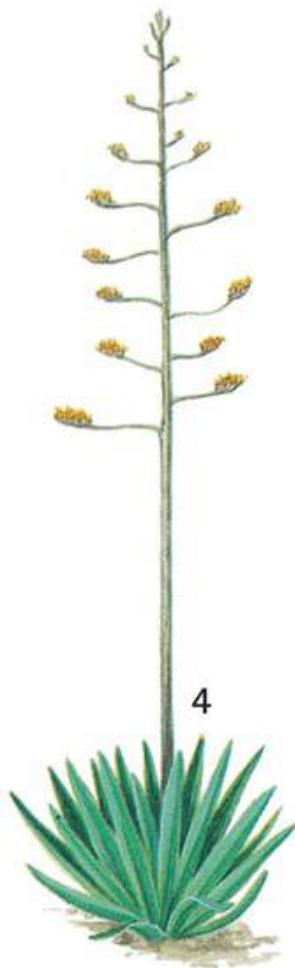


**2 Prickly Pears** (*Opuntia*) have thick, jointed, pad-like leaves, yellow or red flowers and egg-shaped pulpy fruits. Peeled fruits are edible raw; peel and cook tender young pads—cutting away the spines, roast seeds for flour, tap the stems for water. Originally from North America, now in many arid areas. Very prickly, treat with great care. In Africa do NOT confuse with spurges; unlike this plant, they have milky sap.

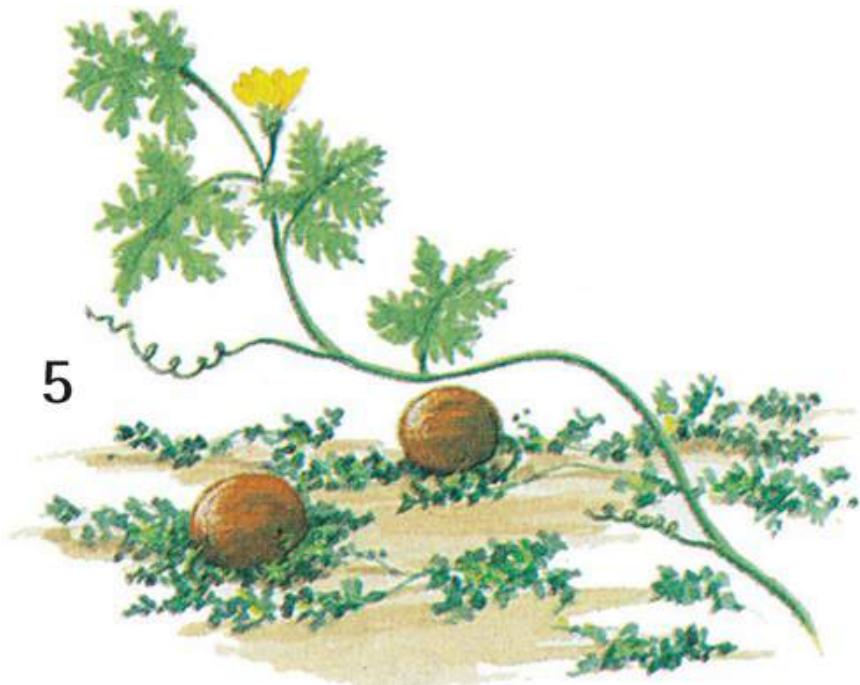


3

**3 Carrion Flowers** (*Stapelia*) are found in some variety in southern and tropical Africa. They are large odd-looking plants with short succulent stems that branch off into leaves like fat spines, with distinctive star-shaped flowers, which may be covered in thick shaggy hairs. Mature flowers give off a powerful stench of rotting meat, an unmistakeable, if not very pleasant clue to identification. Tap the stems for their water.

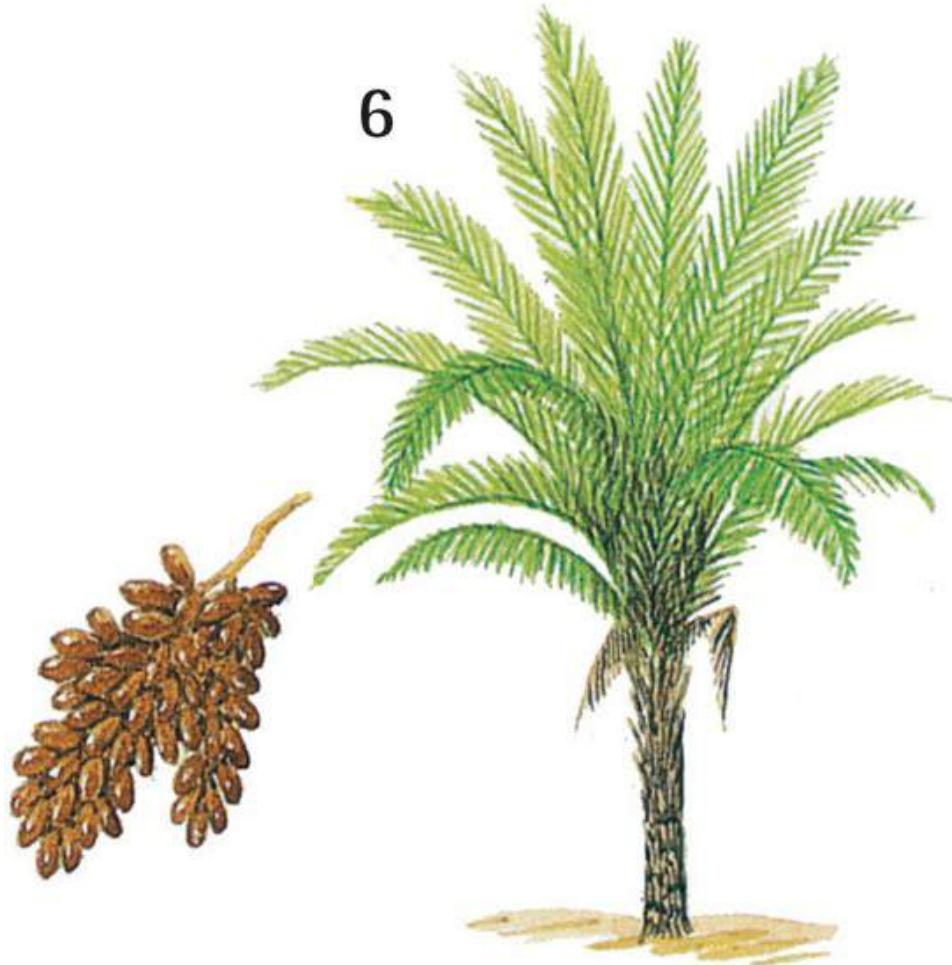


**4 Mescals** (Agave) have a rosette of thick, leathery, spiky leaves with a sharp tip from which arises a very long, columnar flower stalk. Stalks not yet in flower are edible cooked. In Africa, Asia, southern Europe, Mexico and the southern United States, and parts of the Caribbean. Grows in moist tropical areas as well as desert country.

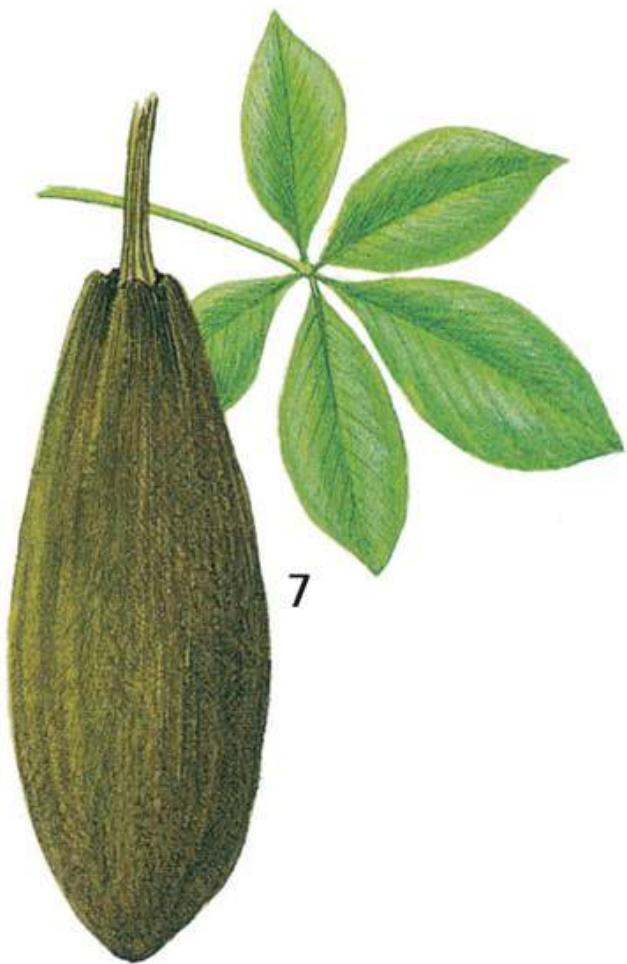


**5 Wild Gourds** (Cucurbitaceae) occur in the Kalahari and Sahara east to India, cultivated elsewhere. The plant is mat-forming, resembling a vine, with orange-sized fruits. Boil the unripe fruit to make it more edible, roast the seeds, cook young leaves. The flower may be eaten raw, and stems and shoots chewed for their water.

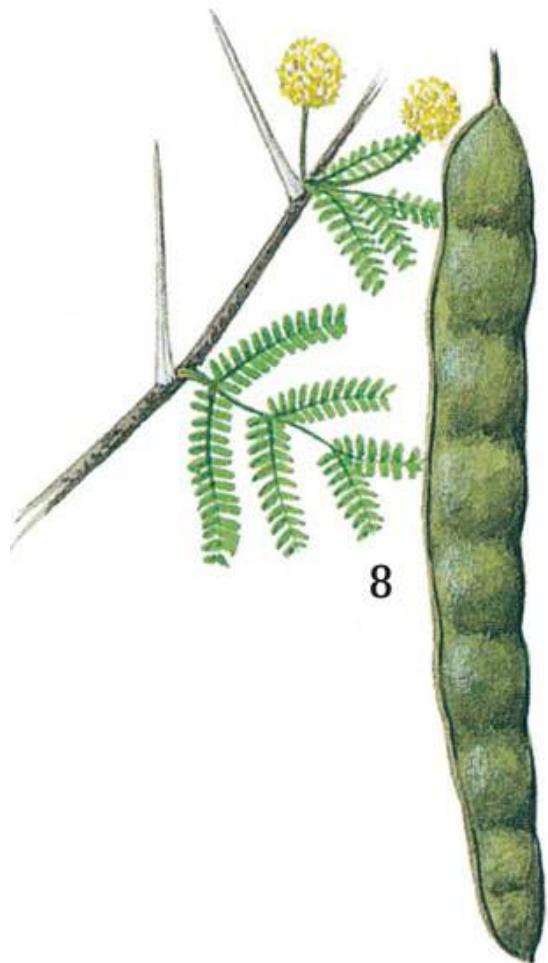
6



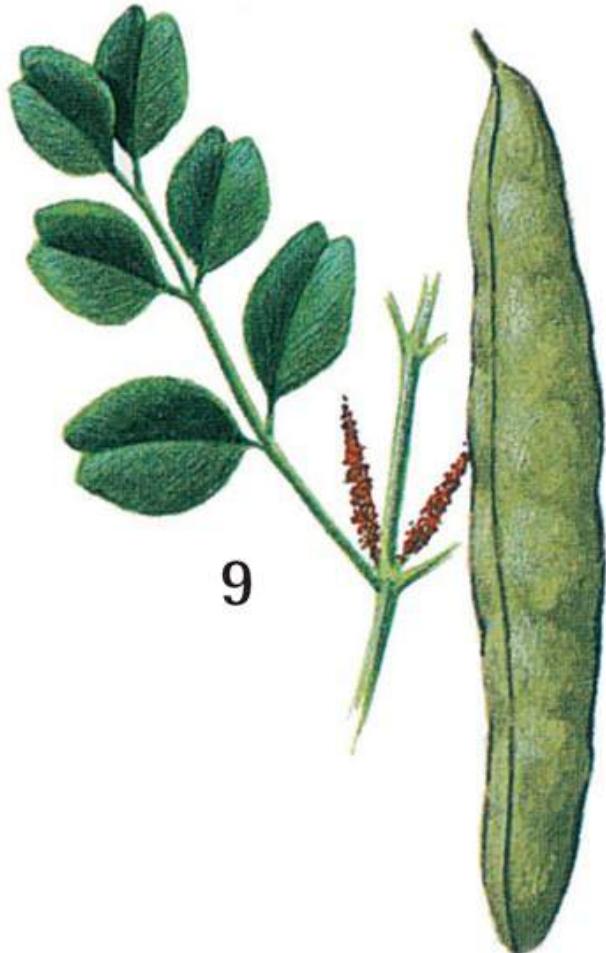
**6 Date Palms** (*Phoenix*) grow wild, always near water, from India to North Africa; introduced elsewhere. They are tall slender palms crowned with a tuft of leaves up to 4m (16ft) long. The fruits and growing tip of the palm are edible raw young leaves are edible cooked. Sap from the trunk is rich in sugar and can be boiled down.



**7 Baobabs** (*Adansonia*) are large trees with huge, swollen, heavily ridged trunks found from Africa to Australia. The trunk of a mature tree can be 9m (30ft) in diameter. Tap the roots for water. The pulpy fruits, 10-20cm (4-8in) long, and seeds are edible raw; boil tender young leaves.



**8 Acacias** (*Acacia*) occur abundantly from Africa to northern Australia. There are many different kinds, all thorny, scrubby, medium-sized trees with very small leaflets their flowers usually forming small (1cm/½in) globular flowerheads, white, pink or yellow, according to species. Their roots may be tapped for water, the seeds roasted and young leaves and shoots boiled.



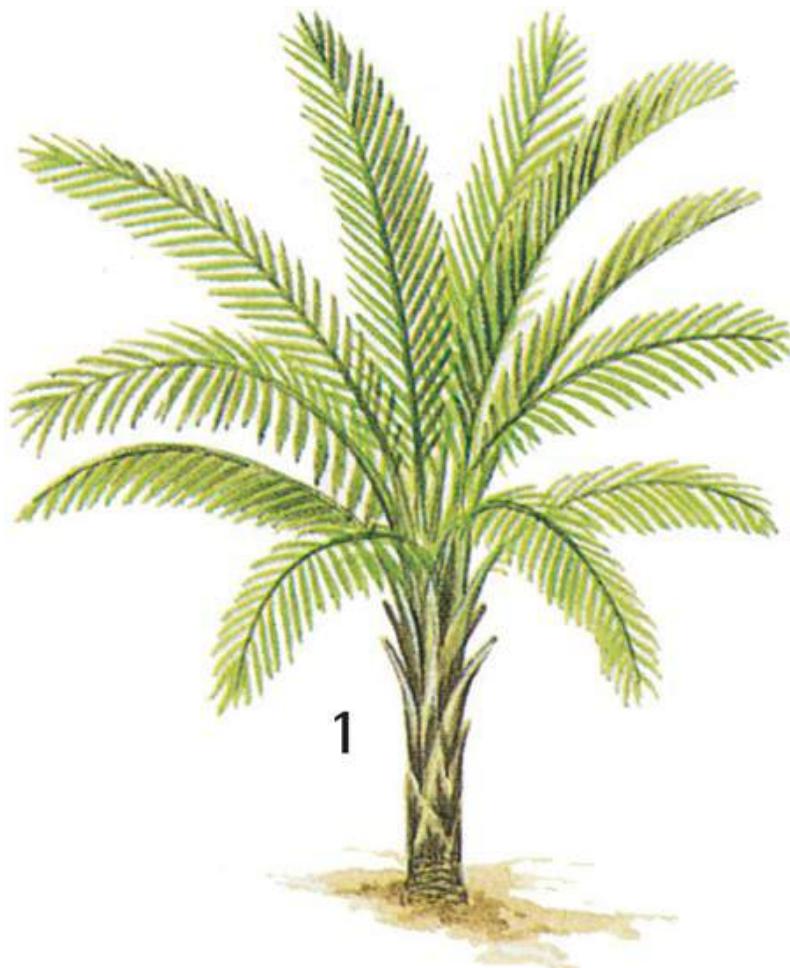
**9 Carob** (*Ceratonia siliqua*) grows in arid land around the Mediterranean and from the Sahara across Arabia to India. It is almost the only tree on Malta. Height can reach 15m (50ft). Shiny, evergreen leaves are paired, two or three to a stem. Small red flowers produce flat leathery seed pods containing a sweet, nutritious pulp, which can be eaten raw, and hard brown seeds which can be ground and cooked as porridge. Also known as St John's or Locust Bread because these pods were thought to have been the 'locusts' on which John the Baptist lived in the wilderness.

---

## TROPICAL PLANTS

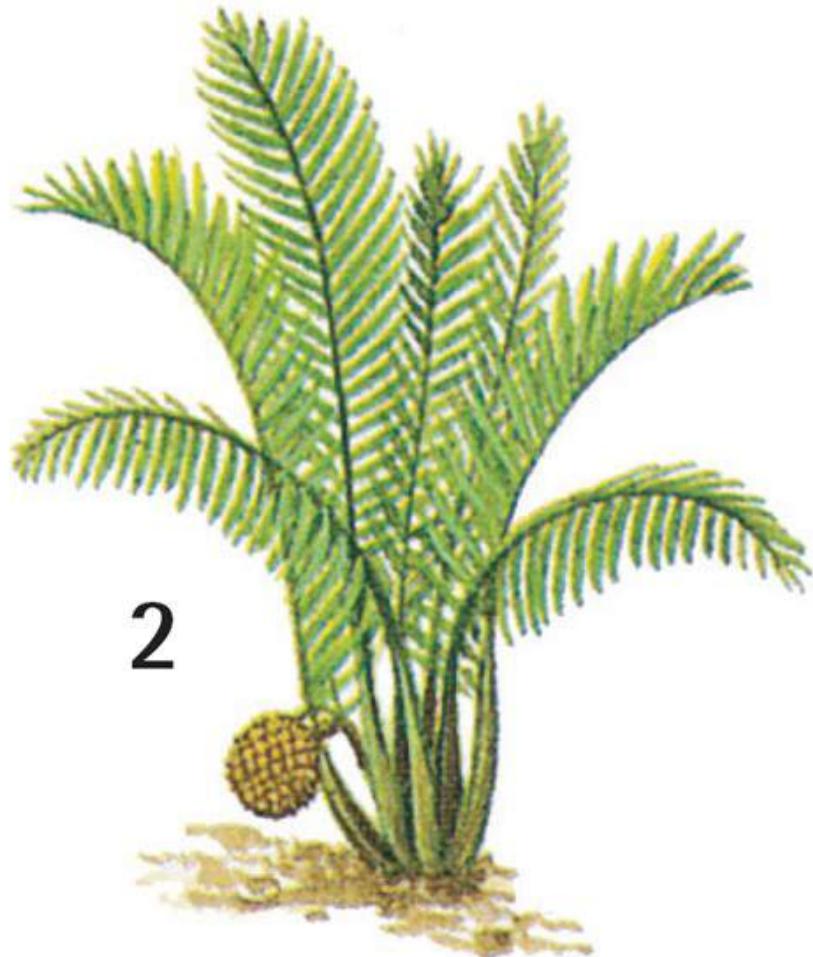
---

**Edible plants abound in tropical areas, but unless you are already familiar with them it is better to begin with to eat palms, bamboos and the commoner fruits.**



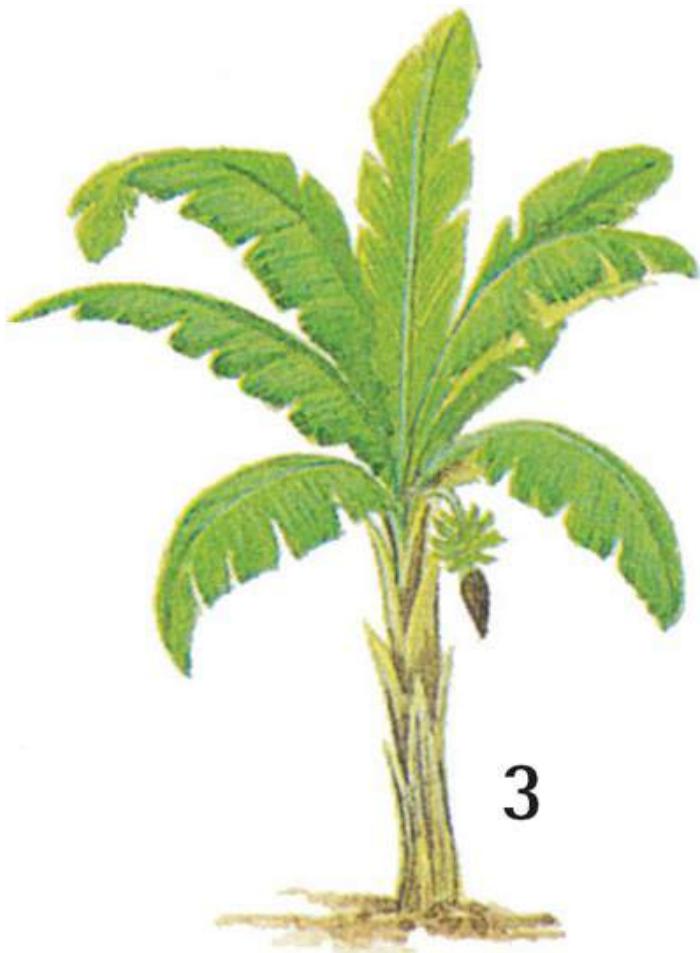
1

**1 Sago Palms** (*Metroxylon*) come from the damp lowlands of southeast Asia; introduced elsewhere. Medium, to 10m (30ft), spiny-trunked; leaves long, delicate and arching. The spongy, starchy inner pith of the trunk provides the sago.



2

**2 The Nipa Palm** (*Nypa fruticans*) grows to 6m (20ft), with long, fern-like leaves swelling and clustering at the base to form the 'trunk'; in brackish estuaries in South-east Asia. It yields sugary sap, delicious fruits and an edible 'cabbage' or growing tip.



3

**3 Bananas or Plantains** (*Musa*) are spread all over the tropics: 3-10m (9-30ft) tall, with very large, strap-like, usually split light green leaves. Hard plantain fruits are only edible cooked. They have more starch but less sugar than the soft kinds. Eat buds, growing tips, young stems and inner parts of roots as well as fruit.



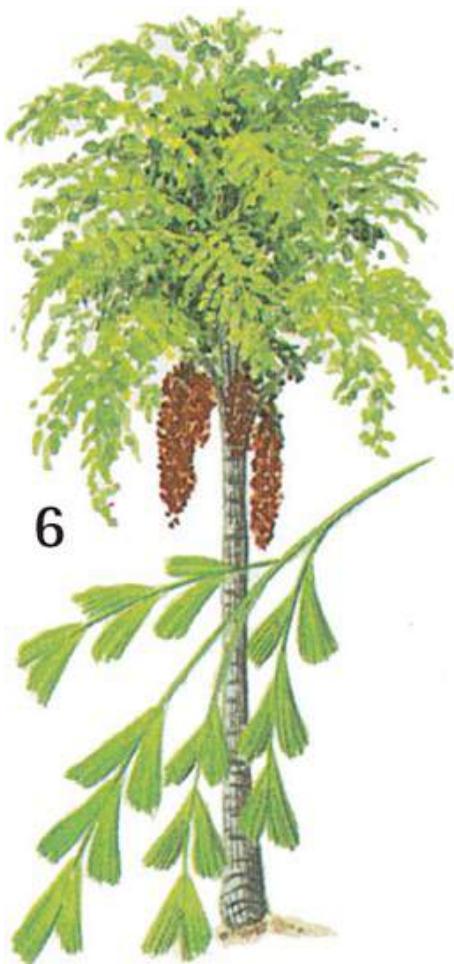
4

**4 Sugar Palm** (*Arenga pinnata*) reaches 12-20m (38-65ft), with a rough scaly trunk topped by fairly erect, Sago-like leaves and yellow, branch-like fruiting parts; wild in Malaysia and Indonesia. To obtain sugar, collect sap and boil down to a thick syrup.



5

**5 Rattan Palms** (*Calamus*) are robust climbers, hooking themselves on to trees with a fish-hookshaped appendage on the midrib of the leaves; often common in Old World tropics. The swollen stems, seeds and growing tip are edible; the roots make excellent lashings.



6

**6 Fish-tail Palms** (*Caryota*) average 10m (30ft), with a smooth, ringed trunk and long arching leaves of many oval or wedged-shaped leaflets. There are many similar kinds in the Old World tropics. Use as Sago Palm. Do NOT eat fruit.

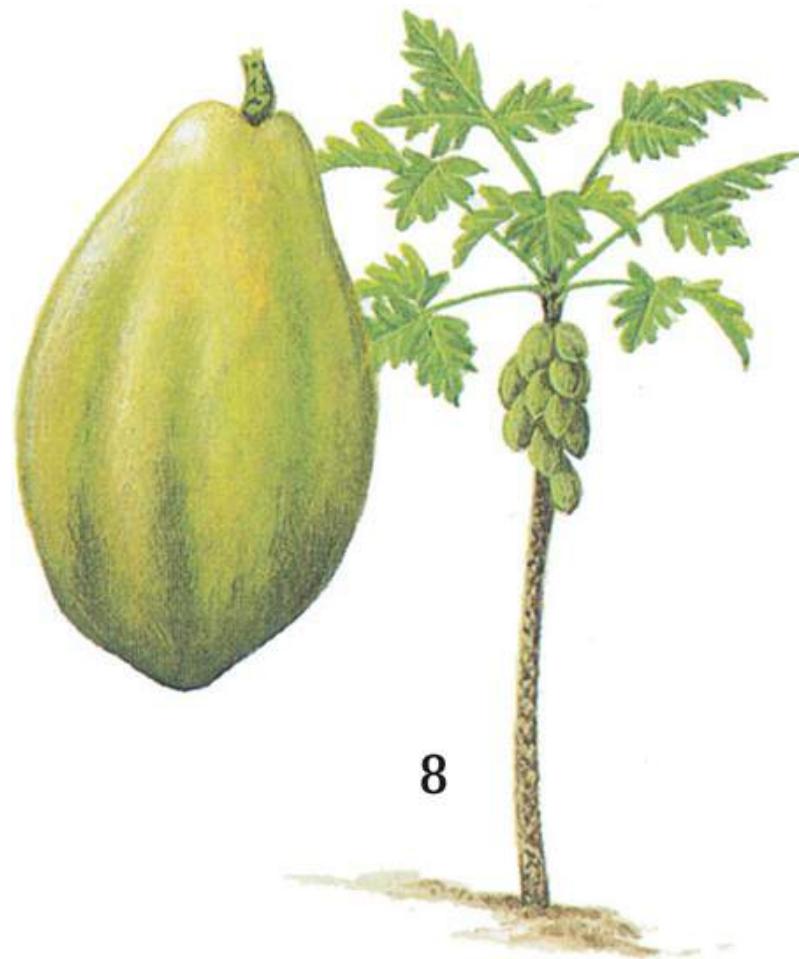


**7 Coconut Palms** (*Cocos nucifera*) occur all over the moist tropics, growing to over 30m (90ft), with large clusters of nuts hanging at the base of the leaves. The fibrous 'coconut' is inside a large, smooth husk. The growing tip, milk and flesh of the nut are edible. The rich sap can be boiled down for sugar.

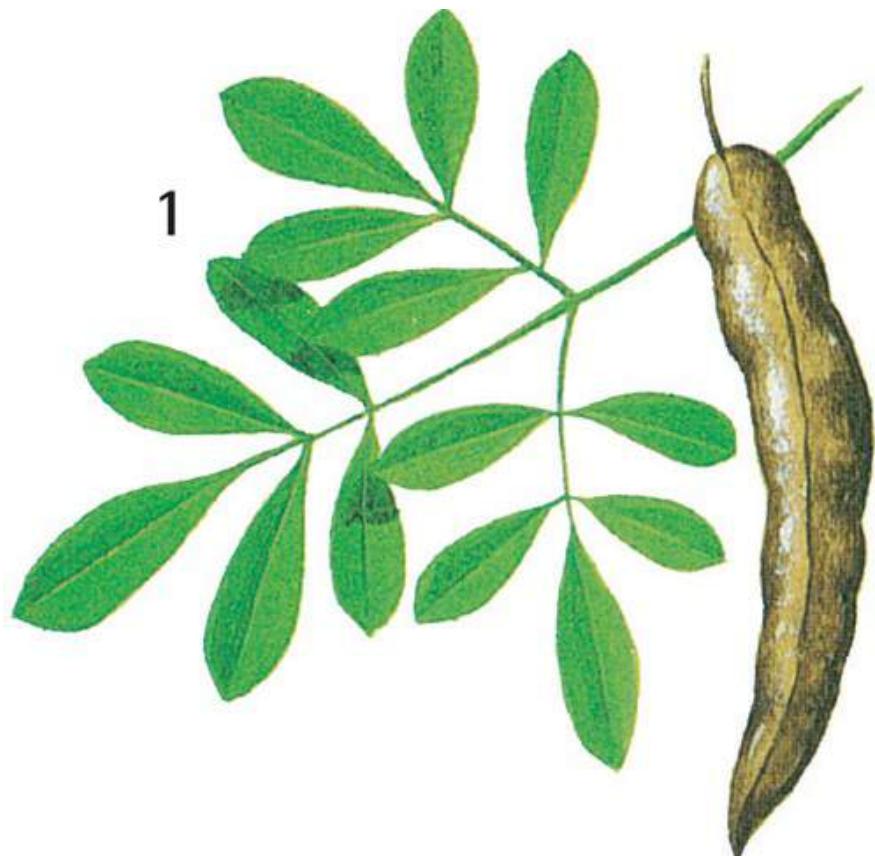
**These are only some of the tropical palms. Others include:**

- **Piva Palm** (*Guiliema utilis*) of America, has a slender trunk banded with alternating dark and light spines. Boil or roast the red or yellow fruits.
- **Baccaba and Patawa Palms** (*Jessenia* and *Oemocarpus*) of Brazil and the Guianas, have small purplish fruit 2cm ( $\frac{3}{4}$ in) long. Eat both pulp and kernel of seed.
- **Assai Palm** (*Euterpe oleracea*) of tropical South America, which likes swampy places, especially along tidal rivers. Edible fruit has soft purple pulp.

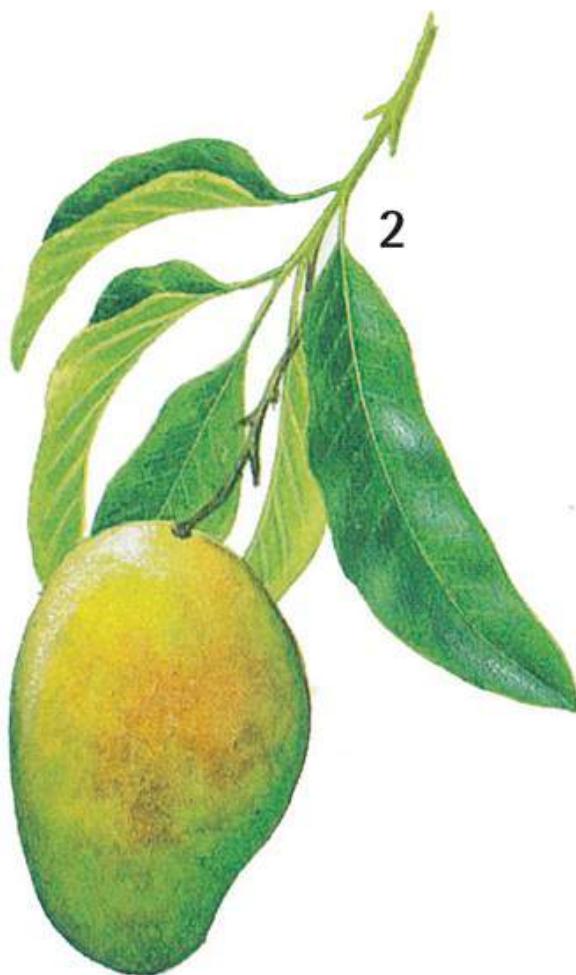
**The growing tip, enclosed by a crown of leaves or the sheathing bases of the leaf stems, is edible in most palms—eat any that are not too bitter. Fruit should be AVOIDED if not positively identified, especially in the Far East—some contain crystals which cause intense pain.**



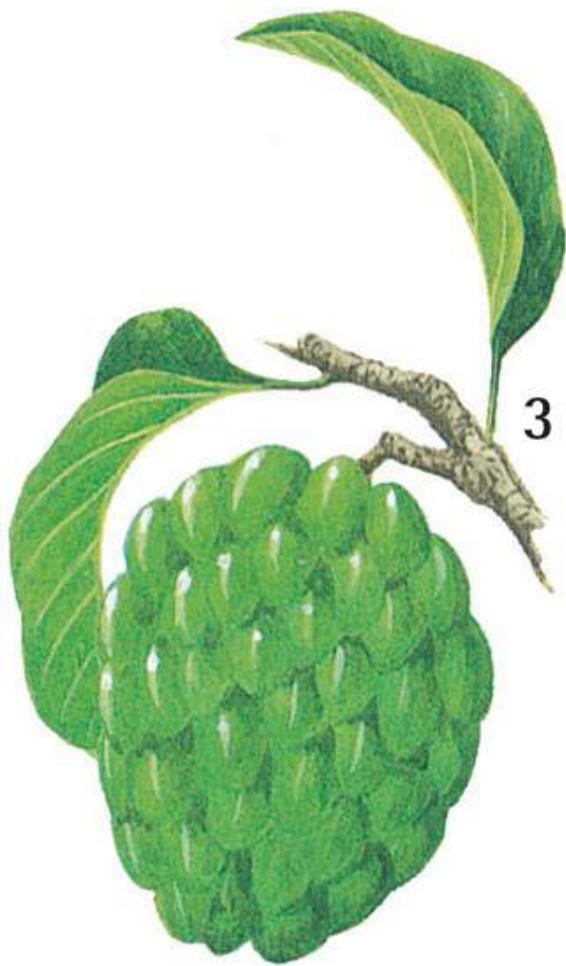
**8 Papaya or Pawpaw** (*Carica papaya*) is a small tree, 2-6m (6-18ft) tall, with a soft hollow trunk and large, dark green, melon-like fruits that ripen to orange or yellow; in moist conditions in all tropical parts. The fruit is edible raw and settles an upset-stomach; young leaves, flowers and stems are edible boiled. Change the water AT LEAST once. Although it will tenderize tough, stringy meat, do not get the milky sap of unripe fruit in the eyes.



**1 Horseradish Tree** (*Moringa oleifera*) grows to 10m (30ft), with small oval leaflets, yellow-white flowers and 25-38cm (10-15in), narrow, three-sided brown seed pods; wild in East Africa and South Asia but now elsewhere. Leaves and young fruits are edible raw or cooked; slice older pods and cook like string beans; use the root for seasoning like true Horseradish. The expressed juice of leaves and roots is good for treating inflammations.

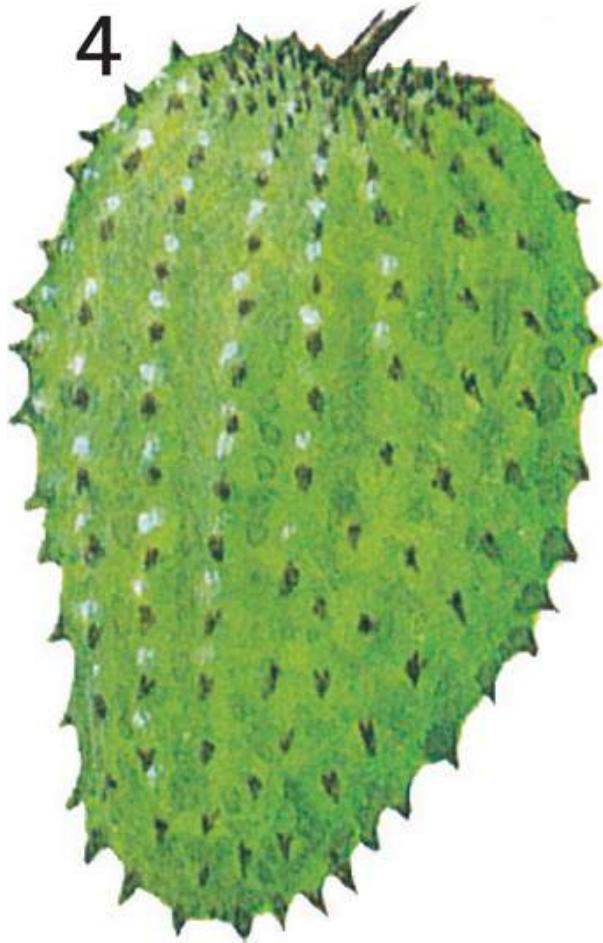


**2 Mango** (*Mangifera indica*) grows in moist places almost everywhere, a medium to large evergreen tree with clusters of narrow dark green leaves. The oval, 7-5-13cm (3-5in) fruits ripen from green to orange, are edible raw and contain a long flat stone. Mango leaves can cause an allergic reaction in some people.



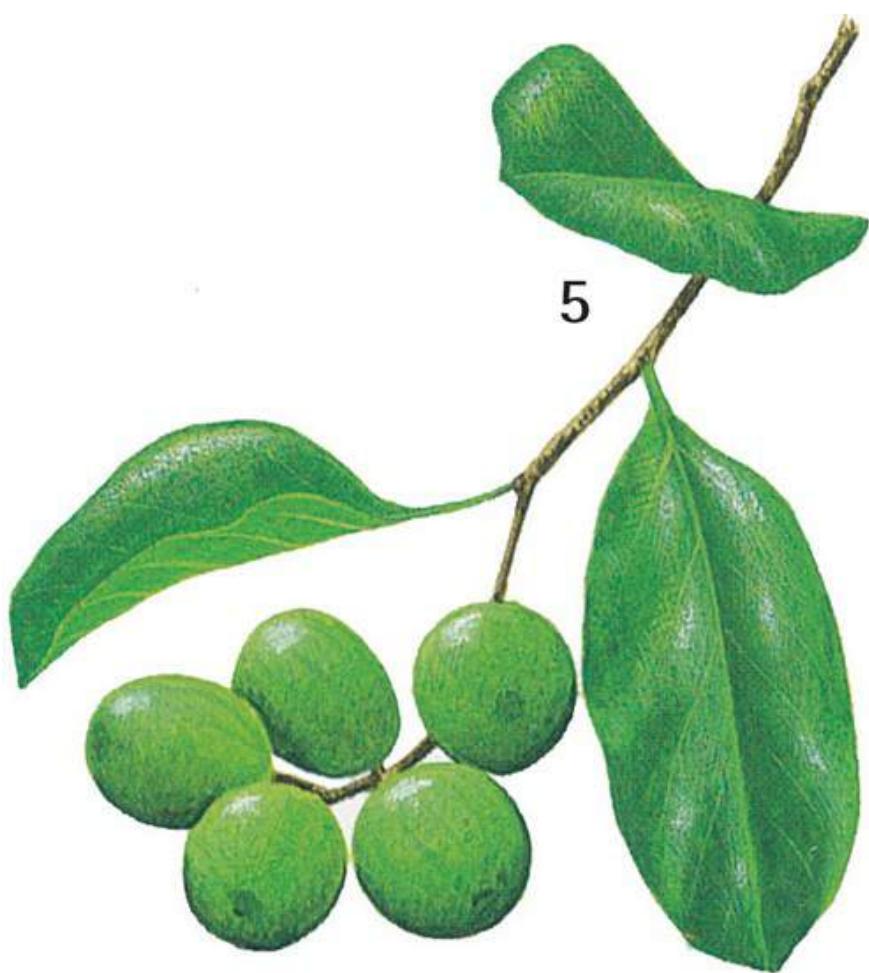
**3 Sweet Sop** (*Annona squamosa*) is a 5-6m (15-18ft) tree with oval to spear-shaped leaves and Magnolia-like flowers. The aromatic, pulpy, globe-shaped green-grey fruit is made up of many parts. Originally from the New World tropics but now in most parts; two edible relatives in Central and South America are the Cherimoya (*A. cherimola*) and Bullock's Heart (*A. reticulata*).

4

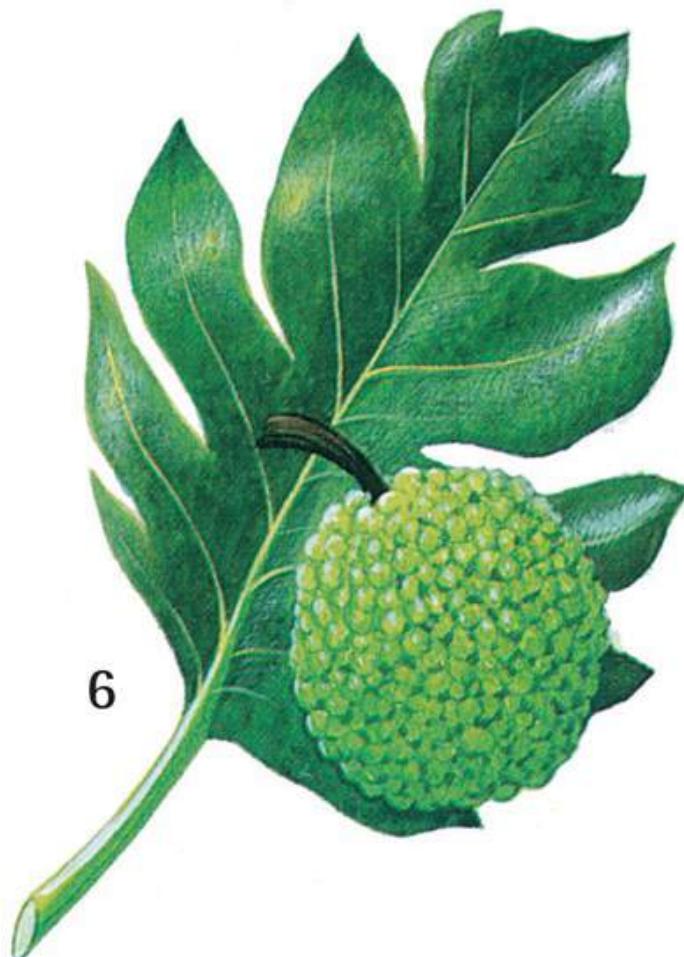


**4 Sour Sop** (*Annona muricata*) is similarly widespread, growing to 12m (38ft), with large Avocado-shaped fruits, green, leathery, spiny, weighing up to 2kg (4-4lb). A very refreshing acid taste.

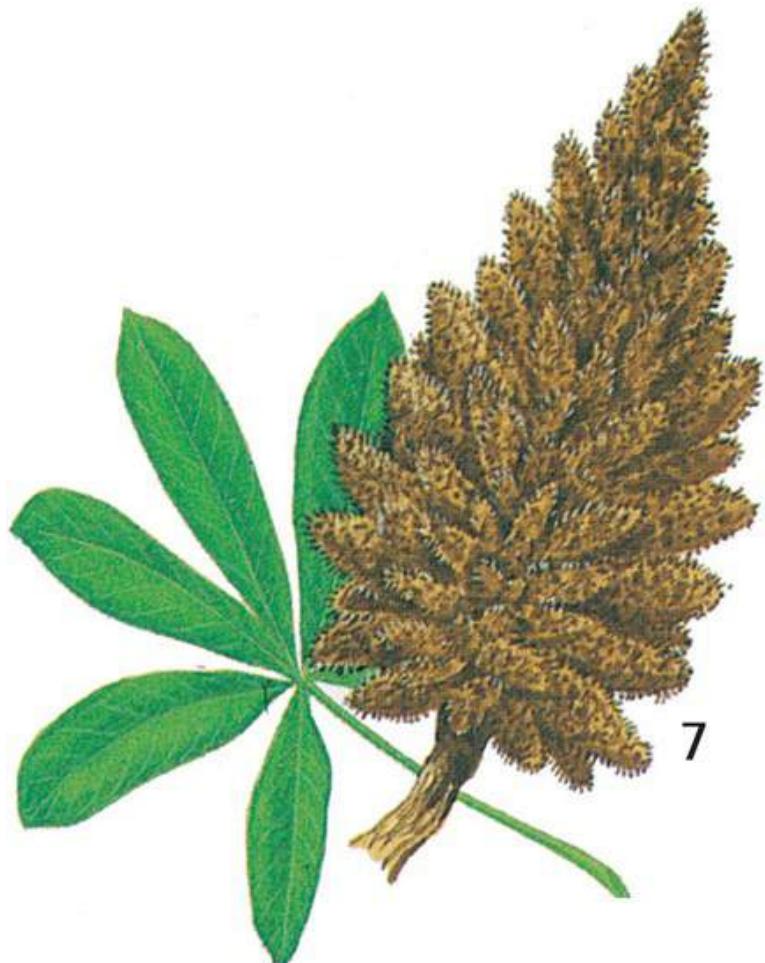
5



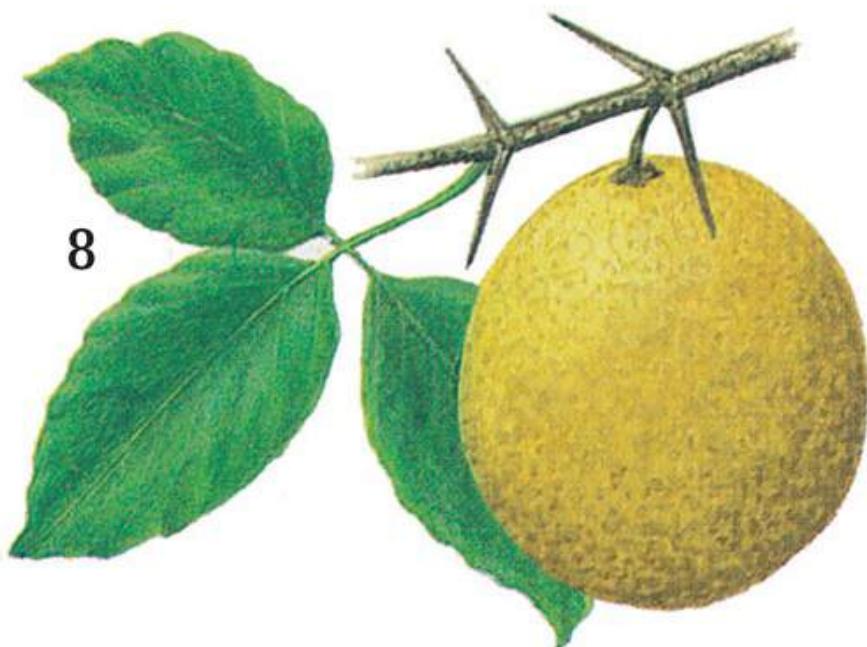
**5 Wild Figs** (*Ficus*) exist in great variety in tropical and subtropical areas, a few species in deserts. They are straggly trees, with aerial roots and leathery evergreen leaves rounded at the base. The pear-shaped fruits are edible raw and grow direct from the branches. Avoid any that are hard and woody or with irritant hairs.



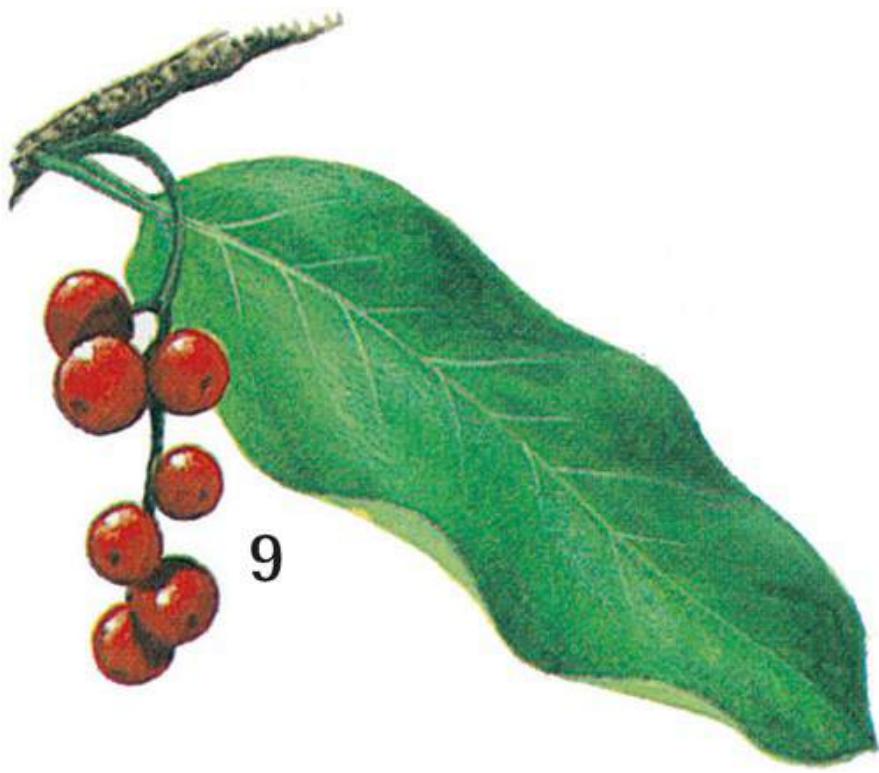
**6 Breadfruits** (*Artocarpus*) are trees, growing to 15-20m (48-56ft), with large, deeply lobed leaves, glossy above, milky sap and very large warty-skinned fruits; now in most tropical parts. The starch-rich fruits are edible raw if the skin is scraped away and the tougher inner bits discarded.



**7 Sterculias** (*Sterculia*) are found in Central and South America, and elsewhere in the tropics. Large trees, up to 30m (100ft) high, with buttressed roots and hand-shaped leaves, their fruits consist of pods containing black, peanut-like seeds that can be eaten raw after removing the irritant hairs.



**8 Bael Fruit** (*Aegle marmelos*) is a tree of 2-5-4-5m (7-15ft), with dense prickly growth and rounded, yellowish or greyish fruits up to 10cm (4in) across; in parts of the Himalayas, India and Burma. A relative of the citruses, the fruits are edible raw and very rich in vitamin C.

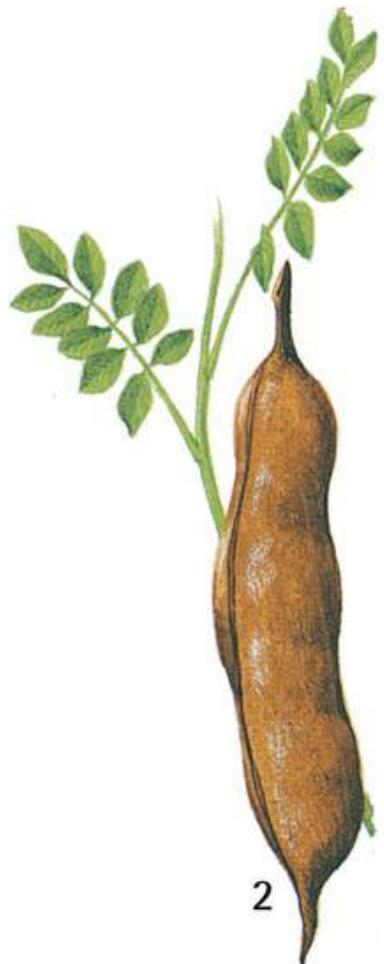


**9 Bignays** (*Antidesma*) are evergreen shrubs, 10-13m (30-40ft) tall, with shiny 15cm (6in) leaves, in the forests of South-east Asia. The fleshy, many seeded, currant-like fruits are about 1cm (½in) across and mature from green to white to red and finally black. Edible raw, but better jellied.

In primary tropical forest most fruits are carried in the canopy, unreachable unless you climb the trees or chop them down, though elsewhere fruit can prove a valuable food. More accessible is the vine-like Rattan, which can be cut and then hauled down to obtain the growing tip. Peel off the outer sheath for about 2m (7ft), cut into lengths and roast in the embers of a fire. The inner heart of some is very tasty, although slightly bitter.

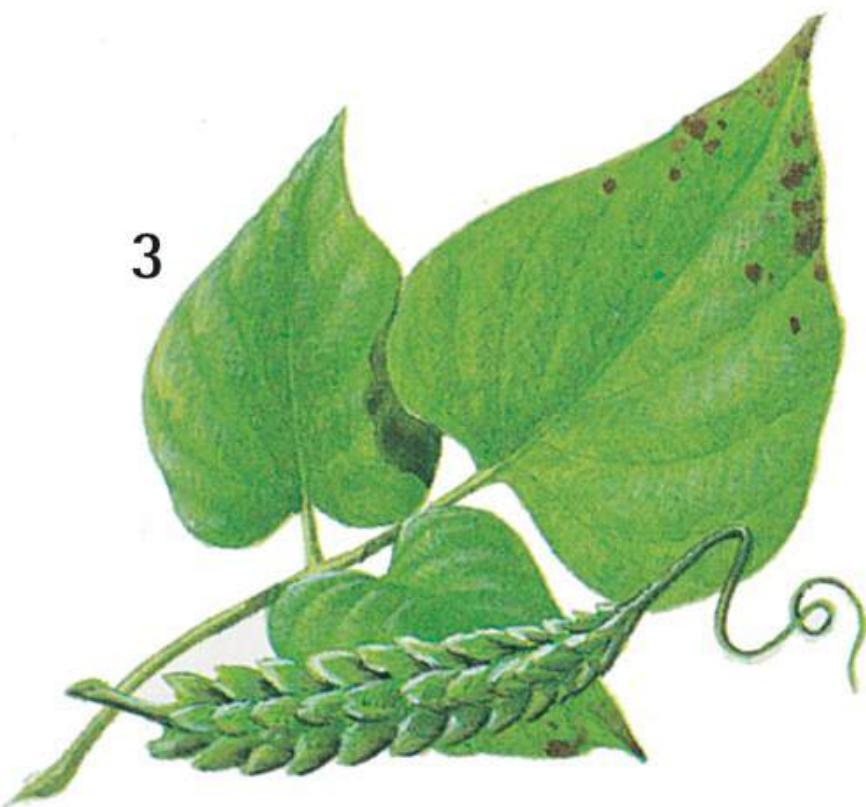


**1 Ceylon Spinach** (*Basella alba*) is trailing, vine-like, with thick circular to oval or heart-shaped leaves, from greenish to purplish-red, and fleshy purplish flowers; now in most tropical areas. Young leaves and stems are edible cooked and rich in vitamins.



2

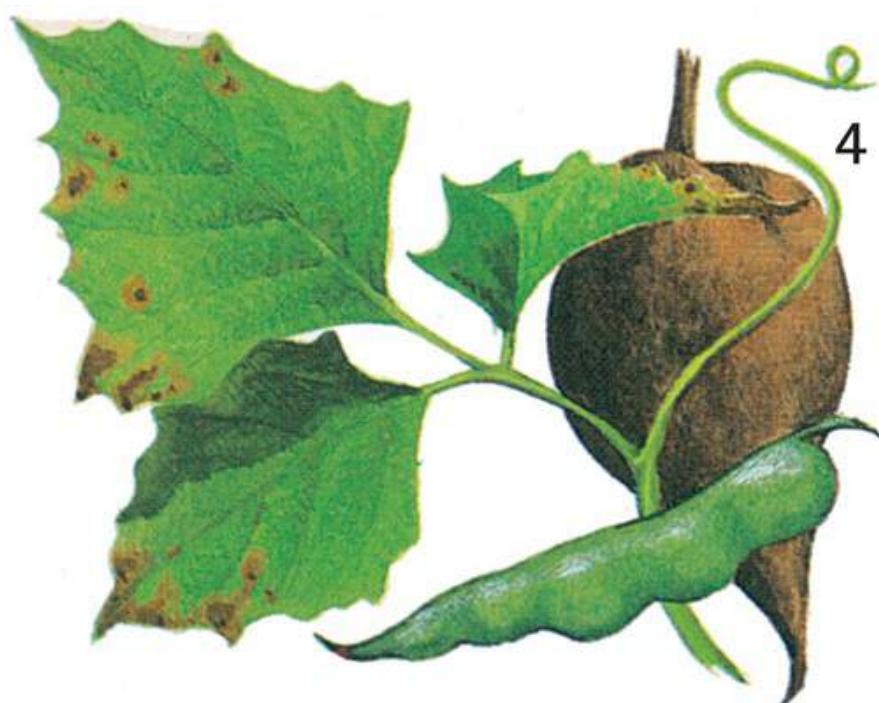
**2 Tamarind** (*Tamarindus indica*) is a densely branched tree to 25m (80ft), with evergreen leaves formed of many leaflets, pale yellow red-streaked flowers and brown seed pods. The pulp of the pods is edible raw and rich in vitamin C. Seeds and young leaves can be used as a potherb, and the bark peeled and chewed. Now in many areas.



3

**3 Goa Beans** (*Psophocarpus*) are climbing plants of the Old World tropics, with spear-shaped leaves, blue flowers and 20cm (8in) long, four-angled, scaly seedpods. Boil young pods lightly, they taste like beans, the

young seeds like peas, or roast older seeds. Young leaves, which taste like spinach, are edible raw. Thicker roots, richer in protein than potato or cassava, are edible raw or can be boiled, fried, baked or roasted like potatoes.

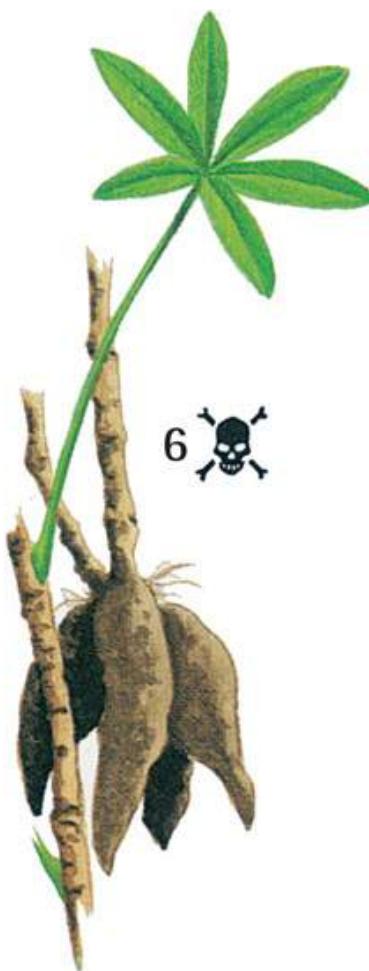


**4 Yam Beans** (*Pachyrhizus* and *Sphenostylis*) are climbing plants with irregular, three-part leaves and a knotty turnip-like root, in large patches in most of the tropics. The edible tubers are crisp, sweet, juicy, tasting of nuts. The seeds are harmful raw and must be well boiled.

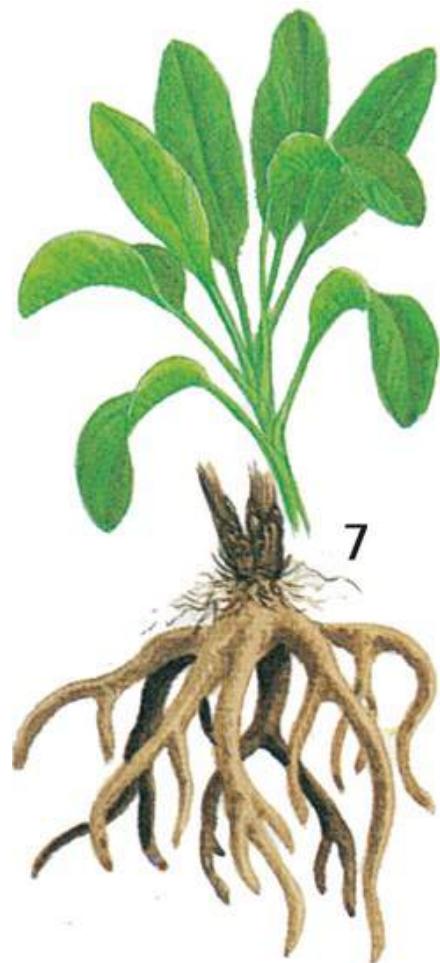


**5 Peanut** (*Arachis hypogaea*) is not a true nut and its fruits ripen underground. A small, bushy plant with pairs of

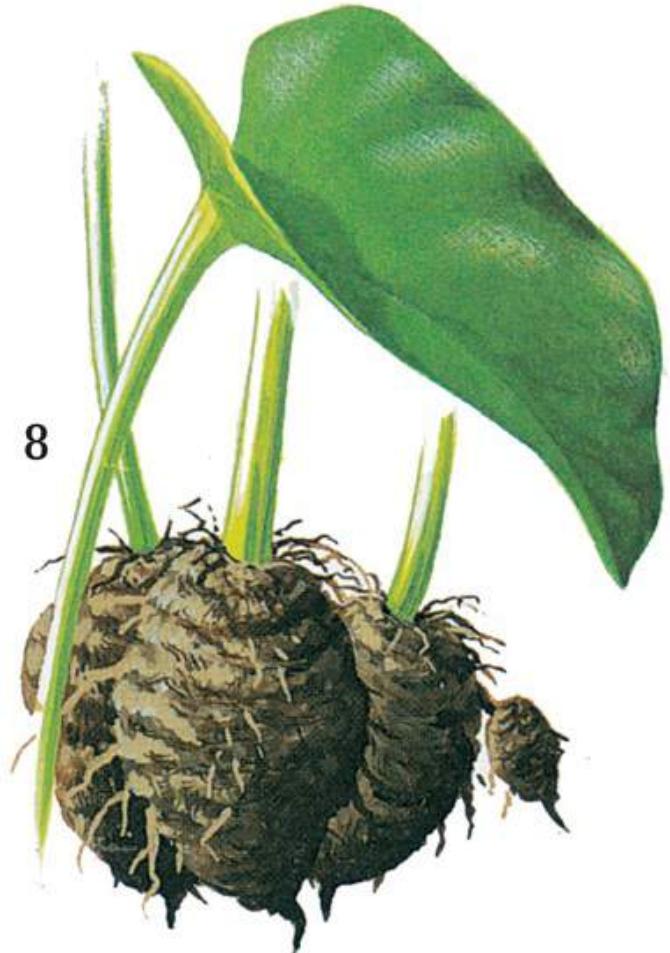
bluntly oval leaves, yellow flowers and stalks leading to the wrinkled pods. Very nutritious, the 'nuts' keep well. Now in most tropical and subtropical parts.



**6 Cassava or Manioc** (*Manihot esculenta*) is a staple throughout the tropics, growing on well-drained ground to 5m (15ft) with jointed stems and long-stalked leaves divided into 5-9 blades. The fat tubers are lethally POISONOUS raw and MUST be cooked. Keeps well, particularly when ground as flour.



**7 Ti Plant** is a shade-loving shrub, 2-5m (6-15ft), with whorls of shiny, leathery, sometimes reddish leaves and, when ripe, red berries; now widespread in tropical parts particularly Pacific islands. Boil the starch-rich fleshy roots.



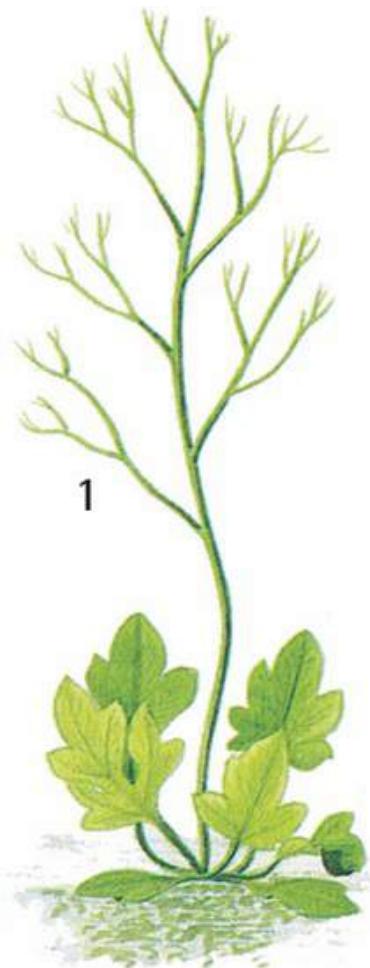
**8 Taro** (*Colocasia*) occurs on wet ground all over the tropics, up to 1-5m (5ft), with large, very long-stalked heart- or arrow-shaped leaves arising from the roots and an orange-yellow flower. The tubers taste like potatoes but are harmful raw and MUST be cooked.

**In tropical forests the best places to forage will be along streams and watercourses. Anywhere that the sun can penetrate the jungle floor will produce a mass of vegetation but river banks often offer the clearest area, where plants can thrive.**

While climbing spurs take the chance to look out over the jungle canopy below. Good views are obtained where a deadfall has crashed down and cleared an area. Palms and other recognizable food plants can be seen among the canopy. Their position can be noted and they can then be felled when required. A tree will provide a considerable supply of food.

If weak and short of food do NOT expend effort felling a tree. You will use up too much energy and there will be easier food available.

Do not pick more food than you need. Food deteriorates rapidly in tropical conditions. Leave food on the growing plant until you need it and eat if fresh.

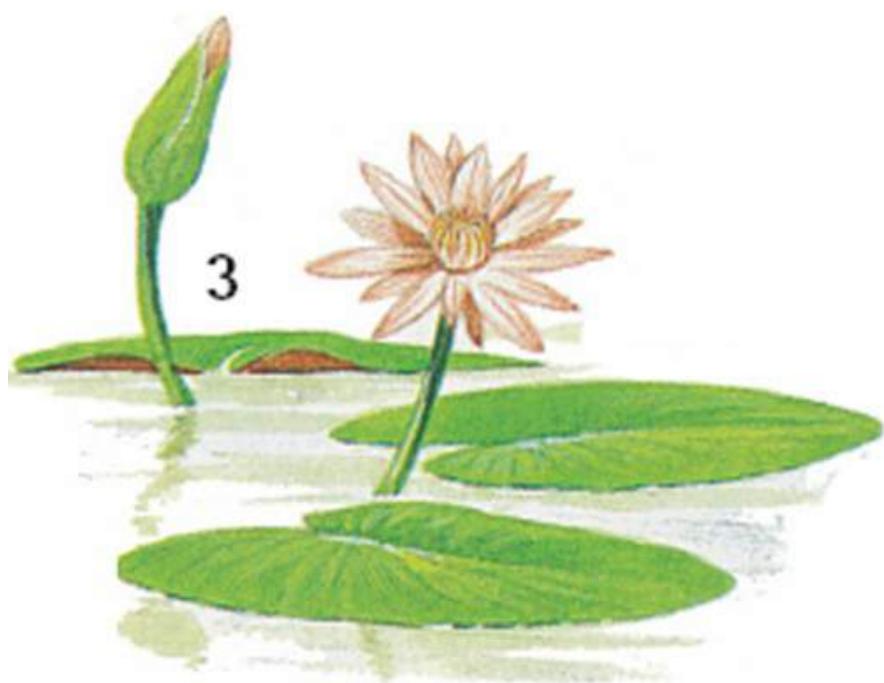


**1 Water Spinach** (*Ipomoea aquatica*) is trailing, with light green leaves and white flowers; always by fresh water, usually as a floating plant, mainly in Southeast Asia. Older stems are stringy, but young leaves and shoots can be boiled.



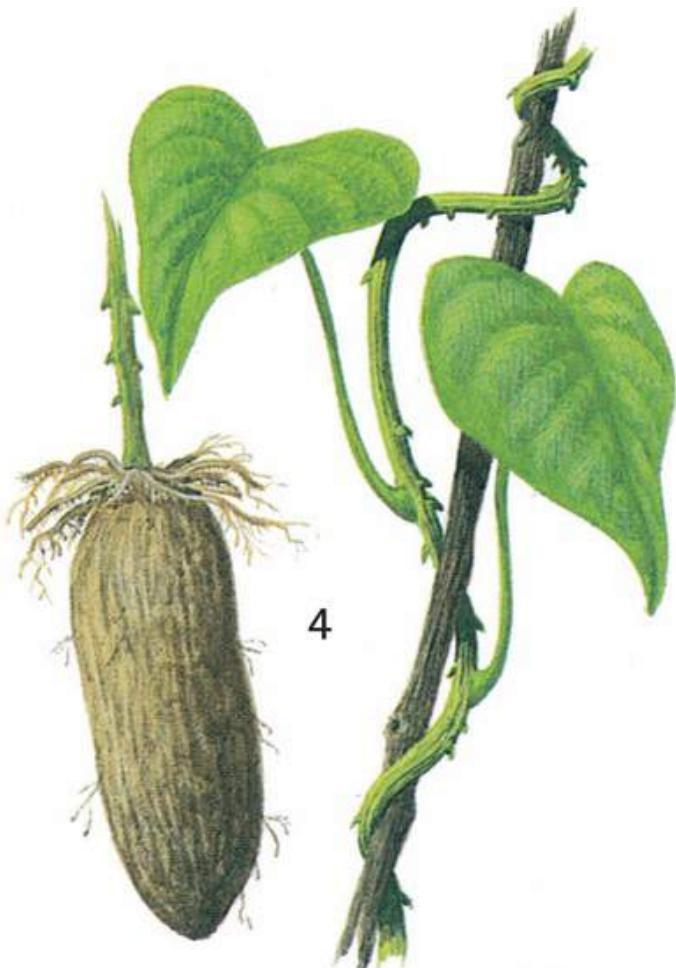
2

**2 Lotus** (*Nelumbium nuciferum*) is aquatic, with long-stalked, bell-shaped bluish-green leaves standing clear of the water and pink, white or yellow flowers. Young leaves and peeled stems are edible boiled. Boil or roast ripe seeds, first removing the bitter embryo, and the rootstalk. Mainly Asia, and in parts of Africa and North America.

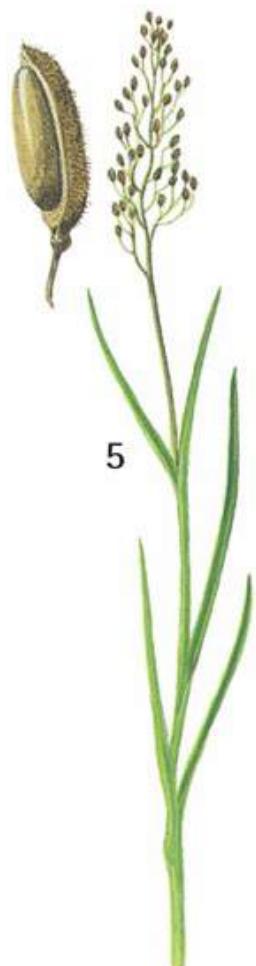


3

**3 Water Lilies** (*Nymphaea*) grow in lakes, rivers and streams in tropical Africa, India and America, and also in some temperate areas, with heart-shaped leaves floating on the water. They have large, starch-rich edible tubers, stems which can be cooked, and bitter but nourishing seeds.

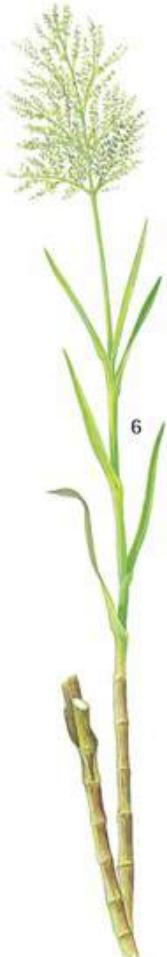


**4 Wild Yams** (*Dioscorea*) occur in great variety in light forest and clearing in both tropical and subtropical parts. Twining, vine-like stems, some kinds bearing edible aerial tubers, lead to one or more large underground tubers. If kept dry, yams store well. Some Wild Yams are poisonous raw: for safety **ALWAYS** cook—peel tubers, boil and mash.



5

**5 Wild Rice** (Oryza and in North America Zizania) is a coarse grass growing to 90-120cm (3-4ft), widespread in the tropics and many temperate areas. Thresh and winnow the grains to remove the tough, hairy husks, then boil or roast and pound for storage as flour.



6

**6 Sugarcanes** (*Saccharum*) are cultivated all over the tropics and occasionally occur wild. A coarse, tall, aromatic, thick-stemmed grass, the canes can be chewed raw to extract their sweet juice.



7

8

8a

**7 Millets** (*Panicum*, *Pennisetum* and others) are tropical cereals, sometimes found wild in drier areas. They are grasses, several feet tall, with sausage-like heads of grain, each one about the size of a mustard seed. Pound to a meal and use in stews or as porridge.

**8 Bamboos** are giant grasses of most moist areas. The rapidly growing, edible young shoots are at the base of the plant; split the tough outer sheath and cook like asparagus. The seeds of a flowering bamboo are also edible. Bamboos have a great many uses as building materials, for making rafts, even as cooking utensils, as well as their use as food. Take care when collecting: some plants are heavily stressed and may shatter or whiplash.

In addition to the plants illustrated and listed here there are others that you will recognize from their similar cultivated varieties, such as the **Avocado** (*Persea americana*) of tropical South America, where it is a favourite food of many animals—including the jaguar!—the **Christophine** (*Sechium edule*), native to Brazil, and the whole family of citrus fruits, with about 60 wild species in Indo-Malaya and China, some growing at quite high altitudes. But **BEWARE**. **Strychnine** has fruits that look like oranges but which are **DEADLY POISONOUS**.

In the tropics you will usually have a choice of plant foods so stick to the ones you can identify and know are safe. If you need to eat unknown plants always apply the edibility test, using very small amounts.

These are some of the many other edible plants which you might find, all are good to eat if prepared as suggested:

#### PALMS

**Palmyra or Borassus palm** (*Borassus flabellifer*), growing in drier parts of tropical Africa, southern India and Burma, resembles a Date Palm, with similar fan-like leaves. Sort insides of the three-part nuts are edible, sap makes a pleasant drink and flowering parts can be tapped for their sugary juice.

**Saw palmetto** (*Serenoa repens*), common on sandy ground from southern USA into Central America. Average 1-2m (3-7ft) tall, with long, stiff fan-shaped groups of leaves, clusters of white flowers and oblong black fruits. Growing tip (palm heart) edible raw or cooked.

**Yuccas** (*Yucca*) of many kinds grow on sandy ground, from USA into Central America. Evergreen, woody-stemmed, with stiff sword-like leaves off a stem or in a cluster at the top. Petals of six-petalled white flowers and ripe pulp of oblong gerkin-like fruits are edible raw or cooked.

#### NUTS

**Brazil Nut** (*Bertholletia excelsa*) is widespread on dry ground in forests of tropical South America, 30-40m (100-130ft) high, with long, crinkly margined, oval leaves and yellow flowers. Pot-shaped, lidded capsules contain 15-30 edible nuts. In the same area **Sapucaya** (*Lecythis unrigera*) nuts come in similar capsules and are equally tasty.

**CashewNut** (*Anacardium occidentale*), originally native to north-eastern South America, now grown all over tropics, are shrubs or medium-sized trees with evergreen, broadly oval, leathery, prominently veined leaves in opposite pairs and pinkish-yellow flowers. Eat ONLY nuts, borne on the end of a pear-shaped, reddish, fleshy fruit stalk. Harmful unless peeled and cooked. **BEWARE**: smoke or steam from cooking can cause blindness.

**Indian Almond** (*Terminalia catappa*), found in scrubby, especially coastal, area over almost all the tropics, has very large, leathery, club-shaped leaves. Mature trees spread to 10m (30ft), young ones have distinctive circles of horizontal branches. Hard edible nuts in a fibrous, thick green, fleshy shell, cluster at the branch tips.

**Queensland Nut** (*Macadamia ternifolia*) grows in north-eastern Australia on a tree about 12m (40ft) tall with many narrow, spear-shaped leaves. Round nuts in greenish husks come in clusters.

#### FRUITS

**Guava** (*Psidium guajava*) of Central and South America, widely introduced elsewhere, are small gnarled trees, up to 10m (30ft), with peely, light brown bark, oval leaves in pairs (slightly hairy below), white flowers and large crabapple-like light yellow fruits with a whitish to pinkish, creamy, seed-filled pulp. Edible raw or cooked and rich in vitamin C.

**Persimmon** (*Diospyros*) found in waste places and dry woods of warm temperate east Asia and southern USA, introduced elsewhere, can reach 20m (63ft). Small, sometimes crinkly, spear-shaped leaves make good tea, rich in vitamin C. Round, yellow to reddish or purplish, tomato-like, 5-7.5cm (2-2½in) fruits are edible raw or cooked.

**Rambutan** (*Nephelium lappaceum*) grows in forests in parts of Southeast Asia reaching 20m (63ft). Bushy, with dark brown bark, many small dark green leaflets, small greenish flowers and clusters of small, soft-spined, hairy-looking fruits ripening to red. Fleshy white inner pulp—not seed—is edible raw and rich in vitamin C. **Pulasan** (*N. mutabile*) is a smaller tree in the same area with equally good blunt-spined fruits with a yellowish pulp.

**Durian** (*Durio zibethinus*), 40m (130ft) trees, native to Malaysia and Borneo, widely introduced in southeast Asia, with long, spear-shaped, bronze to olive green leaves and large, spiky-surfaced, distinctive yellow fruits. Cream-coloured pulp (not seeds) is foul smelling but delicious to eat.

**Malay Apple or Pomerac** (*Syzygium malaccensis*) reaches 15m (50ft), with glossy green, broadly spear-shaped leaves, clusters of bright pink flowers and smallish 5cm (2in) red, apple-like fruits, smelling of roses and edible raw.

**Rose apple** (*S. aqueum*) is similar but with yellowish or white pear-shaped fruits tasting of apricots. Both native to rain forest and scrubby places in Malaysia, widely introduced elsewhere.

**Carambola** (*Averrhoa carambola*) grows in Indonesian forests. Small, average 8m (24ft) height, with many light green, small, spear-shaped leaves, clusters of small whitish-pink flowers and yellow, ribbed fruits 7.5-12.5cm (3-5in) long, edible raw, though sometimes acid.

**Mangosteen** (*Garcinia mangostana*) of south-east Asian forests, reach 12m (40ft), with long, leathery, dark green leaves in pairs, large yellow and purple flowers and round, tomato-shaped purplish-brown fruits whose five segments of inner white pulp are edible raw. There are several kinds.

**Passion Fruit or Granadilla** (*Passiflora edulis*), climbing plant, native to Brazil, introduced elsewhere, with long twining stems, three-lobed leaves, distinctive tendril-like white and purple flowers and egg-shaped purple fruits with a many-seeded, slightly acid pulp. Many kinds of edible passion fruits grow in tropical America.

**Jackfruit** (*Artocarpus heterophyllus*) of southern India, now found widely in Southeast Asia, is like breadfruit. A tree reaching 25m (80ft), with dark green, leathery, bluntly oval leaves and huge warty fruits up to 32kg (70lb) in weight, edible raw but better cooked; seeds can be roasted.

## VEGETABLES

**Okras** (*Abelmoschus*) There are many species of this bushy herb. A cluster of up to 40 yellow, five-petalled flowers produce the 'lady's fingers' which are a good food for those with stomach trouble and can be eaten raw. Roast the seeds inside.

**Potato** (*Solanum tuberosum*) grows wild in the Andes, but BEWARE of its tomato-like fruits—which in this case are poisonous. The wild tomato looks so similar that it is safer to avoid it. Always cook potato tubers.

**Sweet Potatoes** (*Ipomoea*) are now found in many parts of the world but are especially abundant in the tropics, where they are widely cultivated. They are straggly, creeping, vine-like plants, often with heart-shaped leaves, and sometimes large, spindly tubers. These can be boiled or roasted. They may exude a milky juice, but this is not poisonous.

**Beans** (*Phaseolus*) occur widely in huge variety, many as escapees from cultivation. All are twining scrambling plants with 'pea-flowers' in various colours and beans in long pods, like the domestic type. Seeds highly nutritious—boil them.

**Snake Gourds** (*Tricosanthes*) of Indo-Malaysia and Australia are straggling, vine-like plants with lobed leaves and very long, thin, snake-like fruits up to 2m (6½ft) long. A common kind has bright red fruits. Slice them, then boil.

---

## POISONOUS TROPICAL PLANTS

---

The proportion of poisonous plants in the tropics is no greater than in any other part of the world. Watch out for the following—they are either poisonous to eat or irritate on contact.



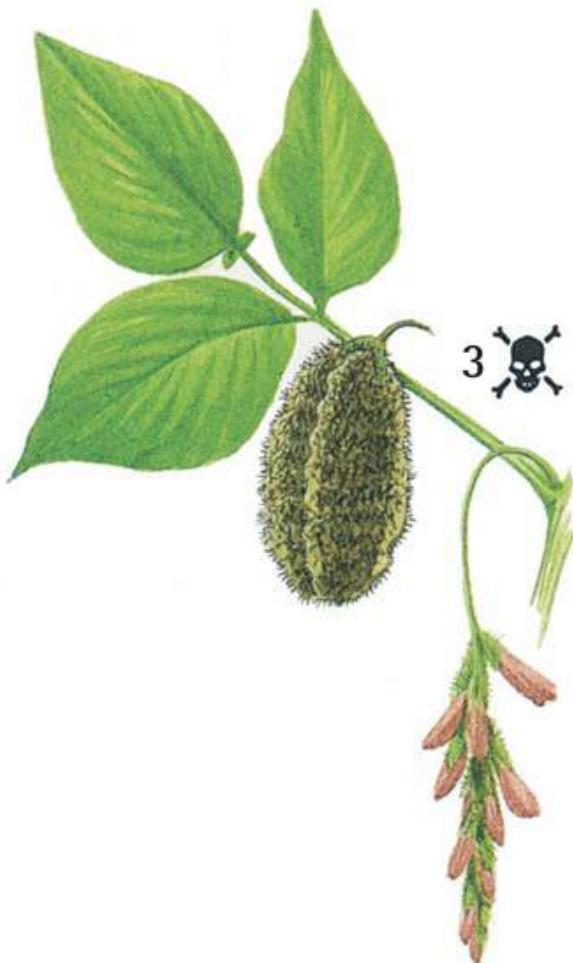
1

**1 White Mangrove** (*Avicennia marina*) is slender, growing to 6m (18ft) in mangrove swamps and estuaries from tropical Africa east to Indonesia and Australasia. It has pale bark, many pencil-like roots spear-shaped to oblong leaves, yellow flowers and small round white berries. The sap blisters the skin and will blind if it gets in the eyes.



2

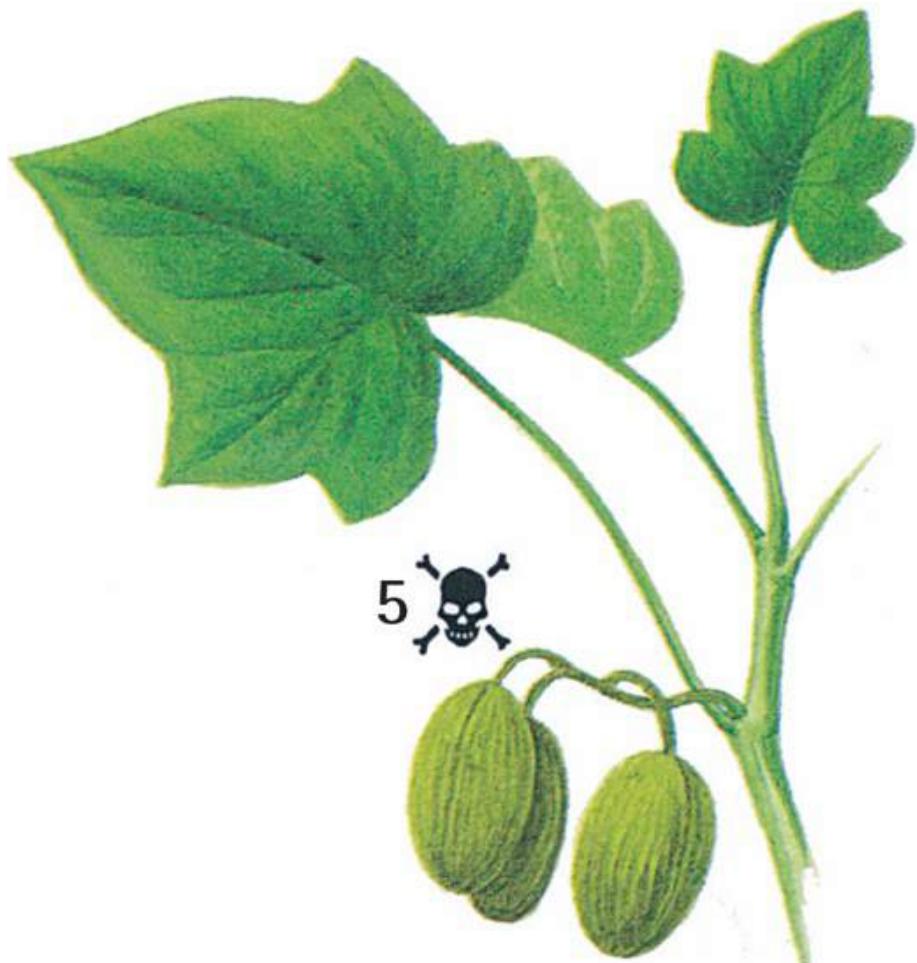
**2 Nettle Trees** (*Laportea*), widespread in the tropics, often by water, are smallish, with crinkly, spear-shaped, sharply-toothed leaves and drooping spikes of flowers—like an ordinary nettle. There are many kinds, including temperate ones. The burning sting is like a nettle's, but much worse. The seeds are very poisonous.



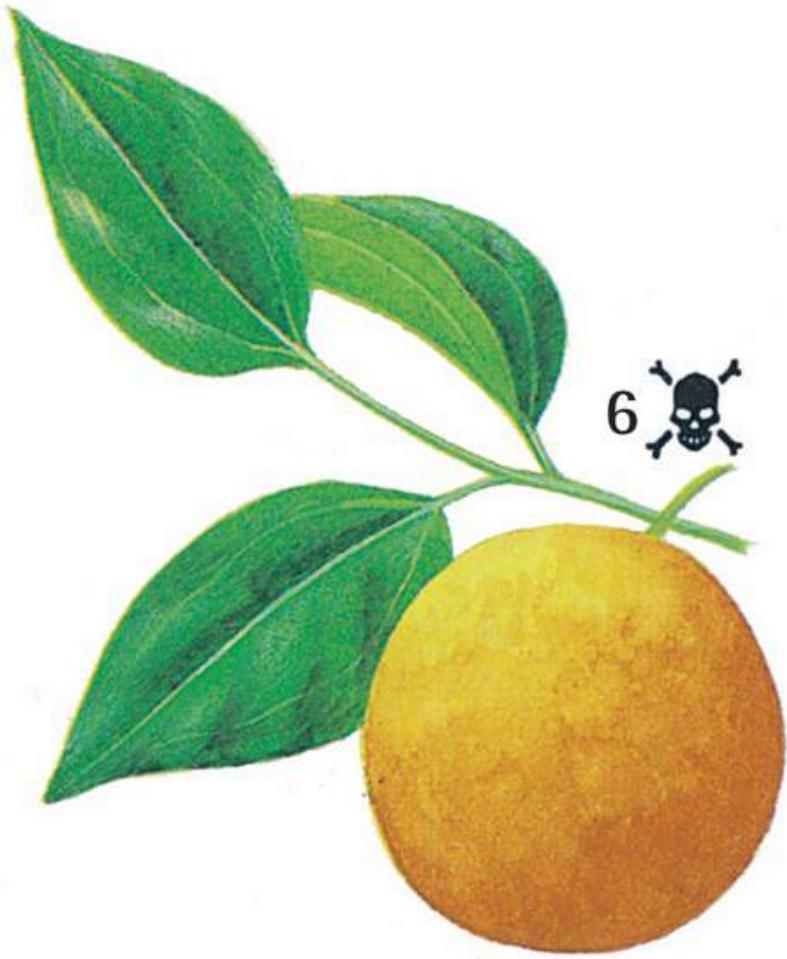
**3 Cowhage** (*Mucuna pruriens*), of scrub and light woodland, is trailing, vine-like, with oval leaflets in groups of three, spikes of hairy dull purplish flowers and brown hairy seedpods. Contact with pods and flowers causes irritation, blindness if in the eyes.



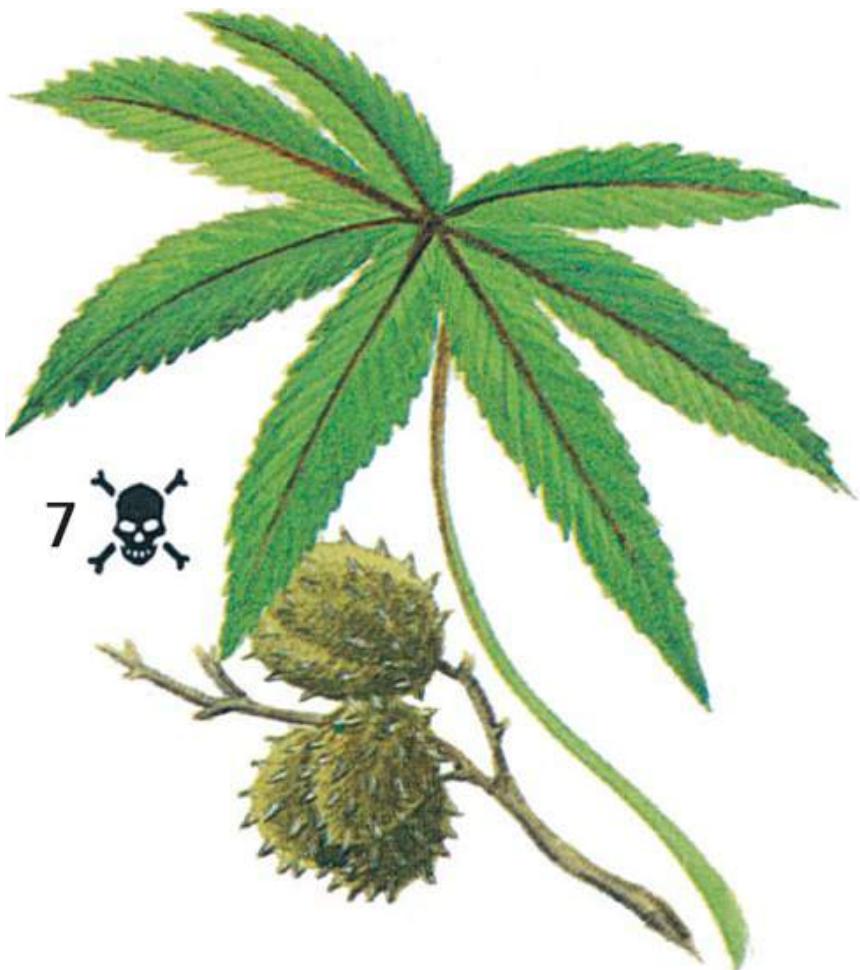
**4 Pangi** (*Pangium edule*) a tree reaching 20m (60ft) in jungle in southeast Asia, mainly Malaysia, with heart-shaped leaves in spirals, spikes of green flowers and clusters of large brownish pear-shaped fruits. All parts are poisonous, especially the fruits—the seeds contain prussic acid.



**5 Physic Nut** (*Jatropha curcas*) a shrub or small tree of wooded country throughout the tropics, has large, lobed, ivy-like leaves, small greenish-yellow flowers and yellow apple-sized fruits containing three large seeds. The seeds taste sweet but their oil is violently purgative, hence its name, and the remains of the pressed seeds very poisonous. Has equally dangerous relatives.



**6 Strychnine** (*Strychnos nuxvomica*) a small tree with oval leaves in opposite pairs and white to yellowish-red, orange-like fruits whose seeds, containing strychnine, are DEADLY. *S. Nuxvomica* is found mainly in India but other strychnine species occur throughout the tropics.



**7 Castor Oil Plant or Castor Bean** (*Ricinus communis*), is found throughout the tropics in scrubby and waste places, is shrub-like, its leaves arranged like the fingers of a hand, with spikes of yellow flowers and prickly three-seeded pods. Seeds are violently purgative, sometimes fatally.



**8 Duchesnia** (*Duchesnia indica*) resembles an ordinary edible strawberry, trailing, with three-part leaves, red strawberry-like fruits and yellow, not white, flowers; on waste ground in the warmer parts of Asia, introduced to North America. The fruits are highly poisonous, sometimes fatal.

**These are only some of the poisonous tropical species. Among others which you should avoid are:**

**Renghas Trees** (*Gluta*) of parts of India east to south-east Asia, which have severely irritant sap.

**Beachapple or Manzanillo** (*Hippomane mancinella*) of the New World tropics, a small tree with smooth pale bark and small apple-like poisonous fruits, which also has irritant sap.

**Sandbox Tree** (*Hua crepitans*), also of the New World, a large, spiny tree whose sap can irritate or temporarily blind—its segmented fruits, which look rather like miniature pumpkins, are poisonous.

---

## **SEASHORE PLANTS**

---

**These plants thrive in salty conditions—but at the right time of year, many other edible plants occur near the coast.**



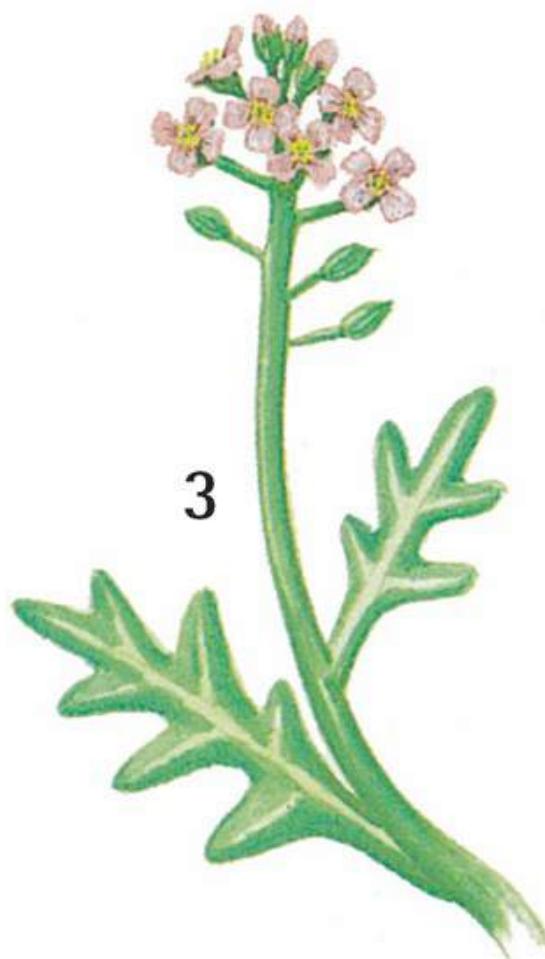
1

**1 Oraches** (*Atriplex*) average 90cm (3ft), pale-stalked, with pale green spear-shaped or triangular leaves and spikes of small greenish-white flowers; on salty ground, some kinds well inland. Cook the young leaves.



2

**2 Sea Beet** (*Beta vulgaris*) is sprawling, red-tinged, with leathery, long-stalked dark green leaves and clusters of small green flowers; on European coasts. The leaves are edible raw or boiled.

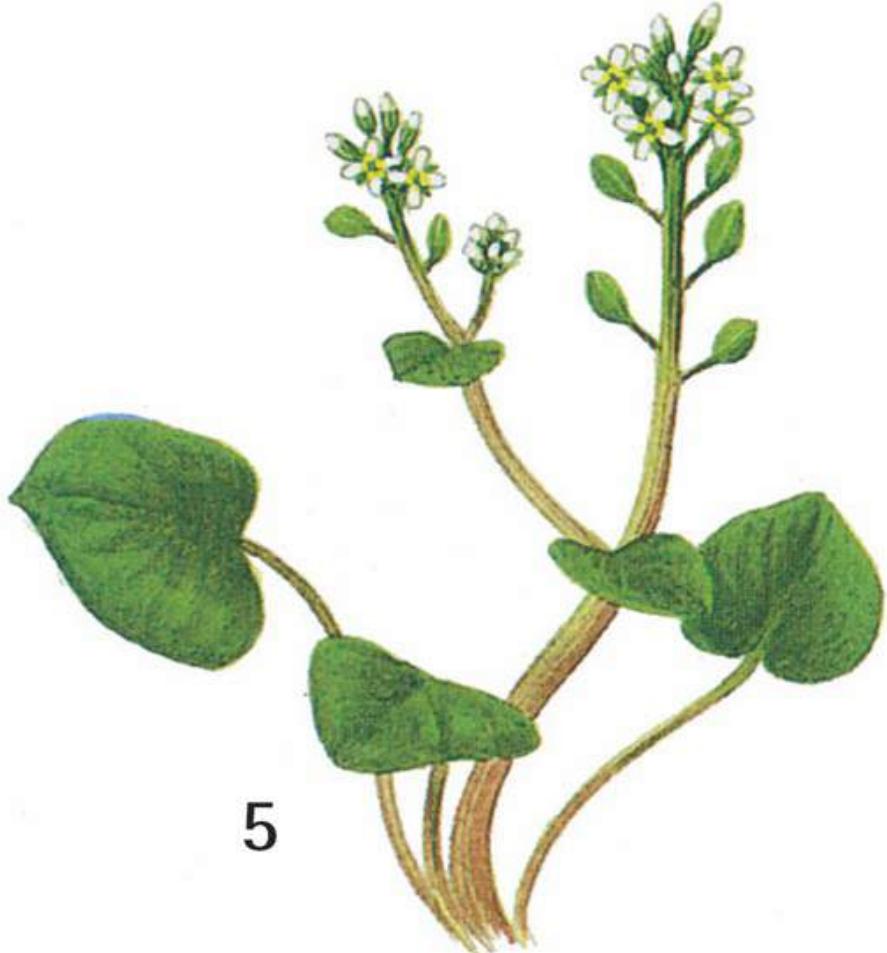


**3 Sea Rockets** (*Cakile*) average 30cm (1ft), with fleshy, blue-green lobed leaves, lilac or purplish flowers and egg-shaped seedpods. The peppery leaves and young pods can be eaten raw or as a potherb.



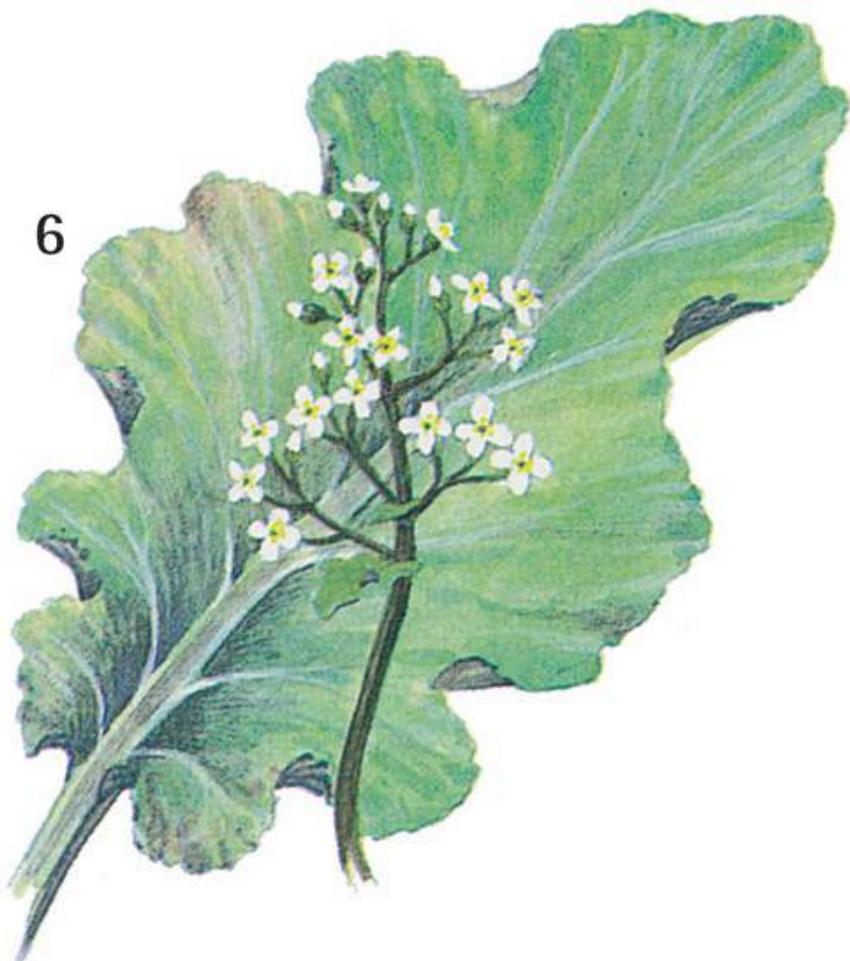
4

**4 Glassworts or Marsh Samphire** (*Salicornia*), often widespread in saline areas, have plump, greenish-yellow jointed stems up to 30cm (1ft) high. Some grow in great density on mud flats as single shoots 15cm (6in) high. Minute flowers are scarcely visible at the junction of the stems. **Rock Samphire** (*Crithmum maritimum*), squat and bushy, with umbels of yellow flowers, is no relation but grows on shingle as well as cliffs. Its thick, hairless stems and fleshy, grey-green leaves, cut into narrow leaflets, are both edible. Cook and suck away the fleshy parts.

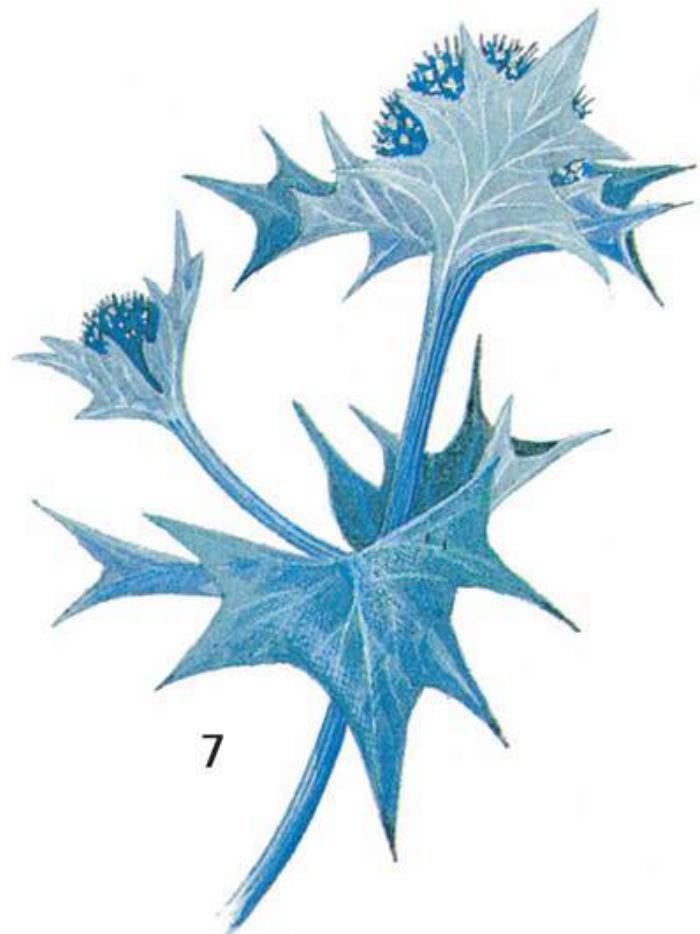


**5 Scurvy-grasses** (*Cochlearia*) average 25cm (10in), with dark green, fleshy, heart- or kidney-shaped leaves and small white or pink flowers; often abundant on coasts. Very bitter, best leached in water, but so rich in vitamin C that the survivor should eat it if encountered.

6



**6 Sea Kale** (*Crambe maritima*) is cabbage-like, with thick grey-green leaves, four-petalled white flowers and globular seedpods; on European coasts. The very tough leaves are better cooked; the underground stems can be sliced and thoroughly boiled.



**7 Sea Holly** (*Eryngium maritimum*) is thistle-like, averaging 60cm (2ft), with spiky, white-veined, ice-blue leaves and a blue thistle head; on north European coasts. Dig out the long roots, slice, boil.



**8 Oyster Plant** (*Mertensia maritima*) is sprawling, mat-forming, blue-green and fleshy, with oval leaves and clusters of pink to blue-purple flowers; on north European coasts. The leaves are edible raw or cooked.



**9 Scots Lovage** (*Ligusticum scoticum*) is stocky, celery-scented, to 90cm (3ft), often purple-stemmed with bright green leaves and heads of tiny white flowers, on north European coasts. Raw leaves are rich in vitamin C; or add these and chopped stems to other foods. Several similar lovages occur elsewhere.

#### TROPICAL SHORES

Tropical shore vegetation is likely to consist principally of palm trees, though in the Old World tropics it may be possible to find:

**Screw Pines** (*Pandanus*), so-called because of their thin, spirally grouped, leaves. They can often be distinguished by the many aerial roots at the base of the trunk. Knobbly, globular, many-segmented fruits are available all year round and in some kinds make good eating.

**Wild plums** (*Spondias*) may also be found near the coast.

**Sour Plum** (*Ximenia caffra*), a small usually thorny tree whose plum-like yellow fruits have edible pulp. There are several different kinds throughout the tropics.

Other plants could include **Passionfruit**, often found near the shore in the tropical Americas, and the fleshy stemmed **Seaside Purslanes** (*Sesuvium*) which grows near beaches and salt water, of which the whole plant can be eaten.

---

## SEaweeds AND ALGAE

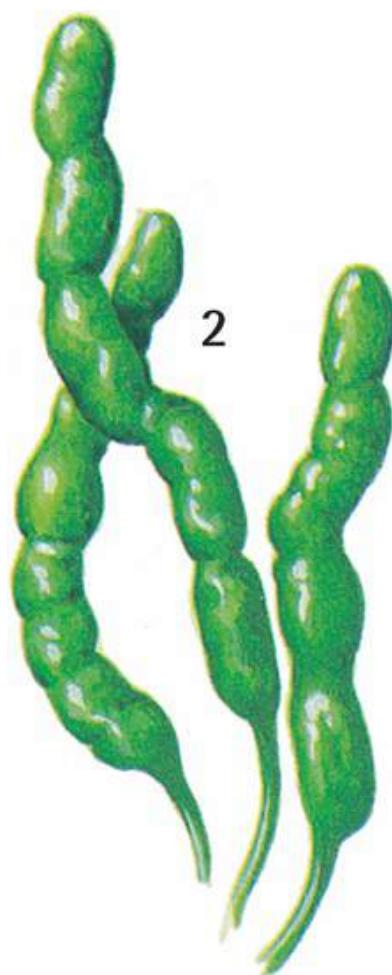
---

Most varieties of seaweed found in shallow waters, anchored to the bottom or a rock, but there are some that float on the surface in the open oceans. Coastal weeds are usually found stratified with green forms growing in surface waters, red in shallow water and brown a little deeper.



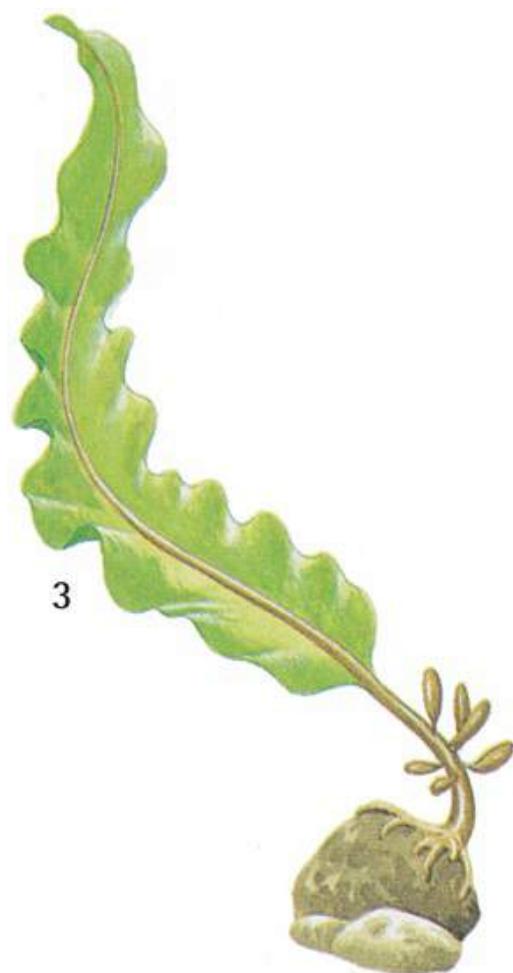
1

**1 Sea Lettuce** (*Ulva lactuca*) is light green, resembling garden lettuce, and is found on rocks and stones in the Atlantic and Pacific, especially where water runs into the sea. Wash and boil.



2

**2 Enteromorpha intestinalis** is pale green, with pod-like, unbranched fronds up to 50cm (2ft) long, usually less. Often abundant on rocks in rock pools and also on salt-marshes, in cooler waters around the world. The whole plant is edible, either fresh or dried and pulverized. It is best picked in early spring.



**3 Kelps** (*Alaria* and *Laminaria*) have a short cylindrical stem and thin, wavy, olive-green to brown fronds, often very long; on rocky shores of the Atlantic and Pacific. Edible raw but better boiled.



4

**4 Irish Moss** (*Chondrus crispus*) consists of forking, lobed purplish to olive-green fronds, often in dense beds on Atlantic shores. Wash and boil. Cooled, the residue will set like gelatine. Fronds may be dried for storage; leave them in the sun until they have bleached white.

5



**5 Sugarwrack** (*Laminaria saccharina*) has long, flat, wavy-margined, yellow-brown fronds attached to stones and rocks; common in the Atlantic, and off China and Japan. Young fronds are edible raw, better cooked. Sweet-tasting.



**6 Dulse** (*Rhodymenia palmata*) has purple-red, short-stemmed, lobed, fan-shaped fronds, and occurs in the Atlantic and Mediterranean. Leathery but sweet; boil it. Dulse can be dried and rolled for chewing tobacco.



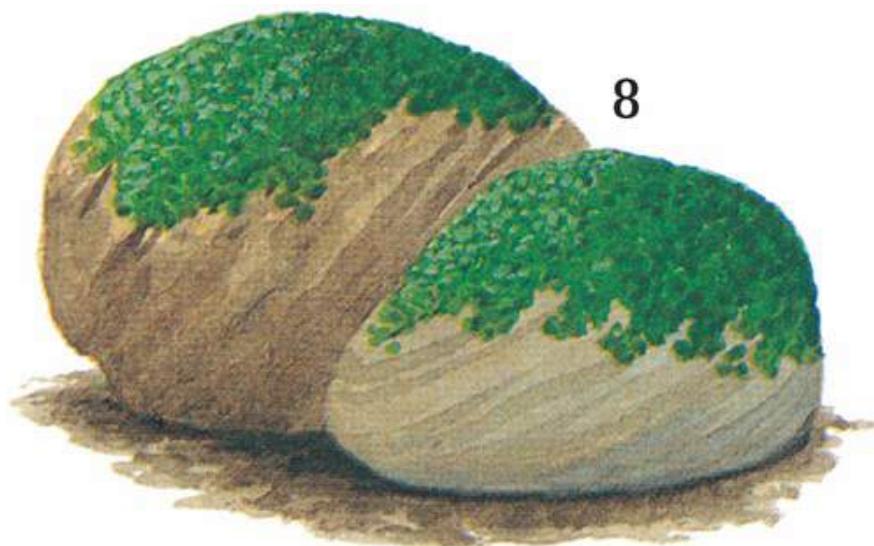
**7 Lavers** (Porphyria) have thin, irregularly shaped, satiny, red, purplish or brown fronds and are found in both the Atlantic and Pacific. Boil until tender, then mash. Use as a relish or combine with grains to make cakes. Very tasty.

**Rich in vitamins and minerals, seaweeds are an ideal survival food. Those shown here are common and safe to eat.**

**There are no poisonous seaweeds but some contain acids which irritate the digestive tract and some are violent purgatives. If not identified as a known edible species try only small amounts. Even with the more edible varieties eat only a little until you become used to them. Do NOT eat seaweeds if short of water. If possible wash them in freshwater before eating, to remove some of the salt.**

**Collect growing weed, firm and smooth to the touch, not pieces washed up on the beach. Reject any that smells bad. Some which contain irritating acids can be detected by crushing between the fingers and leaving for five minutes, by which time they give off an unpleasant smell. All seaweeds decay rapidly out of water. Use soon after collection or dry for later use.**

#### FRESHWATER ALGAE



**8 Nostoc** (Nostoc) is a freshwater algae of North America and Eurasia, forming green, round, jelly-like, marble-sized globules in pools, from spring on. Dry and use as a thickener. EAT ONLY bright green fresh-looking algae. AVOID ALL BLUE GREEN ALGAE, IT IS POISONOUS. It is found in freshwater, not in the seas and oceans, floating on the surface of stagnant pools. Identify by its blue-green colour and by its gassy smell.

---

## TRAPS AND TRAPPING

---

**I**t is easier to trap most small prey than to hunt them. Even if you spot a small animal it offers very little target and can easily take cover. Trapping requires less skill and leaves you free to spend time foraging for other food. Nevertheless be ready to take advantage of sitting prey if you get the chance.

The survivor's own preservation must take precedence over humanitarian principles and unfortunately some of the easiest traps can cause considerable suffering to the animal. A trap which could bring quick death to the species for which it is intended, perhaps by strangulation, may catch another animal by a limb and leave it suffering for hours. Regular checking is essential. Leaving a trap line unchecked will prolong an animal's pain and increase the risk that your catch may be poached by an animal predator or that the prey will have managed painfully to struggle free.

A great deal of error can be eliminated by studying the animals and their habits. Choice of baits and sites is important. If one does not work, try another. BE PATIENT. Give the traps time. Animals will be very suspicious at first but with time will come to accept them—and that is when they will run into them.

# SURVIVAL SCENARIO

## If you have no food supplies which foods are the most important to hunt or forage for?

No one-food source is more important than another, in fact it is vital that in any survival situation a mixed diet is achieved. If this does not happen then you will actually feel more tired and unwell if you just eat say fat or protein. However, if you are injured then you will need more proteins to help repair the damage, and in general you should eat little and often.

Even when on the move, a few simple traps, quickly set up overnight, may be productive, and if you are making a more permanent camp you will be able to set up well-planned lines of traps. The more you set, the more chance you have of success.

Establish as large a trap line as you can manage in your area. Inspect it at first and last light. Collect the game and reset the traps. Repair any traps as necessary and move those that are repeatedly unfruitful. To be effective a trap must be very sensitive, so may be fired accidentally. You will probably have several empty traps for every success, but this does not mean that you are doing things wrong. If a trap has not fired, but the bait has gone, it is an indication either that the bait was not sufficiently securely fixed or that the trigger mechanism is too tight. Check both when you reset the trap.

By doing the rounds regularly you effectively patrol an area, noting the many signs of activity or change which help to build up knowledge of your surroundings.

## TRAPPING TIP

Baiting a trap will attract the game. In a survival situation food may be scarce but, if you know there are animals to trap, a little used as bait may bring large rewards.

### Where to trap

Find the game trails or runs, which lead from an animal's home to where it feeds or waters. Look for any natural bottleneck along the route where it will have to pass through a particular position—a deadwood fall or a place where the track goes under an obstruction will be ideal places to set a trap.

Do not place a trap close to an animal's lair. That is where it sits and listens and sniffs the air. If at all suspicious it will either stay put or use a less obvious route. Don't place a trap close to its watering place either. There, too, the animal is on its toes and alert, more likely to notice anything unusual.

If you lay traps down the side of natural pastures the animals will not go near them but use other routes. However, when alarmed they panic and will take the shortest route to cover. That is when the crudest and most obvious of traps will be successful. Rabbits are easily caught by causing them to panic.

### Trap construction

The simpler traps and snares are made of string or wire. It will be easier to keep a loop open in the air if you use wire and the wire in your survival tin is ideal. Even the most sophisticated need nothing more than a knife to make them out of available wood. The choice of materials is important. Use strong, springy wood. Do not use dead wood or wood found on the ground. Hazel takes a lot of beating: it is easy to carve and retains its spring and strength.

### Types of trap

Trap mechanisms make use of the following principles:

**MANGLE STRANGLE DANGLE TANGLE**

**The deadfall mangles. The snare strangles. Springy saplings can make a trap more efficient and take the game up in the air—it dangles. The higher the sapling the more effectively it lifts the animal. A net**

tangles. Some traps combine two or more of these principles.

## RULES FOR TRAPS

When setting traps, follow these basic rules:

### 1 Avoid disturbing the environment

Don't tread on the game trail. Do all your preparation off the trail and don't leave any sign that you have been there.

### 2 Hide scent

When constructing or handling traps don't leave your scent on them. Handle as little as possible and wear gloves if you can. Do not make a trap from pinewood and set it in a wood of hazel. Each tree gives off its own smell—and the animals you are trying to trap have a very high sense of smell, many times sharper than yours. Although they fear fire they are familiar with the smell of smoke and exposing a snare to the smoke from a camp fire will mask any human scent.

### 3 Camouflage

Hide freshly cut ends of wood with mud. Cover any snare on the ground to blend in as naturally as possible with its surroundings.

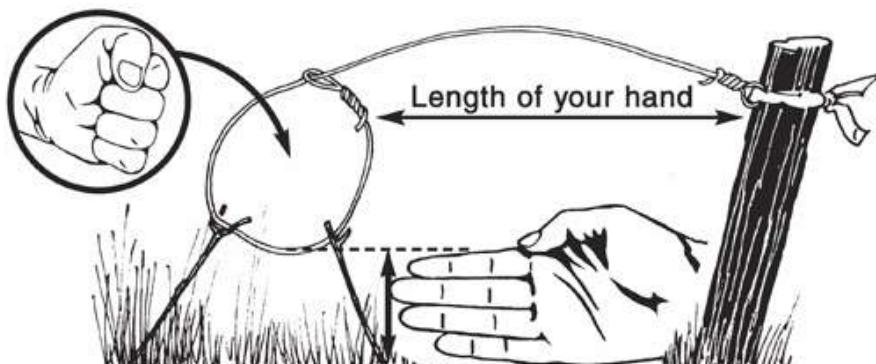
### 4 Make them strong

An ensnared animal is fighting for its life. It exerts a lot of energy in an attempt to escape. Any weakness in the traps will be exposed.

## SNARES

Snares are the simplest of traps and should be part of any survival kit. They are made of non-ferrous wire with a running eye at one end through which the other end of the wire passes before being firmly anchored to a stake, rock or tree. A snare is a free-running noose which can catch small game around the throat and larger game around the legs.

A snare can be improvised from string, rope, twine or wire. Consider the kind of animal you are trying to trap when you place the snare. A rabbit, for instance, tends to sit in cover and observe. When satisfied that all is well it hops along. Setting the snare a hand's length from a fall or obstruction on the trail accommodates this hop. If the snare is closer to an obstruction the rabbit may brush it aside.



*A wire snare (as big as your fist) can be supported off the ground on twigs, which can also be used to keep a suspended string noose open.*

# USING A SIMPLE SNARE

For rabbits and small animals. Use your judgement to scale up these proportions for larger creatures, such as foxes and badgers.

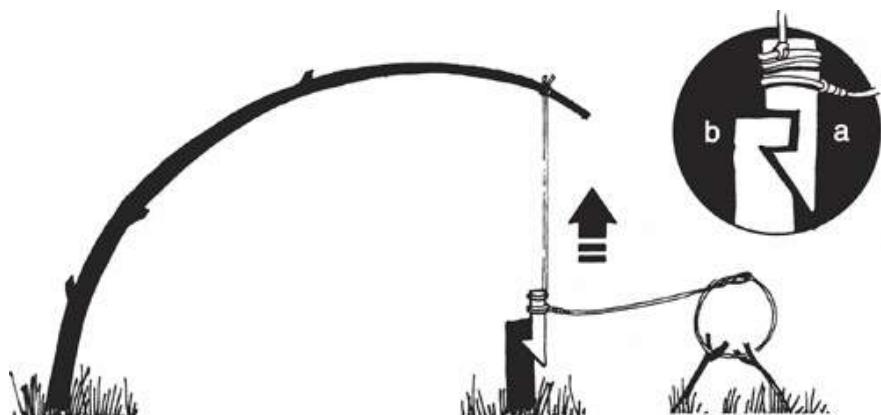
- Make the loop a fist width wide.
- Set it four fingers above the ground, and one hand's width from an obstruction on the trail.
- Check that it is securely anchored, with twigs to support the loop in position if necessary.

## Snares under tension

Make a snare more effective by using a sapling under tension to lift the game clear of the ground when it is released. This robs the animal of purchase in its struggle to free itself and also helps to keep it out of reach of predators.

## Spring snare

When game is caught the trigger bar disengages and prey is lifted off the ground. Good for animals such as rabbits and foxes, it will trap game coming in both directions and is ideally situated on the game trail by a natural bottleneck caused by a dead fall or a rocky outcrop.

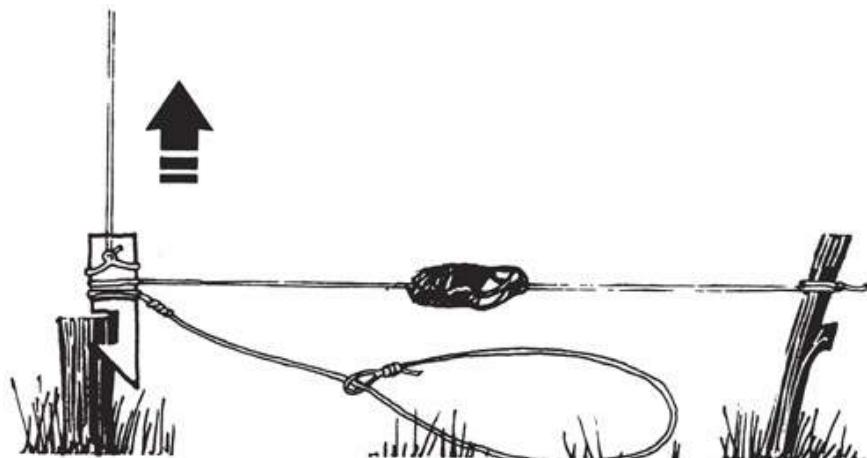


*Cut notch in trigger bar (a) to fit notch in upright (b). Drive upright into ground. Attach snare to trigger bar and use cord to sapling to keep tension.*

## Baited spring snare

Mechanism as for spring snare, but here the quarry is tempted with a tasty morsel. The noose is laid on the ground, the bait strung above. As the game takes the bait the trigger is released.

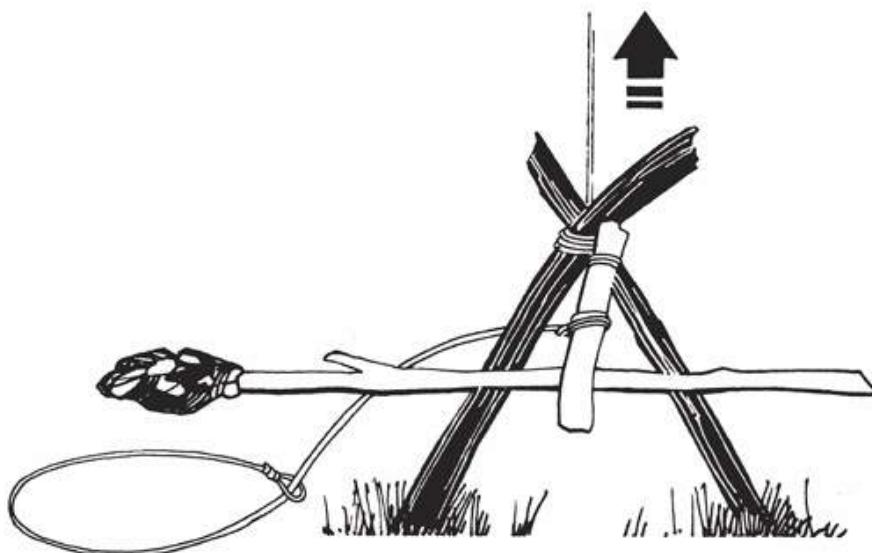
Suitable for medium-sized animals such as foxes, this trap can be located in an open area as the bait will attract attention. Small clearings in woods are good sites.



*The bait support stake should be only lightly driven into the ground as this must fly away with the noose.*

## Baited spring leg snare

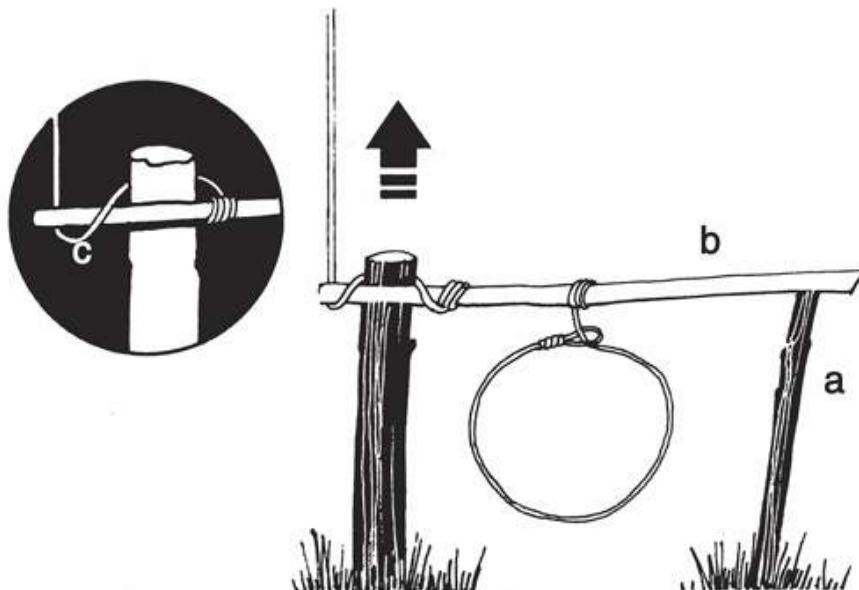
The prongs of a natural fork of wood, or two sticks tied together, are pushed firmly into the ground. The line from a bent sapling is tied to a toggle and to the snare and the toggle then passed under the fork. When the game takes the bait, which is on the end of a separate bar, the bar disengages and the toggle flies up carrying the snare (and hopefully the game). This is a trap for larger game such as deer, bears and large felines. For the herbivorous deer, bait with blood or scent glands, which will arouse its curiosity.



*The upper end of the toggle presses against the fork and the lower end is prevented from pulling back through by a bait bar between it and the fork — the pressure of the toggle holding it in position.*

## Spring tension snare

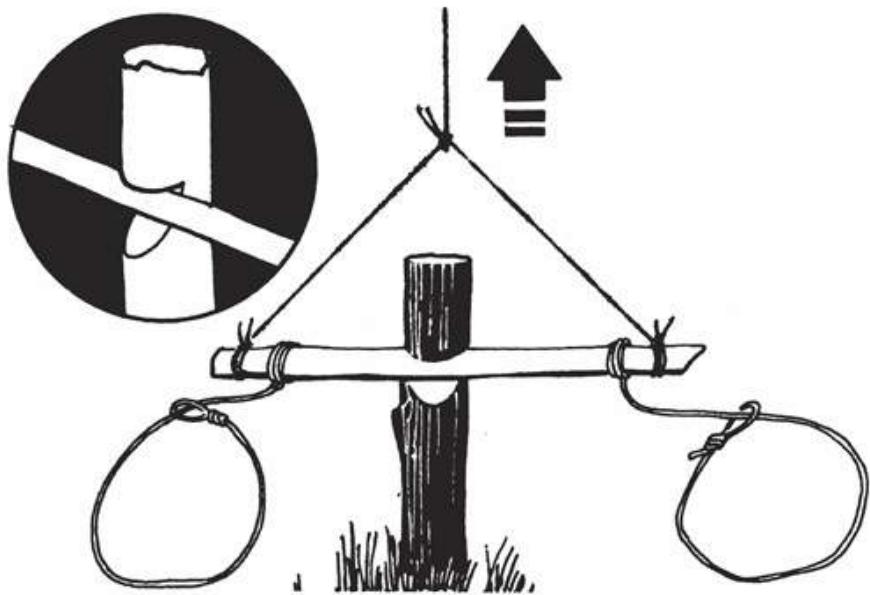
The upward counter thrust from the keeper stick (a) on which the snare arm (b) rests prevents the switch from pulling it up. When the game becomes ensnared the snare arm is dislodged from the keeper stick and the switch line slips off the other end. Suitable for small animals such as rabbits. Site it on the game trail.



*Note how the switch line secures one end of snare arm (b), while the other rests on the keeper stick (a). Keep the switch line near the end of the snare arm (c).*

## Trapeze spring snare

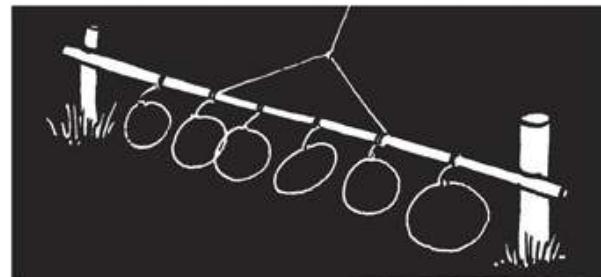
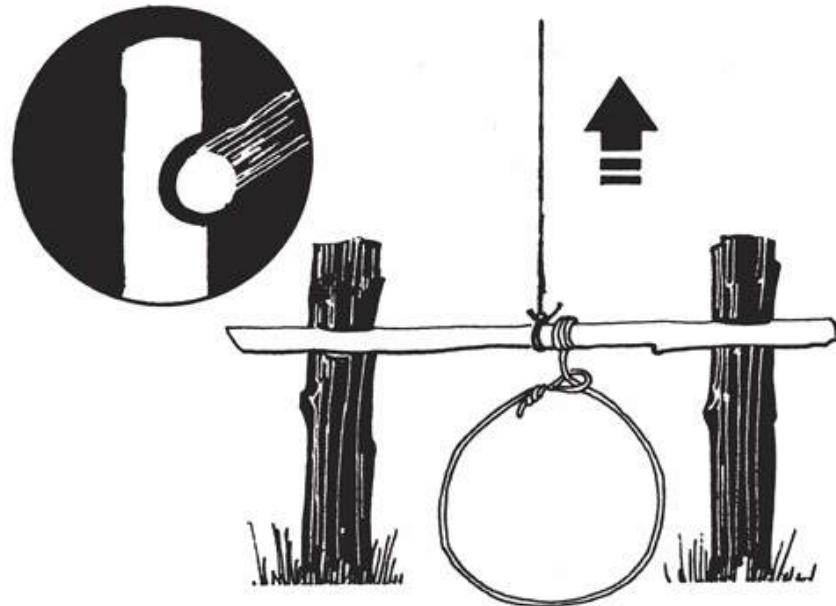
This snare can be used to cover two game trails in open country. The arm carries two snares and is held in a notch by the tension of the switch line.



*Once ensnared, the animal's struggles will disengage the snare arm regardless of the direction from which it originally approached.*

### **Roller spring snare**

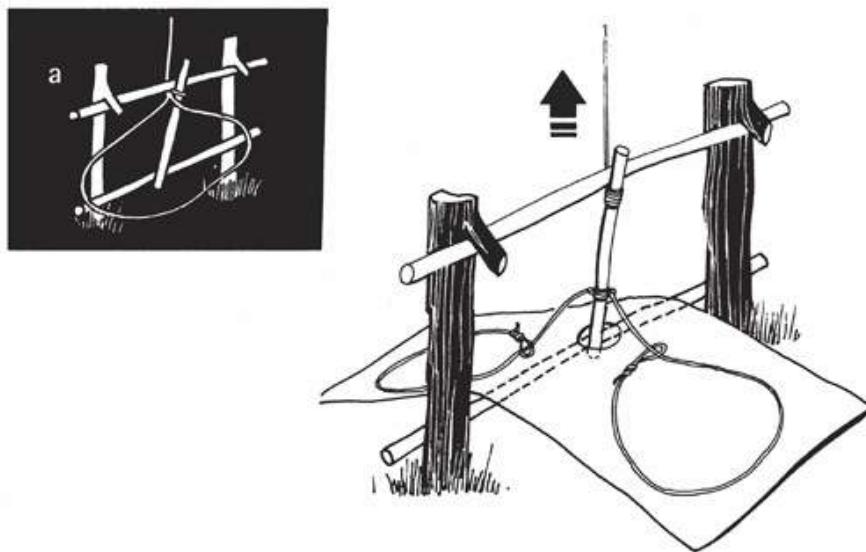
A rounded grip holds the snare arm here, the switch line is best pulled back at a slight angle to keep it in place. Suitable for animals such as rabbits and foxes. Although tensed in one direction, the bar will be dislodged by an animal's struggles.



*A wide area can be covered by employing several snares on a long horizontal bar. Use where the game trail widens or offers options.*

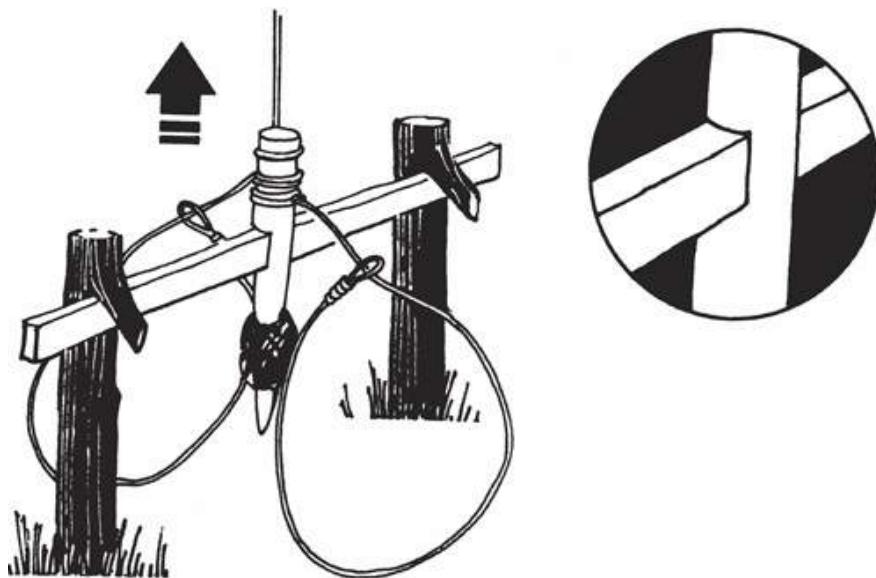
### **The platform trap**

This trap is ideally sited in a small depression on the game trail. Snares are placed on the platforms on either side. When the platform is depressed the trigger bar is released and the game held firmly by the leg. Ideal for larger game—such as deer, bears or large cats. A platform of sticks, stiff bark or other firm materials rests on the bottom bar, and the upper bar fits in the notches. A similar mechanism (a) to that of the platform trap, but using a large snare and no platform, is activated by displacement of either the toggle or bottom bar to catch small game by the neck.



### **Stepped bait release snare**

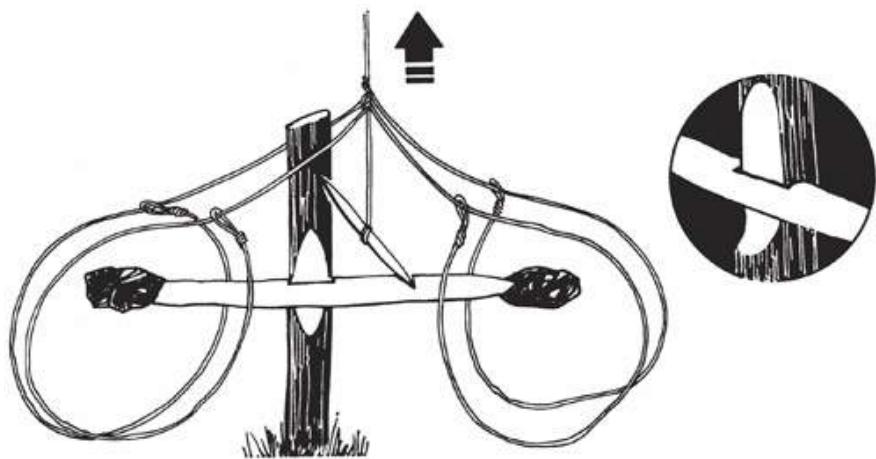
Two forked sticks hold down a cross-bar which engages with a baited notched upright (attached to a line in tension), which holds it in place and carries the snares. Site this trap in clearings to catch small carnivores and pigs.



*Retaining bar, or at least a section of it, should be squared off to fit a square-cut notch on the bait stick.*

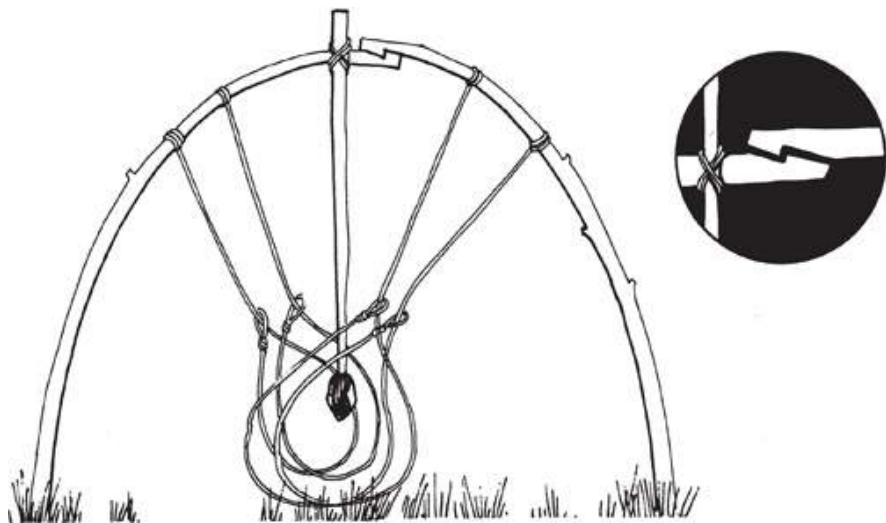
### **Double-ended figure 4 snare**

A bait bar is set at right angles across an upright, the faces cut square, and a short trigger lodged between them to maintain their position. The trigger is linked to a springy sapling and the same line carries snares. When the bait bar is dislodged the trigger is released. Four snares will effectively cover both directions on a game trail, or use in clearings to snare small carnivores.



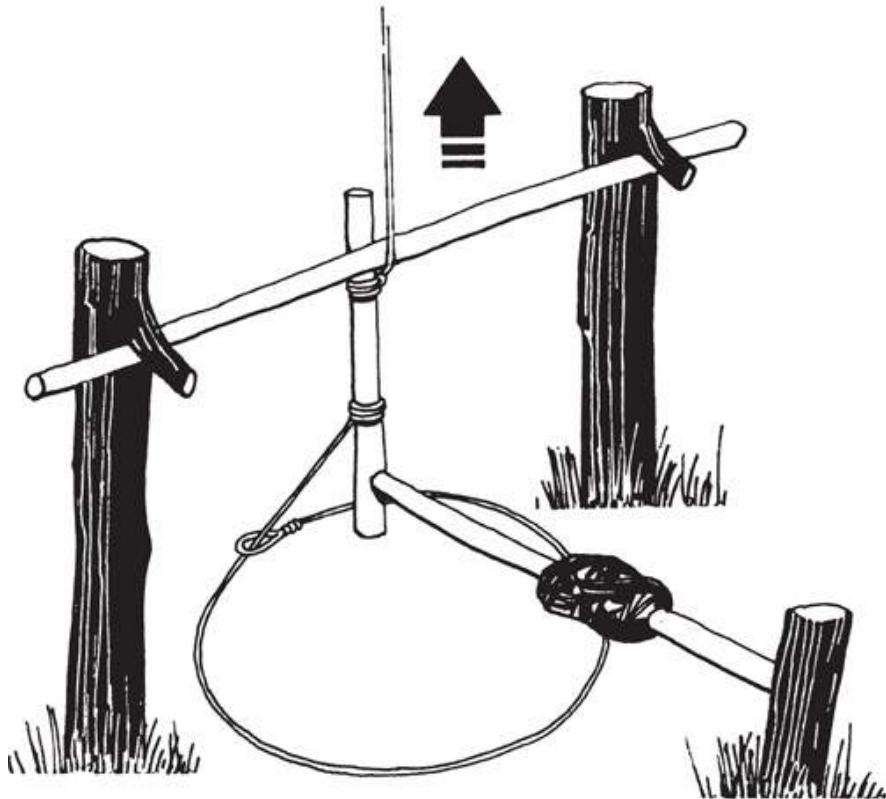
### **Double spring snare**

Two saplings are notched to interlock when bent towards each other over the game trail. A vertical bait bar is lashed near the end of one of them. Two snares can be attached to each sapling, they need to be fairly stiff wire to hold their positions. This is another trap suitable for use in clearings to catch small carnivores. When the bait is taken the game is held in the air between the saplings.



### **Toggle and bait release snare**

A bait bar is wedged between an upright and the lower part of a toggle, the upper part pressing against a retaining bar. The principle is like the platform snare with the bait bar replacing the platform. Movement of the bait bar releases the toggle which flies upward under tension from a sapling above, carrying snare with it.



*Taut line from bent sapling to end of toggle pulls against cross-bar. Bait bar keeps toggle in position.*

### **DEADFALL TRAPS**

These traps all work on the principle that when the bait is taken a weight falls on the prey. All are good for pigs, foxes and badgers. Larger versions can be used for bigger animals such as bears.

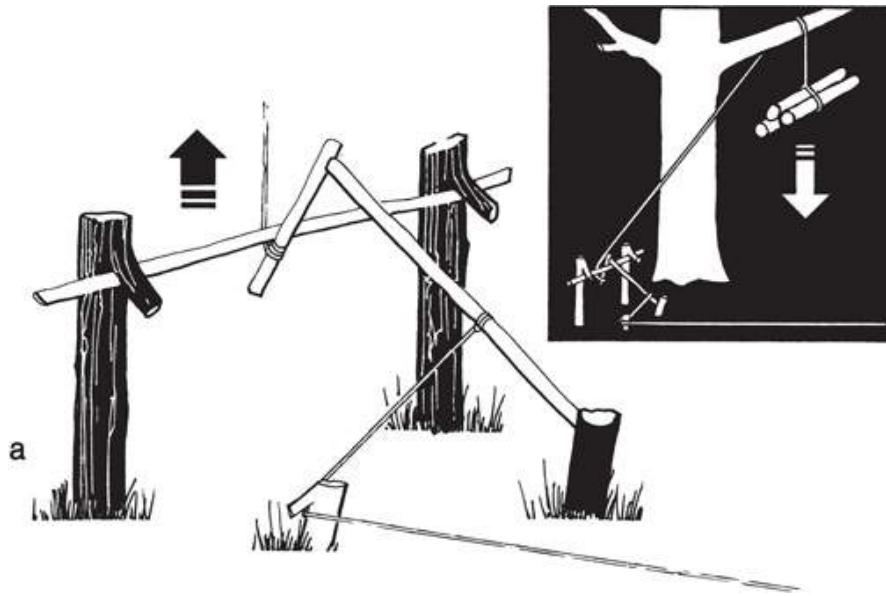
## **WARNING**

The large versions of these deadfall traps can be extremely dangerous for humans as well as for the prey for which they are intended. The toggle release and deadfall traps have trip wires and are easily set off accidentally. Even in a survival situation ensure that everyone knows exactly where they are. In survival practice keep people away from them and never leave such a trap set up at the end of an exercise.

You cannot set a large deadfall trap on your own. Keep the mechanism to the side of the trail, well away from the dropping weight, or setting it will be too risky. Balance is critical—you are unlikely to get it right first time.

### **Toggle trip-release deadfall trap**

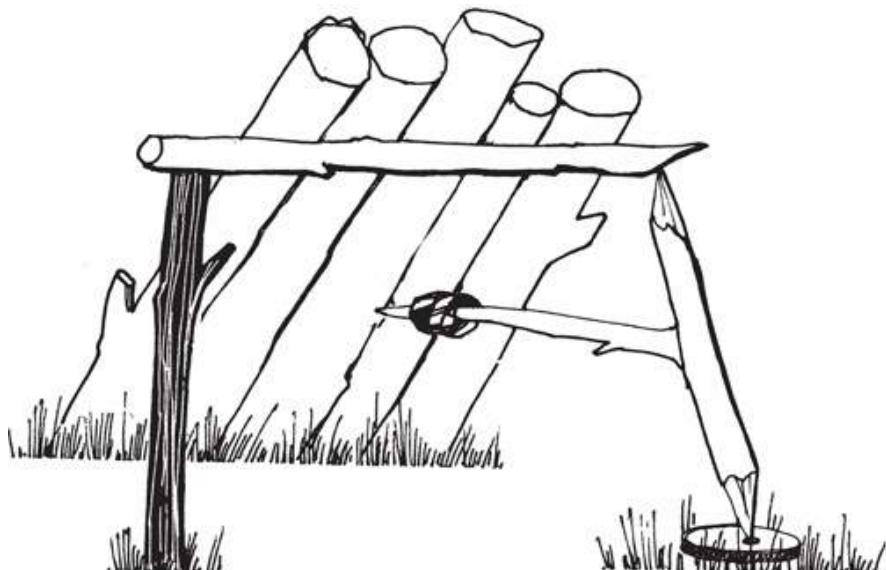
This uses the same kind of mechanism as the toggle-release snare—though this time the release bar keeping the toggle in position presses one end of the toggle upwards. A line from the toggle passes over a tree limb to support a bundle of logs or other heavy weight above the trail. From the release bar a trip line (usually a vine) runs above the ground beneath the suspended weight to a firm securing point.



*Run the trip line under a forked stick (a) so that it will pull the trigger bar sideways when operated.*

### **Balance log**

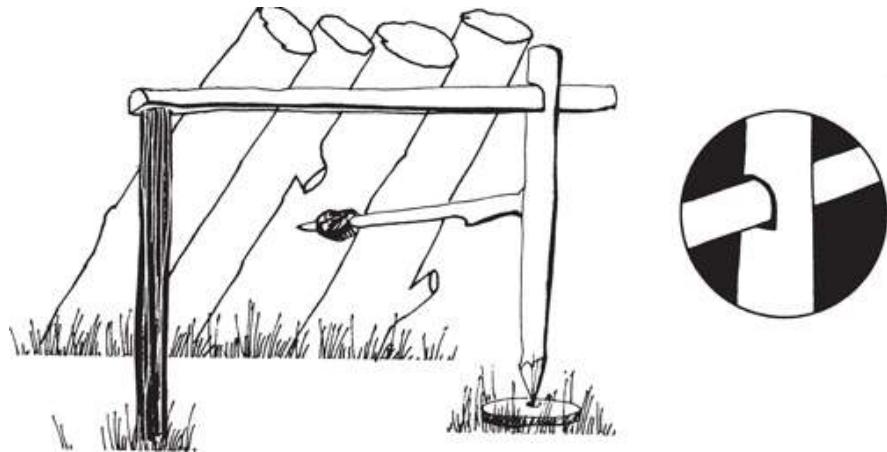
A forked stick, its ends sharpened to dislodge rapidly and one fork suitably baited, supports one end of a cross-bar, the other end of which rests on a fixed support, held there by the weight of the heavy logs or rock which rest on the bar. When the bait is taken the whole trap collapses.



*Angle bait beneath the trap.*

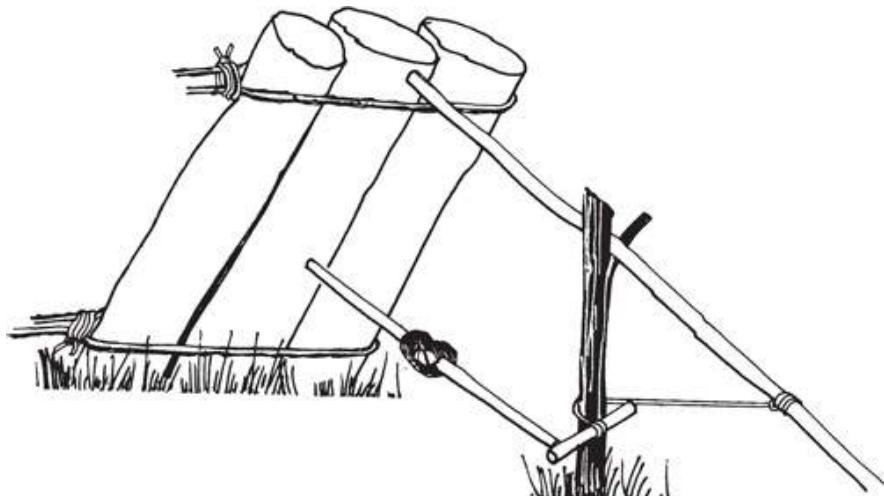
### **Squared-face release trap**

Similar to the balance log trap but using a notched upright as the support, the lower face of the notch squared off. Fit cross-bar against the squared-off lower face of the bar supporting the weight.



### **Toggle and bait release deadfall trap**

A rock or a group of logs lashed together is supported by a prop which is balanced over a fixed forked stick. The other end of the prop is clear of the ground and held down by a short line attached to a toggle which is wrapped around the upright stick. The toggle is kept in place by a bait stick wedged between it and the dead fall weight. Dislodging the bait stick brings the whole lot down.



*The forked stick is driven into the ground first.*

### **Deadfall trap**

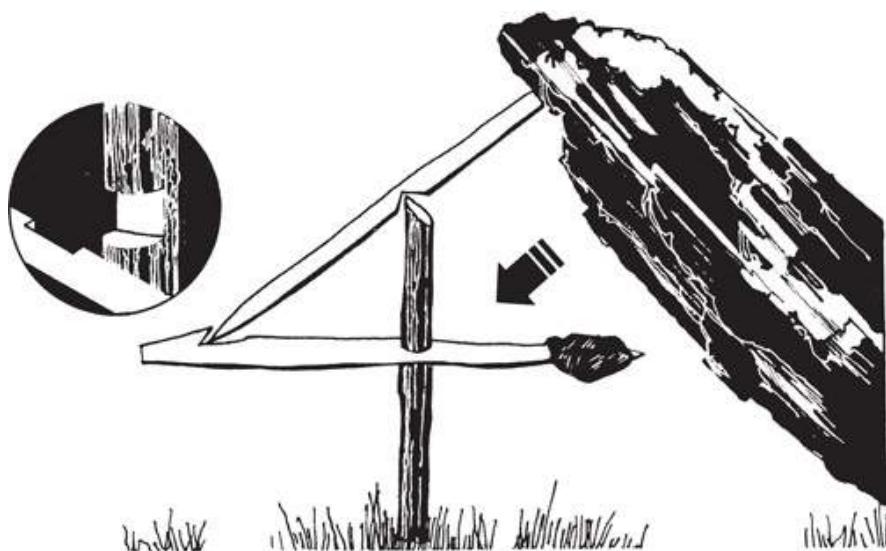
The weight of a log or other weight suspended over the game trail pulls the line carrying it against a retaining bar held by short pegs secured in a tree trunk. The line continues as a tripwire beneath the weight. Make sure that the line is long enough and tripwire anchor weak enough to allow weight to reach the ground. Set the pegs slightly downward, but keep them short so that the bar disengages easily.



### **'Figure 4' deadfall trap**

This looks complicated but once learned is easily remembered and very effective. It can be made to any size. A horizontal bait bar is balanced at right-angles to an upright with a locking bar, which supports a weight,

positioned over the bait, pivoted on the sharpened tip of the upright.

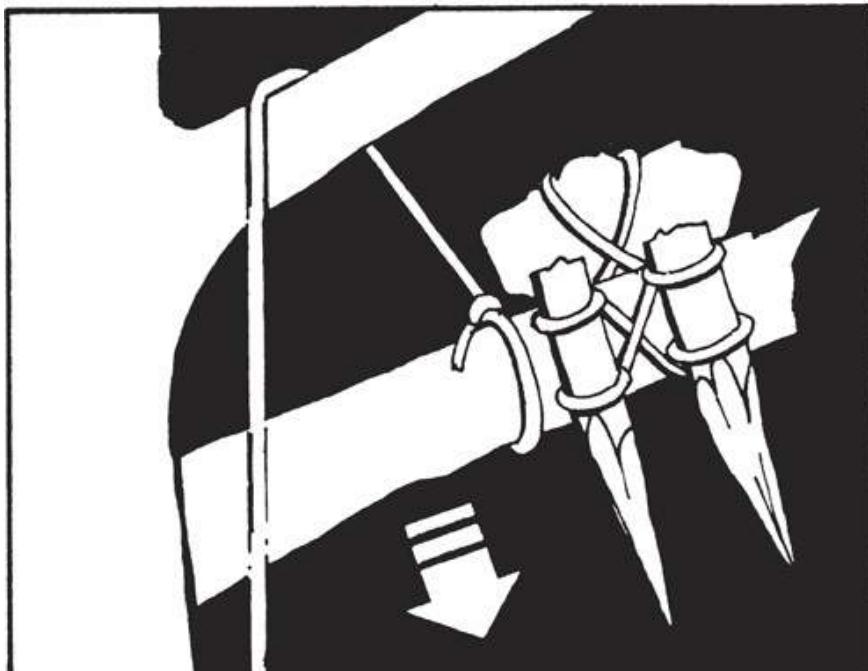


*Bait bar notched on top to engage locking arm, square cut on side to fit upright. Locking arm sharpened at lower end to release quickly, notched at centre to pivot on upright.*

## SPEAR TRAPS

### **WARNING**

These traps are particularly good for killing pigs and deer—but they are extremely dangerous and can be lethal to humans. Always stand BEHIND the spear when setting and ensure that the location and danger is known to everyone. Mark with signs to attract human attention. Except in a survival situation never leave spear traps set and unsupervised.



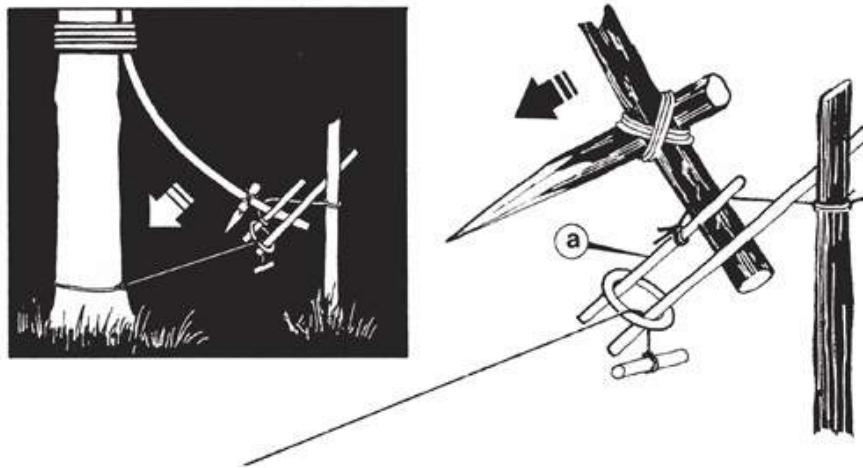
**DEADFALL SPEAR TRAP**

*This uses the same mechanism as the deadfall trap (left) but uses rocks to add weight and arms the trap with sharpened sticks. It delivers a stabbing as well as a stunning blow.*

### **Spring spear trap**

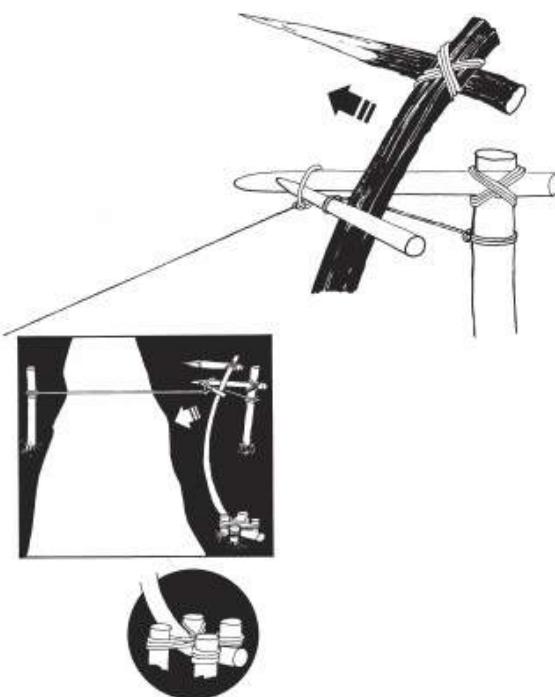
A very dangerous trap which will kill game. Effective against wild pig. A springy shaft, with a spear attached, is held taut above the trail. A slip ring made from bound creeper or smooth material (not rough twine which could catch against toggle) attached to a trip wire acts as a release mechanism.

A toggle (a) and short line (to a fixed upright) hold the spear shaft in tension. A further rod through ring is tensed between the near side of the spear shaft and the far face of the upright, securing all until tripped.



### **Pig spear trap**

Similar to the spring spear trap but operating horizontally, this trap has the unarmed end of the springy shaft secured and lashed between four uprights. At the business end, the toggle (anchored by a short line) retains the springy shaft so long as the toggle point is held against the horizontal bar by a ring. The ring is on the end of a trip wire, anchored to a post on the other side of the trail.



*Make sure that the spear is lashed very firmly to the springy shaft or it may be knocked sideways on impact instead of plunging into the animal's body.*

*Spear shaft is set at a height level with the body of the animal it is designed to kill, or angled to spring to that height.*

*Tension exerted on the springy shaft requires the uprights holding it to be very firmly set in the ground and the*

*lashings to be strong and secure.*

**NOTE:** Because spear traps are so dangerous, make sure the cord and the knots are strong enough to stand the tension. Never approach these traps except from BEHIND the spear.

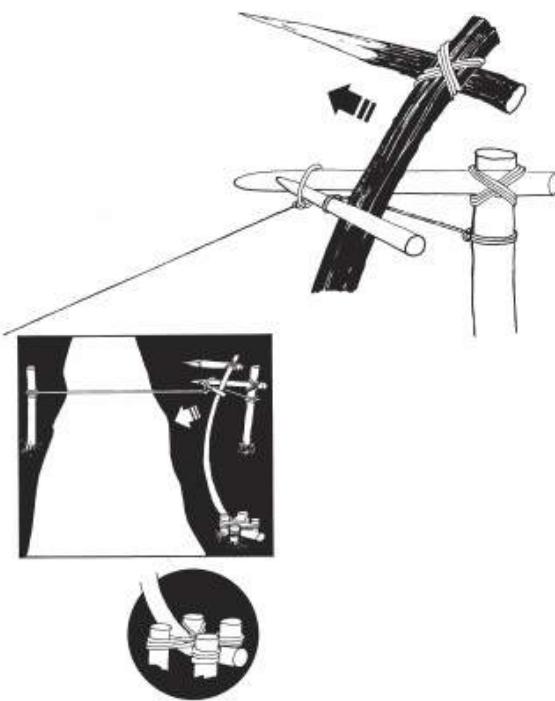
Take no risks where these traps are concerned.

## Bow trap

### WARNING

Never leave this unattended where people could walk into it—it is a potential man-killer.

A simple bow made of suitable wood (see [Weapons](#)) is held taut and angled to shoot slightly upwards by upright posts and a toggle switch with an arrow fitted. The trigger bar is held in place by a toggle attached to a trip wire, which must be routed round to the point of aim. Keep the first stretch of wire close to the mechanism, for there is no point in it being tripped by an animal approaching from behind the bow. This trap is suitable for large and dangerous animals and can work with animals coming head on to the arrow or approaching from the trip wire side. (The quarry passes across the arrow as it fires.) The arrow may also strike larger animals passing in front of the bow first.



(a) Notch arrow for bowstring and for trigger bar. Angle trigger bar tip to fit arrow notch, cut side to fit cross-bar. Sit toggle between bottom of trigger bar and a fixed post.

(b) An alternative trigger mechanism: Cut a square face on an upright and a square notch on the side of a forked stick to engage it. Notch the upper face of the stick to hold the bowstring. Attach tripwire to other prong of fork.

## Baited hole noose

Digging pits disturbs the environment and leaves a permanent mark. This will alarm some animals. In others curiosity may outweigh discretion and they will investigate. Baiting the hole may bring animals sniffing. Foxes, pigs, wild cats and badgers will all dig up rubbish pits and this could attract them. The animal smells the bait and pushes its head down. If it goes past the stakes it will not be able to retract it. If it uses a paw it will become ensnared.

Drive four sharpened pliable stakes through the edges of the pit to emerge below surface where they are

less noticeable. Lay a noose across them, attached to a post outside the pit.



## **BIRD TRAPS**

### **Nets**

A fine net stretched between the trees where birds usually roost is one of the simplest ways of catching them. Instead of a net, fine twine criss-crossed between trees across their flight path will damage birds which fly into it.

### **Bird lime**

Liming is an ancient way of catching small birds. Boil holly leaves and any starchy grain in water and simmer until you have a gooey mess. Spread this on the branches or other perching places before the birds come home to roost and they will get stuck in it when they alight.

### **Suspended snares**

Hang a line of snares across a stream a little above water level. This works best when set among reeds and rushes.

### **Baited hooks**

Fish hooks buried in fruit or other food can be an effective way of catching birds. The hook gets caught in the bird's throat.

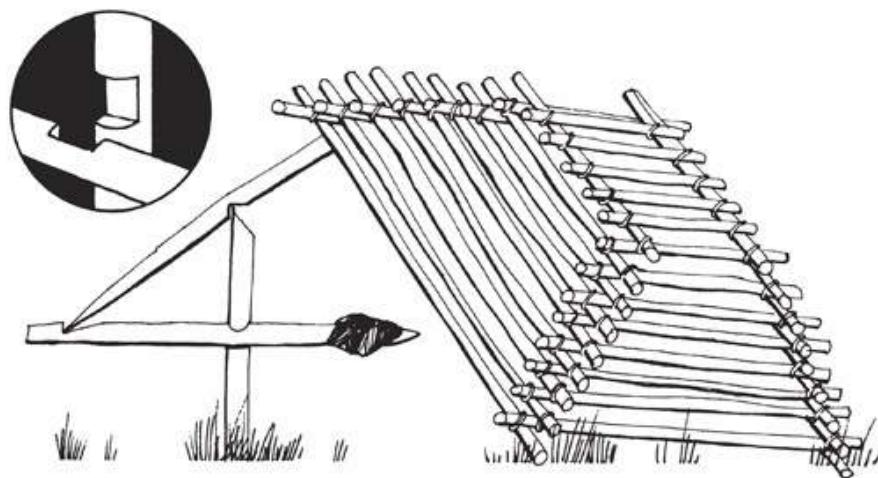
### **Noose sticks**

Tie many fine nooses 1.25-2.5cm (½-1 in) in diameter, close together along a stick or branch, use horsehair preferably but any strong material will suffice. Place the stick in a favourite roosting or nesting spot with the nooses uppermost. Birds become entangled when they alight. Do not remove as soon as one bird is caught. It will attract other birds and you will soon have several.



### **'Figure 4' trap**

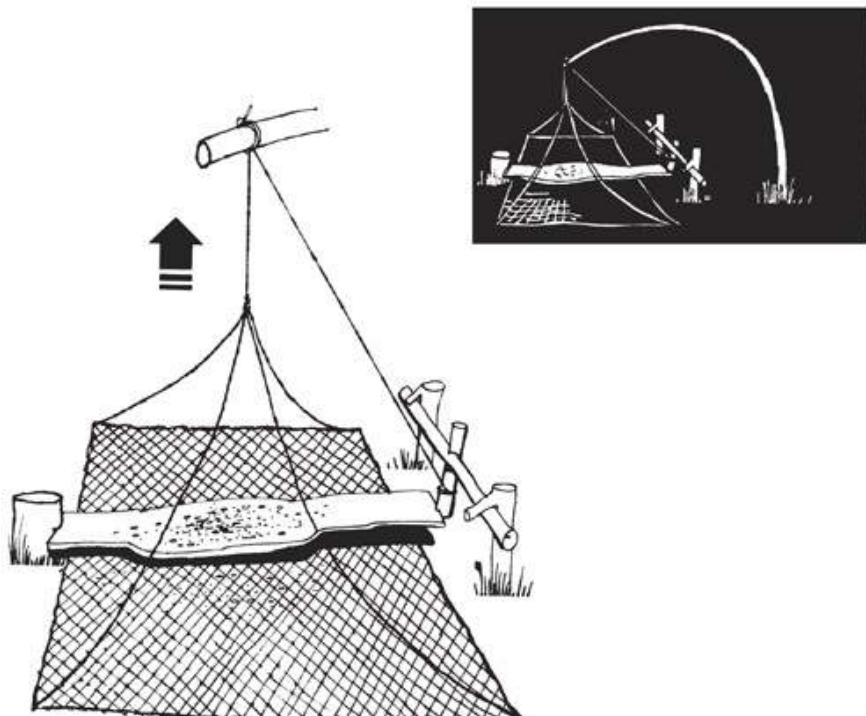
This mechanism (see ['Figure 4' Deadfall](#)) can be used with a 'log cabin' type cage, made from a pyramid of sticks tied together, which is balanced over the bait. For small birds you can use a quick method of making the cage: lay all the sticks in position then lay another two sticks, the same length as the bottom ones, on top and tie them tightly to the bottom layer, tight enough to keep all the others in place. Larger animals will soon break out of this and for them each stick must be individually tied in.



Experiment with different ways of making a cage. You may have a suitable box or large tin which would do just as well. It is also possible to prop the raised edge of the cage on a single stick tied to a long line. Take the other end of the line and hide some distance away. If you hold the string taut, you can snatch the prop away as soon as a bird ventures under the cage. Broadcast bait around and under the cage. This works best in areas where birds seem plentiful.

### **Toggle release net trap**

A net laid on the ground and baited to attract birds has lines from the corners to a springy sapling overhead. A tension line extends to a toggle mechanism (see previous traps) notched on to a horizontal bar and operated by a flat bait stick. Set the bait stick off the ground and only just resting against the lower end of the toggle. This trigger mechanism needs to be extremely sensitive if a small bird's weight is to set it off.



**NOTE:** If you set traps in a training exercise make sure that they are clearly marked so that they are not set off by other people. Spear and deadfall traps should be supervised to keep people away for they could inflict serious injury or kill. ALL traps should be dismantled when the exercise is over.

## **SURVIVAL CASE STUDY**

Monsoon weather is always bad, but in 1963 it broke all records. In this year I was deployed in Borneo to gather topographical information and intelligence. We were coming to the end of a long operation when our base camp was washed away by the torrential rain. Most of our personal kit and equipment was lost, except for what we were wearing. Low clouds made air re-supply impossible and the tropical storms affected our radio communication. We had to seek higher ground as the whole area became flooded. Moving was very difficult because of the swollen rivers and landslides. It took us 5 days to reach a safe landing zone (LZ) where we awaited a helicopter to lift us to safety.

During these 5 days, the only food we had was our meagre survival rations. This consisted of a hard biscuit, nuts and raisins, a tube of honey and a 2oz meat block. We shared everything between the four of us. Even under normal conditions wild food is scarce in the jungle. Fishing is probably best, and collecting various palms, roots and shoots is next best. But the weather washed all these sources away, and most animals fled the area before we did, so we didn't pick any food up on our route.

What we found at the LZ were large white snails. We baked, steamed, poached, and even ate them raw, but however we ate them they still tasted the same. Nevertheless, they were an excellent source of nourishment. We had come to the stage of eyeing each other up—and I think these snails even prevented cannibalism!

#### Lessons learnt:

- Carry survival kit at all times
- Eat anything you can find
- Pool your resources
- Know and practise your survival skills.

Water was not a problem in this case, in fact we had too much. Caught rain is the only water we don't treat. But if at all unsure of water quality, then boil it. Also boil all meat, insects and roots until tender, then reduce to a simmer before adding herbs or plants as constant boiling destroys vitamin C content which is essential to good health.

## HUNTING

Keen observation of all signs of wildlife and a knowledge of the kind of animals you are hunting are as necessary to the hunter as skillful tracking and accurate marksmanship. They make it easier to be in the right place and to take advantage of the terrain.

Always proceed as quietly as possible. Move slowly and stop regularly. Carry your weight on the rear foot so that you can test the next step with the toes before transferring your weight. Thus you will avoid stumbles and help to reduce the amount of noise you produce from undergrowth and snapping sticks. Fast or sudden movements will startle the game. Sniff the air and listen. Hunt against the wind, or at least across it.

The ideal time to hunt is at first light, when more game is likely to be about. Animals are also about in the evening, but the light will be getting rapidly worse so you need to be sure of the terrain and know your way back to camp. In territory you know well this will not be a problem, particularly if there is a clear sky and moon or starlight to see by.

If hunting in the evening go out at least an hour before dusk so that your eyes will get used to the failing light and you will develop night vision—though your prey will probably be able to see better than you do.

When hunting during the day, try to hunt moving uphill in the morning and return to camp in the afternoon. Signs of animals will be easier to read as you move uphill for those on the ground will be closer to eye level. Thermal currents build up with the heat of the day and carry scents upwards—so when you are coming down the hill the scent of the game will reach you before your smell reaches it. After a day out hunting and foraging the descent will take less energy than an upward climb and by then you'll welcome the easier going.

## SURVIVAL ADVICE: HUNTING

If you are moving correctly, game often will not see you. If an animal catches a glimpse of you, freeze. You may be the first human it has seen. It will be more curious than frightened. Keep absolutely still until the animal looks away or continues feeding. Avoid large animals, such as bears, unless really desperate or confident of a first shot kill—or you could end up becoming the hunted not the hunter.

Get as close as you can without revealing your presence and take up a steady position, aiming for the area giving the greatest margin of error. An accurate head shot is very effective but risky unless you are very close and the animal still. A point just to the back of the front shoulder is a good target. A firm, accurate strike here will drop most animals instantly. A badly aimed shot may mean unnecessary agony for the animal and a long follow up for the hunter.

If an animal drops first shot, wait five minutes before approaching. Just stand back and observe. If not dead but bleeding, the loss of blood will weaken it and, when you do approach, it will not be able to bolt. If an animal is wounded and moves away wait 15 minutes before following up. If you follow immediately the animal may travel all day.

## **WEAPONS**

### **Bow and arrow**

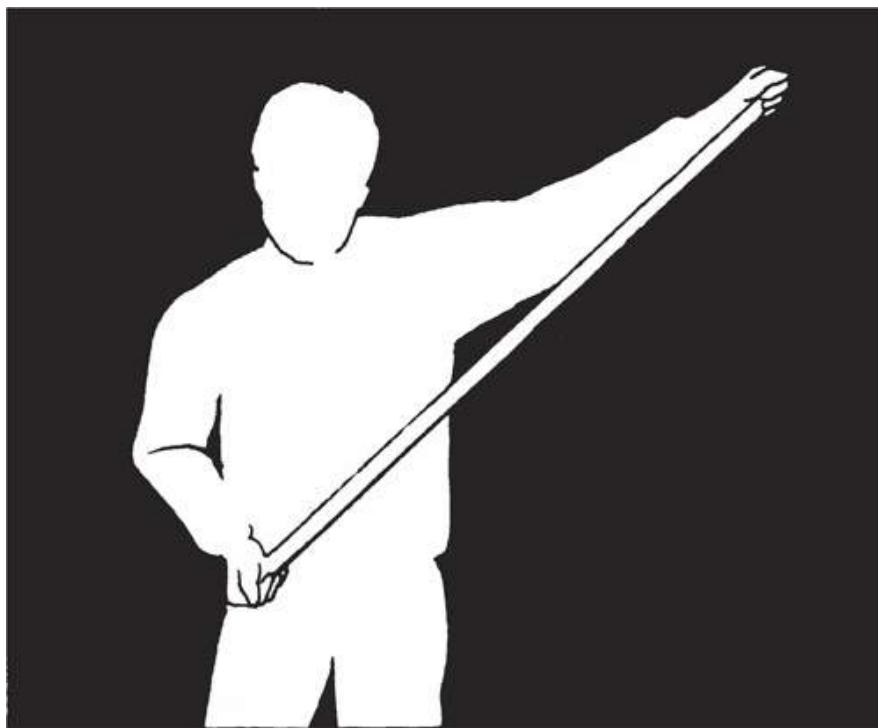
Most effective of improvised weapons, the bow and arrow is easy to make. It takes only a short time to become proficient in its use.

For the bow a well-seasoned wood is best but you will have to make do without. If you expect to have to stay where you are for many months you could put wood aside to season for future use. The tension in unseasoned wood is short-lived so make several bows and change over to another weapon when the one you are using loses its spring.

Yew is the ideal wood—all the old English longbows were made of yew. There are five kinds of yew distributed across the northern hemisphere but it is not very common and hickory, juniper, oak, white elm, cedar, ironwood, birch, willow and hemlock are all good alternatives.

### **Making the stave**

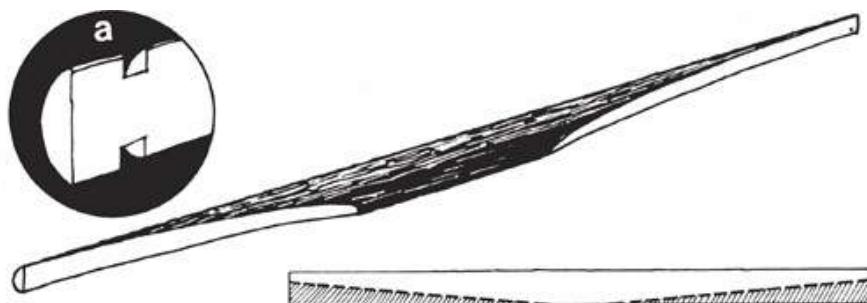
For your bow-stave select a supple wand. It should be about 120cm (4ft) long, but match its size to the individual.



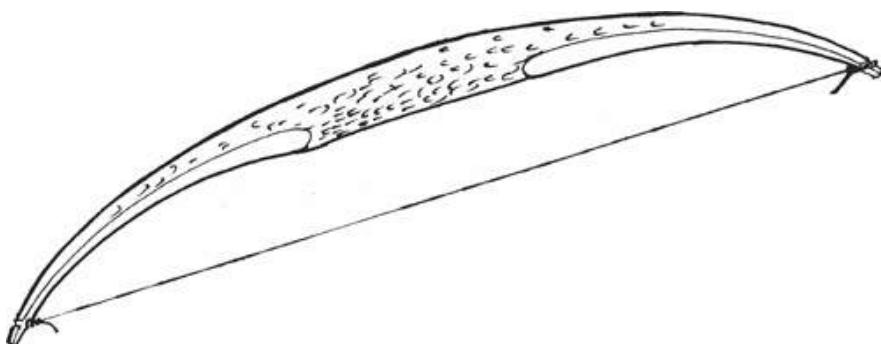
*To determine the correct stave length for you:*

*Hold one end of the stave at the hip with the right hand, reach out sideways with the left hand and mark the extent of your reach as the length of the bow. This will give you a standard type bow (the longbow requires much more skill in use).*

## Shaping the bow



*Fashion the stave so that it is 5cm (2in) wide at the centre, tapering to 1.5cm (5/8in) at the ends. Notch the ends (a) to take the bowstring about 1.25cm (1/2in) from the ends. Remove the bark if you choose. When the bow has been whittled into shape rub it all over with oil or animal fat.*



## Fitting the string

A rawhide string is best, cut to a width of 3mm ( $\frac{1}{8}$ in), but any string, cord or thin rope will suffice. The stems of old nettles provide tough fibres and these can be twisted together to make a satisfactory bowstring. If the bow has a lot of give a shorter string is likely to be needed, but when strung the string should only be under slight tension—the main tension is added when you pull it back to shoot.

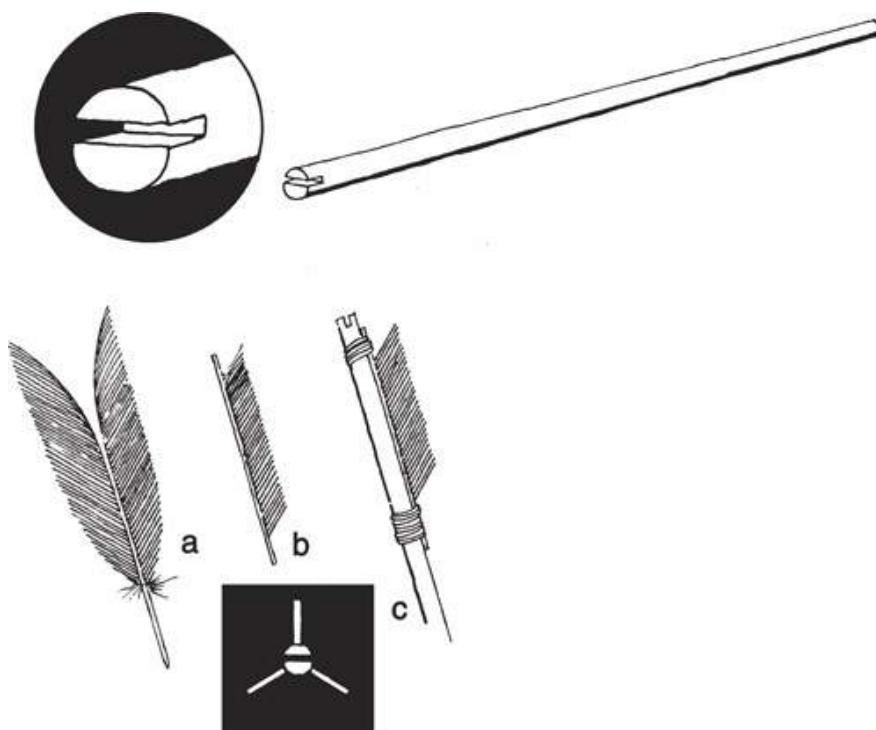


*Secure the string to the bow with a round turn and two half hitches at each end. If the wood is unseasoned release one end of the string whenever the bow is not in use to relax the tension or you may find the stave sets in shape.*

A properly made bow will be more efficient and more accurate than just bending a pliable wand—but once it loses its spring don't waste time with it. Make another.

## Making arrows

Any straight wood will do for arrows, but birch is one of the best. Make arrows about 60cm (2ft) long, and about 6mm ( $\frac{1}{4}$ in) wide. Keep them straight (a piece of string tied between two points will give you a straight edge to check them against) and as smooth as possible. At one end make a notch 6mm ( $\frac{1}{4}$ in) deep to fit the bow string.



*Check that the notch in the end of each arrow is wide enough to fit over your bowstring.*

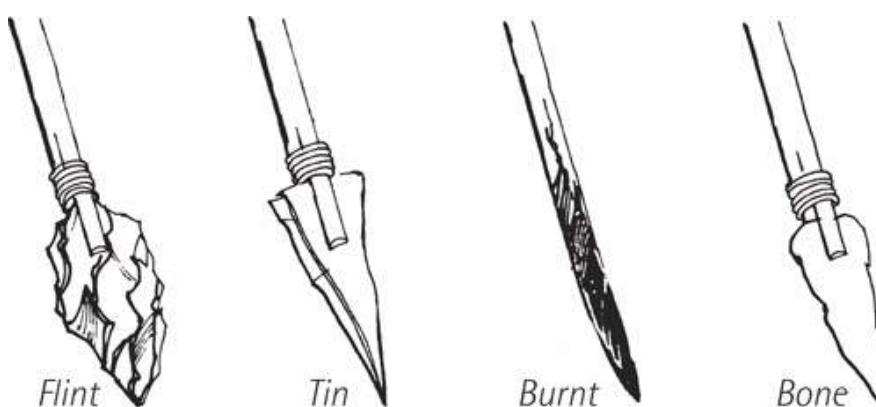
## FLIGHTING ARROWS

*To increase accuracy arrows should be flighted. Feathers make the best flights but other materials can be used: paper, light cloth or even leaves trimmed to shape.*

- Split feathers, starting from the top, down centre of quill.*
- Leave 20mm (3/4in) of quill at each end of feather to tie to arrow.*
- Tie three flights equally spaced around shaft.*

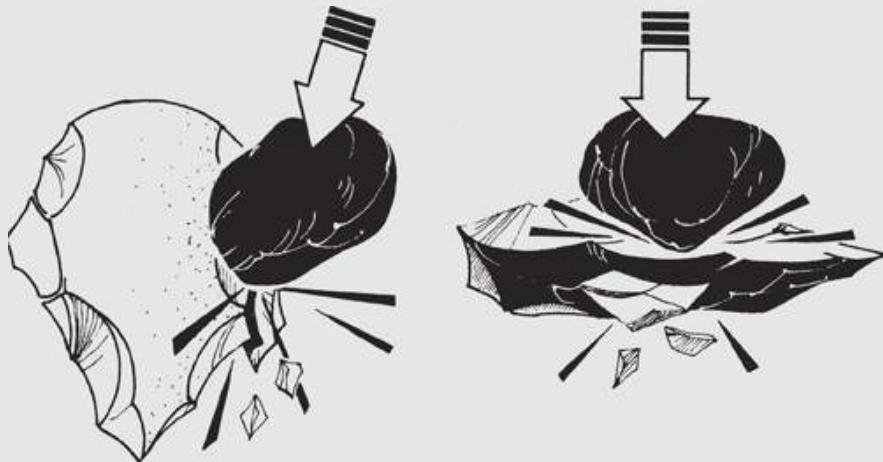
## Arrow heads

At the business end of the arrow a sharp point is needed. The arrow itself can be sharpened and hardened in fire but a firm tip is better. Tin is excellent or flint can be fashioned into a really sharp arrowhead. With patience even bone can be made into a good tip. Split the end of the shaft, insert the arrow head and bind it tightly. Sinew is good for binding—apply wet, they dry hard securing the head firmly.



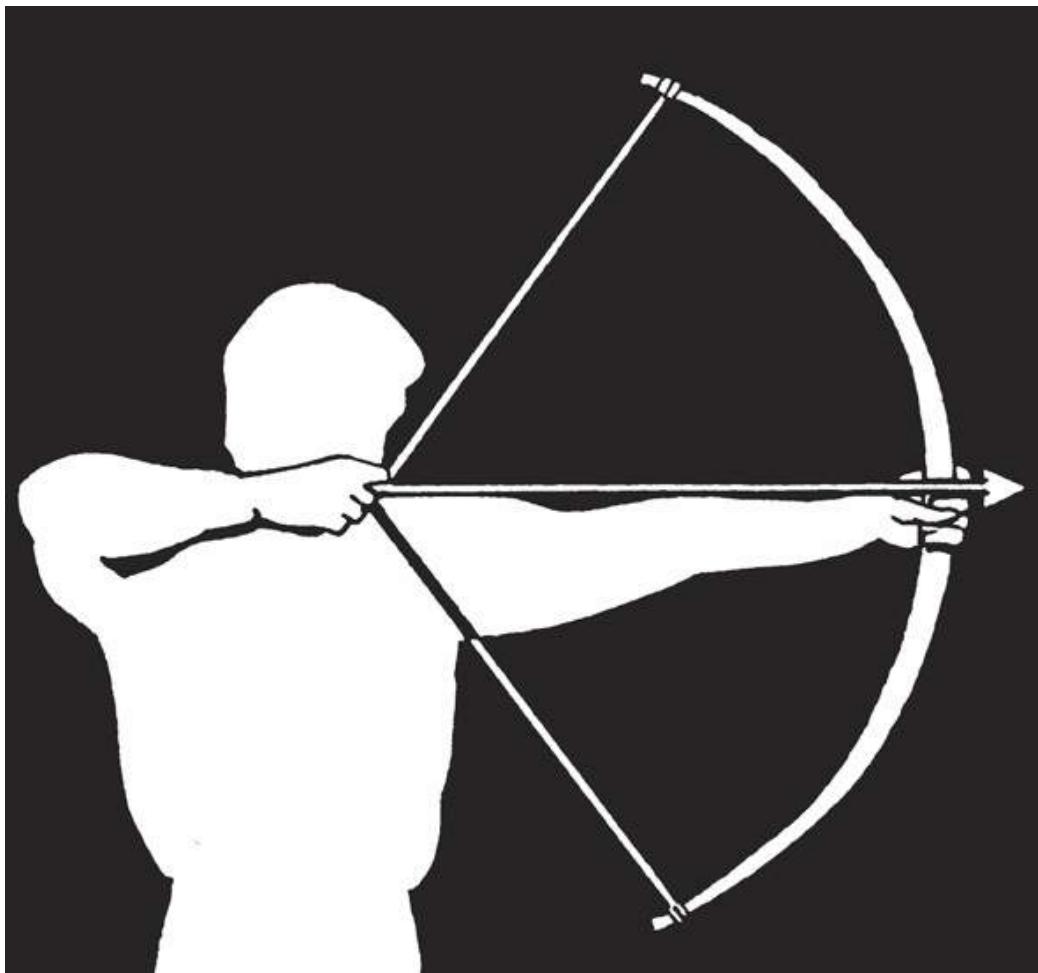
# WEAPONS FROM FLINT

Arrow and spearheads, axes and knives can all be made by knapping flint, which is a black stone with a dull metallic gleam, often found in association with chalk. Choose a flattish piece of approximately the right shape and size. With another hard stone flake off pieces until it is the shape you want. Chip away at the edges to produce a very sharp cutting edge (see [Tools in Camp Craft](#)).



## Archery technique

Fit an arrow into the bowstring and raise the centre of the bow to eyelevel. Hold the bow just below the arrow, extending the arm forwards. Keep the bow arm locked and draw the string smoothly back across the front of your body, with the arrow at eye level, and lined up with the target, sighting along the arrow. Release the string —just let go, do not snatch at it as you do so. Now, practise! For rapid fire carry a number of arrows in your bow hand.

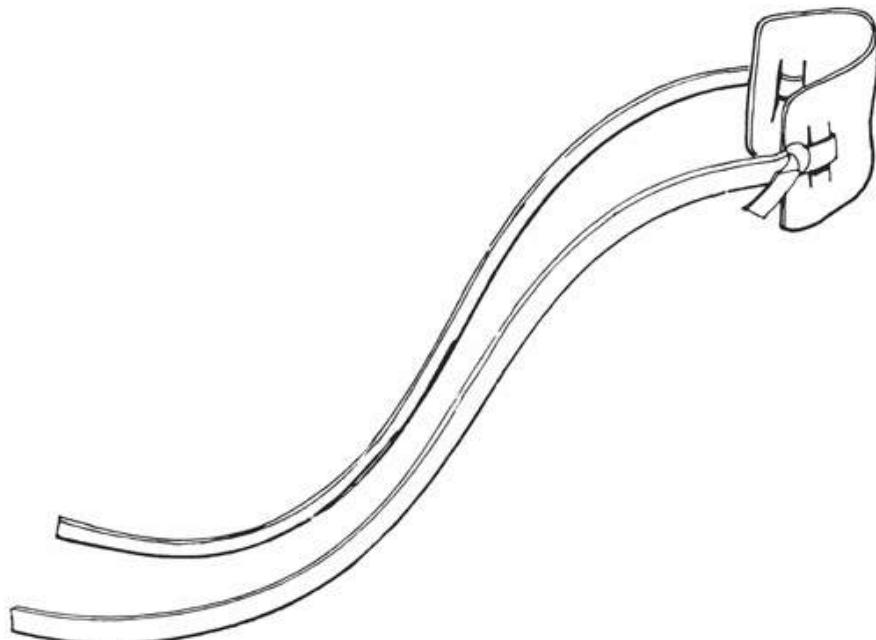


### **ARROW BURNS**

*Many archers find that the rubbing of the arrow flights against the hand and the cheek can cause friction burns. A scarf or a piece of cloth pulled tight to the face will protect the cheek without interfering with the shot and either a leather mitten worn, or a leather guard fitted between the fingers and the wrist, to protect the hand.*

### **Sling and shot**

The simple sling was the weapon with which David slew the giant Goliath and can be armed with ordinary pebbles. It consists of a simple pouch in the middle of a length of rope. Leather is the best material for the pouch but you could make it from any strong fabric and the rope can be a leather thong or twisted from natural fibres. Attach it as one long piece threaded through, or two tied or sewn on.



**SLINGSHOT TECHNIQUE**

Select smooth pebbles about 2cm (3/4in) across and as round as possible (jagged pebbles might do more damage but they will not follow such a smooth trajectory).

Swing the sling above the head in a circle lined up on your target. Release one end of the rope and the ammunition should fly with great velocity and, with practice, accurately on target.

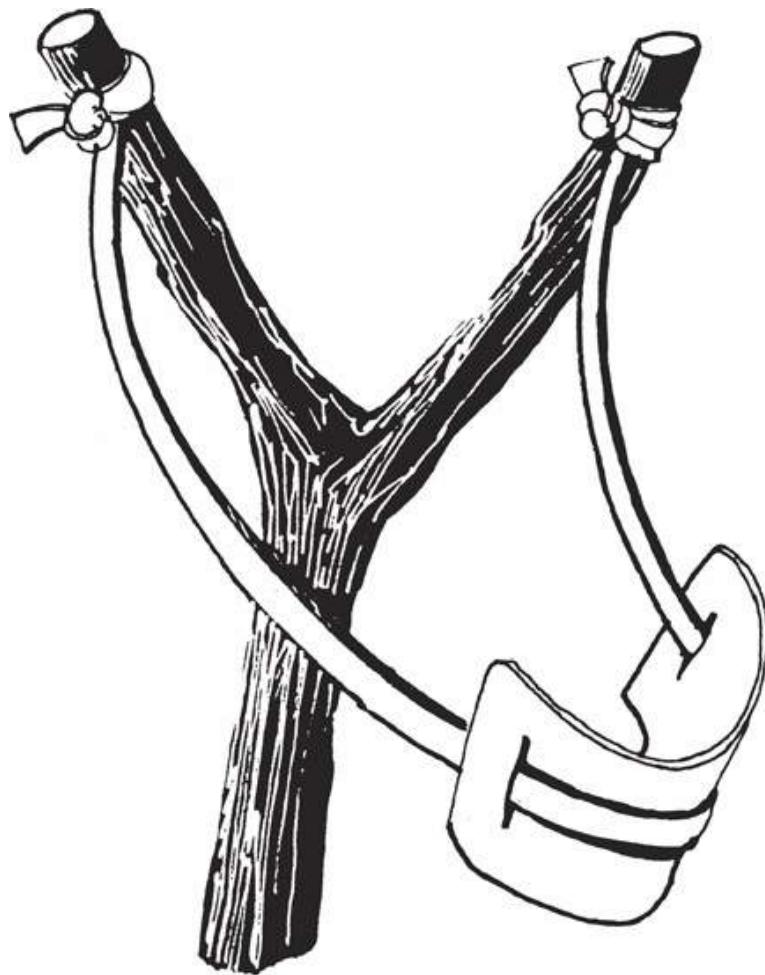
You will probably need to experiment with sling length to achieve accuracy and distance.

When using either the sling or the catapult against birds, load several pebbles at once.

### Catapult

The schoolboy's weapon—but the Romans used giant mechanical ones as siege weaponry. You need a strong forked twig, preferably with some pliability—a hazel prong is excellent—and a piece of elastic material. A piece of inner-tube from a car or bicycle tyre is ideal (and stronger than the elastic in your clothing, although that could be used).

Place a pouch in the centre of the elastic (a boot tongue can be used) and thread or sew it into position as for the sling, tie the ends to each side of your twig and use a stone as your missile.

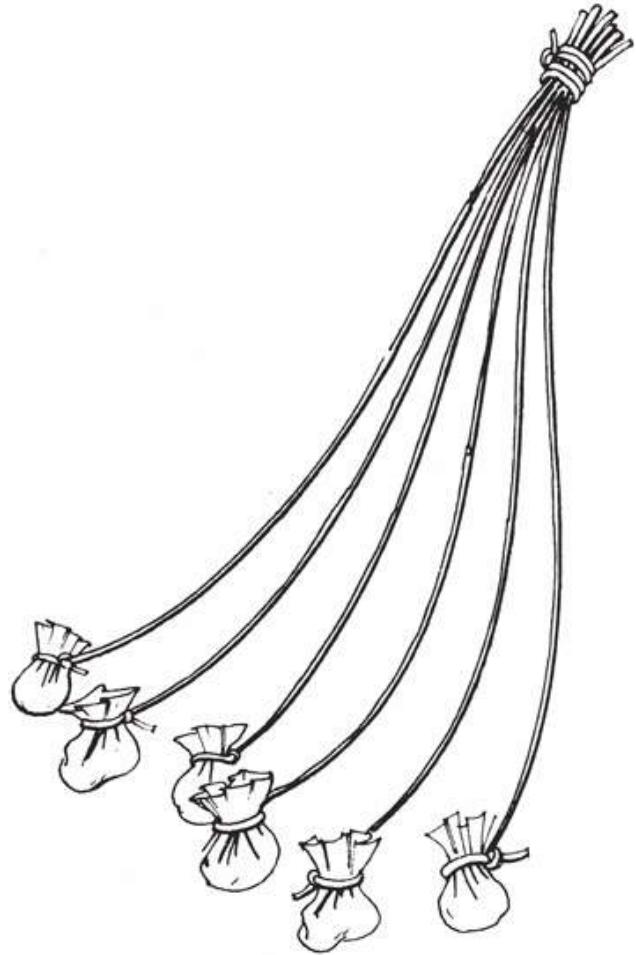


### Bola

A weapon that Eskimos use against birds. Stones are wrapped in circles of material and 90cm (3ft) lengths of string knotted around each, the other ends of the string being firmly tied together. Held at the joined end, they are twirled around the head. When released they fly through the air covering a wide area.

The Gauchos of South America use the same weapon and variations have been used in combat.

The bola wraps around a bird in flight or tangles around an animal's legs or neck, bringing it to the ground and giving the hunter a chance to kill it.



## Spears

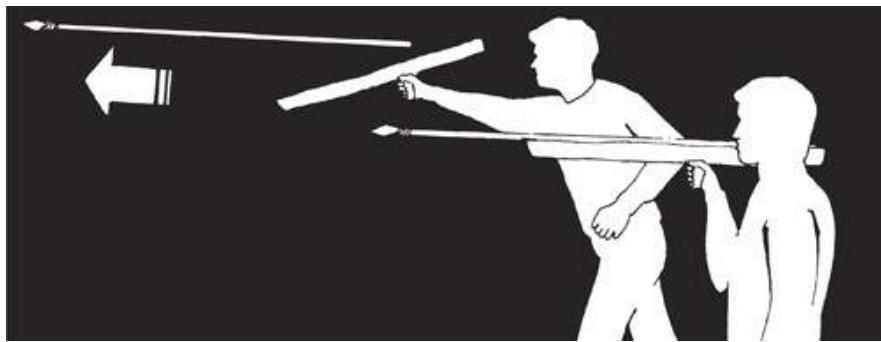
A staff is a good aid to walking and by sharpening one end can be turned into a useful thrusting or throwing weapon. A straight staff about 1.80m (6ft) is ideal for a jabbing spear. About 90cm (3ft) makes a more manageable throwing spear. A thrower can be made from a piece of wood about half that length—it gives greater accuracy and distance.



*To make a spear more effective add a point of flint, knapped to sharpness, or a flattened cone of tin, set into the end — or securely bind on a knife. However, if you only have one knife do not risk it, it could too easily be lost or damaged.*

## SPEAR THROWER

*Spear sits in a groove which runs along most, but not all, of the upper face of the thrower. The end stop adds thrust to the spear.*



To make the thrower choose a tree limb that is at least twice the width of your spear and with a branch stump which can become the forward sloping handle. Split down the centre using a knife as a wedge. Gouge out a smooth channel for the spear. Make sure it is cleanly cut, leaving a solid portion as a buffer. Experiment to match the thrower length to that of the spear and to suit your own balance.

Hold at shoulder level, aim the spear at the target, bringing the holder sharply forwards and then downwards. As you move downwards the butt of the groove adds to the thrust behind the spear.

## **HUNTING BIRDS**

### **Running noose**

A noose attached to a long pole is an effective way of pulling roosting birds down from lower branches. Make a note of roosting and nest sites—remember that droppings will help guide you to them—and if they are within reach return stealthily on nights when there is sufficient light to see them. Slip the noose over the bird and pull, tightening the noose and pulling the bird down at the same time.



### **Stalking waterfowl**

You can get up close by getting in the water and camouflaging yourself around the head with reeds and other vegetation. Very cautiously, approach an area where fowl nest or are regularly seen. But remember that birds (especially large ones such as geese and swans) can be quite ferocious in defence of themselves.

Another technique in some parts of the world is to use a large gourd worn on the head as cover. Holes are made on one side to breathe and see through and with the gourd just sufficiently above the water the hunter floats with the current among the birds. To prepare the birds several other gourds are thrown into the water first. Having got among the wildfowl the hunter grabs the unsuspecting birds from below and strangles them underwater.

### **Pit trap**

Find or dig a hole about 90cm (3ft) deep in an area where ground-feeding birds are common. Its width depends upon the kind of birds you are after. Spread grain or other bait around the hole, and more concentratedly inside it.

First taking the bait around the hole, birds will enter it to get more. Rush them. In their panic they are unable to spread their wings sufficiently to take off from inside the hole.

## **SEAGULLS**

Seagulls can be caught by wrapping food around a stone and throwing it in the air. The gull swallows the bait while still on the wing, gulping down the stone with it, and the change in weight causes the bird to

crash. Obviously this is a technique for use over land rather than at sea. Be ready to dispatch the bird as soon as it hits the ground.

## **ANIMAL DANGERS**

Few animals are likely to attack the survivor unless in self-defence, most will be much more concerned to get out of the way. There is little chance of encountering large animals such as elephants, rhinos and hippopotamus, or the larger big cats, outside wildlife reserves. Nevertheless avoid making camp on a trail, or close to an animal watering place, where you could find you are in the path of a herd of elephants or confronted by a curious cougar.

## **WARNING**

---

DON'T PROVOKE AN ENCOUNTER. Bears frequently scavenge from homesteads in the northern forests, turning over garbage cans, and are just as likely to come round your camp for easy pickings. Use noise to drive them off—don't try to catch them. Don't get close to them. A bear can easily kill a man and a wounded bear is particularly dangerous. All injured or cornered animals are likely to be dangerous. Most animals will try to escape. If you prevent them from doing so, you are forcing them to fight.

Crocodiles and alligators should be given a wide berth unless very small—and then beware that there is not a larger crocodile behind you! Any of the large-horned animals is likely to be able to wound you with its horns before you can reach it with a weapon. Stags are particularly belligerent in the rutting season. It is not just hooved animals that can deliver a powerful blow with their feet—ostriches can kill with a kick.

Wolves are much more often heard than seen. Tales of large marauding packs are probably wild exaggerations. A wolf may get curious and look at you from a distance, but you can take with a pinch of salt the idea of hunters being chased by packs of ferocious wolves. If you are badly injured and unable to defend yourself, wolves might finish you off. Hyenas also hunt in packs. Although basically cowardly, they are very powerful and, as scavengers, are attracted to camp sites. They will probably turn tail and run, but drive them off rather than try to tackle them.

The larger apes can easily kill a man—but they are rarely aggressive animals and will usually give you plenty of warning to back off. Small monkeys are much more often encountered and more immediately dangerous—they have sharp teeth. Mature chimpanzees, in particular, can be very bad-tempered. Thoroughly cleanse any animal bite. All could cause tetanus and some mammals, including vampire bats, carry rabies.

Snakes will not be a threat, unless you accidentally come into contact with them. You just have to get used to them and to checking clothing, bedding and equipment for any reptile or insect visitors. Occasionally a snake or a centipede may slide into bed with you, attracted by your warmth. Cases have been known of people waking to find an unwelcome visitor nestling in an armpit or even more intimate places. Try to remember that they are not attacking. Move gently and calmly to free yourself from them.

---

## **HANDLING THE KILL**

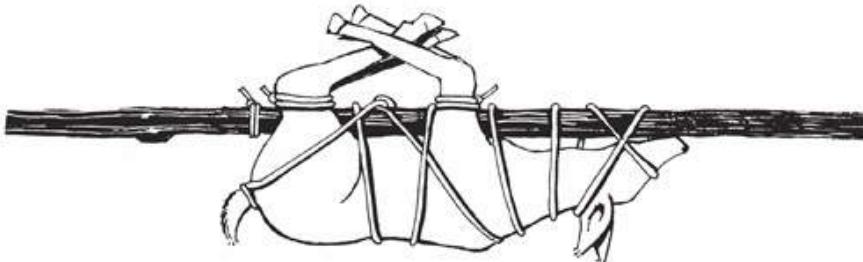
---

**W**ounded and trapped animals can be dangerous. Before approaching closely check whether an animal is dead.

Use a spear or tie your knife to a long stick and stab a largish animal in its main muscles and neck. Loss of blood will weaken it, enabling you to move closer and club it on the head.

If you have a companion, it is easier to carry a large animal by tying it firmly to a bough, which can be carried on your shoulders, but you should not take it all the way into camp, where it would attract flies and scavenging animals.

Even large animals can be dragged to a more convenient location if turned upon their backs. If the animal has horns cut off its head or they will make this difficult.



*Place the pole along the belly and use a clove hitch around each pair of legs. Lash the animal to the pole and finish with a clove hitch around the pole. If the animal has horns, tie these up out of the way.*

It is preferable to butcher all game on the trap line. It will attract predators and carrion eaters that in turn may become trapped. Use the entrails to rebait traps. Only carry back to camp what you can manage without exertion. In cool climates cache the rest for collection later.

## HIDING THE KILL

Suspend a carcase from a bough, too high for scavengers on the ground and out of reach from the branch. A cache in the crook of a tree will keep meat away from ground predators but will still be accessible to felines and other climbing predators.

In territories with vultures and other large carrion eaters it will be almost impossible to protect it, so carry what you can. What you leave behind is unlikely to keep in a hot climate.

Blood is a valuable food, containing vital minerals. Carry a vessel for taking it back to camp. Keep it covered, cool and out of the way of flies.

## WARNING

### **Health Hazards—diseased animals**

There are lymph glands in the cheeks of all animals (more noticeable on large ones). If large and discoloured they are a sign of illness. Any animal that is distorted or discoloured about the head (such as a rabbit with the symptoms of myxomatosis) should be boiled—there is then little risk of infection from eating it—but care should be taken in preparation when there is a risk. It is essential that any cut or sore in your skin be covered when slaughtering or handling meat, for if an animal carries disease a break in the skin provides easy entry to your body.

## **PREPARING THE KILL**

No part of a carcass should be wasted. Careful preparation will give you the maximum food value and make full

use of the parts you cannot eat. Set about it in four stages:

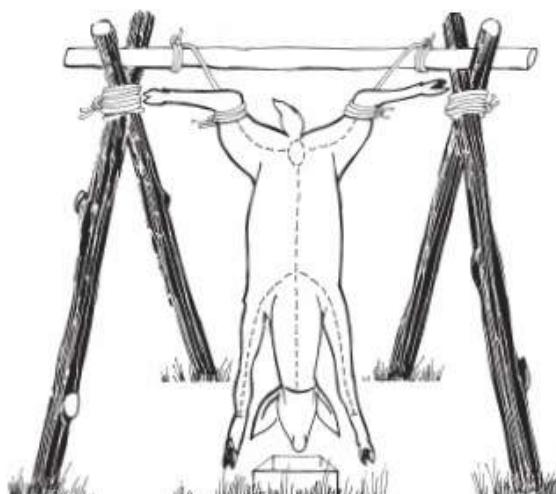
- **Bleeding**, which is essential if the meat is to keep, and without which the taste is very strong.
- **Skinning**, so that the hide or fur can be used for shelter and clothing. (Pigs are not skinned because they have a useful layer of fat under the skin. Birds are plucked but not usually skinned.)
- **Gutting**, to remove the gut and recover offal.
- **Jointing**, to produce suitable cuts for cooking by different methods.

## Bleeding

Do not waste blood. It is rich in vitamins and minerals, including salt, that could otherwise be missing from the survivor's diet. Cattle blood is an important part of the diet of many African herdsmen. Cannibals who drank their enemies' blood found vision and general health improved, and giddy spells, induced by vitamin deficiency, cured: the blood provided the missing vitamins and minerals.

Any animal will bleed better if hung with the head down. Tie ropes around the hock (NOT the ankle—it will slip off) and hoist it up a branch or build a frame, placing a receptacle beneath to catch the blood.

For a frame you need a strong structure. Drive the posts into the ground and lash them firmly where they cross to make A-frames and, then rest the horizontal bar on top.



Bleed the animal by cutting the jugular vein or carotid artery in its neck. When the animal is hanging these will bulge more clearly and should be easy to see. The cut can be made either behind the ears, stabbing in line with the ears to pierce the vein on both sides of the head at the same time, or lower down in the V of the neck, before the artery branches. Unless you have a stiletto type knife the latter is best. An alternative is to cut the throat from ear to ear. This has the disadvantage of cutting through the windpipe and food from the stomach may come up and contaminate the blood which you are trying to save, but if your knife does not have a sharp point it may be necessary.

It is particularly important to very thoroughly bleed pigs. If blood remains in their tissues, which have high moisture and fat content, it will speed deterioration of the flesh.

## Skinning

It is easier to skin any animal when the flesh is still warm, as soon as it has been bled. First remove any scent glands which might taint the meat. Some deer have them on their rear legs, just behind the knee. Felines and canines have a gland on either side of the anus. It is wise to remove the testicles of male animals, as they can also taint meat. Before attempting to remove hide, cut firmly through the skin, as shown by the broken line in the main illustration:

- 1 Make a ring cut around the rear legs just above the knee. Take care not to cut the securing rope.
- 2 Cut around the forelegs in the same place.
- 3 Cut down the inside of the rear legs to the crotch, carefully cutting a circle around the genitals.
- 4 Extend the cut down the centre of the body to the neck. Do not cut into the stomach and digestive organs: lift skin and insert two fingers beneath, set knife between them, sharp edge outward and draw it slowly down, cutting away from the body. (See [Illustration](#).)
- 5 Cut down the inside of the forelegs.



*Cutting in this way, you avoid cutting prematurely into the gut cavity. The fingers lift the skin as you go and the knife, sharp edge outwards, slips in and cuts along. Do not hurry. Do not cut yourself. Do not damage the skin. Taking care will pay dividends later when you want to use the skin.*

Now ease the skin of the rear legs from the flesh. Use the knife as little as possible. Roll the skin outwards, the fur inside itself, and pull it down.

Having cleared the back legs, cut around the tail (you have already cut around the genital area). As soon as you can get your hand right down the back of the carcass use your fingers to separate flesh from skin. Now peel the skin from the front legs. You will have a single piece of hide. As you work your thumbs down the neck they become bloody at the point where the throat was cut. A strong twist of the head will separate it. Cut through remaining tissues.

### **Working on your own**

Lifting a large animal takes considerable effort. If on your own you may have to skin and gut the animal on the ground. To prevent the carcass from rolling, cut off the feet of hooved animals and place them under it.

Lay the carcass down a natural slope, scoop an impression in the ground in which to place a collecting tin or other vessel so that the animal bleeds into it. Follow the same pattern of incisions in the hide then skin the animal from one side to the backbone, spread out the hide and then roll the animal onto it to finish skinning the other half—this helps keep the meat from rubbing on the ground.

### **Skinning small animals**

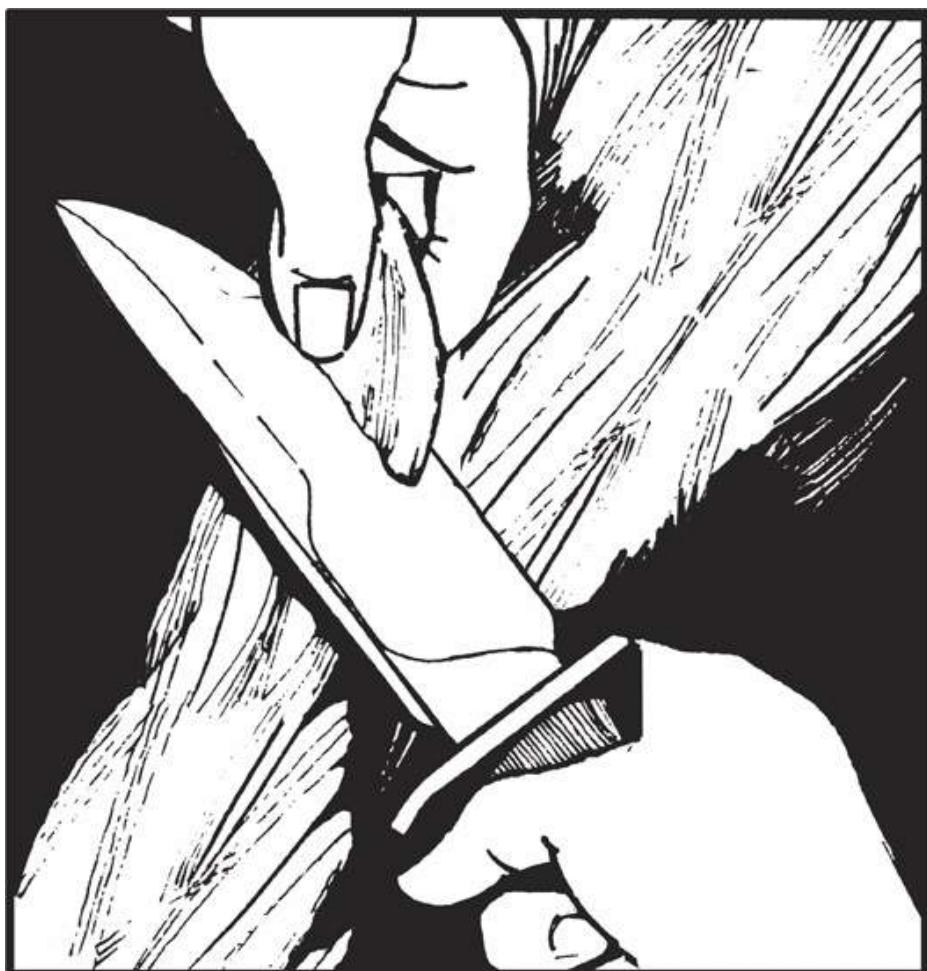
Rabbits and smaller animals can be skinned by making a small incision over the stomach (be careful not to cut into the organs). Insert the thumbs and pull outwards—the skin comes away easily. Free the legs and twist the head off.

If you have no knife available to make the first incision snap off the lower part of a leg and use the sharp edge of the break to cut the skin.

### **Gutting**

With the carcass still suspended remove the gut and recover the offal. Pinch the abdomen as high as possible and in the pouch of flesh you have raised make a slit big enough to take two fingers. Do not stab into the flesh or you may cut through to internal organs. Insert the fingers and use them as a guide for the knife to cut upwards

towards the anus. Now cut downwards in the same way, using the hand to hold back the gut, which will begin to spill outwards (see [illustration](#)). Cut down as far as the breastbone.



*The initial incision, made in the pinched-up flesh, need only accommodate two fingers. Cut in the same way as skinning (previous illustration). First up, then down (the back of the hand prevents the gut from spilling).*

Let the gut spill out, allow it to hang down so that you can inspect it. Remove the two kidneys and the liver.

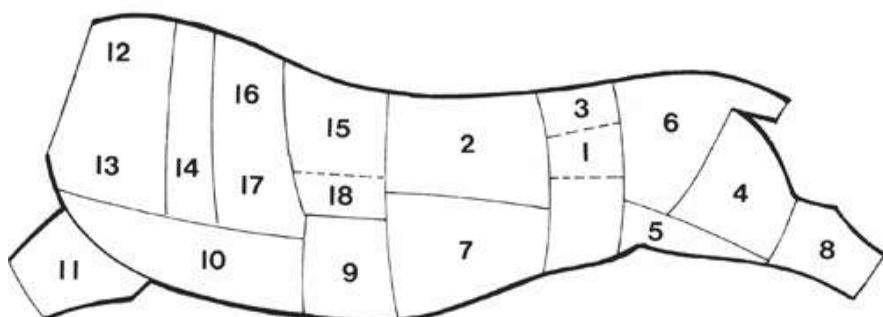
The chest cavity is covered with a membrane and easily missed in small game. Cut through the membrane and remove heart, lungs and windpipe.

Ensure that the anus is clear—you should be able to see daylight through it (push a hand through with large animals). The carcass is now clean.

## Jointing meat

Large animals can be quartered by first splitting down the backbone and then cutting each side between the tenth and eleventh rib. The hindquarters will contain the steaks (rump and fillet) and the choicer cuts, the forequarter meat is more stringy and needs slow cooking to make it tender.

The cuts into which a carcass is divided will differ according to the kind of animal and the cook's preference.



**1 Fillet or undercut** The most tender meat — only 1 per cent is fillet. Ideal for preserving.

**2 Sirloin** Next most tender. Fat free strips can be cut for preserving.

- 3 Rump** Ideal for frying, little cooking needed. Can also be dried in strips.
- 4 Topside** Muscle from the top of the leg. Cook slowly, it tends to be tough. Cut into cubes for boiling.
- 5 Top rump** Muscle from front of thigh. As for topside.
- 6 Silverside** Muscle on outside of thighs. Good for roasting.
- 7 Hind flank** Belly, ideal for stews and casseroles.
- 8 Leg** Tough and sinewy, cut into cubes and stew.
- 9 Flank** Muscular extension of the belly. Ideal for stews. Usually tough so needs long simmering to make tender.
- 10 Brisket** Same as Flank.
- 11 Shin** Foreleg, best cubed for stews.
- 12 Neck**
- 13 Clod** Ideal for stews. Contains less tissue than leg. Cook slowly.
- 14 Chuck and blade** Quite tender but usually cut up as stewing steak.
- 15–18 Ribs** Ideal for roasting but cook slowly.

## Hanging

Offal should be eaten as soon as possible but the rest of the meat is better hung. In moderate temperatures leave the carcass hanging for 2-3 days. In hot climates it is better to preserve it or cook it straight away.

When the animal is killed, acids released into the muscles help to break down their fibre, making the meat more tender. The longer it is left the more tender it will be and easier to cut, with more flavour too, and harmful parasitic bacteria in the meat will die. You must keep flies off the flesh: if they lay eggs on the meat it will quickly spoil.

## OFFAL

### Liver

Liver is best eaten as soon as possible. Remove the bile bladder in the centre. It is quite strong and can usually be pulled off without difficulty—but be careful, the bile will taint flesh with which it comes in contact. If any animal has any diseases they will show up in the liver. Avoid any liver that is mottled or covered in white spots. If only some is affected, cut it off and eat the remainder.

Liver is a complete food, containing all essential vitamins and minerals. If eaten raw no food value is lost. It requires little cooking.

### Stomach (Tripe)

Stomach (tripe) takes little digesting, so is a good food for the sick or injured. Remove the stomach contents (which make ideal ‘invalid’ food) wash the tripe and simmer slowly with herbs. The contents may sound unpalatable but could save an injured person’s life, for the animal has done most of the hard work of breaking the food down. Lightly boiled, stomach contents are nourishing and easily digestible.

In some countries pigs are fed nothing but apples prior to slaughter. They are cooked with the stomach still in. The subtle flavour of apple impregnates the meat. The stomach is removed after cooking and the contents used as sauce.

### Kidneys

Kidneys are a valuable source of nourishment and ideal flavouring for stews. Boil them with herbs. The white fat surrounding them (suet) is a rich food source. Render it down to use in the preparation of pemmican.

### Melts

Melts are the spleen, a large organ in the bigger animals. It has limited food value and is not worth bothering about in small game such as rabbits. It is best roasted.

### Lites

Lites are the lungs of the animal, perfectly good to eat but not of great food value. Any respiratory complaints will show up in the lungs. Do not eat any mottled with black and white spots. Healthy lungs are pink and blemish free and best boiled. They could be set aside for fish or trap bait.

### Heart

Heart is a tightly packed muscle with little or no fat. Roast it or use its distinctive flavour to liven up stew.

## **Intestines**

Intestine consist of lengths of tubes and are best used as sausage skins. Turn them inside out and wash them. Then boil them thoroughly. Mix fat and meat in equal proportions and then stir in blood. Stuff the mixture into the skin and boil them well. Before putting them into boiling water add a little cold to take it just off the boil—this will counter any risk of the skins bursting. This makes a highly nutritious food which, if smoked, will keep for a long time. Dried intestines can be used for light lashings.

## **Sweetbreads**

Sweetbreads are the pancreas or thymus gland, distinctive in larger game. Many people consider it a great delicacy and it is delicious boiled or roasted.

## **Tail**

Skin and boil to make an excellent soup for it is full of meat and gelatine.

## **Feet**

Feet are chopped off during slaughter but should not be wasted, boil them up to make a good stew. Clean dirt from hooves or paws and remove all traces of fur. Hooves are a source of nutritious aspic jelly.

## **Head**

On larger animals there is a good deal of meat on the head. The cheeks make a very tasty dish. The tongue is highly nutritious. Boil it to make it tender and skin before eating.

All that is left, or the whole head with small animals, should be boiled.

## **Brain**

The brain will make brawn and will also provide a useful solution for curing hides.

## **Bones**

All bones should be boiled for soup. They are rich in bone marrow, with valuable vitamins. They can also be made into tools.

# **PREPARING SHEEP-LIKE ANIMALS**

Follow the instructions for larger animals and then:

- 1 Split in two down the line of the spine, keeping exactly to the centre of the backbone.
- 2 Remove rear leg. Try to cut through the ball and socket joint.
- 3 Remove front leg. There is no bone to cut through, follow the line of the shoulder blade.
- 4 Cut off neck.
- 5 Cut off skirt (loose flesh hanging below the ribs).
- 6 Cut between each rib and between the vertebrae. This gives you chops.
- 7 The fillet, lying in the small of the back, is the best meat for preserving.

## **Preparing Pig**

Do not attempt to skin a pig. Gut it first then place it over the hot embers of a fire and scrape the hair off. Hot water—just hotter than your hand can bear—will help to loosen the hair. Water that is too hot will make the hair more difficult to remove. Pigs attract many parasites: ticks, crab lice and worms so cooking must make sure of killing them. Boiling is therefore the best way of cooking pork.

## **Preparing small animals**

Follow the same basic procedure as for larger animals—they all need to be gutted.

## **Preparing reptiles**

Discard internal organs, which may carry salmonella. Reptiles can be cooked in their skins, and large snakes can be chopped into steaks and their skins can be used for clothing. To prepare a snake cut off head well down, behind poison sacs; open vent to neck, keeping blade outwards, to avoid piercing innards, which will fall clear. Skewer to suspend and ease of skin towards tail.

## **Preparing birds**

Birds are prepared in much the same way as animals—though they are usually plucked and cooked with the skin on instead of being skinned. Follow the sequence below.

### **Bleeding:**

Kill birds by stretching their necks, then cut the throat and hang head down to bleed. Or kill by cutting just under the tongue, severing main nerve and main artery. The bird dies easily and bleeds well. Handle carrion eaters as little as possible—they are more prone to infection, lice and ticks.

### **Plucking:**

Plucking is easiest straight after killing while the bird is still warm. Hot water can be used to loosen feathers, except in the case of water-birds and seabirds, in which it tends to tighten them. Keep feathers for arrow flights and insulation. Start at the chest. For speed you can skin a bird—but that wastes the food value of the skin.

### **Drawing (removing innards):**

Make an incision from the vent to the tail. Put your hand in and draw out all the innards. Retain the heart and kidneys. Cut off the head and feet.

### **Cooking:**

Always boil carrion eaters in case they carry any disease. Boiling will make stringy old birds tender but you can roast younger ones on a spit or in an oven.

---

## **FISH AND FISHING**

---

**F**ish are a valuable food source, containing protein, vitamins and fats. All freshwater fish are edible but some tropical ones can be dangerous: be wary of electric eels, freshwater stingrays and the piranha of South American rivers. It takes skill to catch fish by conventional angling methods but, by considering their feeding habits and following the simple methods given here, you can be successful.

Fish range from tiny tiddlers to some of prodigious size—such as the Nile perch of the tropics. They differ widely in their eating habits and diet. Different kinds feed at different times and at different levels in the water. Some prey on other fish, others eat worms and insects, but they can all be attracted and hooked with appropriate bait.

If you are an experienced angler you can apply your skills, especially if you have plenty of time on your hands, and will probably gain a lot of pleasure, but if you are fishing for survival the sporting angler's techniques are not the most effective. Two of the most useful methods are the night line and the gill net.

### **Where to fish**

Fish choose the places in the water where they are most comfortable and where they most easily find their prey. This will be affected by the temperature of the day.

If it is hot and the water is low, fish in shaded water and where there are deep pools. In a lake fish retreat to the coolness of deep water in hot weather.

In cold weather choose a shallow place where the sun warms the water. Lake fish will tend to keep to the

edges which are warmer.

If the river is in flood, fish where the water is slack—on the outside of a bend—for example, or in a small tributary feeding the mainstream if its flow is different—quite possible for the flood may not be due to local rainfall.

Fish like to shelter under banks and below rocks and submerged logs.

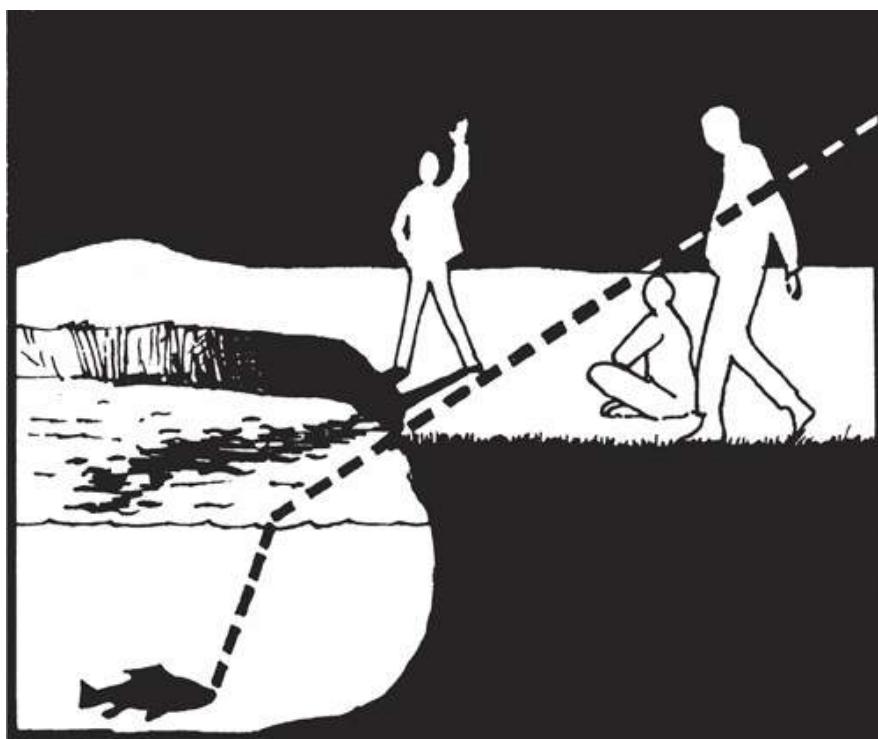
## When to fish

As a general rule leave lines out overnight and check them just before first light. Some fish feed at night during a full moon.

If a storm is imminent, fish before it breaks. Fishing is poor in a river after heavy rain.

## Indications of fish feeding

Signs that fish are feeding, and therefore likely to take a bait, are when they jump out of the water, or you see frequent clear ring ripples breaking out where fish are taking flies on the surface. Where lots of little fish are darting about they may well be being pursued by a larger predatory fish.



## IMAGE REFRACTION

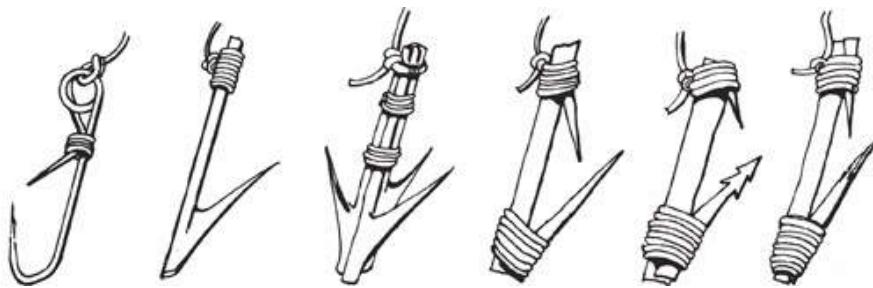
Water refracts light so that the fish sees things above the water at a slightly different angle — and can probably see more on the bank than you think. It is always better to fish from a sitting or kneeling position than standing up so that you are less likely to be in vision. Keep back from the edge. Always try to keep your shadow off the water you are fishing.

## ANGLING

Fishing with a hook and line is the popular way of fishing (though others are usually more effective) and they are part of your survival kit. Hooks can also be improvised from wire, pins, bones, wood and even thorns.

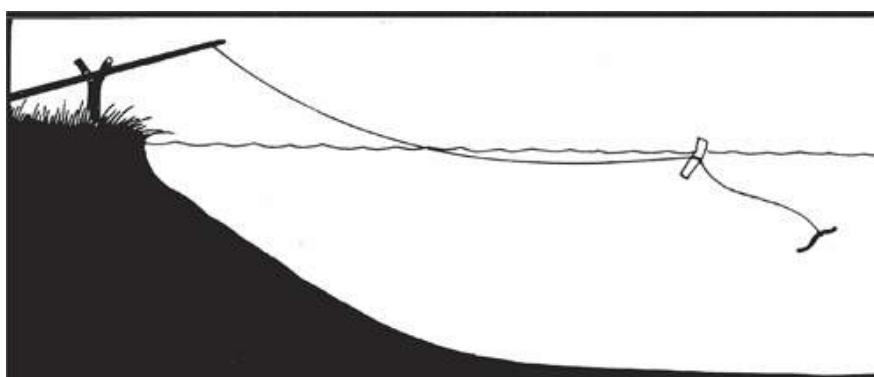
Large hooks will catch large fish but small ones will catch both large and small. Near the end of the line you will probably need to attach another short length with a weight to take the hook down and stop the line being carried along the surface of the water, especially if fishing deep. If it is a long line you also need another length with a float which will be pulled down when you get a bite. A rod is not essential (you can fish effectively with a handline) but makes it easier to land fish and to cast away from the bank.

You can improvise hooks from all kinds of materials. Here (from left to right) a pin, a thorn, a bunch of thorns, nails, bone and wood have been used.

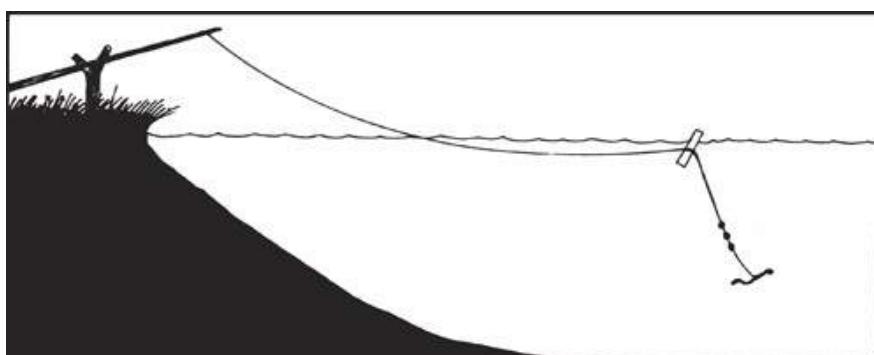


## Using floats and weights

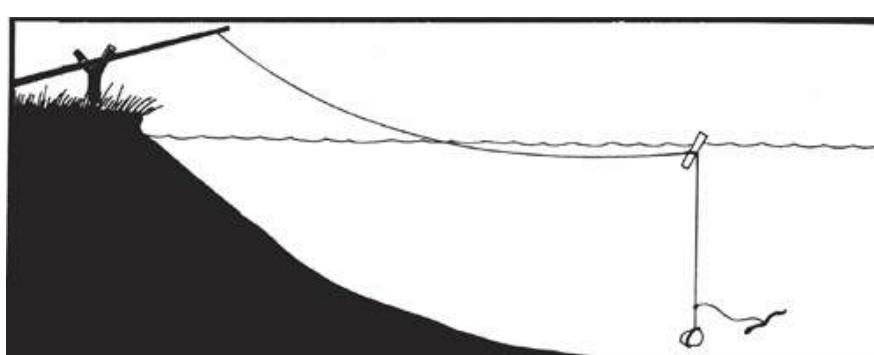
Along the line attach a small floating object, easily visible from the bank, and you will be able to see when you have a bite. Its position will help control where the line descends.

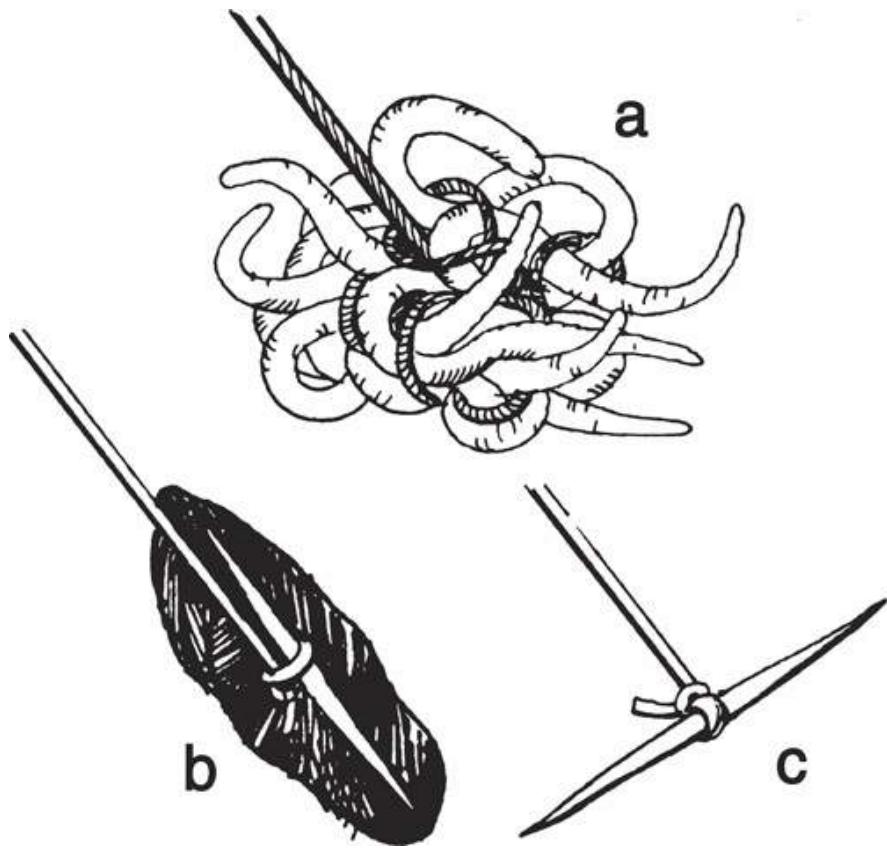


Small weights between the float and the hook will stop the line from trailing along the water or at too near the surface in a current, still leaving the hook itself in movement. You have small split lead shot in your survival kit. Slip the groove along the line and squeeze in to fit closely.



A deeper hook position can be ensured by extending the line to a weight below the hook.





### **ANGLING WITHOUT HOOKS**

*You do not even have to use a hook to fish with a line. To catch eels and catfish tie a blob of worms on a line (a). These fish swallow without biting so swallow the bait with line attached. Pull them out as soon as the bait is taken.*

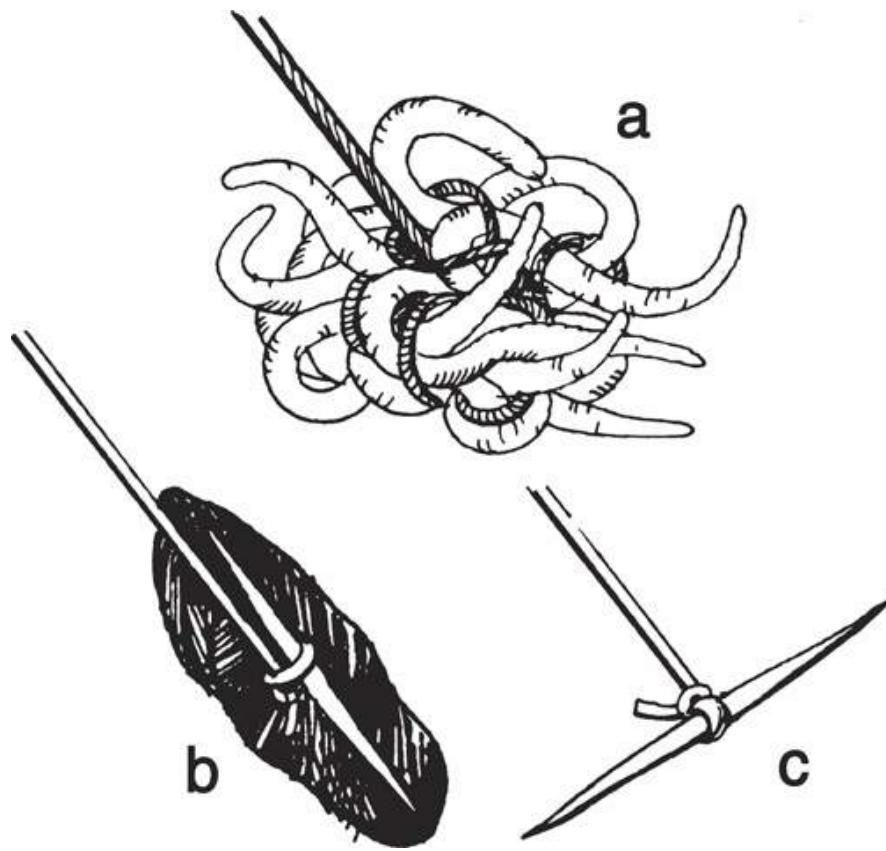
Instead of a hook you could use a small sharp piece of wood tied on the end of the line and held flat along it by the bait (b). When the bait is swallowed the wood will open out and lodge across the gullet of the fish (c).

### **Bait**

Bait native to the fishes' own water is most likely to be taken: berries that overhang it, insects that breed in and near it. Scavenger fish will take pieces of meat, raw fish, ants and other insects. Once you have a catch examine the stomach contents of the fish and eliminate the guesswork as to diet. If one bait is unsuccessful, change to another.

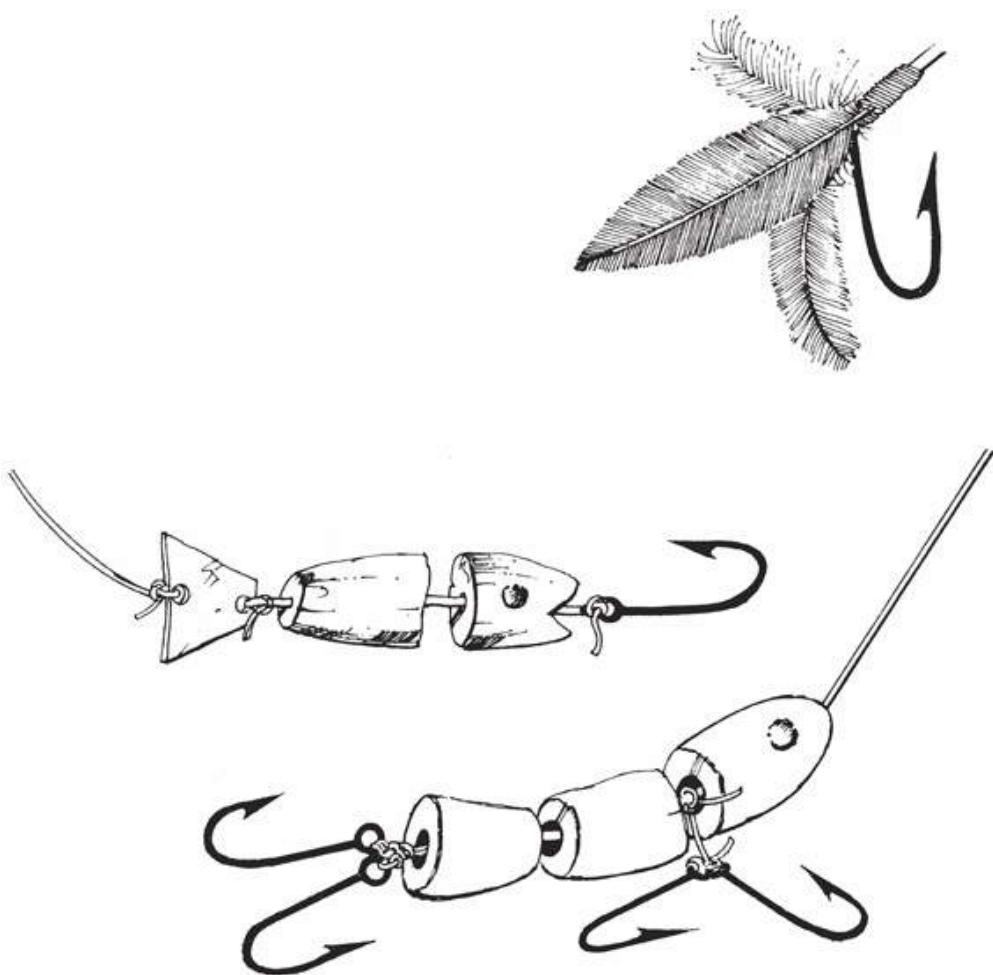
### **Ground bait**

Bait scattered in the area you want to fish, will attract fish to it. A termites' or ants' nest suspended over a river is one excellent method. As the insects fall into the river the fish will take them. Bait your hook with them as well and success is sure. Any suitable bait, scattered on the water, can be used to draw fish but it is always best to put the same bait on your hook.



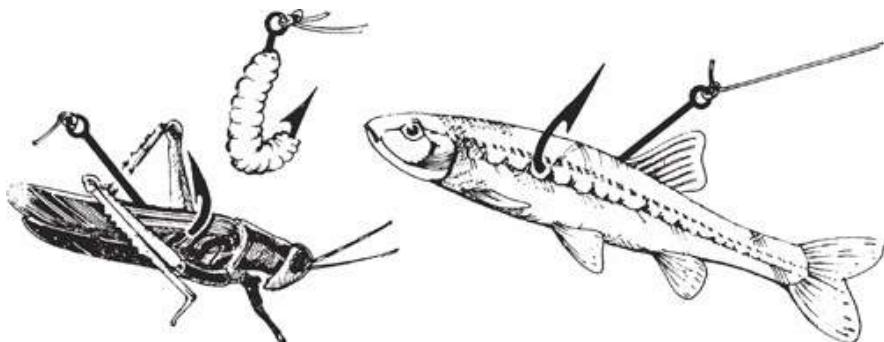
### SPINNING

Curious fish will attack a shiny object drawn through the water: try coins, buttons, pieces of tin can, buckles — anything that glitters. Make a propeller shape to thread onto a piece of wire and it will spin with the current. Attach a hook to the end of the spindle.



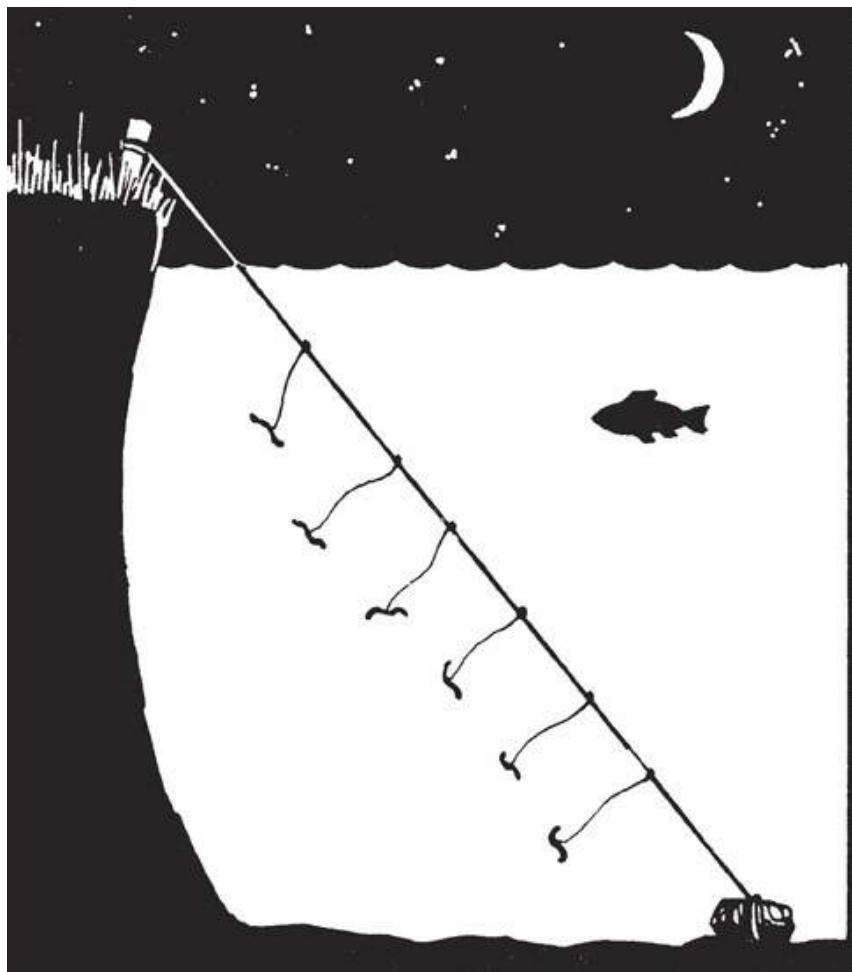
### ARTIFICIAL BAIT

*Can be made from brightly coloured cloth, feathers and shiny metal. Try to make them look like real bait. A few feathers tied to a hook with thread can simulate a fly, or carve a small fish out of wood and decorate it with colour or glitter (if you make it jointed it will move more naturally). Try to make lures move in the water like live bait. Hazel wood has a soft pith and can easily be threaded through so that you can link segments which will wiggle in the water.*



#### LIVE BAIT

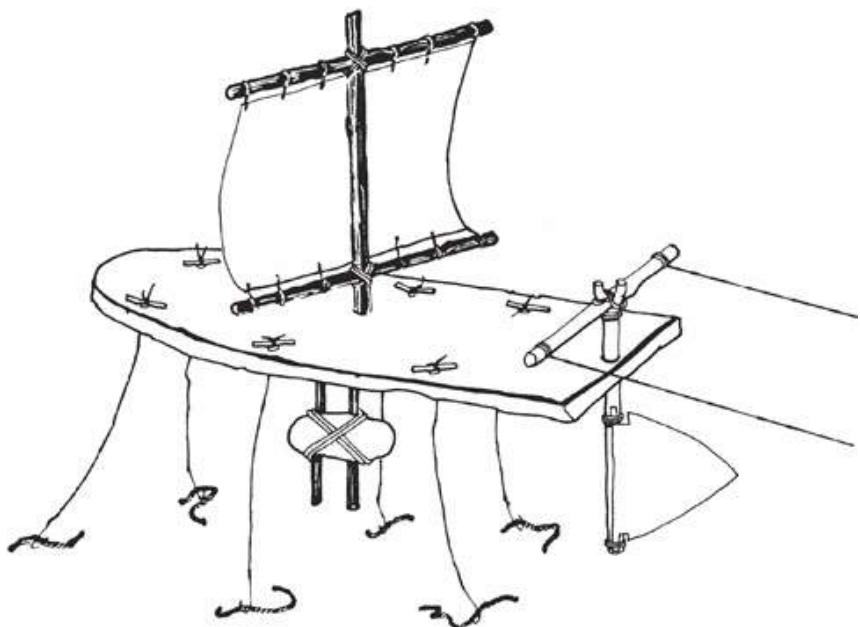
*Worms, maggots, insects and small fish can be used as live bait. Cover the hook completely with the bait. You can place the hook through the meaty part of small fish without killing them, or through the body of a grasshopper. Their distressed movement in the water will attract the fish. Tiddlers are easy to catch so you can 'use a sprat to catch a mackerel'.*



#### NIGHT LINES

*Weight one end of a length of line and attach hooks at intervals along it. Bait them with worms. Lowered into the water this gives you the chance of catching surface-, mid- and bottom-feeders. Anchor the free end securely on the bank.*

You can put this out at night and leave it until the morning — use it in daytime too — but change the worms at intervals, even if you haven't got a catch, because fresh wriggling worms will attract more attention.

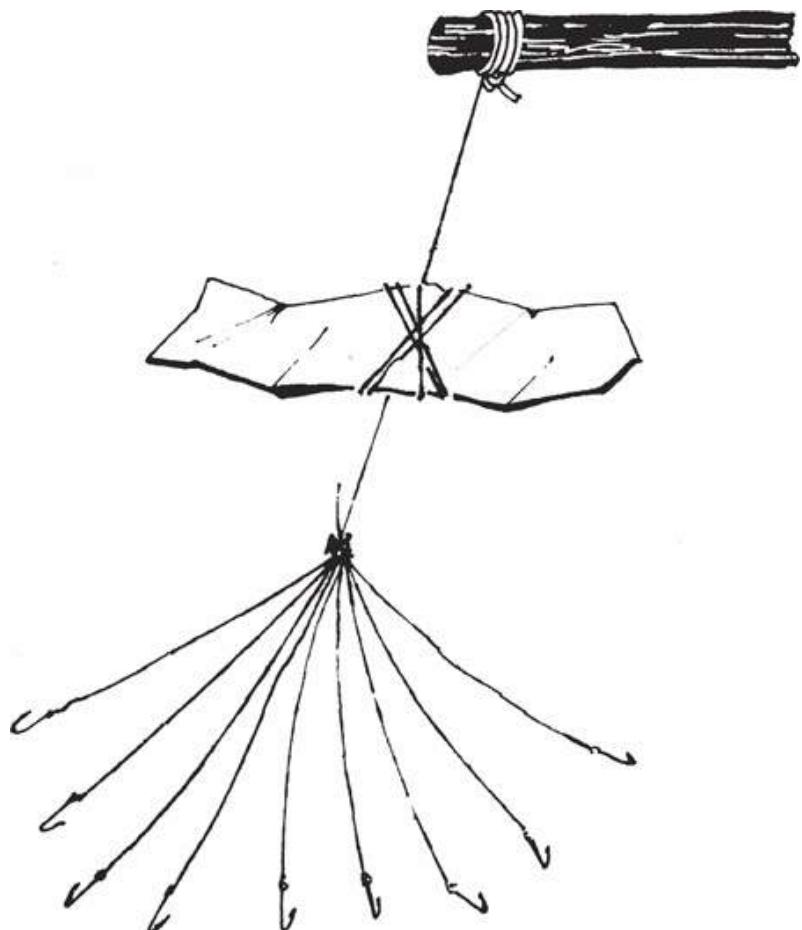


### OTTER BOARD

*To fish far from the bank, further than you can cast a line — in a lake, for instance, where fish are feeding in the centre — make a board with a moveable, pivoted rudder. Set a bar at the front end of the rudder to which two control lines can be attached. Beneath it suspend baited hooks. Float the board out into the lake.*

If winds are favourable you could mount a sail, but then a stabilizing keel will also be needed to stop it blowing over. Gouge holes to fix dowel supports (in water the dowels will expand to make a tight fit) and tie on a flat stone — a big keel might conflict with the rudder.

Undue movement of the board will indicate a bite.



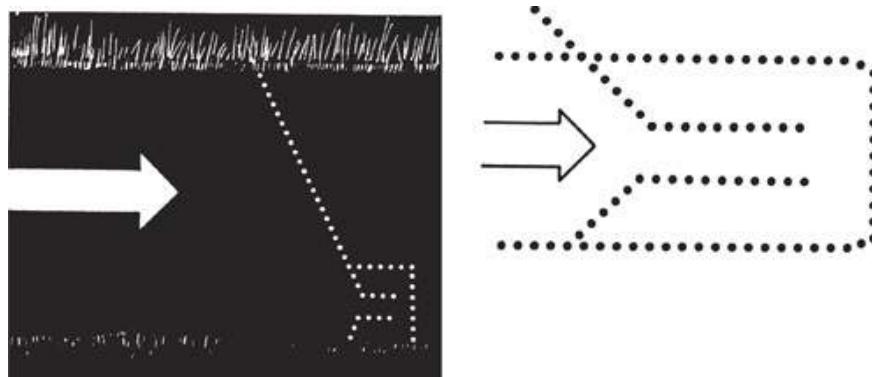
### JIGGING OR SNAGGING

*This is the art of hooking a fish anywhere on its body. It is a good method to use when you can see fish but they*

*are not taking bait. Tie a number of hooks on to a pole and lower it into the water. Suspend a bright object about 20cm (8in) above the pole, and when fish go to inspect the glitter pull the hooks up sharply so that they catch on the fish.*

## FISH TRAPS

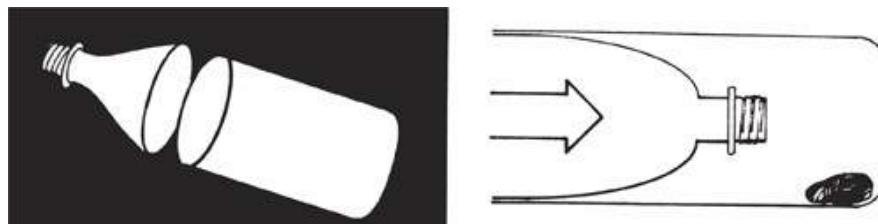
You can make a wide variety of traps, from ones across an entire stream, which you can drive fish into, to bottle traps to capture tiddlers in. Arrows indicate current.



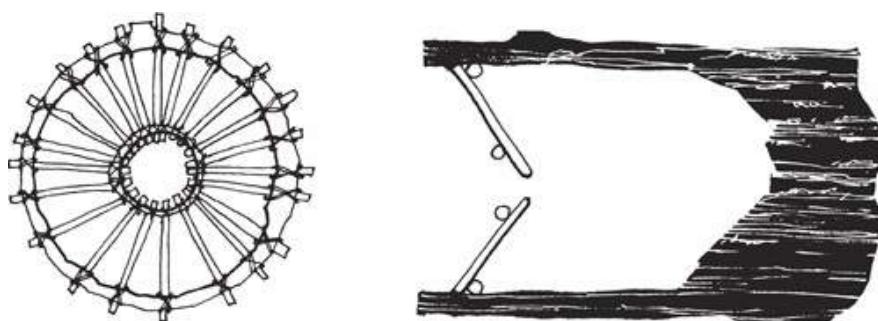
*In shallow streams build a channel of sticks or rocks that fish can swim into but not turn around in.*

### Bottle trap

If you have a plastic bottle you can make an efficient trap for small fish by cutting it off just below the neck and then inverting the neck inside the bottle. Fish swim in but cannot find their way out again. Bait the trap to entice them in.

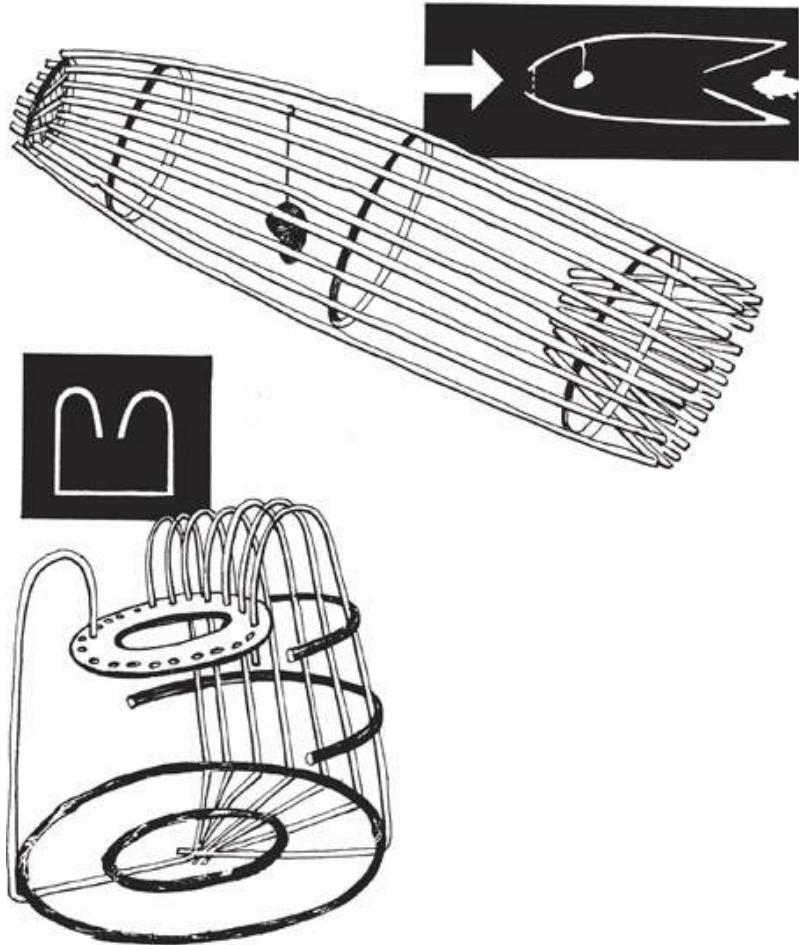


*You can make a similar trap for larger fish using a hollow log. Make a lattice cone of twigs for the entrance and block the other end of the log.*



### Wickerwork traps

Use young hazel, or other pliant twigs—bamboo bends better if you warm it—to make a trap into which fish can swim but from which they can find no way out. A wickerwork trap allows the current to flow through it, and since it is made of natural materials may seem like a tangle of reeds or stream-bottom debris.



*The torpedo shape is made from wicker woven and tied in position. Place the opening downstream, against the current. The entrance starts quite wide, making it easier to enter, but inside the angle of the struts makes escape difficult.*

*The lobster-pot trap utilizes holes in a circle of board to make it easier to shape but could be made without the board. This trap sits on the bottom. Bait will attract eels, crayfish and similar creatures.*

### Fish snares

Large fish such as pike, which lay alongside weeds, can be caught in a noose. Fix a noose line to the end of a pole, or pass it down the inside of a length of bamboo. Pass it over the fish from the tail end and pull it up sharply so that the noose traps the fish.

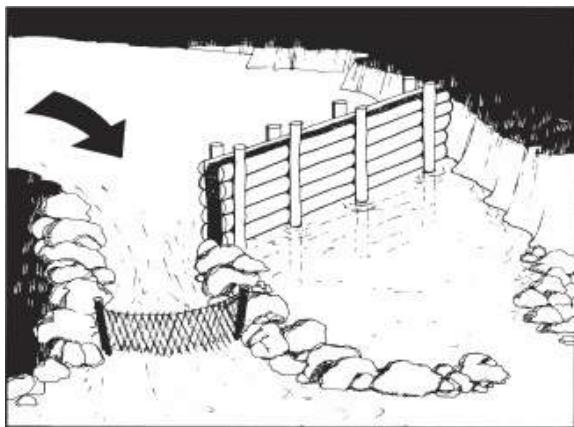


### Eel bag

Tie fresh surplus offal or a dead animal inside a sack or cloth bag (plastic will not do) together with a quantity of straw-like vegetation or bracken. Tie a line and a weight to the end of the bag and allow it to sink. Leave it overnight and pull it out in the morning. If there are eels in the water they will chew their way into the bag to get at the offal and will still be wriggling in the straw when you get the bag landed.

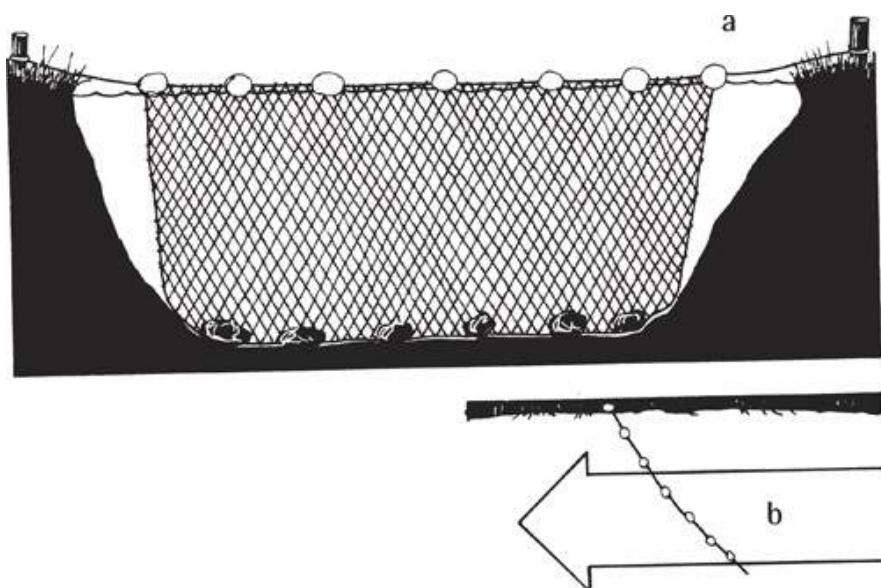
### Damming

Build a dam across a stream, diverting the flow to one side, and with rocks create a small shallow pool downstream where fish swimming upstream will be trapped. Fix a net below the race at the side of the dam to catch any fish that are carried over it from upstream.



## Gill net

Make a net with a mesh size of about 4cm (1½in) between knots (see [Netting in Camp Craft](#)), set floats at the top and weight the bottom, then stretch it across a river. Fish swimming into it get caught by the gills. It is lethal and will soon empty a stretch of water so should not be used for long in an area where you intend to stay (or in a non-survival situation). If the ends of the net are tied to the banks at both top and bottom, weights and floats will not be needed.



*A gill net can be anchored on each bank, (supported by weights and floats (a), or tied to fixed posts. If it is angled across the line of the current (b) there is less likelihood of driftwood building up against it.*

## OTHER TECHNIQUES

If all else fails try the following methods.

### Tickling

This is an old poacher's technique which takes patience but is effective where fish shelter below the undercut banks of fairly shallow streams. Lie along the bank and lower your hands gently into the water so that they can adjust to the water temperature. Keeping your hands as close to the bottom as possible, reach under the bank, moving the fingers slightly, until you touch a fish. Work the hand gently along its belly (fish usually swim against the current when feeding) until you reach the gills. Then grasp the fish firmly and pull it out.

### Attracting and driving fish

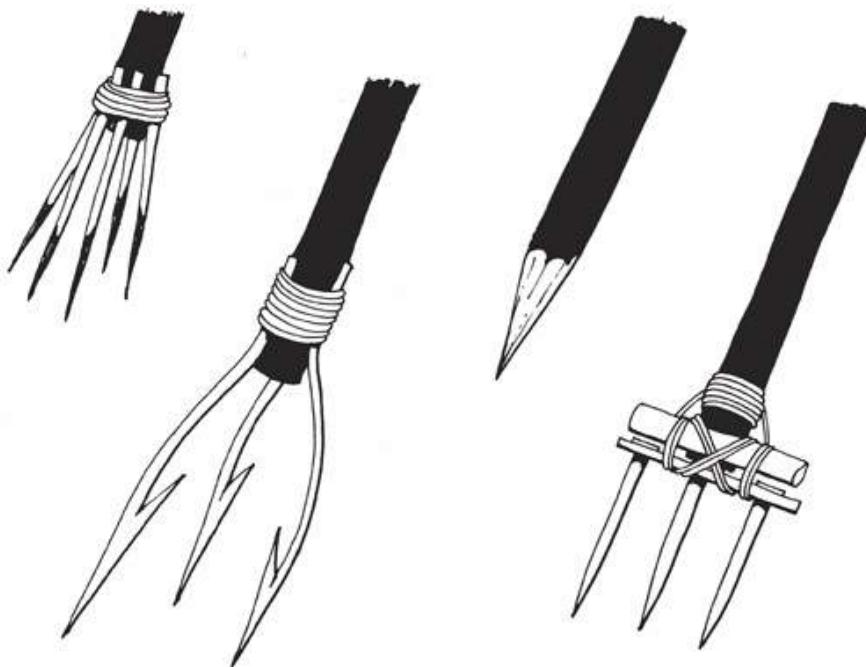
At night a torch or firebrand held above the water will attract fish. Nets can then be drawn around the area to trap the fish which can be speared or clubbed. A mirror or other shiny material placed on the riverbed will reflect either sun or moonlight and attract fish.

### Spearing and shooting fish

Sharpen a long stick to make a spear, adding barbs to make it more effective. If you have multiple points, like Neptune's trident, you give yourself a wider margin of error since it covers a larger area. Try to get above the fish and strike down swiftly.

Make sure that you are not casting a shadow over the fish you are trying to catch. Aim slightly below the fish to allow for the refraction of its image at the surface.

If you are a good shot use a bow and arrow to shoot fish (the wooden shaft will float and help to bring your prey to the surface, though most dead fish will float, anyway).



## WARNING

If you have a firearm and plenty of ammunition it is worth trying to shoot fish with a gun but NEVER fire with the barrel actually in the water—or it will explode.

The water seals the end of the barrel and instead of the bullet rushing outwards the force of the detonation blows back at you. It is not just dangerous—it is potentially lethal. Make very sure that the barrel is clear of the water.

### Muddying

Receding floodwater leaves isolated pools which are often abundant in fish. Stir up the mud at the bottom of these pools with a stick, or by stamping in them. If there are any fish they will try to reach clearer water. Scoop them out.

### Explosives

Explosives can be used in the water. They will kill the nearest fish, but by liberating the oxygen in the water will also cause those further away to surface.

### FISH NARCOTICS

In many parts of the world fishermen use local plants to poison or stupefy fish to make them come to the surface, where they are easy to collect. This works best in a deep pool where one end can be dammed to contain the fish, but the method can be effective in any slack water.

Some plants daze or narcotize or intoxicate the fish but most have the effect of taking oxygen from the water so that the fish come to the surface in search of aerated water. Various parts of plants are used but in many cases they are simply crushed and thrown into the water. Although the effects are catastrophic for the fish they

are not long lasting—the water soon reoxygenates itself. Most of these narcotics take effect more quickly in warmer waters and they are most widely used in tropical countries.

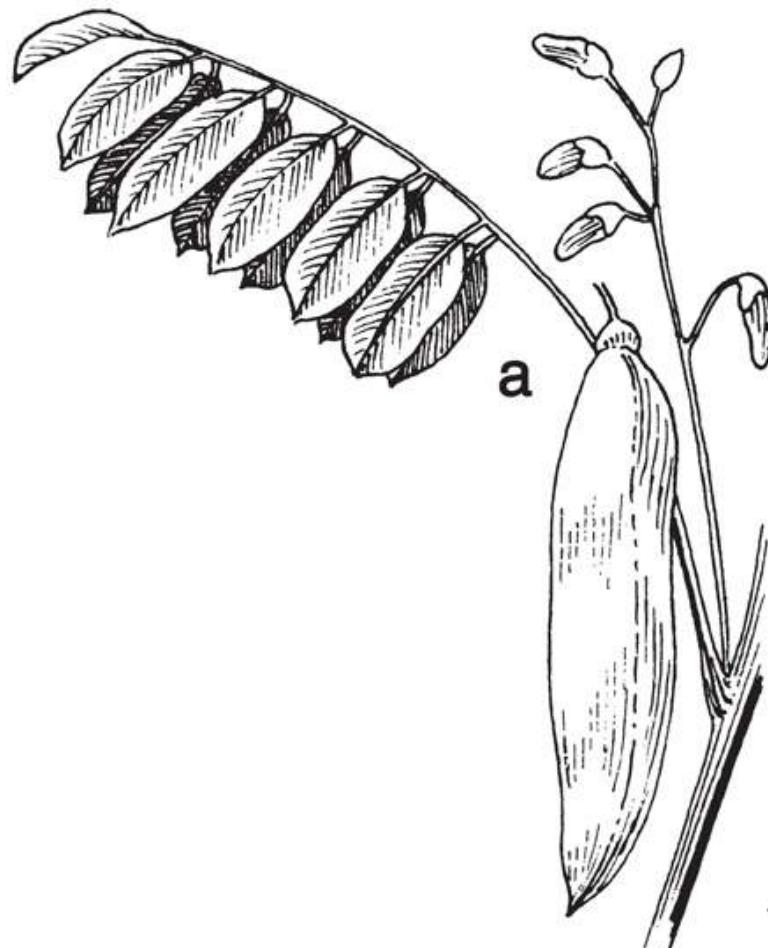
If these methods are used in closed pools you will have cleared out the fish supply and removed a future source of food. When a river or coastal pool is reopened to the main water, however, new fish will move in and restock it.

If seashells, snailshells or coral are burned over a very hot fire they will produce lime which can be thrown into still water to poison fish which will still be safe for human consumption.

## WARNING

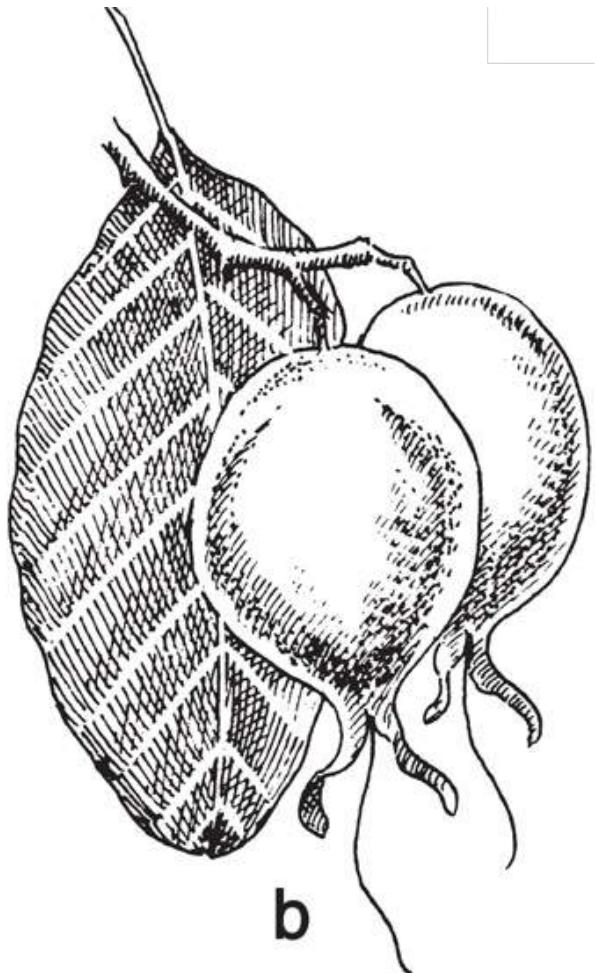
Dead fish floating on the surface—unless you have caused them to be there—may look like an easy meal but they may be diseased and if they have been there some time will not be fit to eat.

When released in water these poisons are toxic only to cold-blooded animals but this does not mean that they are edible. They are not. Parts of some of these plants are VERY DANGEROUS, if eaten raw. Use them on fish—not yourself—then eat the fish. Many plants are used. The following are effective and common in their areas.



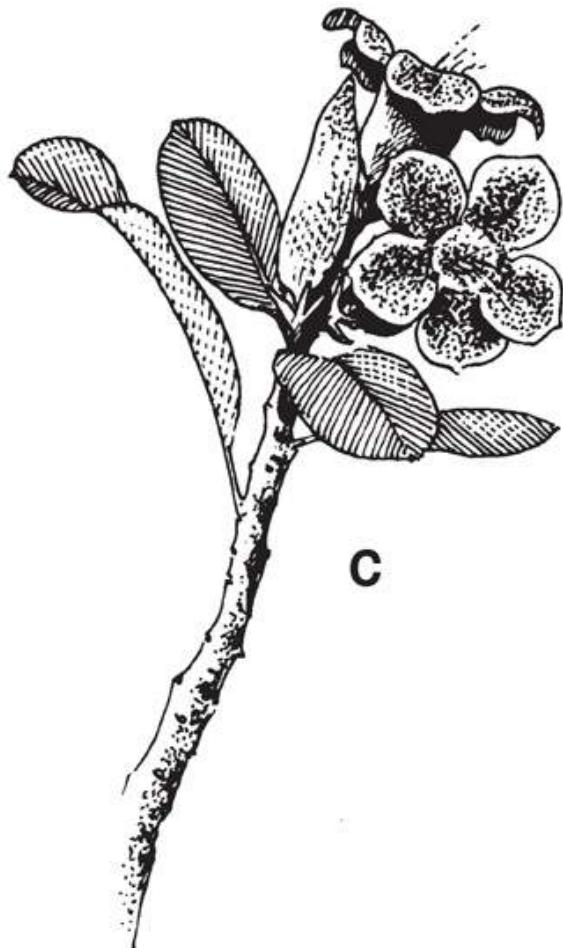
### DERRIS PLANTS

*Derris (a)* are found from Southeast Asia to Australia. They are woody, climbing, vine-like plants, usually with small oval leaflets in pairs opposite each other, purple flowers and seedpods. Powder the roots and throw them into the water. Stupified fish will rise to the surface not long afterwards.



### BARRINGTONIAS

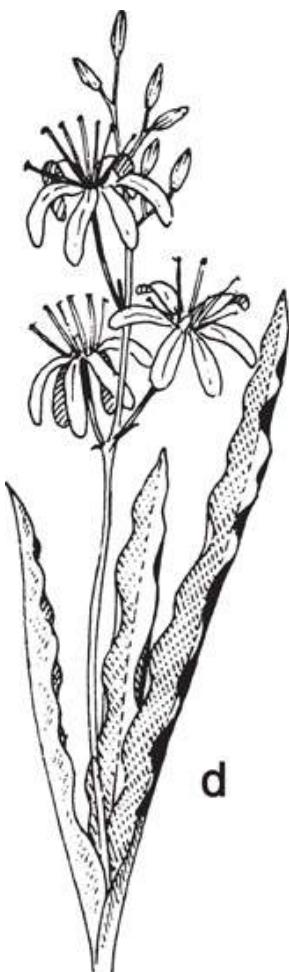
*Barringtonia* (b) are trees, found in the same area as *Derris*, across to Polynesia, and often near the coast. Crush the seeds inside their urn-shaped pods and throw them into the water.



C

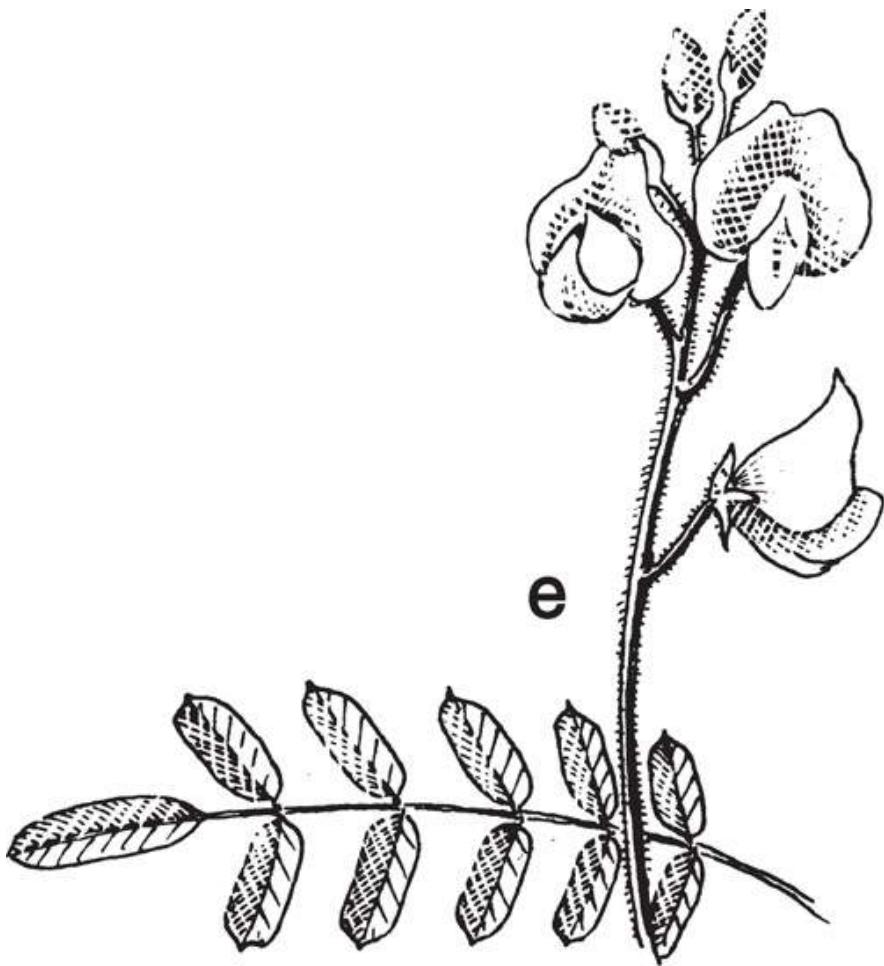
### DESERT ROSES

Adenium (c), found in tropical and southern Africa and in parts of Arabia, are shrubs, sometimes small trees, with thick fleshy leaves. One of the most effective, A. obesum (illustrated) from East Africa, has spirals of bluntly oval leaves and clusters of tubular pinkish flowers. Use crushed stems and roots, which contain a highly toxic sap.



### **SOAP PLANT**

Amole *Chlorogalum pomeridianum* (*d*) grows in dry open or scrubby country in western North America. It has narrow, grass-like leaves and white star-like flowers. Crush the bulbous root and throw into pools.



### **GOAT'S RUE**

Tephrosia virginiana (*e*) grows on open ground in North America. Its surface is slightly hairy, it has many narrow leaflets and long flat seedpods. Use the crushed stems or the very poisonous roots.

### **ARCTIC FISHING**

On frozen Arctic seas fish are likely to be the most accessible food. Even in summer it is safer to fish through the ice than to fish from the edge of a floe which may break up beneath you. The techniques involved are equally effective on any frozen lake or river where the ice is thick enough to bear your weight with ease but not so solid that it cannot be broken through.

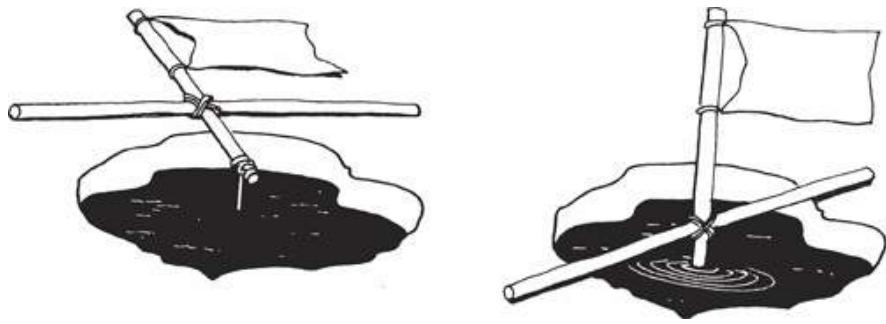
First you need to gain access to the water, which means smashing a hole in the ice. If you have an ice saw, use that to cut neat holes which will still leave you with firm edges. If you have to smash the ice there is a risk that it may fracture back into the area where you are standing. Approach the operation carefully.

### **Hook and line**

Bait the hook in the usual way. If the line is being carried back up against the underside of the ice you will have to weight it below the hook.

There is no point in trying out your angling skills at only one hole—far better to set up multiple angling points. In order to cover them effectively, however, you will need an easy way of knowing when you have a bite. Make a pennant from a piece of cloth, paper or card—preferably of a bright colour so that you will see it easily against the snow and ice—and attach it to a light stick. Lash this firmly at right angles to another stick which must extend beyond the maximum diameter of your hole by at least 30 per cent. Now attach the line to the lower end of the flagpole and rest the flag on the side of the hole with the line at its centre.

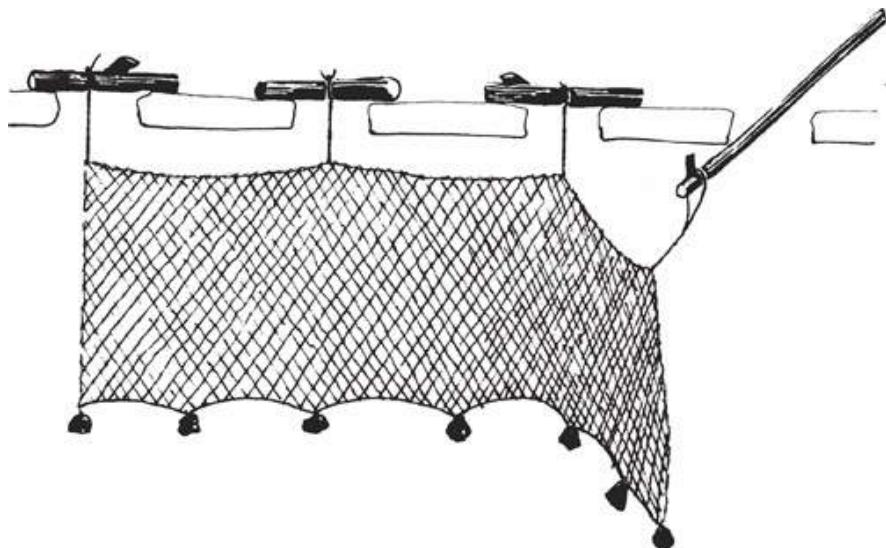
When a fish takes your bait the cross piece will be pulled over the hole and the flagpole jerked upright. Keep your eye on the markers so you can pull your catch up quickly. The wriggling fish is an easy meal for a passing seal.



### **Ice netting**

Although fish do not hibernate their metabolism slows down to cope with the reduced winter temperatures and they consequently eat much less, making them less likely to take bait. Netting, always likely to be more certain of producing results, has a further edge on line fishing.

Net through the ice. A net lowered from the edge of a floe would probably end up frozen to the floe and handling it would be a risky operation. Instead make several holes in the ice about 40cm (16 in) wide and about twice that distance apart. Attach retaining loops to the top edge of your net at 80cm (32in) intervals, to match the holes, and weight the bottom. Put the retaining loop at one end around a stick or rod of some kind, wider than your holes, and lower one end of the net into the hole at one end of your row.



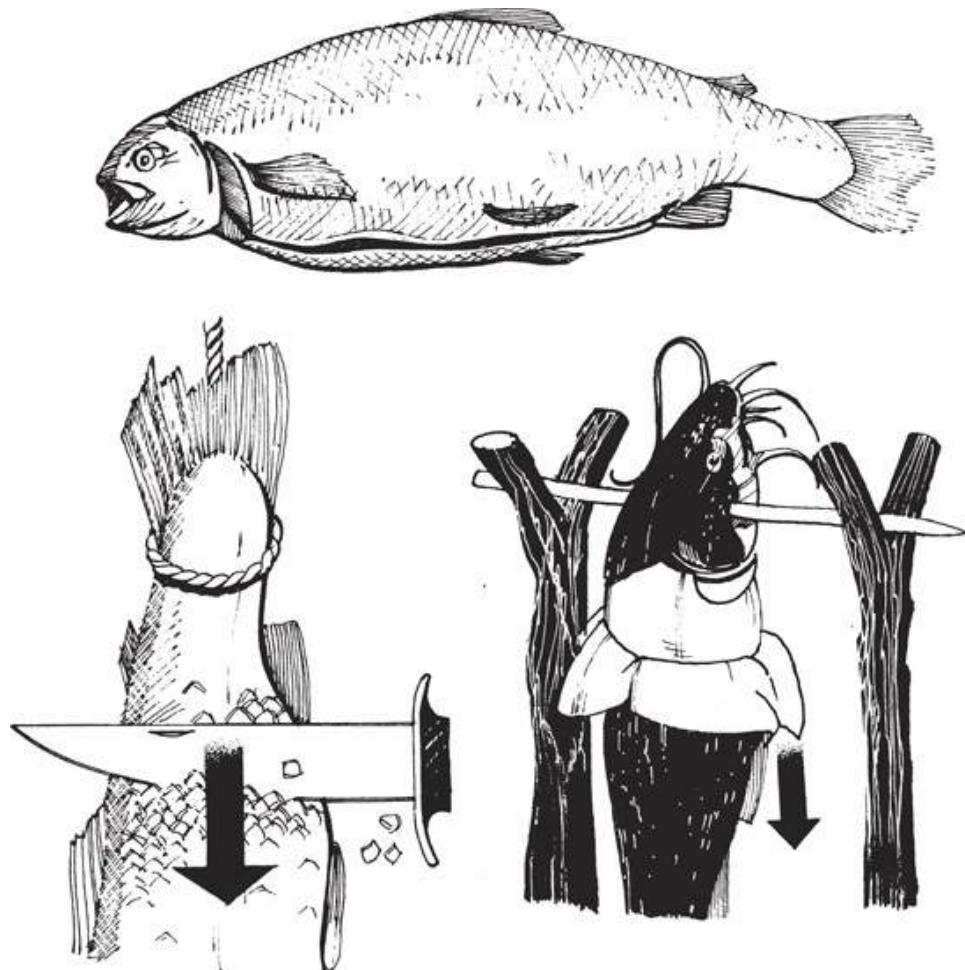
With a hooked pole (which you can improvise) you now have to fish for the net and haul it through to the next hole where you secure the next retaining loop with another retaining stick—and so on until the whole net is suspended.

If the ice is thin enough, feed all the retaining loops into the hooked pole and lower the entire net through the first hole, anchoring the first loop with a retaining stick. Then, carefully holding the loops, reach the hooked pole through the next hole and slip the remaining loops onto it. Pull the net along and anchor the next retaining loop. Continue until the net is fully extended.

To check your net pull it up with the hooked pole. If you leave your net for too long, in polar regions, you may find that your catch has been for the benefit of a seal who has stolen most of it.

### **PREPARING FISH**

All freshwater fish are edible. Those under 5cm (2in) long need no preparation and can be eaten whole. Larger fish must be gutted. Catfish and eels are smooth skinned but others may be descaled. Catfish have a cartilage skeleton. Most other fish have a mass of bones.



**Bleeding** As soon as a fish is caught cut its throat and allow it to bleed. Cut out the gills.

**Gutting** Make an incision from the anal orifice to where the throat was cut. Remove all offal — you can use it for hook bait or in an eel bag. Keep the roe, which runs down the side of the fish. It is hard in females, soft in males; it is very nutritious. This preparation helps fish keep longer.

**Scaling** is not necessary, fish can be cooked with scales on and it will retain its moisture. If there is time, scrape them off. Draw knife from tail to head.

**Skinning** Fish skin has good food value and should be left on and eaten unless food is plentiful. To skin eels and catfish pass a stake through the fish, lodge it across uprights and, having cut the skin away just below it, draw it down towards the tail.

## 5 CAMP CRAFT

**S**electing where to camp and knowing how to make a good shelter are essential skills. A wide range of shelter construction methods, using available materials, are described, from the simplest windbreak to dwellings suitable for long-term occupation.

You will need to make fire and to chose the right type of fire construction. Fires for both general warmth and for cooking purposes are detailed. Guidance on food preparation, cooking and preservation will ensure that food is safe and not wasted. Camp organization and hygiene are as important for health and morale for the single survivor as for a large group.

Methods of making tools, camp equipment, clothes, ropes and nets will all improve survival conditions and skills in knot-making will have many uses.

## SHELTER AND MAKING CAMP

Types of shelter

Tropical shelter

Arctic shelter

Long-term shelter

## FIRE

Fuel

Fire-lighting

Types of fire

## COOKING

Useful utensils

Preserving food

Cooking tips

## ORGANIZING THE CAMP

Camp hygiene

## TOOLS

Axes

## FURNISHING THE CAMP

Beds

## ANIMAL PRODUCTS

Skin and furs

Clothing

## ROPES AND LINES

Rope making

## KNOTS

Simple knots

Joining ropes

Loop-making

Hitches

Shortening rope

Securing loads

Lashings

Net making

Fishing knots

# **SHELTER AND MAKING CAMP**

**S**helter is necessary to give shade, to repel wind and rain and to keep in warmth. Sleep and adequate rest are essential and the time and effort you put into making your shelter comfortable will make them easier to get. If you are the victim of a plane crash or a vehicle that has let you down, it may provide a shelter or materials from which one can be built—but if there is fire or the threat of fuel tanks exploding, wait until it has burned out before attempting salvage.

If you are the unequipped victim of an accident, are trapped by unexpected mist or caught by nightfall in terrain where it is not safe to proceed, or if exhaustion or injury prevents you going further, you may have to make do with any natural shelter that you can find for the night, or until you can more fully assess the situation. In this case, virtually any protection from wind, rain and cold will be welcome. If movement down a slope seems risky, traversing even a short way along the contour may bring you out of the wind. If no cave or crevice is available to give shelter, make use of any hollow in the ground. Add to its height, if you can, by piling up rocks—but make sure that any structure is stable and use a back-pack, if you have one, to increase the windshield before settling down on the leeward side.

If there is still daylight to see by, you have no injuries to handicap you and are not isolated by un-negotiable cliffs or other barriers, it will be worth seeking possible better places in the vicinity. For a long-term camp you should find a secure site with convenient access to your major needs.

## **Where to camp**

If you are on high exposed ground go lower down to find a sheltered spot, but on low, wet ground you will need to climb higher to find somewhere securely dry. Look for somewhere sheltered from the wind, on rising ground that has no risk of flooding and is safe from rock falls or avalanches.

## **BAD PLACES TO CAMP**

- 1** Hilltops exposed to wind (move down and look for shelter on the lee side).
- 2** Valley bottoms and deep hollows—could be damp and, especially when the sky is clear, more liable to frost at night.
- 3** Hillside terraces where the ground holds moisture.
- 4** Spurs which are on a game trail.

Hot air rises, cold air sinks, so valley bottoms will often contain pockets of colder air and, in cold weather, be susceptible to frost and damp mist. In areas that get plenty of rainfall, terraces across a slope will often be damper than the steeper ground above and below them, for water collects there before flowing further downward.

Ideally you should be near water, with a plentiful supply of wood near at hand. Pitching camp too close to water, however, may lead you to be troubled by insects, and the sound of running water can hide other noises which might indicate danger, or the sound of search or rescue parties.

On river banks look for the high water mark: in mountain regions streams can become torrents in minutes, rising as much as 5m (17ft) in an hour! Even on plains keep out of old watercourses, no matter how dry they are. Heavy rainfall in nearby hills can easily send water rushing down them in flash floods, with practically no warning. Choose ground that is reasonably flat and free of rocks and make sure that you have space to lay out signals and that you can be easily spotted by rescue parties.

Check above your head for bees' or hornets' nests and for dead wood in trees that could come crashing down in the next storm or high wind. Keep away from solitary trees, which attract lightning, and in forest areas keep to the edges, where you can see what is going on around you. Don't camp across a game trail—you don't want marauding animals as unwelcome guests or to find your bivouac flattened by a herd of animals on their way to a waterhole—but stay near to any obvious human tracks.

## **TYPES OF SHELTER**

The type of shelter you build will depend upon local conditions and the materials available—and upon how long you expect to need it. For immediate protection from the elements, rig up a makeshift shelter while you construct something better and more permanent. If you decide to stay put and wait for rescue, a more long-term shelter can be built and improved on as time and energy permit.

For those walking to safety, on the other hand, temporary shelters can be built at each stopping point. They can even be carried with you if they are sufficiently light and there is a significant risk that suitable materials may not be available at the next campsite.

A more permanent shelter will certainly be worthwhile for the sick or injured, who must rest up in order to regain their strength, or where it is necessary to wait for the weather to clear before attempting a journey. Use the time to stockpile equipment and provisions.

## Hasty shelters

If no materials are available for constructing a shelter make use of any cover and protection that is available: cliff overhangs, gradients and so forth, which will help shield you from wind or rain. Incorporate natural windbreaks in quickly constructed shelters. In completely open plains, sit with your back to the wind and pile any equipment behind you as a windbreak.

## Bough shelters

Make use of branches that sweep down to the ground or boughs that have partly broken from the tree to give basic protection from the wind—but make sure that they are not so broken that they could come down on your head! Weave in other twigs to make the cover more dense. Conifers are more suited to this technique than broad-leaved trees, as they require less weaving-in to keep out rain.

Make a similar shelter by lashing a broken-off bough to the base of another branch where it forks from the trunk (a).



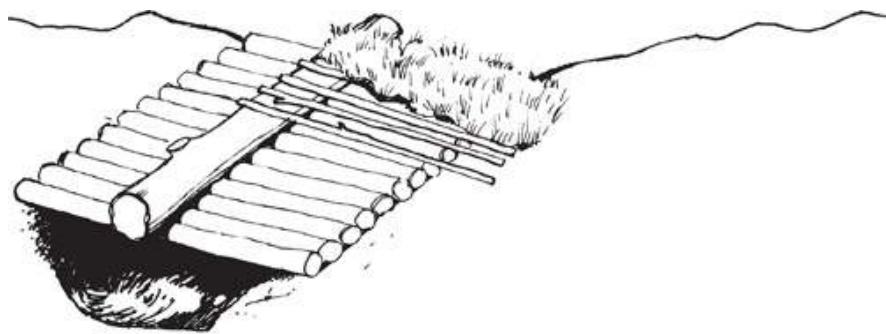
## Root shelter

The spreading roots and trapped earth at the base of a fallen tree make a good wind and storm barrier, if they are at the right angle to the wind. Filling in the sides between the extended roots will usually make the shelter much more effective, and provide a good support for building a more elaborate shelter from other materials.

## Use a natural hollow

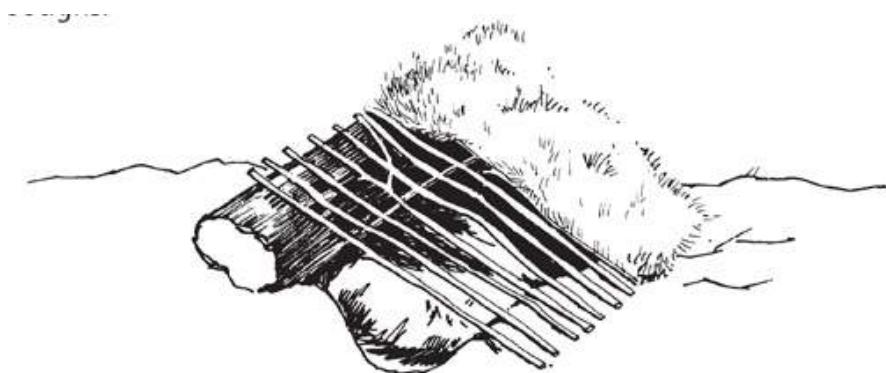
Even a shallow depression in the ground will provide some protection from wind and can reduce the effort in constructing a shelter. However, take measures to deflect the downhill flow of water around it, especially if it is a hollow on a slope, or you could find yourself lying in a pool.

Make a roof to keep the rain off and the warmth in. A few strong branches placed across the hollow can support a light log laid over them, against which shorter boughs and sticks can be stacked to give pitch to the roof and so allow water to run off. Consolidate with turf or with twigs and leaves.



### Fallen trunks

A log or fallen tree trunk makes a useful windbreak on its own, if it is at the right angle to the wind. With a small trunk, scoop out a hollow in the ground on the leeward side.



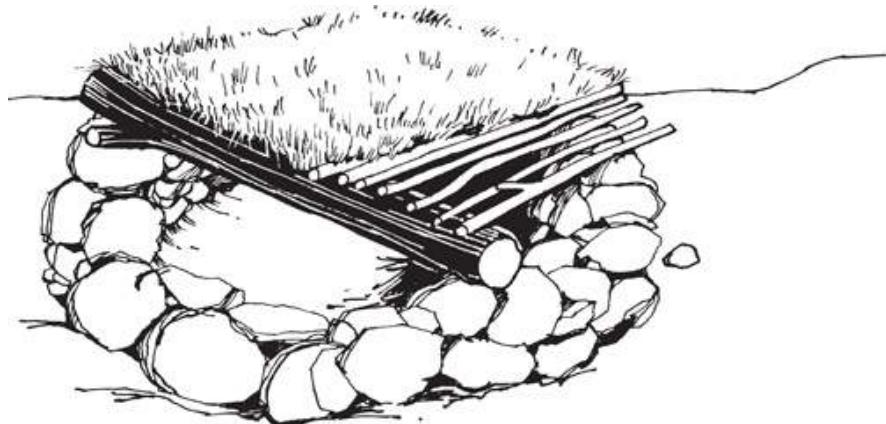
A log also makes an excellent support for a lean-to roof of boughs.

### Drainage and ventilation

A run-off channel gouged from the earth around any shelter in which you are below, or lying directly on, ground level will help to keep the shelter dry. Hasty shelters will usually have many spaces where air can enter. Do not try to seal them all—ventilation is essential.

### Stone barriers

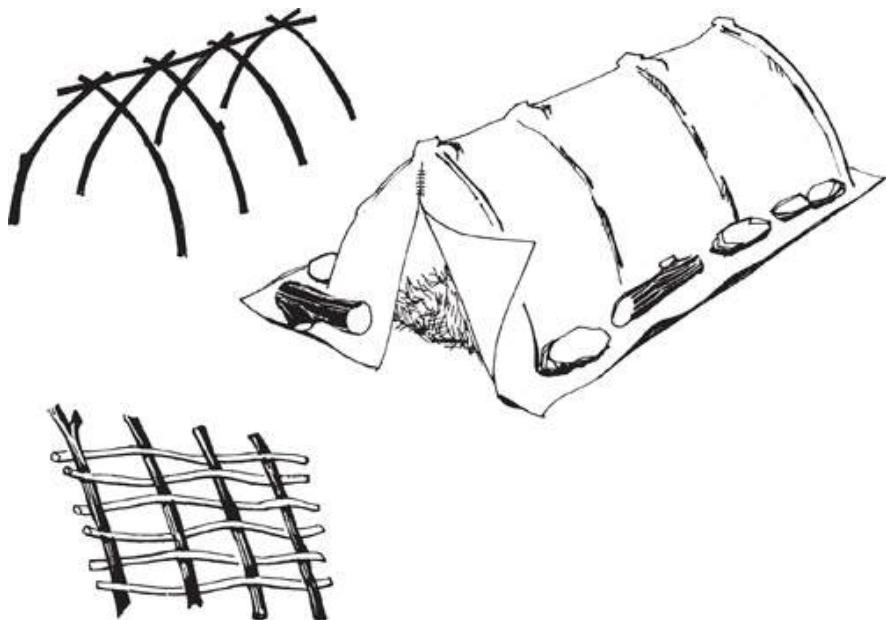
A shelter is more comfortable if you can sit rather than lie in it, so increase its height by building a low wall of stones around your chosen hollow or shallow excavation. Caulk between the stones (especially the lowest layer) with turf and foliage mixed with mud, and deflect the flow of rainwater around the shelter as shown below.



### Sapling shelter

If suitable sapling growth is available, select two lines of saplings, clear the ground between them of any obstructions and lash their tops together to form a support frame for sheeting. Weigh down the bottom edges of the sheeting with rocks or timber.

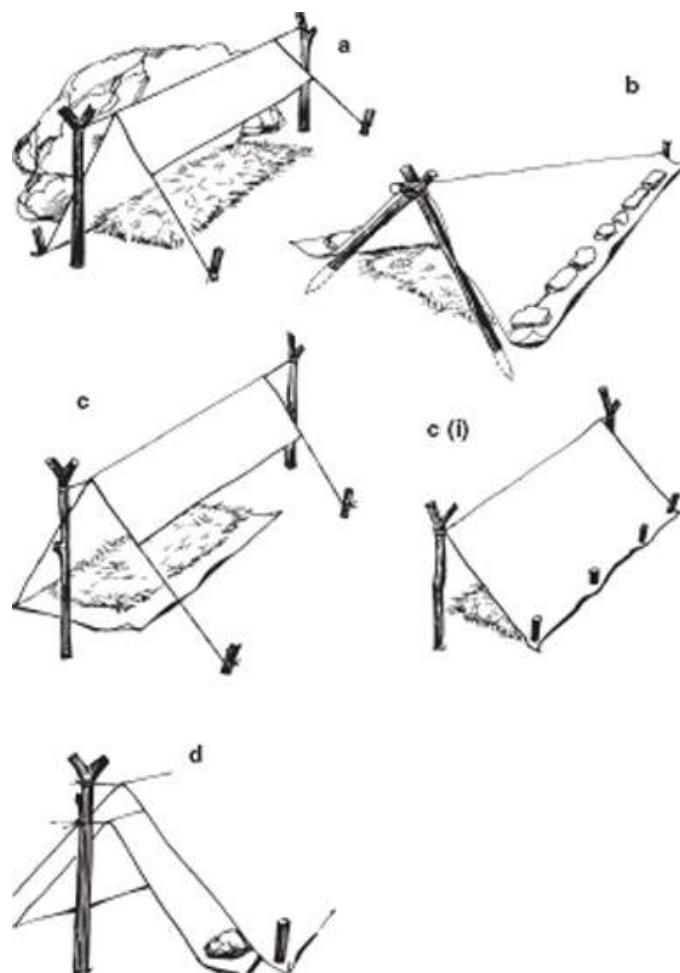
You can make a similar shelter from pliable branches driven into the ground.



*If you lack sheeting, choose or place saplings closer together, weave branches between them and consolidate with ferns and turf.*

### **Shelter sheet**

With a waterproof poncho, groundsheet or a piece of plastic sheeting or canvas, you can quickly and easily make a number of different shelters which will suffice until you can build something more efficient. Make use of natural shelter (a) or make a triangular shelter with the apex pointing into the wind (b). Stake or weigh down edges. If it is long enough, curl the sheeting below you—running downhill so that it keeps out surface water (c). If you don't have much material attach it so that you are shielded from the wind (c(i)). Use dry grass or bracken as bedding. Do not lie on cold or damp ground.



*A closely woven fabric, though not impermeable, will keep out most rain if you set it at a steep angle. Fit one*

*shelter a few inches within another (d). The rain that does come through will rarely work its way through both layers.*

*With any woven fabric, avoid touching the inner surface during rain or you will draw water through.*

## **Tepees**

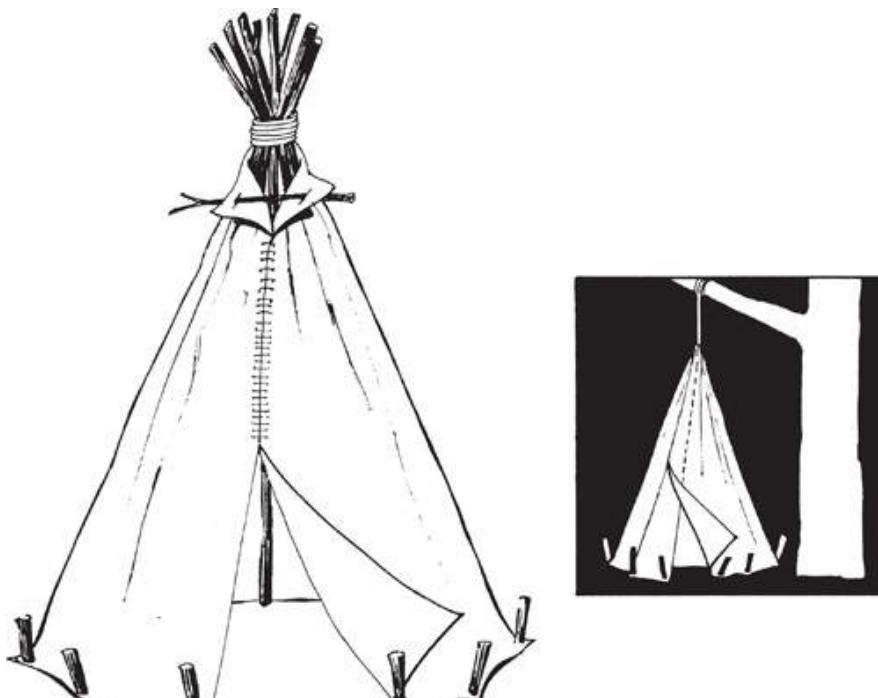
Best known from its North American forms, the tepee occurs in many cultures. The quickest type to erect has three or more angled support poles, tied where they cross to make a cone. They can be tied on the ground and lifted into place before covering with hides, birch bark panels or sheeting. Leave an opening at the top for ventilation.



*Wider angles will give greater area but shed rain less easily.*

## **Parachute tepee**

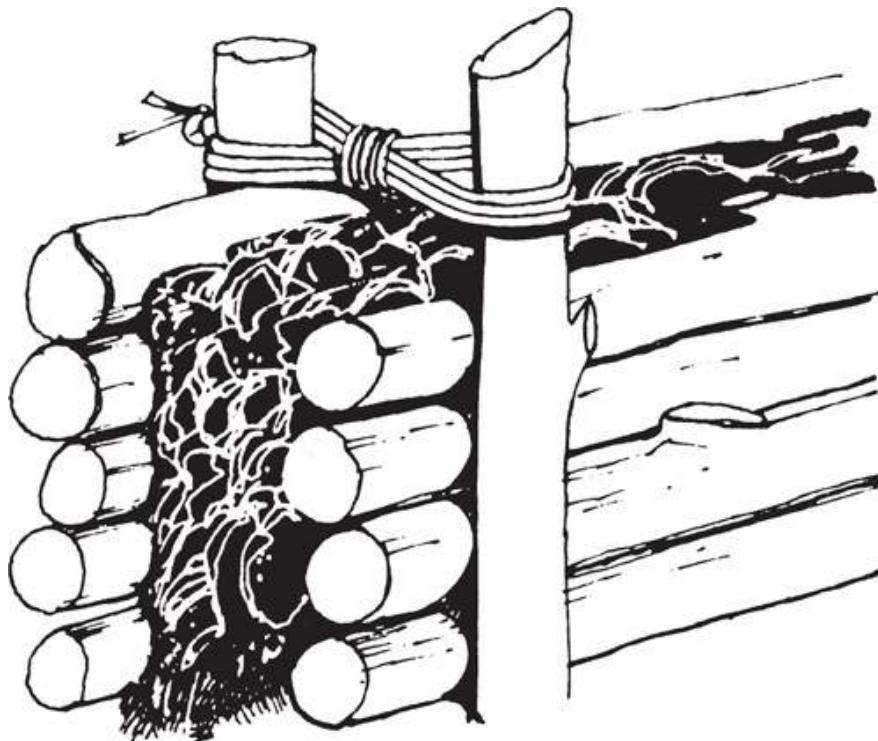
A parachute, suspended by its centre, makes an instant tepee. Peg out the bottom edge.



*Parachute material can be used to cover a tepee, but even simpler is to suspend one from a tree. Give the sides a steep angle and, even when the fabric is not impervious, water will run off. Fold a segment of the chute double for a door flap, slit along a seam and make a tie fastening to close it.*

## **Stick walls and screens**

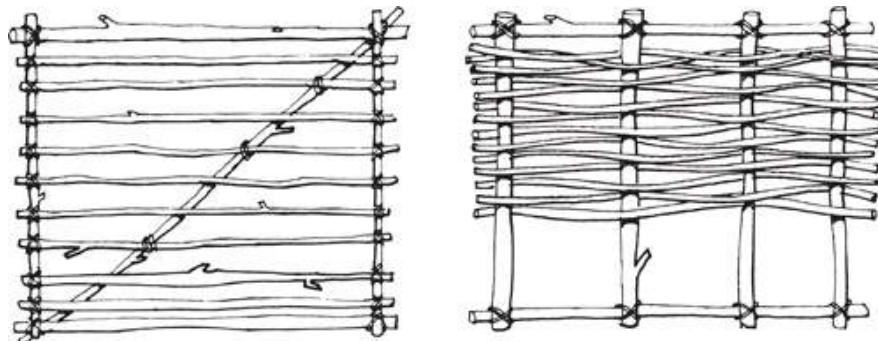
It is easy to build walls by piling sticks between uprights driven into the ground and (if possible) tied at the top. Caulk them well to keep out wind and rain. These are ideal for making one side of a shelter, for blocking a shelter's opening or for a heat reflector behind a fire. If large rocks are not available use this method to dam a stream.



*To make a very sturdy stick wall, increase the space between the uprights, use two stacks of sticks and, as you build it, fill the space between with earth.*

### Coverings

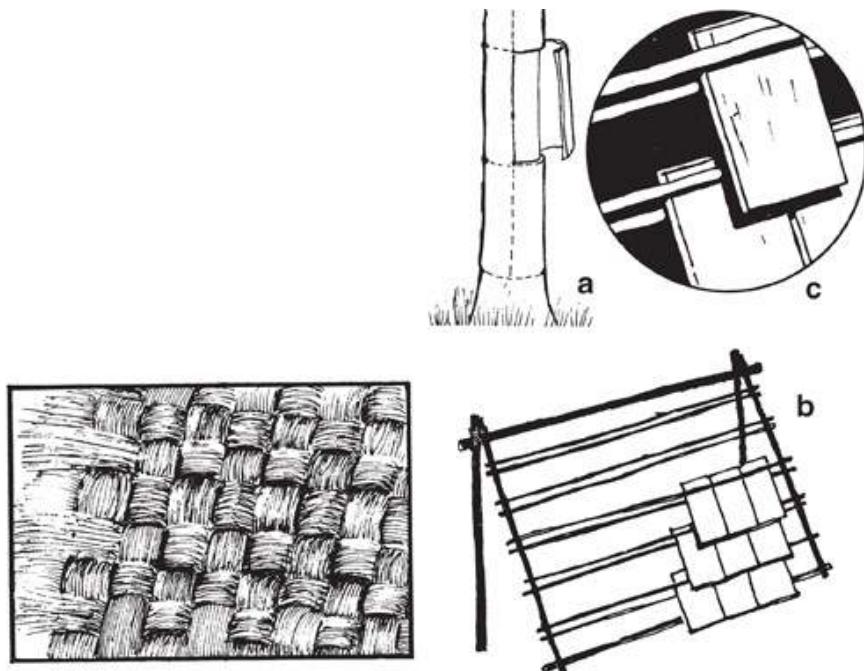
Make wattle and woven coverings for roofs or walls from springy saplings, plant stems, grasses and long leaves (either whole or, if large enough, shredded for tighter weaving). First make a framework from less pliable materials, either *in situ* or as a separate panel to attach later. Tie the main struts in position. Weave in the more pliant materials.



If no ties are available, drive vertical stakes into the ground and weave saplings between them. Caulk with earth and grasses.

If suitable firm cross-pieces are too few, weave creepers between the uprights.

Very large leaves, lashed or weighted down, or hooked over lines of creeper, can be overlapped like tiles or shingles to keep out rain.

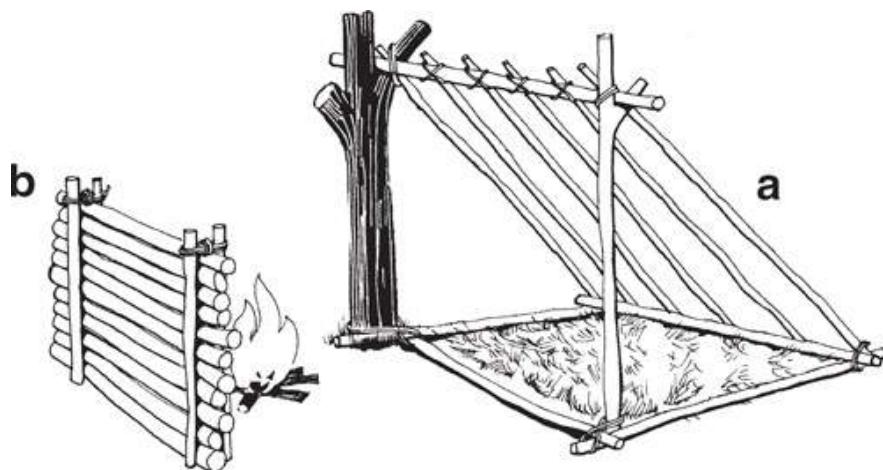


*Long grass can be bunched and woven (overlap the ends irregularly) to make a continuous warp and weft. Or use birch bark to make shingles. Ring a birch tree with even 60cm (2ft) cuts and carefully remove the bark (a). Across a frame fix pairs of canes or creepers in close-spaced pairs (b). Upper ends of shingles are gripped between the canes, the lower ends rest on top of those below (c).*

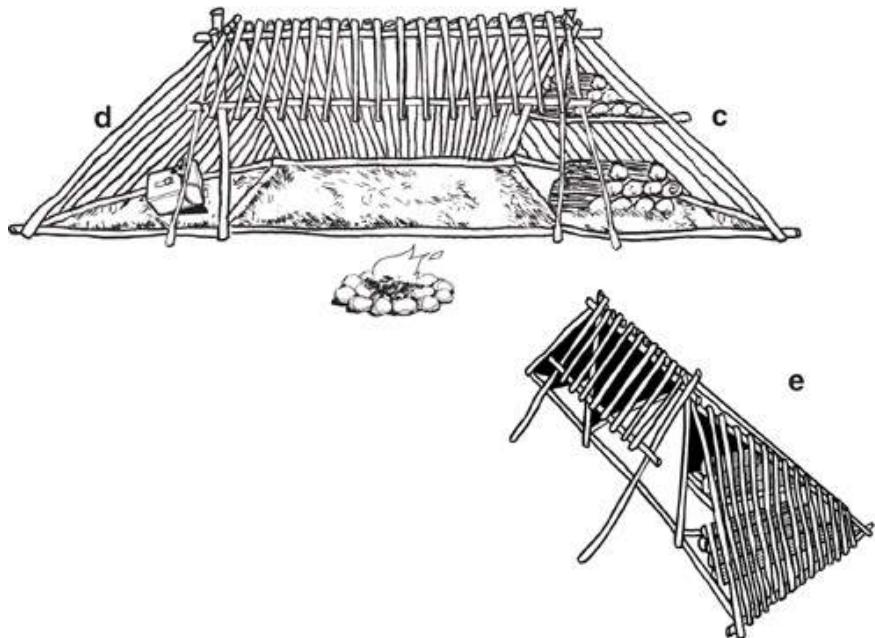
### Open lean-to shelter

If there is nothing solid to lean a roof against and you are not trying to keep out heavy rain or a blizzard, use panels of wattle or frames covered in grass for protection.

Erect a horizontal cross-piece between trees or on simple supports. On the windward side lean a panel of wattle, or tie or lean saplings at 45 degrees to make a roof (a). Site your fire on the leeward side. Add side pieces and—this is the trick—build a reflector (b) on the other side of the fire to make sure that you get the full benefit of the warmth.



The lean-to on the opposite page shows the lean-to shelter taken to its logical conclusion. By adding to the left and to the right of the structure you can make the shelter larger and you can store more materials. To improve your shelter further you can add a canopy to the front of it in order to provide extra protection against the elements. This more advanced lean-to has space for fire wood (c), supplies (d), and includes a canopy (e).



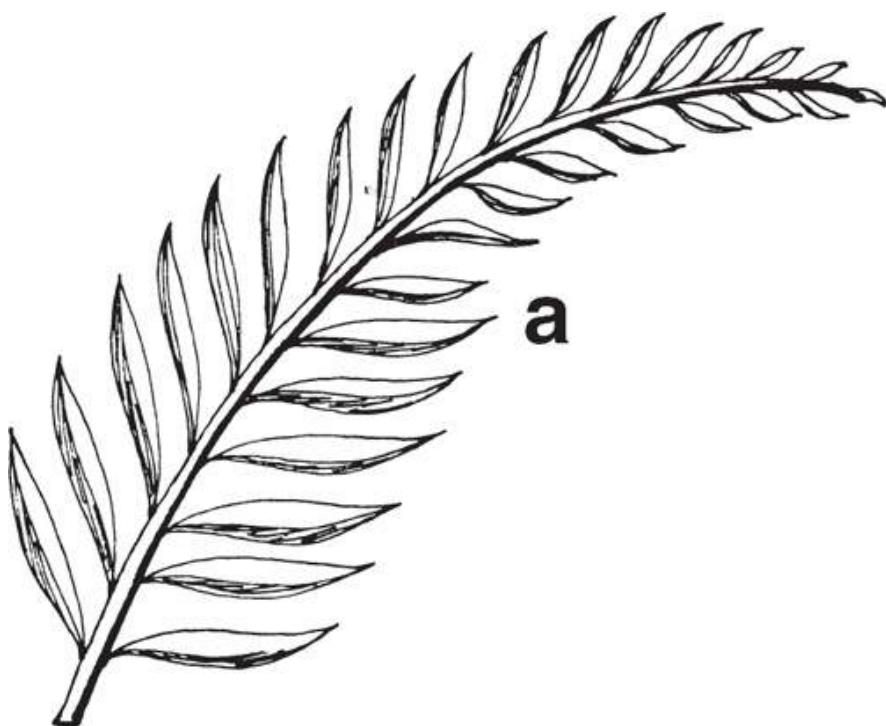
#### **Adding a canopy to the lean-to shelter**

*This requires two additional supports (one each side of the cross-piece placed at a 45 degree angle), and vertical supports on which to attach the covering material.*

#### **TROPICAL SHELTER**

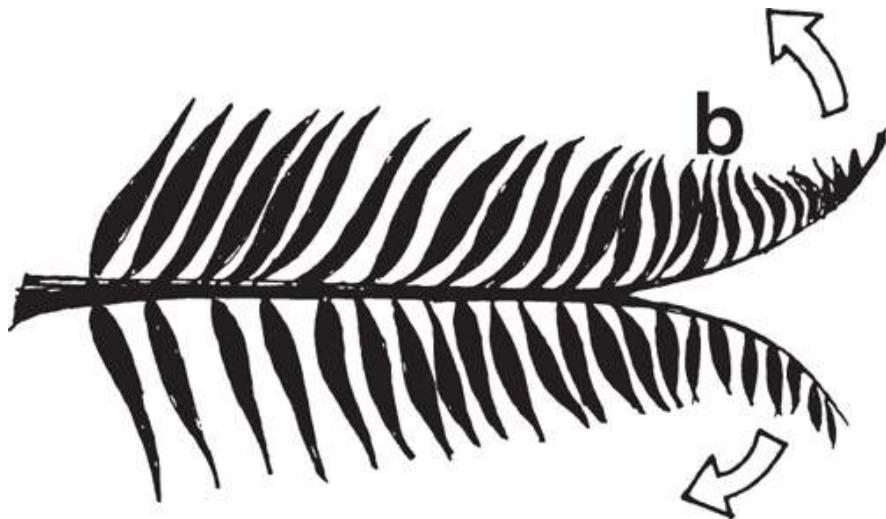
In rain forests and tropical jungle the ground is damp and likely to be crawling with insect life, leeches and other undesirables. Instead of bedding down on the ground you will be better in a raised bed. Consequently you may want to make higher shelters.

Unless you are at an altitude high enough to make the nights cold, you will be less concerned with protection from the wind than with keeping reasonably dry. A thatching of palm, banana and other large leaves makes the best roofs and walls.

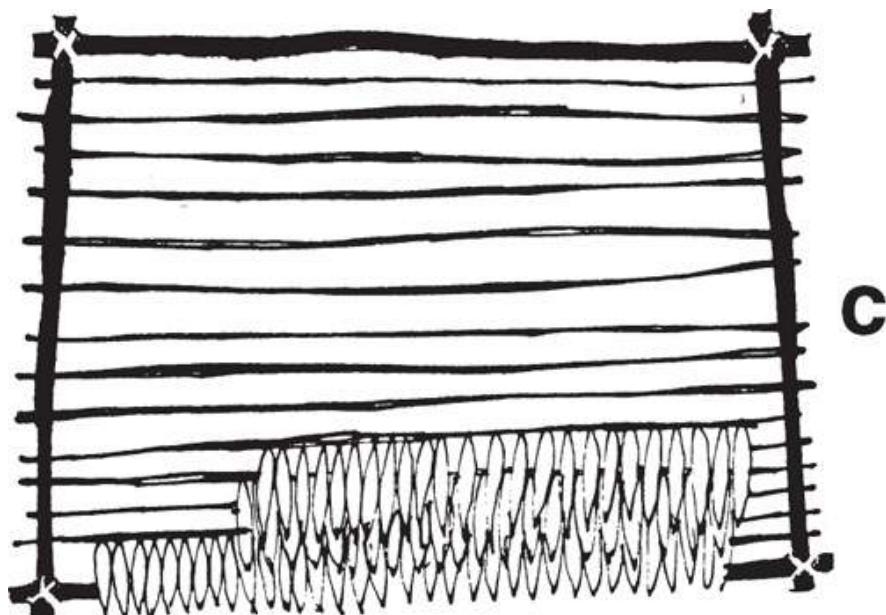


#### **ATAP**

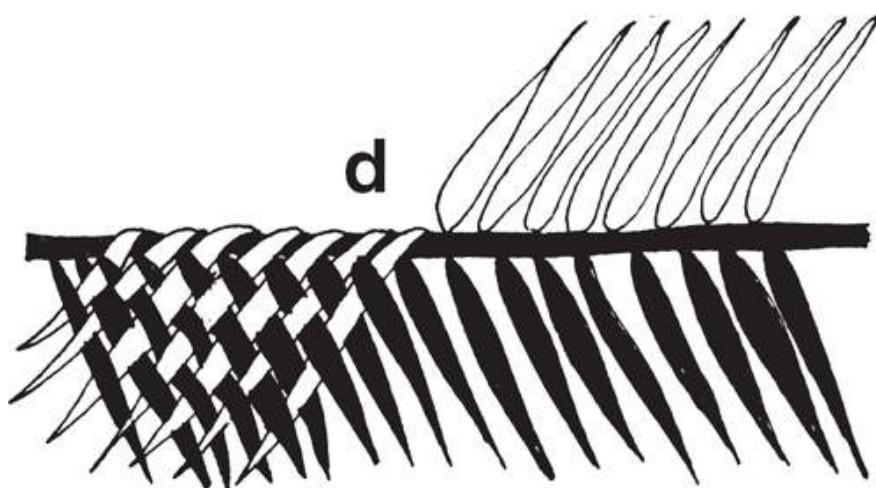
*Also known as 'Wait-a-while vine', atap is especially useful, despite the barbs at each leaf tip which make careful handling necessary. Look for any plant with a similar structure (a), the bigger the better. The broader the individual leaflets, the better also.*



Atap is best used horizontally, splitting each leaf into two from the tip (b) then tearing it into two clean halves down its length. Do not try to split from the thick end or you will end up with a broken branch.

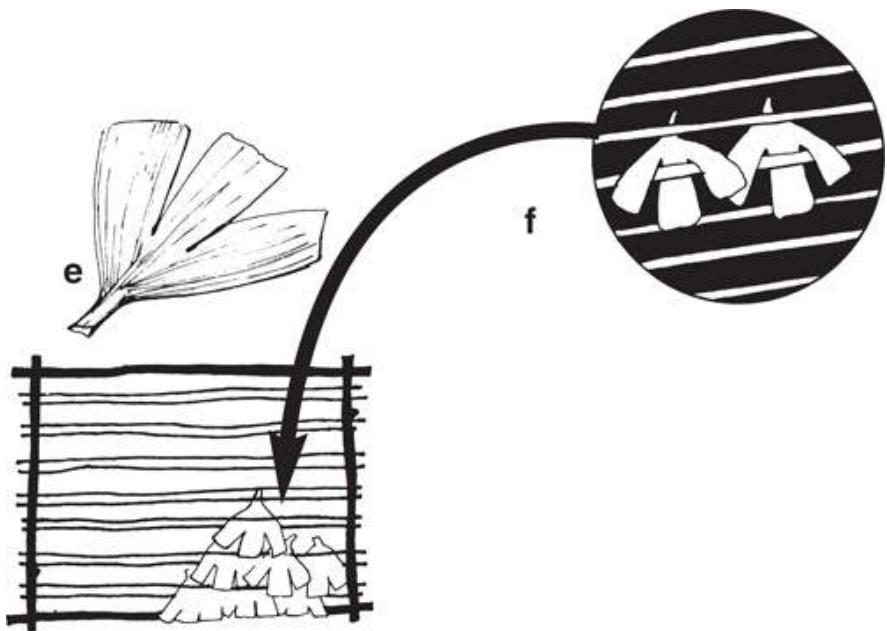


Closely layer halves of atap on your roof frame (c). You can let it be a little less dense on walls. Woven atap can be particularly effective for the sides of a shelter.



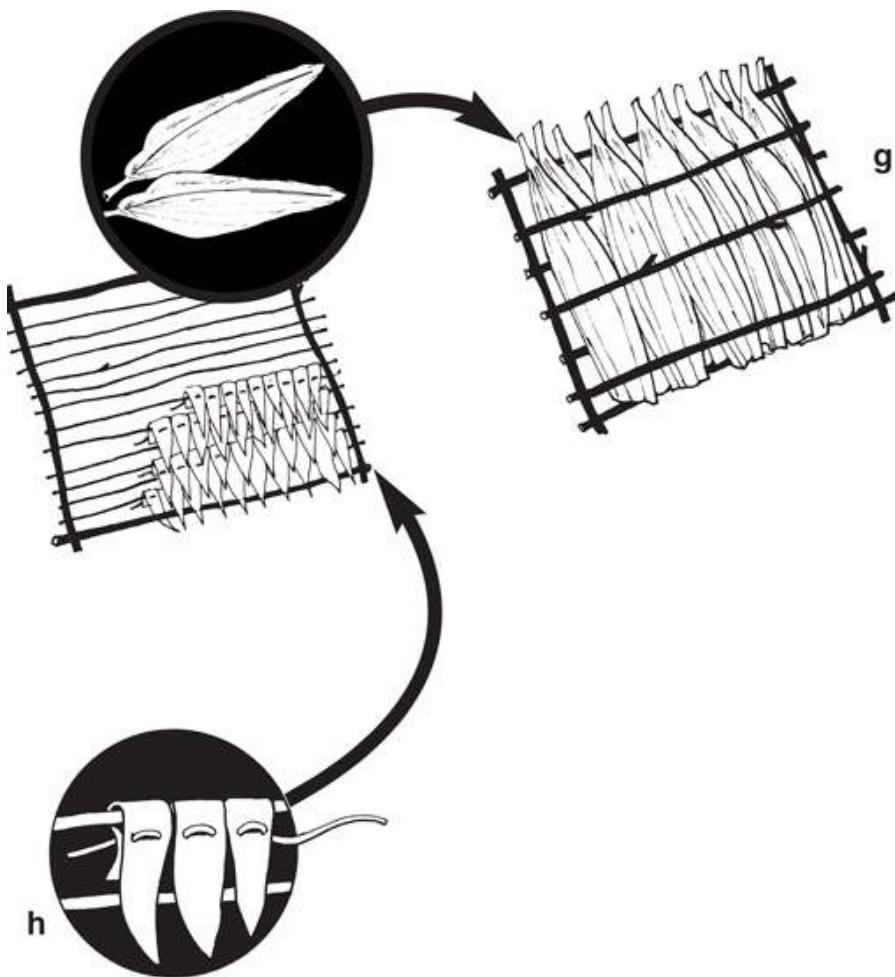
#### Another method:

Do not split down the leaf but fold the leaflets on one side across to the other and interweave them (d). You will probably find this easiest if you work first from one side then the other — but it does take practice.

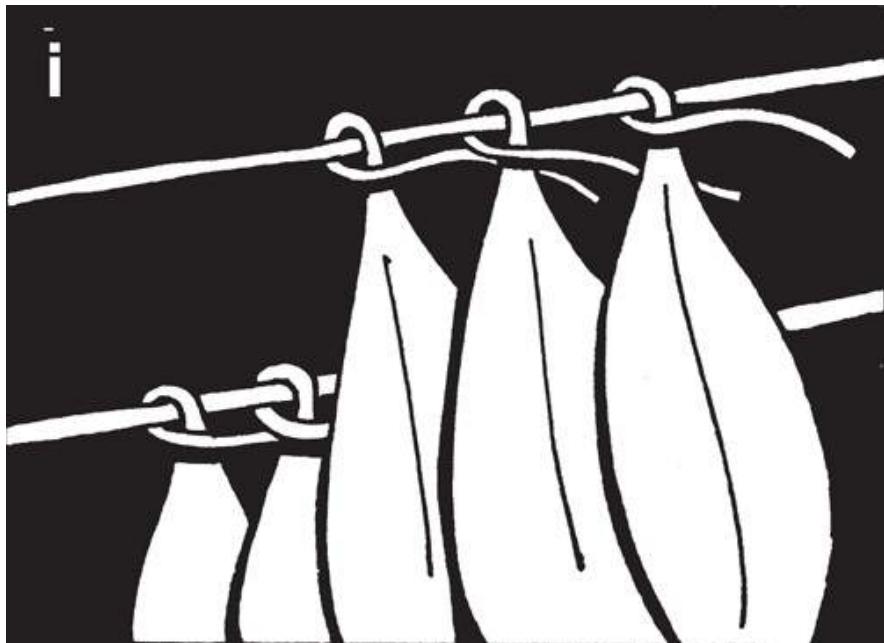


*Three-lobed leaves or leaves cut in this fashion (e) can be locked over a thatching frame without any other fixing being necessary to hold them in place (f).*

*Elephant grass and other large leaves can be woven between the cross-pieces (g). Only a small number are needed to produce a shelter very quickly.*



*Long broad leaves can be sown along the thatching battens with vines (h).*



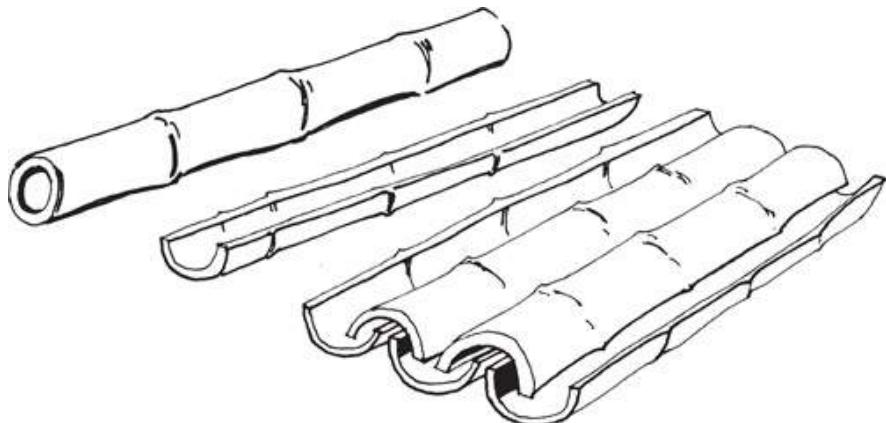
*Palm and other long-stemmed leaves can be secured by carrying the stem around the batten and over the front of the leaf, where it is held in place by the next leaf (i).*

*Leaves must overlap those below on the outside of the shelter.*

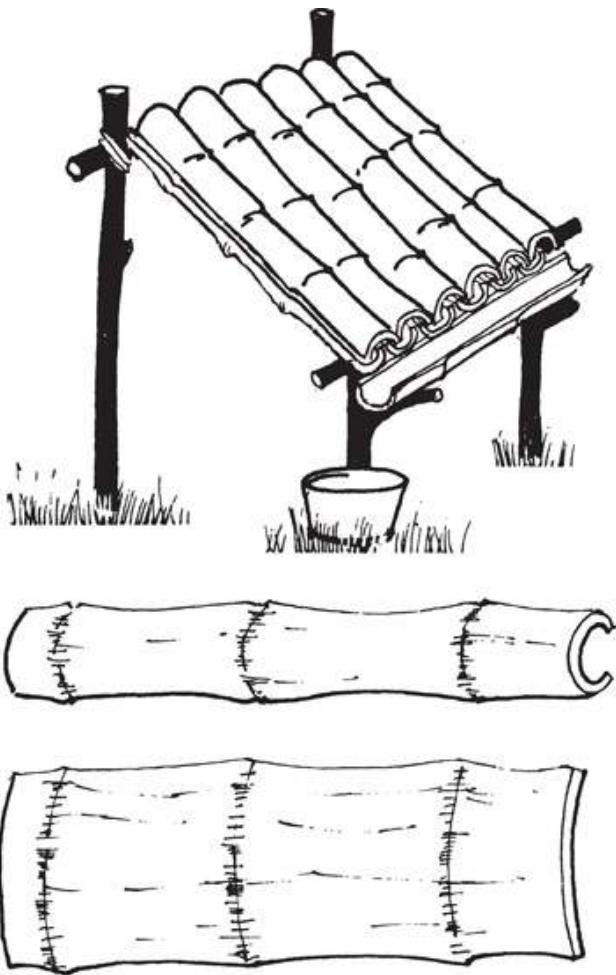
## Bamboo

This large-stemmed plant, actually a grass, is a very versatile building material and can be used for pole supports, flooring, roofing and walls.

The giant form of bamboo—which can be over 30m (100ft) high and 30cm (1ft) in diameter—is an Asian plant, found in damp places from India through to China both in the lowlands and on mountain slopes, but there are types native to Africa and Australia and two which are found in the southern United States.



*Split bamboo vertically to make roofing and guttering to collect rainwater. The split stems, laid alternately to interlock with one another, form efficient and waterproof pantiles.*



*Flatten split bamboo for smooth walls, floors or shelving by cutting vertically through the joints every 1.25cm (1/2in) or so around the circumference. It can then be smoothed out.*

*The paper-like sheaths formed at the nodes can also be used as roofing material.*

## WARNING

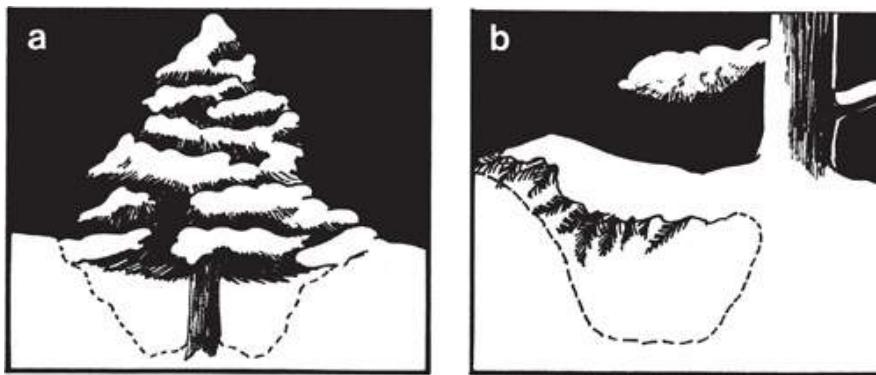
Take great care when collecting bamboo. It grows in clumps which are often a tangled mass. Some stems are under tension and when cut fly forcefully and dangerously apart, exploding into sharp slivers.

Split bamboo can be razor-sharp and cause serious injury. The husks at the base of bamboo stems carry small stinging hairs which cause severe skin irritations.

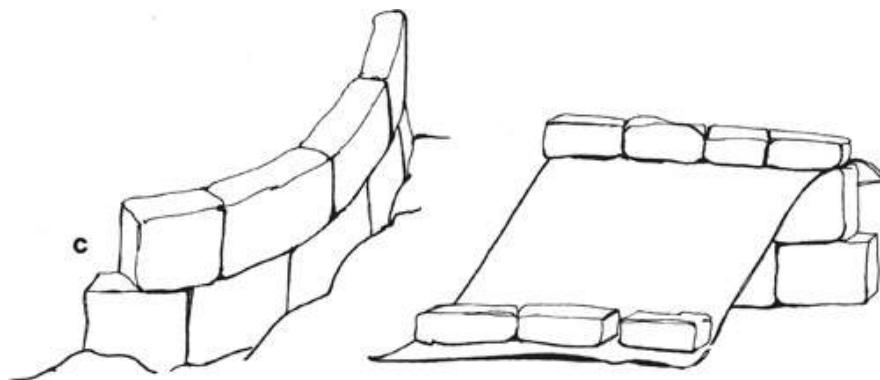
## ARCTIC SHELTER

In polar areas simple shelters will be those already waiting for you in natural caves and hollows. If you carry some kind of bivouac in your equipment, you can erect it and increase its protection by piling up loose snow around and over it, so long as it can support the weight. But to build in hard snow—and at very low temperatures snow will be solid—you need some kind of implement to cut into it or make blocks from it. Spades and ice saws are essential equipment for polar expeditions.

Snow or rock caves will be easily recognizable—but not so obvious are the spaces left beneath the spreading boughs of conifers in the northern forests when the snow has already built up around them. A medium-sized tree may have a space right around the trunk (a) or a large one have pockets in the snow beneath a branch (b). Try digging under any tree with spreading branches on the lee side.



*Even soft snow can be built into a windbreak. Those with equipment can cut blocks (c). This is the minimum shelter for the minimum effort.*



*Anchor a ground sheet or poncho along the top with another course of blocks, use others to secure the bottom edge. Use more snow blocks to close the sides.*

## BUILDING IN SNOW

A saw, knife, shovel or machete is necessary to cut compacted snow into blocks. The ideal snow will bear a man's weight without much impression being made but be soft enough to allow a probe to be inserted evenly through it.

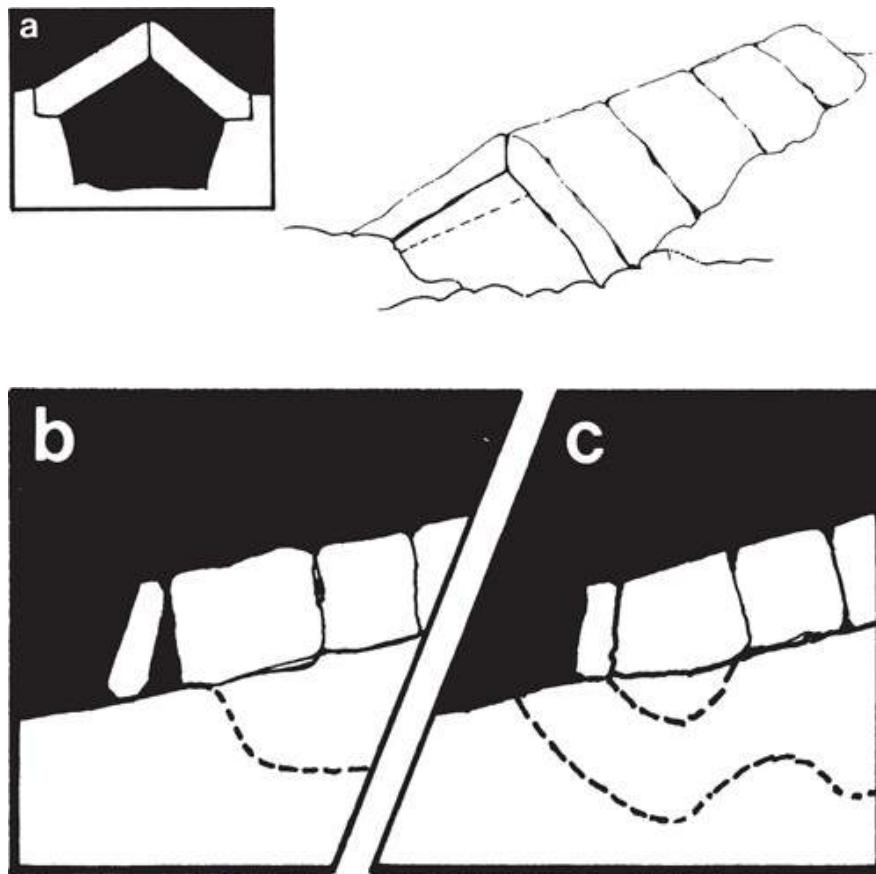
Cut blocks about 45 x 50cm (18 x 20in) and 10-20cm (4-8in) thick. These will be an easy size to handle, thick enough to provide good insulation and yet allow maximum penetration of the sun's rays.

### Snow trench

This is a much quicker shelter to construct than trying to build in snow above the ground, but it is suitable for only one person and then only for short-term use—while you are on the move or making something bigger, for example.

Mark out an area the size of a sleeping bag (including head support) and cut out blocks the whole width of the trench. Dig down to a depth of at least 60cm (2ft). Along the top of the sides of the trench cut a ledge about 15cm (6in) wide and the same deep.

Rest the snow bricks on each side of the ledge and lean them in against each other to form a roof (a). Put equipment below your sleeping bag so that you are not in direct contact with the snow beneath.

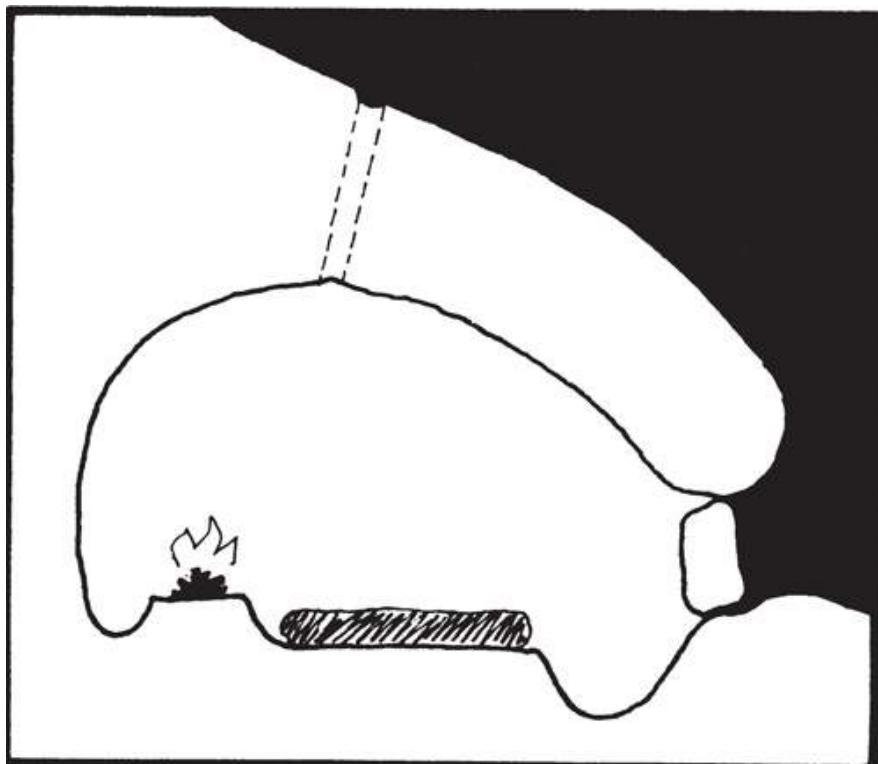


*Block the windward end with another block or piled up snow. At the other end (downwind) have a removable block as a door (b), or dig an entrance (c). Fill any gaps with snow. Most effective built on a slight slope, cold air will collect in the entrance leaving warmer air in the sleeping space.*

### Snow cave

Dig into a drift of firm snow to make a comfortable shelter. Make use of the fact that hot air rises and heavier, cold air sinks. Create three levels inside: build a fire on the highest, sleep on the centre one and keep off the lower level which will trap the cold. Drive a hole through the roof to let out smoke and make another hole to ensure that you have adequate ventilation.

Use a block of snow as a door and keep it loose fitting and on the INSIDE so that it will not freeze up and jam. If it does, a block on the inside will be much easier to free.



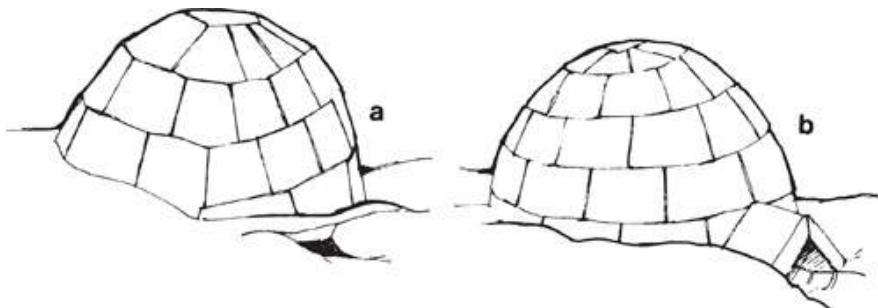
*Smooth the inside surfaces to discourage melt drips and make a channel around the internal perimeter to keep them away from you and your equipment.*

### **Snow house (igloo)**

An igloo takes time to construct but centuries of use by the Eskimo demonstrate its efficiency. Build the main shelter first then dig out an entrance or build an entry tunnel which is big enough to crawl along. Make sure that its entrance does not point into the wind. You could bend the tunnel or build a wind break to make this less likely.

To construct an igloo by the circular method, mark out a circle on the ground about 4m (13½ft) in diameter and tramp it down to consolidate the floor as you proceed with the rest of the building.

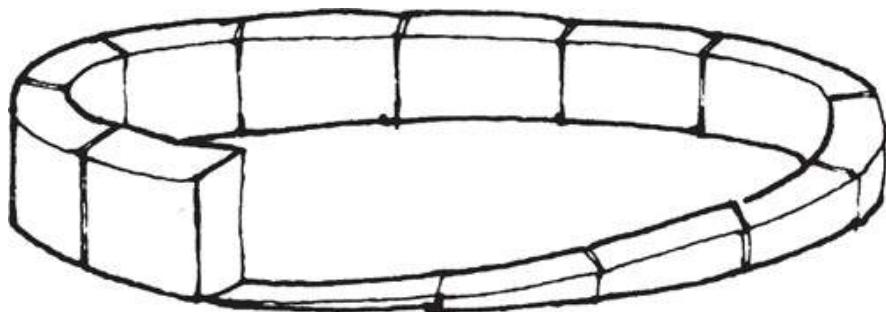
Cut and lay a circle of blocks on the perimeter. Be prepared to dig a tunnel (a), or leave a space for an entrance (b). Place another layer on top of them but, as when laying bricks, centre new blocks over the previous vertical joint.



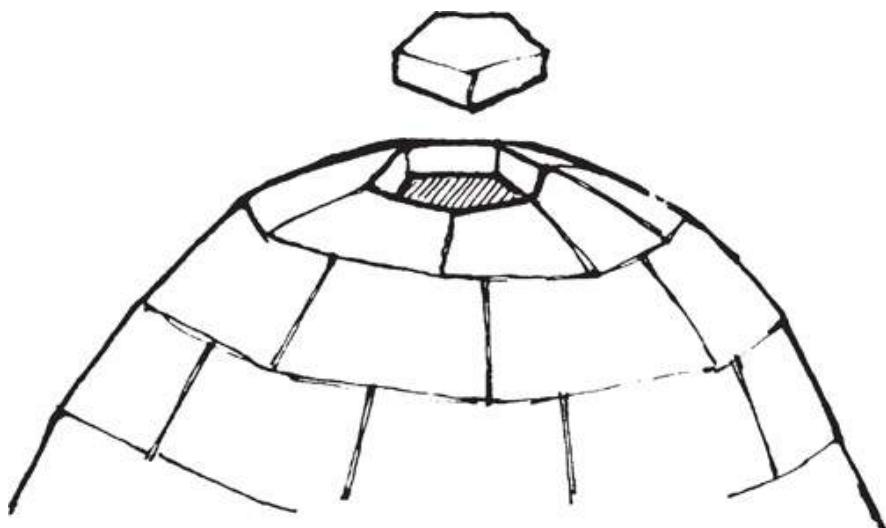
Build up more layers but place each only halfway over the lower tier, so that the igloo tapers in or becomes dome-shaped. Shape out the entrance arch as you proceed. Seal the top with a flat block. Make ventilation holes near the top and near the bottom—not on the side of the prevailing wind or so low that snow rapidly builds up and blocks it. Fill any other gaps with snow. Smooth off all the inside to remove any drip-points. This will allow any condensation to run down the wall instead of dripping off.

### **Igloo (spiral method)**

Lay the first course of blocks and then shape them to the required spiral. You do not have to overhang the blocks if you angle your initial spiral downwards and inwards, and shape the top and bottom faces of subsequent courses to lean inwards. The last few blocks in the centre may need some support as you fit them into position.



*Cutting the first course to an even spiral eases the whole process. Angle the top edge slightly down towards the centre.*



*The final block must be cut to fit — unless the space is small enough to leave for ventilation, but this last block helps to keep the structure from collapsing.*

## **SURVIVING THE COLD**

No matter how low the external temperature, inside a well-constructed snow house the temperature will not drop lower than  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $0^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). Just burning a candle will raise the temperature by about four degrees. The traditional Eskimo way of heating the igloo was a wick in a bowl of fat. In a large shelter with a wood fire the temperature is cosy. An oil burner or fat on bones are good alternatives where there is no wood.

Cut an entrance way through the lower course of blocks or dig a tunnel beneath them. The central hole can be used as an entrance if you are too exhausted to complete the structure.





## INSIDE THE IGLOO

*Build a sleeping level higher than the floor (or dig down when building) to create a lower cold level which can be used for storage.*

## BUILDING A SHELTER

The type of shelter you build will depend upon: the materials available, the tools available, what you are sheltering from (WIND, COLD, SNOW, RAIN, INSECTS, and so forth).

How long do you intend to remain at the location? Snow caves and natural holes are ideal if you are on the move and do not need a permanent structure.

Size will depend upon the number in the party.

Take your time over building a complex structure and rest frequently. Over-exertion which produces sweating should be avoided.

All shelters MUST be adequately ventilated to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning and allow moisture to escape. Two holes are needed—have one near the top and one near the entrance. In snow shelters the holes must be regularly checked to ensure that they have not become blocked by snow or ice.

Regularly clear accumulated snow from any entrance tunnel to ensure that it does not become blocked.

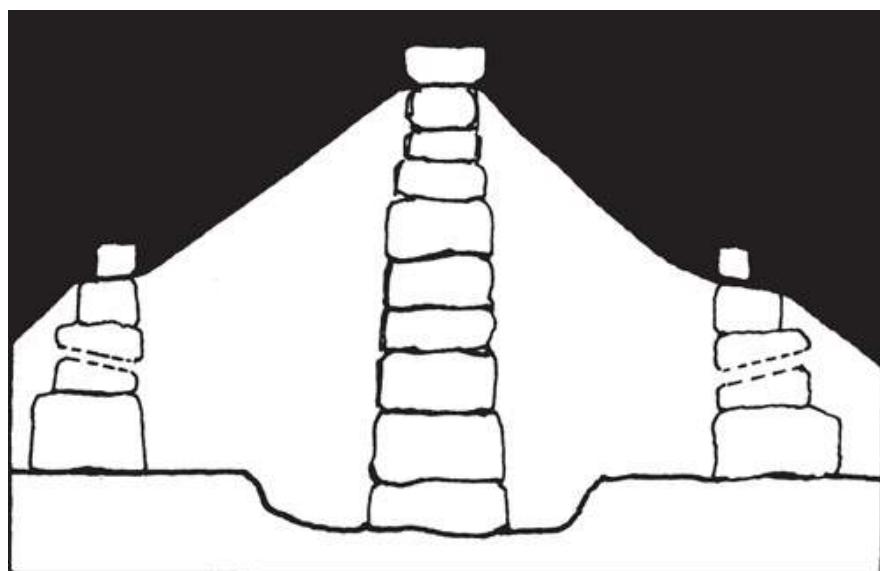
The smaller the shelter the warmer it will be inside but, since it will not be possible to heat the shelter to many degrees above freezing, you will need a little time to adapt to the environment.

## Parachute snow house

This is a useful structure if stranded on sea ice where sufficient snow for an igloo (or igloos) for a larger party may be hard to find. Look for snow or convenient blocks of ice in the pushed-up pressure ridges of the ice.

Mark out a circle and build up a circular wall of snow blocks about 1 m (3ft) high. Leave an entrance space if

on ice—you will not be able to dig an entrance tunnel. Dig a lower area in the floor for cold air to sink into.

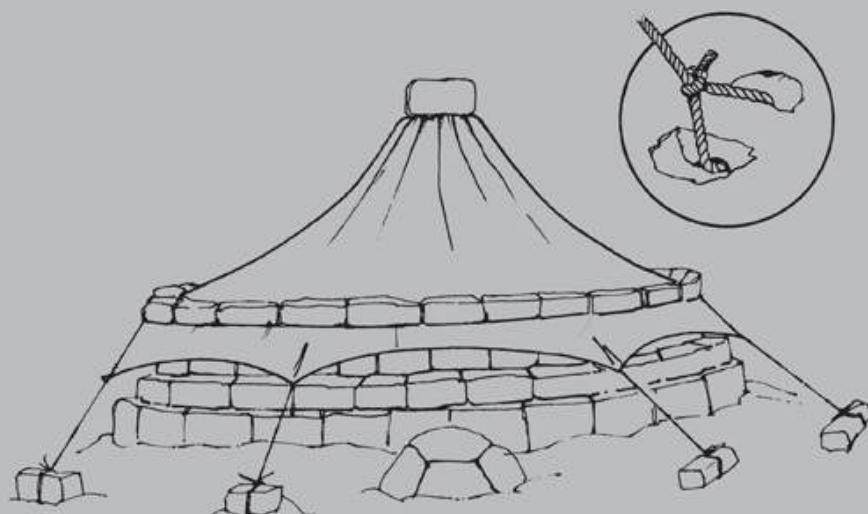


*Raise a central column of blocks in the centre about 1–1.5m (3–5ft) higher than the wall. Drape the parachute over this and the wall, securing it with a further row of blocks on top of the wall.*

## **WARNING**

The structure of this parachute roof makes it a snow trap, which could become a dangerous weight poised above your head. Clear accumulated snow regularly.

If you want a small fire inside, ensure there is adequate ventilation. Site the fire on the outer shelf where it will not affect the canopy, not near the central column.



*Anchor parachute cords with further blocks of ice or snow or cut a hole in the ice and pass the rope through it to make a firm anchorage.*

# LIVING IN A SNOW HOUSE

In bad weather make sure that you have a good supply of timber, or liquid fuel, inside the shelter.

Do not carry loose snow into the shelter, knock it off boots and clothing before you enter.

Mark the entrance clearly so that it is easily found.

Keep shovels and tools inside the shelter—you may have to dig yourself out.

Drips in igloos can be stopped by placing a piece of snow on the source.

Relieve yourself inside the shelter—this is usual practice in these conditions and conserves body heat.

Use plastic bags, ration tins or other containers and empty when possible. Try to discipline the bowels to work—just prior to leaving the shelter in the morning and then remove faecal matter with other rubbish accumulated.

In a shelter with several people organize a rosta of duties. It is important that someone tends the fire at all times. Others can check the vent holes, gather fuel, go hunting when possible, prepare meals and so forth.

Remember that at a low temperature you will need more food.

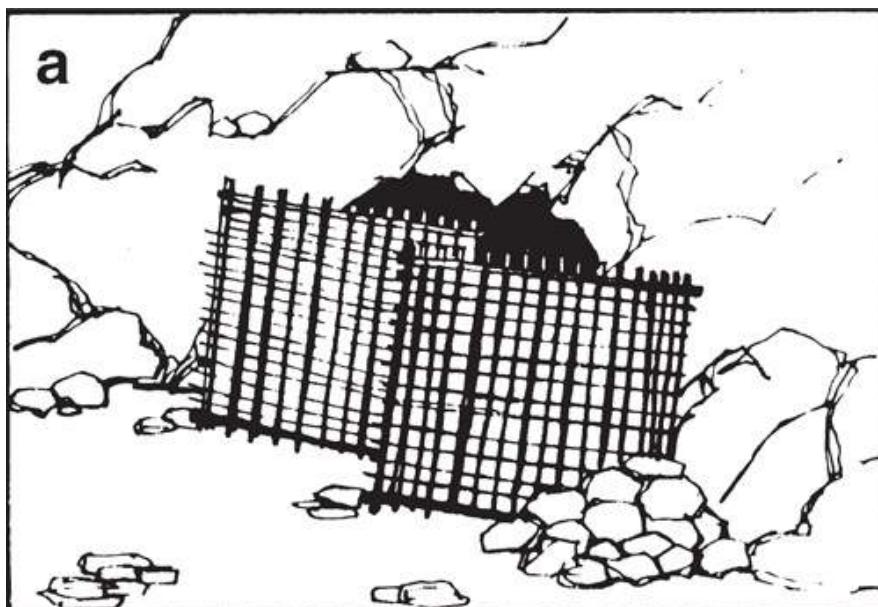
## LONG-TERM SHELTER

If you decide that any possible search for you has been abandoned and that it is impracticable to make your own way to safety, whether due to distance, time of year, lack of equipment or physical condition, you will want to make the most comfortable permanent shelter possible. Somewhere that you will be able to establish yourself cosily until you can eventually attract rescue or equip yourself to undertake the journey with your own resources.

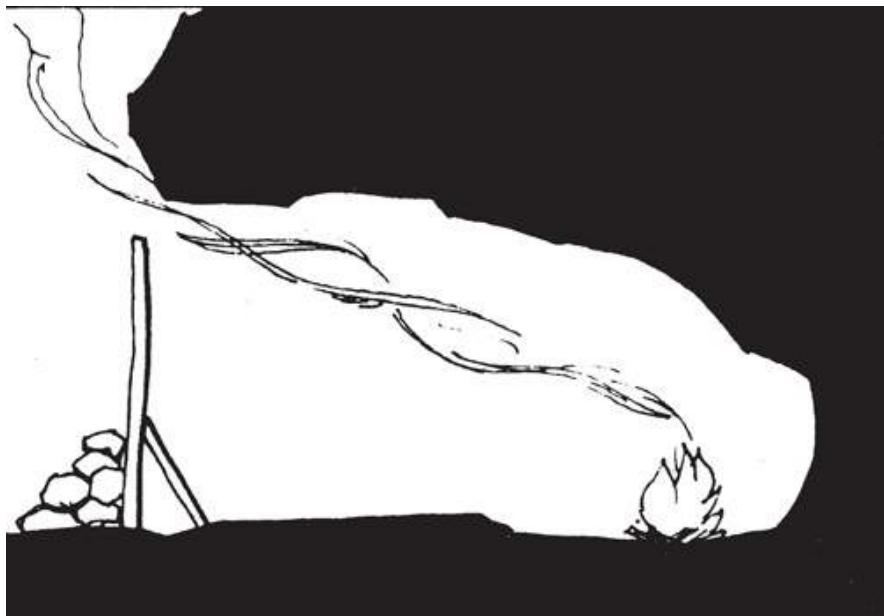
In a cold climate you will want to be warm and snug. In a warm one, on the other hand, you will want to take advantage of any available breezes. Your shelter will need to provide protection against the changing seasons and night temperatures which may differ from daytime ones.

### Caves

Caves are the most ready-made of shelters. Even a shallow cave (in stone usually known, in fact, as a rock shelter) offers an excellent temporary shelter and a larger cave can make an excellent permanent home. People still live in them in many parts of the world, sometimes with all modern conveniences! Caves situated above a valley will be dry even if water seeps through in some places from above. They are weather-proof and require little constructional work, usually simply the creation of a barrier to close off the entrance. Make this of rocks, wattle, logs, turves or almost any material.



*If the cave faces into the wind, build a screen out from both sides, one slightly behind the other, overlapping them to provide an entrance (a).*



*Build the fire at the back of the cave. Smoke will go up to the roof, leaving air nearer the floor. Smoke from a fire near the open mouth of a cave will not escape outwards but will probably be blown in. If you seal the cave entrance make sure you leave a gap for the smoke to escape.*

Caves can be cold, and they may already be inhabited by wild animals, so approach any such shelter with caution. Plenty of dry plant matter and pine boughs on the ground will provide insulation. A good fire will usually make animal occupants leave. Allow them an escape route.

Sometimes a cave will have its own fresh water supply, especially if it goes deep into a hillside, either from an underground stream or from water seeping through the rocks above.

## **WARNING**

Check for the possibility of a rock fall inside or outside the cave. You might be desperate for shelter, but your situation will be a lot worse if you are trapped or injured by falling rocks.

### **Light structures**

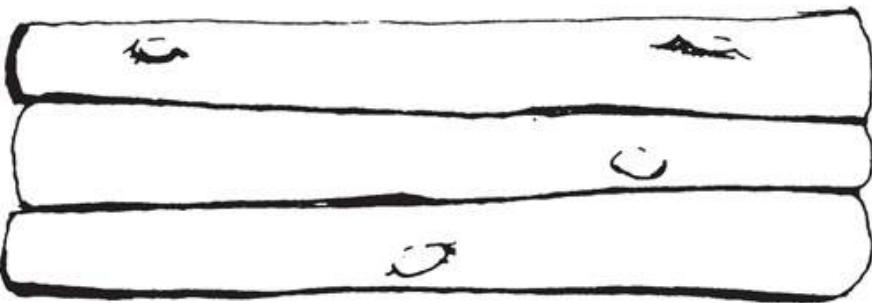
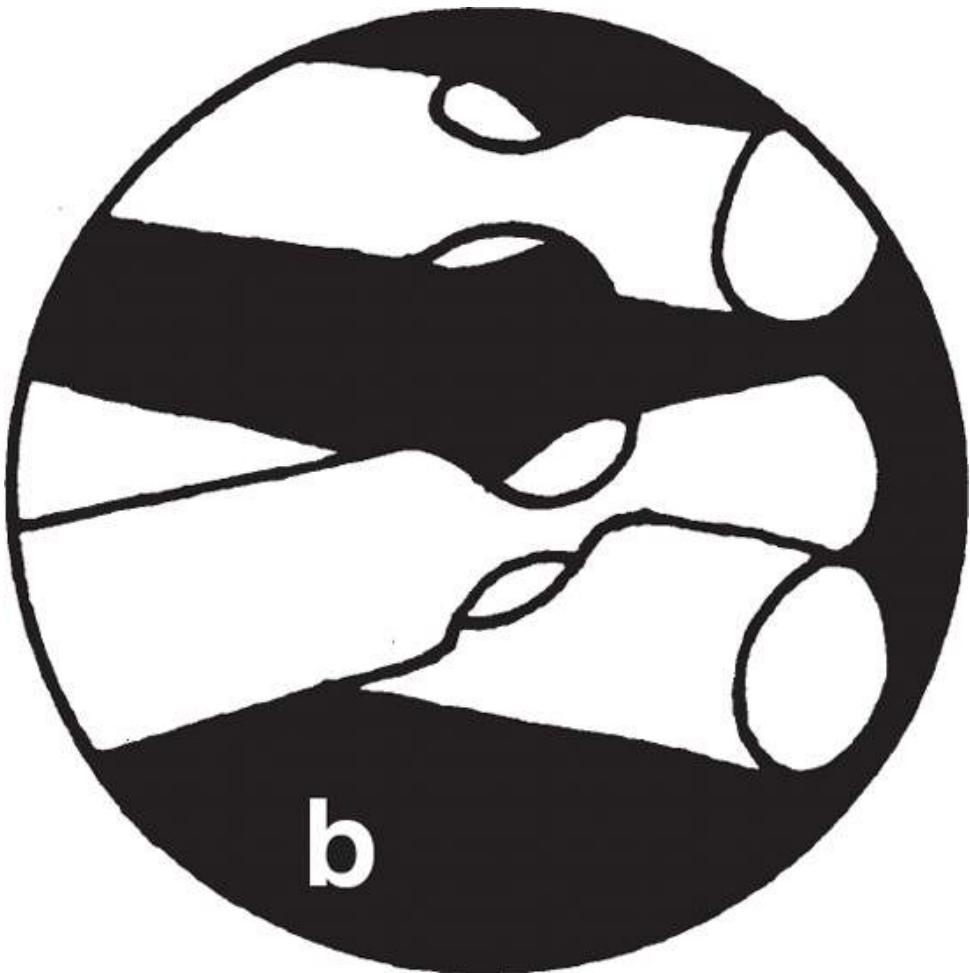
Follow the methods outlined for the lean-to structure. You can extend it with a less angled roof and a front wall or you can build vertical walls and roof them over with deep eaves to give you extra shade from sun and to ensure that rain runs off well away from the hut. Dig a channel to carry any water away.

If you have bamboo or other strong material available to build a firm frame, raise the floor of your shelter off the ground in tropical climates, so reducing access to ground creatures.

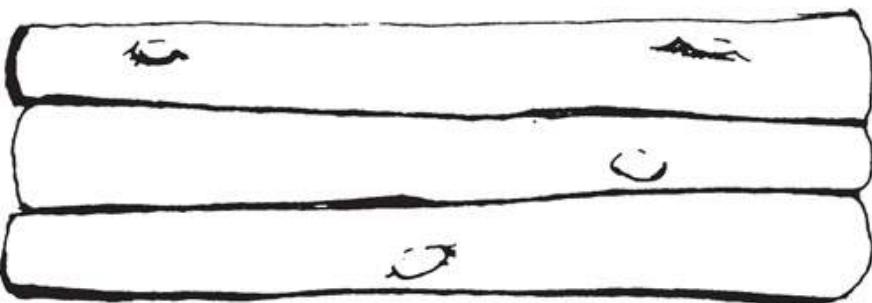
In hot climates you will need to make your roof solid to keep out rain and give good protection from the sun but, if it projects well over the walls, you can leave them as fairly open lattice to allow air to pass through. Grasses and mud will seal cracks and all kinds of material will make a thatch if woven between roof cross-pieces of sticks or cords. In climates with heavy rainfall use leaves or bark like tiles on top.

### **Log cabin**

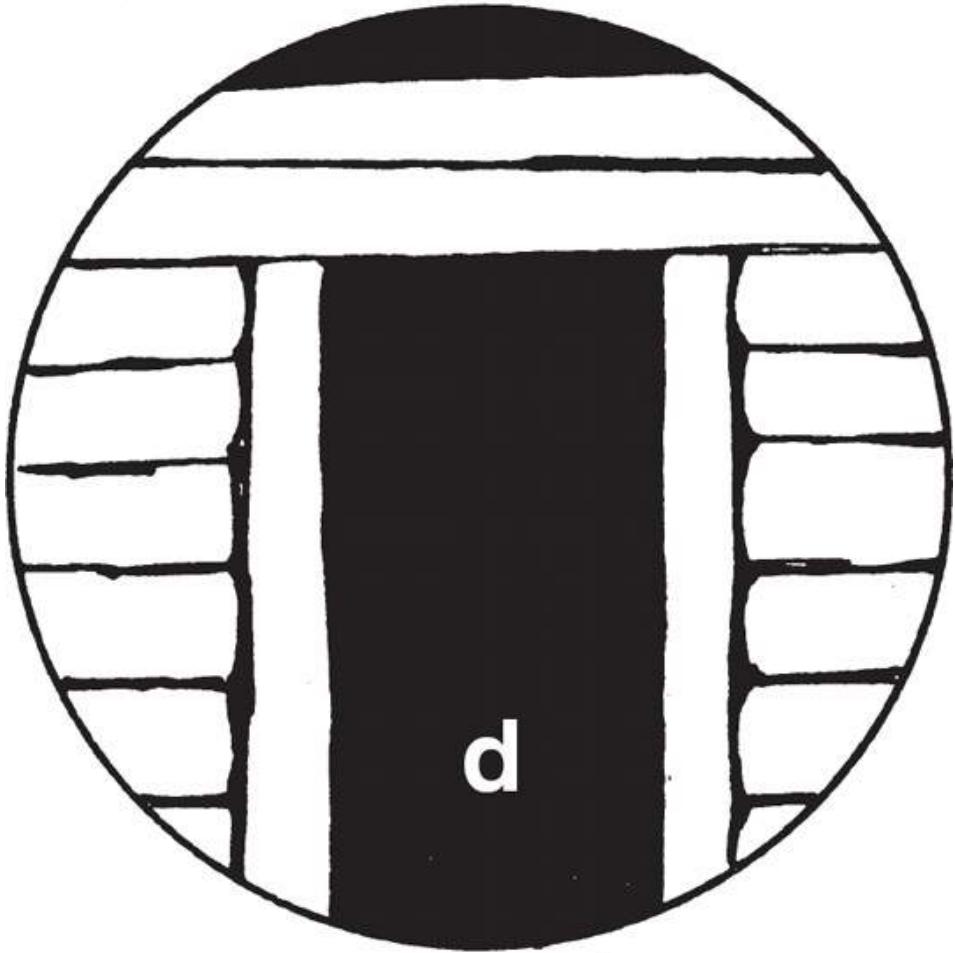
Scale your cabin to the number it is to house. You can always enlarge it or add on extra rooms later. The size of logs available will determine the length of walls. A square or rectangle will be sturdy and easiest to roof—2.5m (8ft) square is a sensible small size. You may be lucky and be able to use trees that have already fallen, in which case you could perhaps lash a framework of logs together and fill the spaces in between, but it is much better to joint the corners to fit snugly into each other. Do not finish off the projecting ends. These are the strength of the structure.

**c****b**

Lay down your first layer of logs in the shape of your hut (a). Joint the corners to fit on top of each other (b) and cut other logs to fit neatly on top.

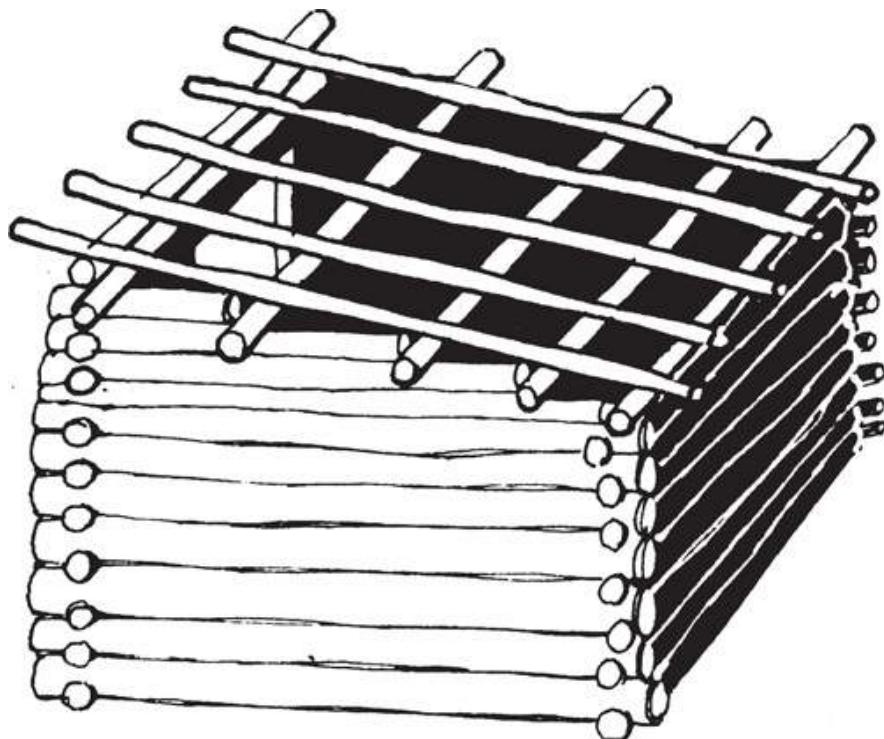
**c**

Since logs tend to taper, place them alternately top to bottom to counter this (c).



*Once the ground frame is established leave space for a doorway on the side away from the prevailing wind — you may be able to use off-cuts from logs for these sections on either side of the door. Square off the edges and wedge a door frame in place (d). Do not bother with windows, the door will give sufficient ventilation.*

Build up the front higher than the back to give pitch to the roof. The last log front and back should project well beyond the side walls. These will support the roof. Across the hut from side to side notch in one cross-beam to keep short logs in place. Lay a roof of logs, front to back, extending beyond walls. Notch the logs to fit on to the cross-pieces or lash them down.



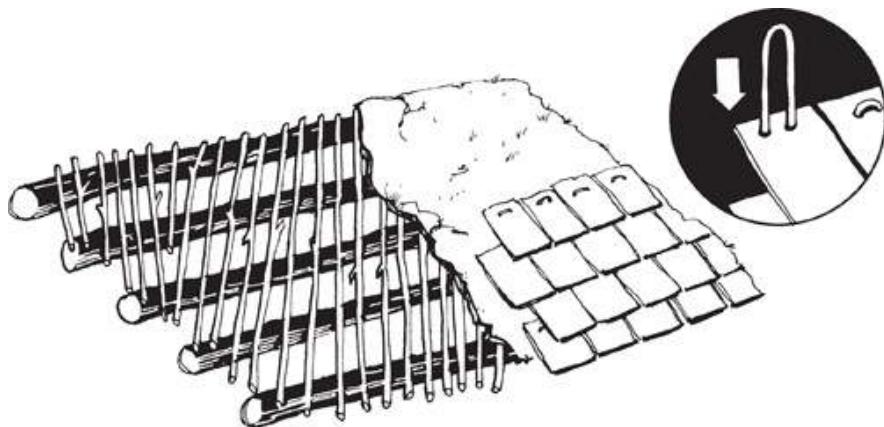
Choose a flat site for your cabin, or level a slightly larger area. Dig into a hillside if necessary, but the

foundations for the walls must be level.

The flexible saw in your survival kit will cut logs of sufficient size, and if you are a survivor from a wrecked plane or boat there will have been a fire axe on board.

There is no need to make a door yet. Hang a piece of blanket to keep the wind out, or make a panel of wattle to fill the gap until you feel equipped to make a permanent door. Don't bother with windows either—the doorway will give enough ventilation.

Caulk between the logs with mud and wood chips, or, if there are big gaps, saplings before applying the mud. Mix it with grass and moss, and use a sharpened stick to force it between the logs. Cover the roof with saplings before adding a layer of mud and turf.



*Instead of a complete roof of whole logs you could use lighter materials and mud on a timber frame. Bark from the logs makes an excellent top covering if laid as tiles. These could be pegged through with small supple twigs while the mud is still soft.*

If there is no risk of a build up of water (in which case it would be useful to build a floor later) dig down inside the hut to provide the earth for mud caulking and you will at the same time increase its interior height.

If you leave a hole somewhere in the roof for smoke to escape, you can make a fire inside the hut. But do not leave it unattended—put it out rather than risk your home burning down.

If stone is readily available, you could build a proper chimney and fireplace. You'll retain more of the heat if it is a central structure. Fit stones as closely as possible and use small stones and mud to pack the spaces.

## **SURVIVAL SCENARIO**

---

### **You have made your shelter, but where should you wash yourself and your clothes?**

All ablutions should be carried out down stream. This will be at a lower point than where you are getting your drinking water from, therefore ensures your supply will remain clean/uncontaminated.

# FIRE

**F**ire can be the difference between life and death. It is imperative that you are able to light a fire under any conditions, anywhere in the world. The most important uses of fire are for boiling water, signalling, cooking, and protection from animals and flying insects.

Because 90 per cent of the diseases that are carried in water can be countered by boiling water it is vital that you learn the skill of fire-lighting. However, you don't need to boil rainwater, as it won't carry any of the bacteria found in the other water sources that you will encounter.

Fire can help to make or fashion tools (you can fire-harden bamboo to make a spoon), while charcoal can be used to burn out a hole. This can be safer than cutting the hole yourself which could lead to you injuring yourself.

When lighting a fire, always ensure adequate ventilation, with enough fuel and a hot enough source to ignite this fuel. To produce flame, this temperature must be maintained to keep air and fuel continuously reacting. The more oxygen introduced, the brighter the fire: by using the wind, or forcing a draught, the fire is fanned to a high temperature and rapidly burns fuel. By reducing the ventilation the fire burns less fiercely and embers are allowed to glow, needing less fuel.

If these principles are understood, smoky fires can be avoided. Smoke is the result of incomplete combustion —with care smoke can be virtually eliminated.

## PRACTICE FIRE-LIGHTING

Fire is essential to survival. It provides warmth, protection, a means of signalling, boils water, and cooks and preserves food. You must learn to light a fire anywhere under any condition. It is not enough to know all the methods—you have to be expert at them.

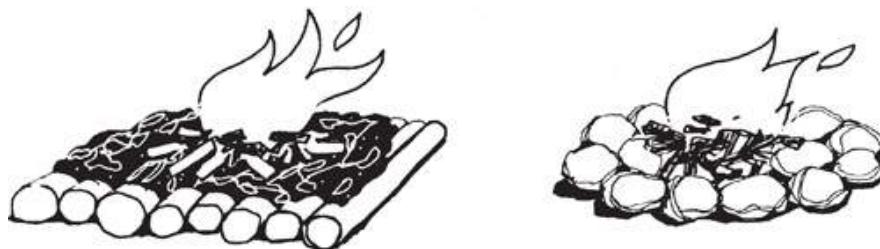
### Preparation

First make sure that you have sufficient quantities of TINDER, KINDLING and FUEL. Then prepare a fireplace so that you can control the fire. Used carelessly fire can get out of hand and bring disaster.

### The fireplace

The fireplace needs to be prepared carefully. Choose a site that is sheltered, especially during high winds. Except for signal purposes (see [Rescue](#)), or exceptionally to warm a temporary bough or snowhole shelter, do not light a fire at the base of a tree or stump. Clear away leaves, twigs, moss and dry grass from a circle at least 2m (6ft) across and scrape everything away until you have a surface of bare earth.

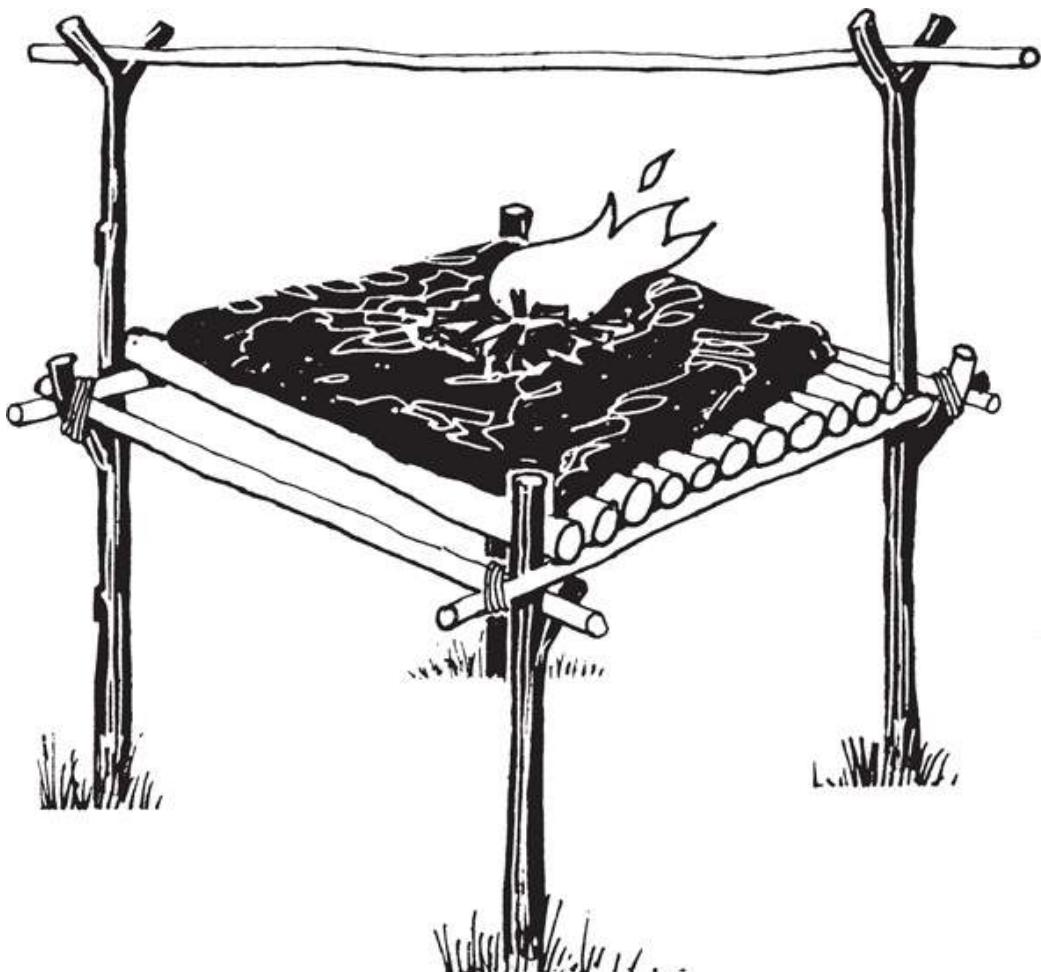
If the ground is wet or covered with snow, the fire must be built on a platform. Make this from a layer of green logs covered with a layer of earth or a layer of stones.



### Temple fire

If land is swampy or the snow deep a raised platform is needed. This is known as a temple fire. The hearth consists of a raised platform, built of green timber. Four uprights support cross-pieces in their forks. Across them place a layer of green logs and cover this with several inches of earth. Light the fire on top of this. A pole across

upper forks on diagonally opposite uprights can support cooking pots.



#### **IN WINDY CONDITIONS**

*If there are particularly strong winds, dig a trench and light your fire in it.*



*Also good for windy conditions: Encircle your fire with rocks to retain heat and conserve fuel. Use them to support cooking utensils. Their heat, as well as that from the fire, will keep things warm and you can use the rocks themselves as bed warmers.*

## **WARNING**

Avoid placing wet or porous rocks and stones near fires, especially rocks which have been submerged in water—they may explode when heated. Avoid slates and softer rocks, and test others by banging them together. Do not use any that crack, sound hollow or are flaky. If they contain moisture it will expand faster than the stone and can make it explode, producing dangerous flying fragments which could take out an eye if you are close to the fire.

### **Tinder**

Tinder is any kind of material that takes the minimum of heat to make it catch alight. Good tinder needs only a spark to ignite it.

Birch bark, dried grasses, fine wood shavings, bird down, waxed paper and cotton fluff from clothing all make good tinder. So do pulverized fir cones, pine needles and the inner bark from cedar trees. Dried fungi are excellent, if finely powdered, and scorched or charred cotton or linen, especially ground finely, are also among the best. Where insects such as wood wasps have been boring into trees, the fine dust they produce is good tinder and powdery bird and bat droppings can also be used. The inside of birds' nests are usually lined with down feathers and ignite easily—dry field-mouse nests are also usable.

Whatever tinder you use MUST BE DRY. It is a good idea to carry tinder with you in a waterproof container. Always keep an eye open for tinder to collect.

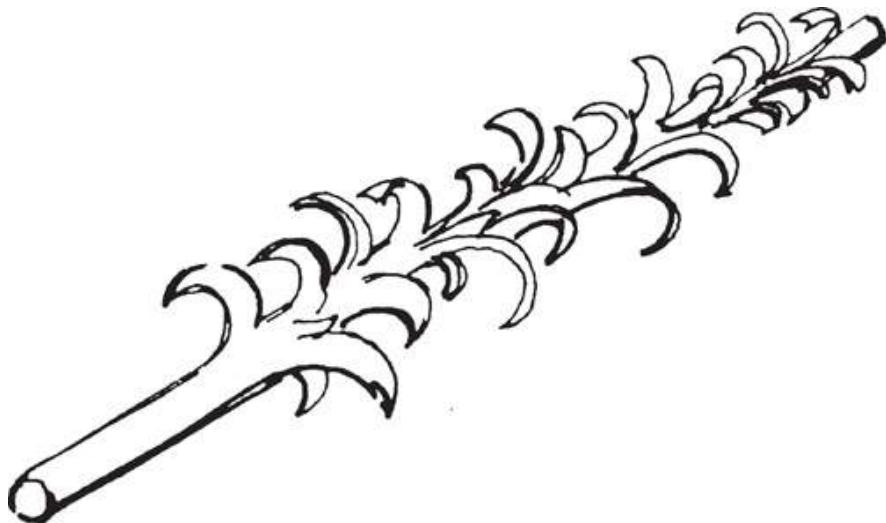
### **Kindling**

Kindling is the wood used to raise the flames from the tinder so that larger and less combustible materials can be burned.

The best kindling consists of small, dry twigs and the softer woods are preferable because they flare up quickly.

Those that contain resins burn readily and make fire-lighting a snap. The drawbacks of soft woods are that they tend to produce sparks and burn very fast. You may need more to get the main fuel going and they are soon consumed if they form the main fuel themselves.

Don't collect kindling straight from the earth, it is almost always damp. Take it from standing deadwood. If the outside is damp, shave until the dry middle is reached.



## MAKE FIRE STICKS

*Shave sticks with shallow cuts to 'feather' them. Preparing kindling in this way makes it catch light more freely and establishes a fire quickly.*

## FUEL

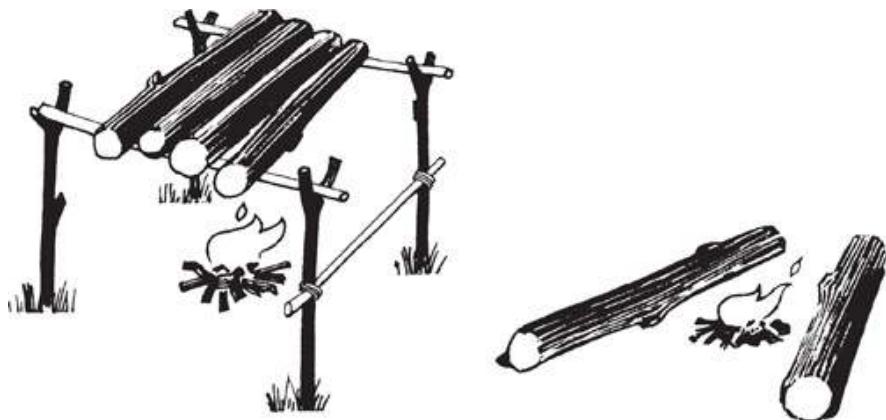
Use dry wood from standing trees to get the fire going. Once it is established you can use greener wood or dry out damp wood.

As a general rule, the heavier the wood the more heat it will give—this applies to both dead and green wood. Mixing green and dry wood makes a long-lasting fire, which is especially useful at night.

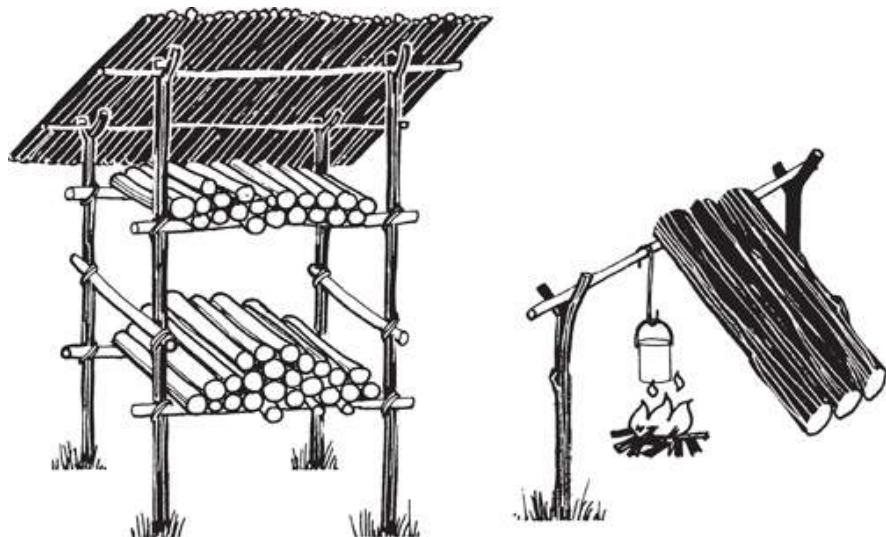
Hardwoods—hickory, beech or oak, for instance—burn well, give off great heat and last for a long time as hot coals. They keep a fire going through the night.

Softwoods tend to burn too fast and give off sparks. The worst spark-makers are cedar, alder, hemlock, spruce, pine, chestnut and willow.

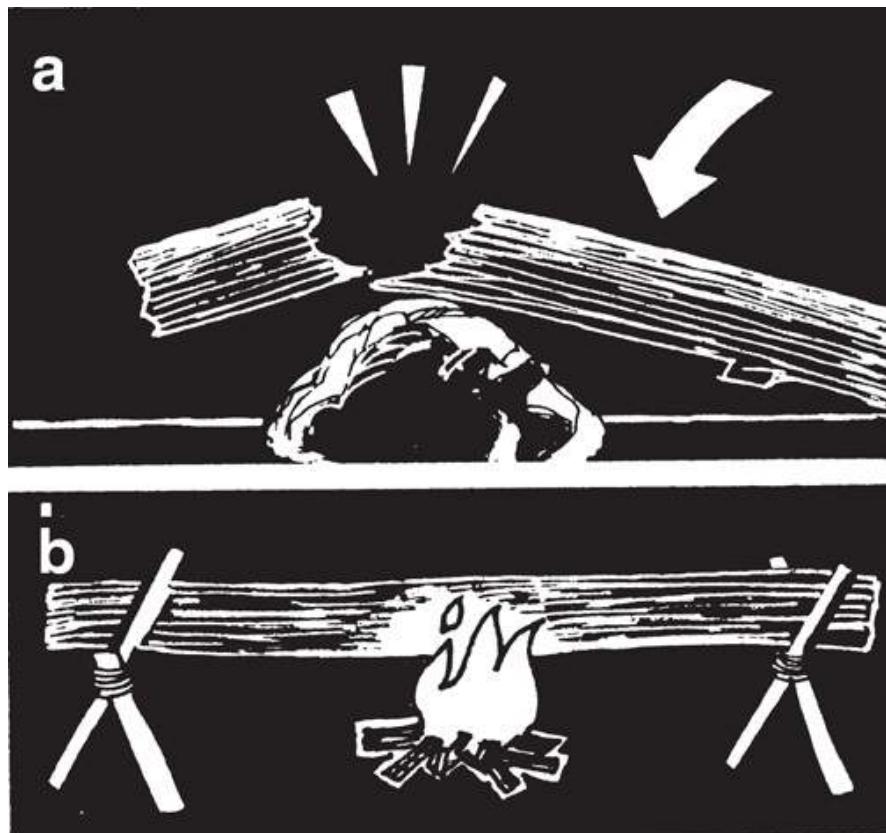
Remember that damp wood is sometimes advantageous, producing smoke to keep off flies, midges and mosquitoes and burning longer so that it keeps the fire in.



*Dry wood across two supports above a fire — not so close that it is set alight. Lay green logs at an angle beside the fire, tapering away from the wind to speed combustion of a sluggish fire while drying them.*



*Rest logs against a pot rail to dry. Build a wood shed — essential in wet weather. Set it close to the fire so that the fire's warmth will help dry the wood, but not so close that a spark could ignite it. Build two bays and use wood from one while the other batch dries.*



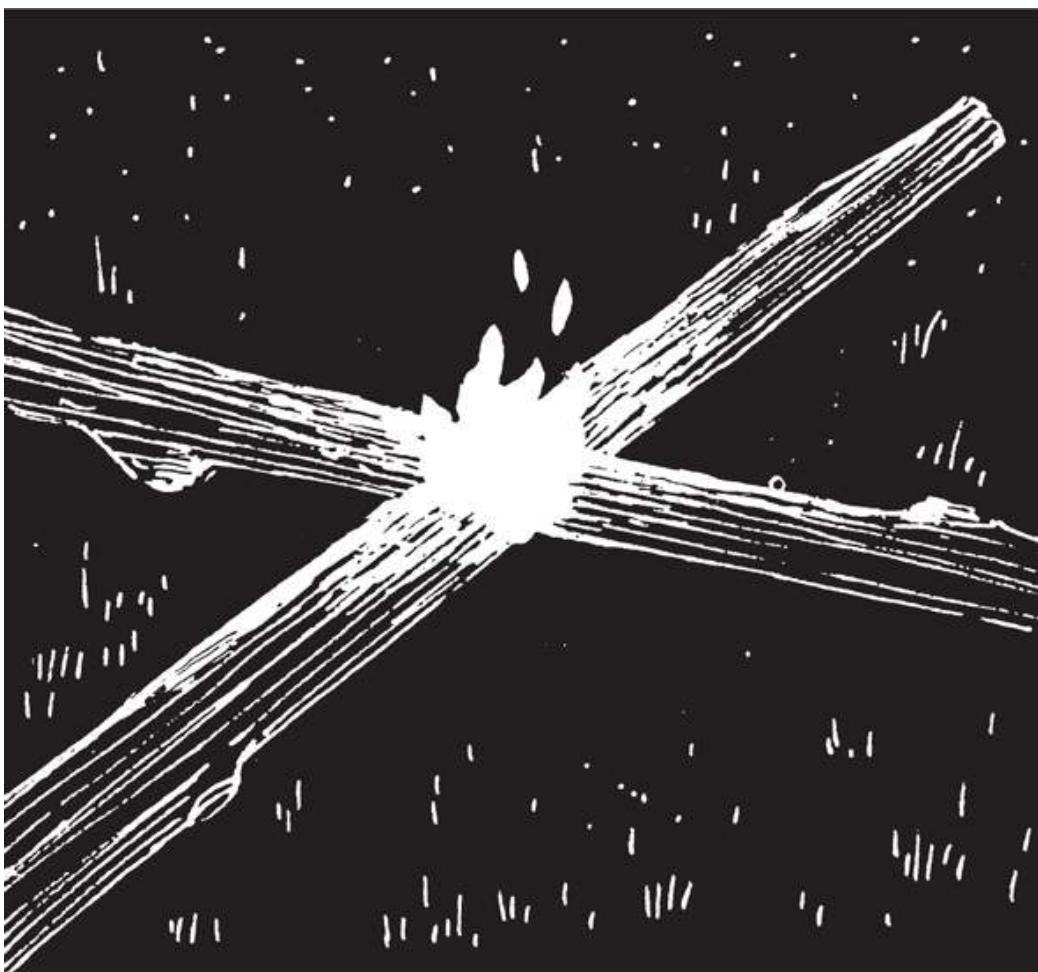
## **SAVE ENERGY**

*Don't waste energy chopping logs: Break them by smashing them over a rock (a).*

*If that does not work, feed them over the fire, letting them burn through in the middle (b) or, if they are not so long, feed them end first into the fire.*



If it is absolutely necessary to split logs in order to conserve fuel, an axe is not needed. Even quite a small knife placed on the end of a log and hit with another hard log may split it (c). Once begun, plug a wooden wedge in the opened gap and drive this downward to complete the split.



### STAR FIRE

The fire is started where the ends of large logs meet, then they are pushed inward as more fuel is needed.

When not required to produce strong heat they can be drawn apart leaving glowing embers for cooking in the centre.

To resurrect the fire push them together and they soon take flame again. This type of fire is used mainly to conserve fuel but also saves chopping wood.

### Other fuels

In areas where wood is scarce or unavailable other fuels must be found.

**Animal droppings:** These make excellent fuel—frontiersmen of the Wild West used ‘buffalo chips’ for their fires. Dry the droppings thoroughly for a good smokeless fire. You can mix them with grass, moss and leaves.

**Peat:** This is often found on well-drained moors. It is soft and springy underfoot and may be exposed on the edges of rocky outcrops—looking black and fibrous. It is easily cut with a knife. Peat needs good ventilation when burning.



*Stacked with plenty of air around it peat dries rapidly and is soon ready to burn.*

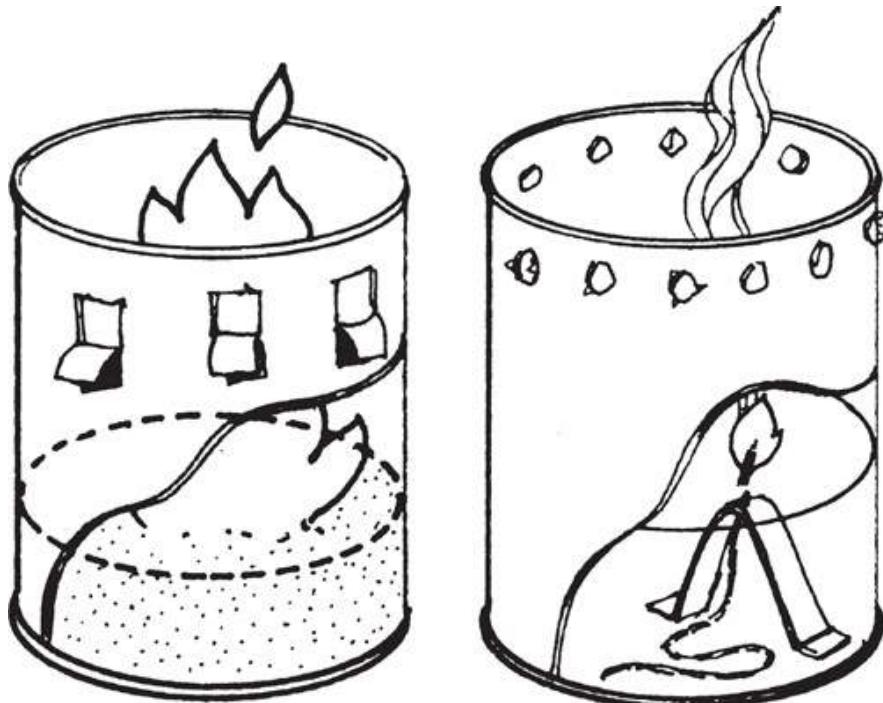
**Coal:** This is sometimes found on the surface—there are large deposits in the northern tundra.

**Shales:** These are often rich in oil and burn readily. Some sands also contain oil—they burn with a thick oily smoke which makes a good signal fire and also give off a good heat.

**Oils:** If you have had a mechanical failure and crashed or broken down with fuels intact you can burn petroleum, anti-freeze, hydraulic fluid and other combustible liquids. Even insect repellent is inflammable. Anti-freeze is an excellent primer for igniting heavier engine oils. With a little potassium permanganate (from your survival kit) you can set it alight in a few seconds.

In very cold areas drain oil from an engine sump before it congeals. If you have no container drain it on to the ground to use later in its solid state.

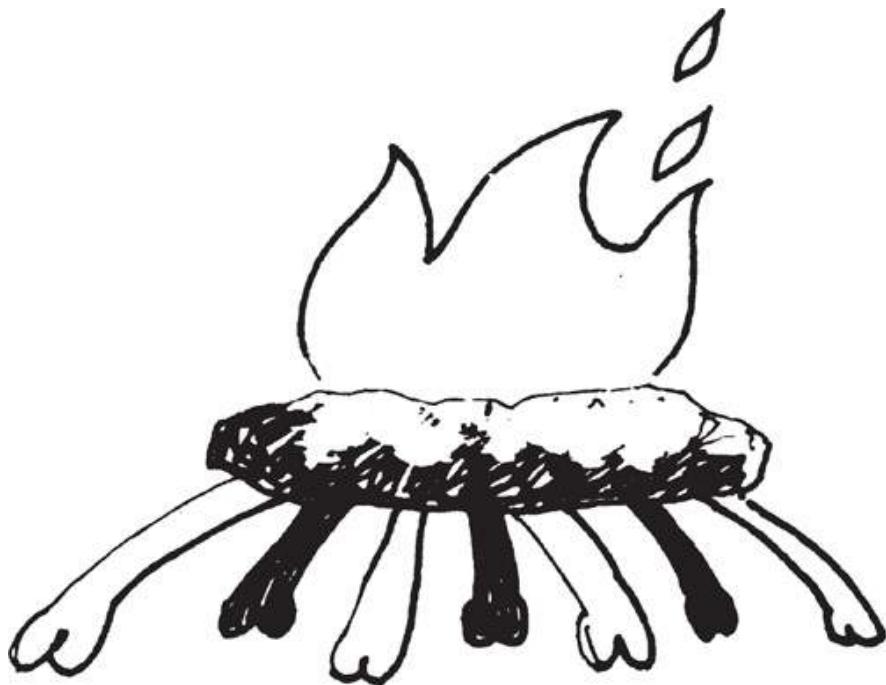
Tyres, upholstery, rubber seals and much of any wreckage can be burned. Soak less combustible materials in oil before trying to make them burn.



*Mix petrol with sand and burn it in a container as a stove, or dig a hole and make a fire pit.*

*Burn oil by mixing in petrol or anti-freeze. Do not set a light directly to liquid fuels but make a wick and let that provide the flame. The same goes for insect repellent.*

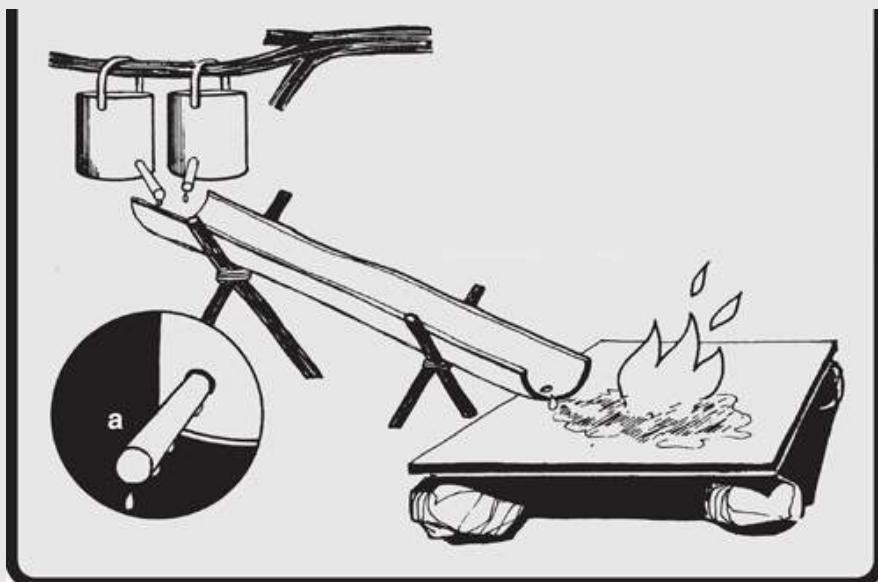
**Animal fats:** These can also be used with a wick in a suitably ventilated tin to make a stove. Bones can add bulk when fat is being burned as a fire (sometimes the only available fuel in polar regions).



*Start flame with tinder or a candle then place a network of bones over it to support the fat or blubber. Use only a little fat at first. Unless it is surplus, burning fat means sacrificing food value, but seal blubber spoils rapidly and makes good fuel.*

## BURNING OIL AND WATER

This mixture makes one of the hottest of all fires. Pierce a small hole in the base of a tin can for each liquid and fit a tapered stick into it to govern the flow (a). The oil and water run down a trough on to a metal plate. Pulling the stick out increases the flow, pushing it in reduces it. Try 2-3 drops water: 1 drop oil.



*First light a small fire under the plate to get it hot. The mixture becomes highly volatile when heated. Light it above the plate. This fire will burn almost anything.*

## FIRE-LIGHTING

Make a bed of tinder and form a wigwam of kindling around it. In a strong wind lean the kindling against a log on the leeside. Ignite the tinder. Once the kindling has caught add larger sticks. Or take a bundle of dry twigs, no thicker than a match, light them first and place them in the wigwam.



## MATCHES

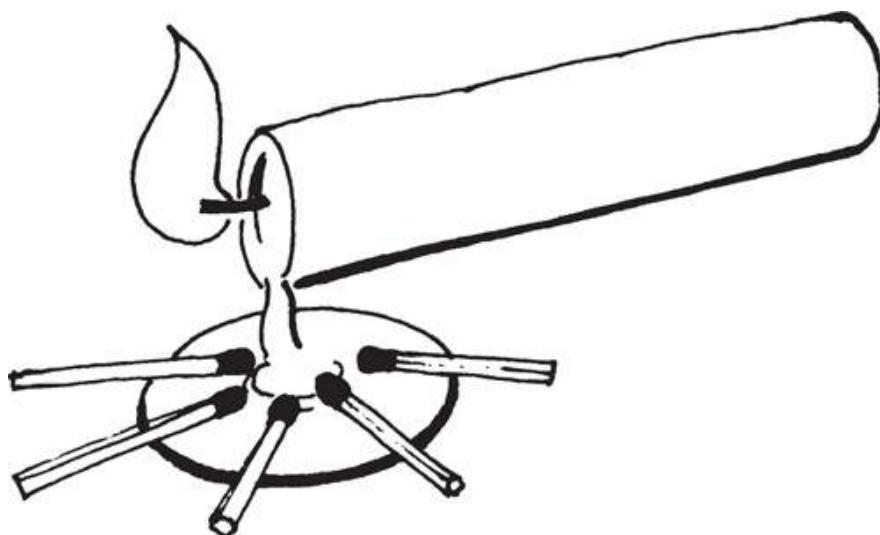
Matches are the easiest way to start a fire. Carry the non-safety 'strike anywhere' type and as many as possible. Pack them in waterproof containers so that they cannot rub or rattle and accidentally ignite. Waterproofing the matches themselves does both jobs.

Some people split all their matches in half and it has been claimed that one can be successfully divided into six. But do NOT risk wasting them—one that works is more use than six that don't!

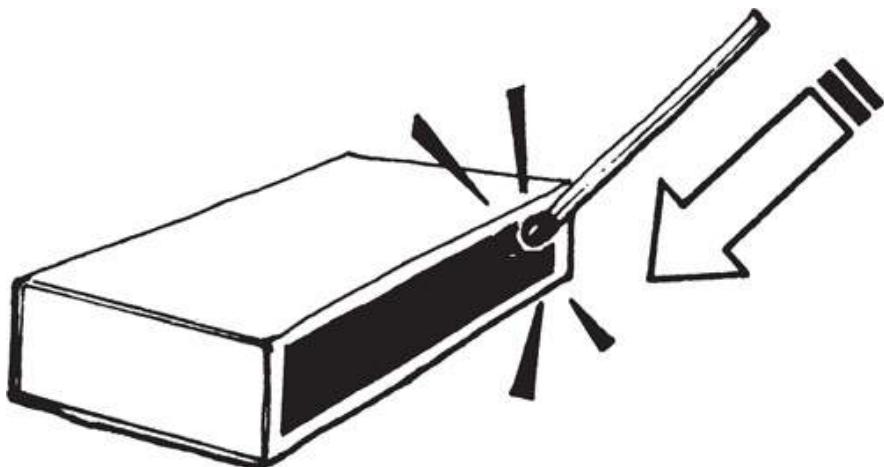
Strike split matches by pressing the business end against the striking surface with a finger. If this burns the finger be ready to cool it at once—in cold water, snow or even 'spit on it and blow'.

### Damp matches

If your hair is dry and not too greasy roll the damp match in it. Electricity should dry out the match.



*Waterproof matches by dripping candle wax on to them. Rip it off with a fingernail when about to strike one.*



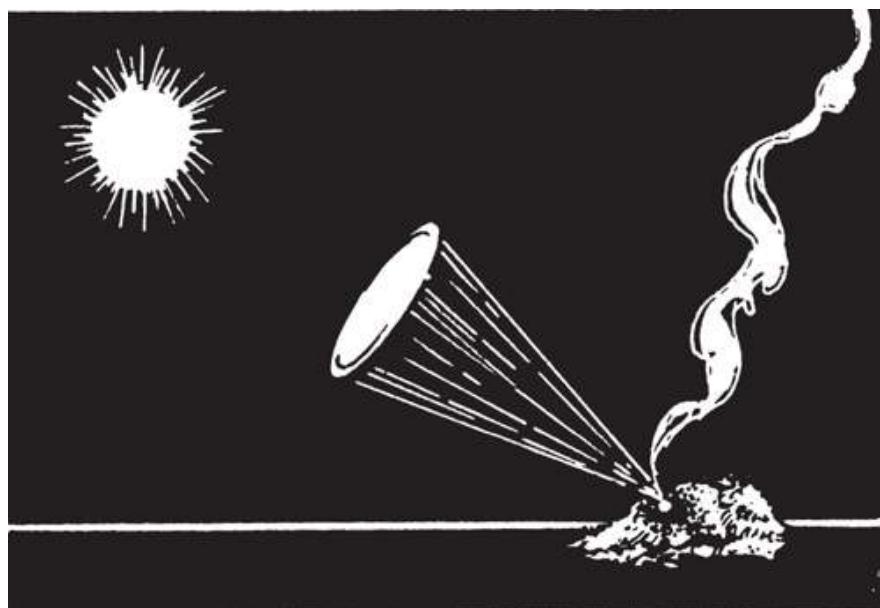
*Strike the blade against the flint (a), or draw the saw across the ridged surface of the flint supplied with it (b), close to tinder so that sparks fall on it.*

**REMEMBER:** Whenever you strike a match light a candle. Many things in turn can then be lit from it—saving matches. Place it in the wigwam of kindling to start a fire and remove it as soon as the flame spreads. Only the smallest amount is burned and even a small candle will last a long time.

However many lighters or fire-makers you carry, still pack as many matches as you can—you can't beat them. So-called everlasting matches can be used over and over again but sooner or later even they pack up. So carry ordinary matches as well. Work out which kind gives you the most strikes for the weight and room they take up.

### **Using a lens**

Strong direct sunlight, focussed through a lens, can produce sufficient heat to ignite your tinder. Accidental fires are caused by the sun shining through broken bottles on to dry leaves or pasture. Your survival kit magnifying glass or a telescope or camera lens will serve instead.



*Shield tinder from wind. Focus sun's rays to form the tiniest, brightest spot of light. Keep it steady. Blow on it gently as it begins to glow.*

### **Powder from ammunition**

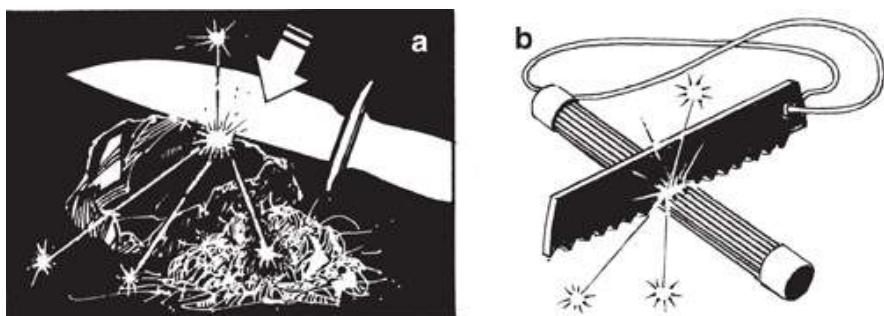
If you are carrying arms you can use the gunpowder propellant from a round to help ignite your tinder.



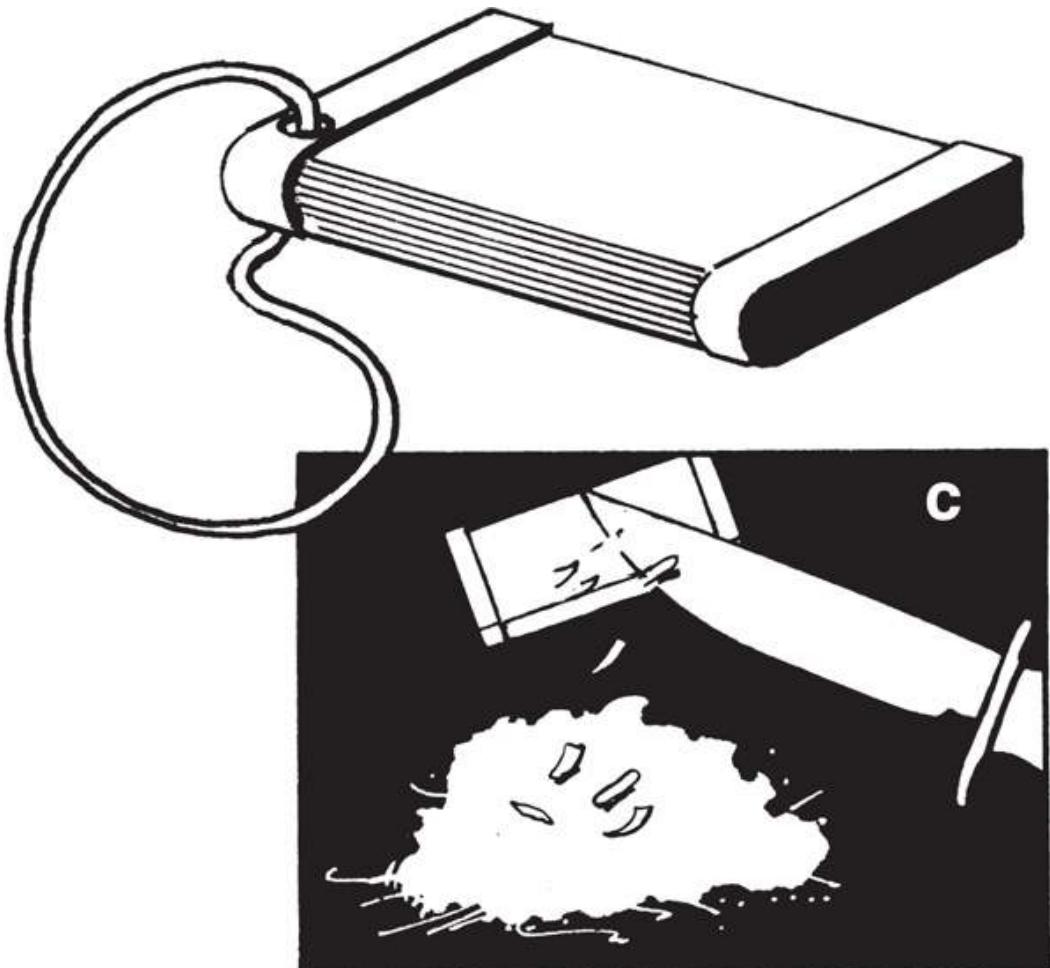
*Break open the round and pour the gunpowder on to your tinder before using your flint (a), or remove only half the powder and stuff a piece of cloth into the cartridge case (b). Chamber the round and fire as usual, into the ground. The cloth will be ejected smouldering. Place it on tinder with the remaining propellant and you will soon have a fire going.*

### **Flint and steel**

Flint is a stone found in many parts of the world. If it is struck vigorously with a piece of steel hot sparks fly off which will ignite dry tinder. A saw-edged blade can produce more sparks than an ordinary knife and should be in your kit. A block of magnesium with flint on its side is an even more efficient device—magnesium burns very strongly.



*Strike the blade against the flint (a), or draw the saw across the ridged surface of the flint supplied with it (b), close to tinder so that sparks fall on it.*



*With a magnesium block, scrape slivers of magnesium on to tinder first (c), then use the saw to produce the sparks.*

### Battery fire-lighting

A spark from a car battery can start your fire, and torch and radio batteries should have sufficient power. You need two lengths of wire, which you simply attach to the terminals. If you cannot find any wire you could do it with a couple of spanners or other metal implements. Unless you have long pieces of wire, take the battery out of the vehicle first.



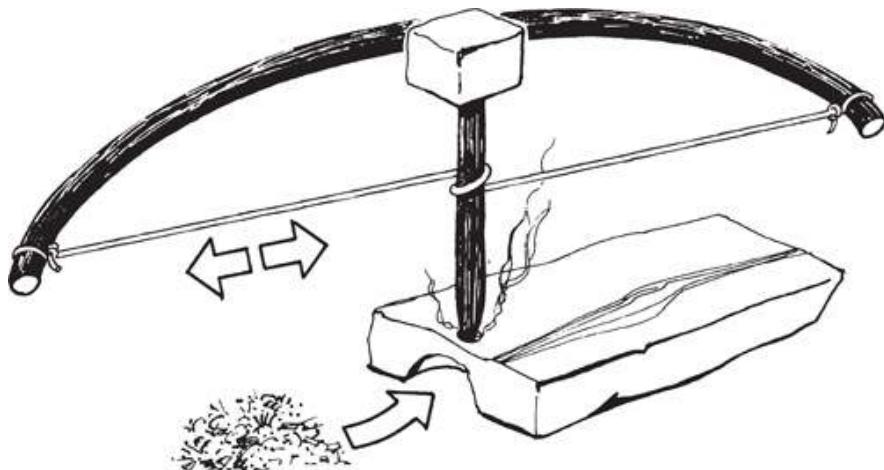
*Slowly bring the bare ends of the two pieces of wire together. Just before they touch, a spark will jump across. You must catch it on your tinder. A small piece of cloth with a little petrol on it makes the best tinder, the petrol vapour igniting from the spark.*

### Fire bow

A simple fire-making technique, but one that needs lots of practise. The friction of a hardwood spindle rotated on a softwood base produces first fine wood-dust tinder, then heat. Balsa, pine and bamboo are typically suitable softwoods; oak, ash and beech are hardwoods. Both must be dry.

Gouge a small depression at the near end of the baseboard and cut a cavity below it in which to place the tinder. Shape the spindle evenly. Make the bow from a pliable shoot such as hazel or bamboo and the string from hide, twine or a bootlace. You also need a hollowed piece of stone or wood, or a small jar to steady the top of the spindle and exert downward pressure.

Wind the bowstring once around the spindle. Place the spindle in the depression, hold the steady piece over its end and bear lightly down on it while the other hand moves the bow backwards and forwards. This makes the spindle spin. Increase the speed as the spindle starts drilling through the wood. When it begins to enter the cavity apply more pressure and bow vigorously.



*Keep on bowing until unable to continue. If successful the tip, glowing like a cigarette, will drop onto your tinder, which, if you gently blow on it, will burst into flame. You must keep the spindle upright and steady.*

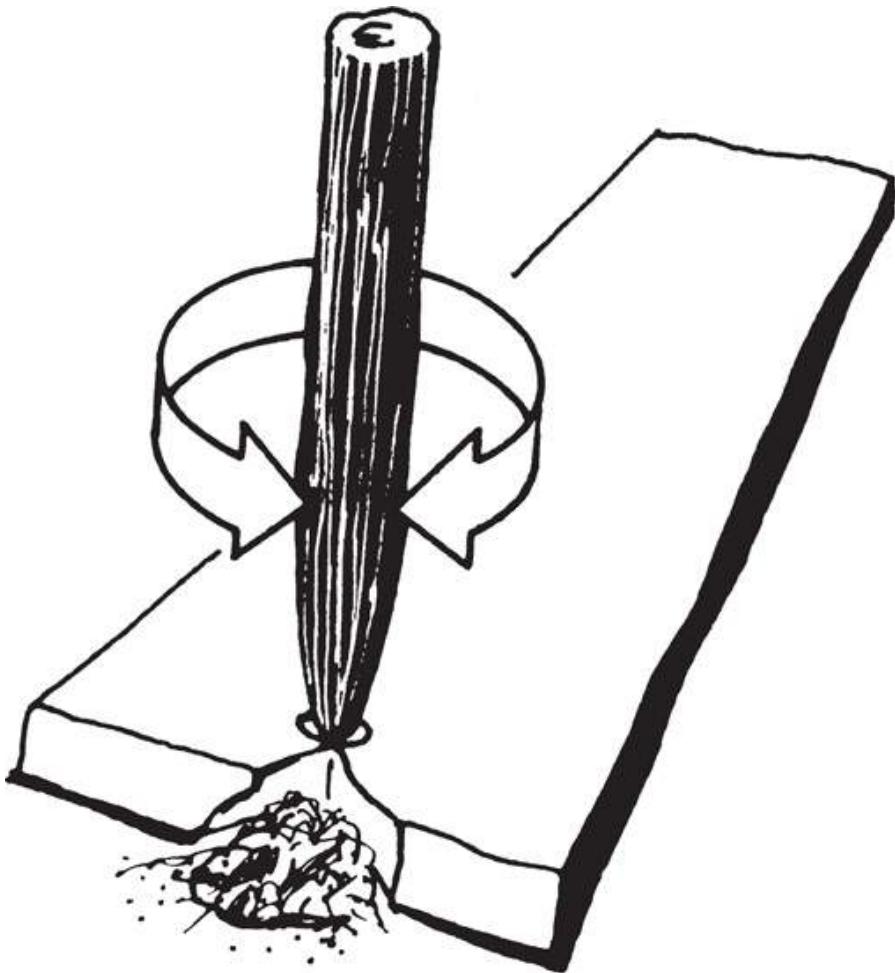
*It helps to kneel with one foot on the baseboard and to lock the spindle arm on to this leg while bowing with the other hand. Keep the bow strokes very even.*

*A V-shaped notch, as shown in the baseboard of the hand-drill method, is also recommended.*



## **Hand drill**

This variation on the fire bow is useful in dry territories with low humidity and little rainfall—making everything ‘tinder’ dry.



In a baseboard of hardwood cut a V-shaped collecting notch which will hold tinder, but still allow air to reach it. Make a small depression near it. For a spindle use a stem of hollow softer wood with a soft pith core.

Roll the spindle between the palms of the hands, running them down it with each burst of spinning to press the spindle into the depression in the baseboard.



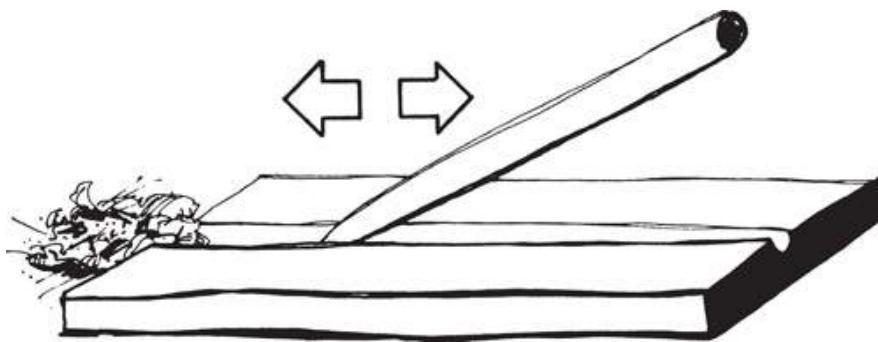
When the friction makes the spindle tip glow red, blow gently to ignite the tinder around it. Putting a pinch of sand in the spindle hole increases the friction and speeds the heating of the tinder.

A cavity below the spindle, as shown for the fire-bow method, is also recommended.

### Fire plough

This method of ignition also works by friction. Cut a straight groove in a soft wood baseboard and then 'plough'

the tip of a hardwood shaft up and down it. This first produces tinder and then eventually ignites it.



### Fire-lighting with chemicals

A survivor's pack is not likely to include a complete chemistry set but there are some very common chemicals that, if they are available, can be used to produce combustion. The following mixtures can all be ignited by grinding them between rocks or putting them under the friction point in any of the types of fire drill already described. Mix them carefully, avoiding contact with any metal objects. All are susceptible to dampness and must be kept dry.

## WARNING

Handle these chemicals carefully, sodium chlorate in particular—it ignites from percussion, so avoid shaking it up or letting it spill. Spilled weed-killer on a hard path has been known to ignite when stepped on or a watering can put down on it!

**Potassium chlorate and sugar** in a mixture of 3:1 by volume is a fierce-burning incendiary which can also be ignited by dripping a few drops of sulphuric acid onto the mixture.

**Potassium permanganate and sugar** mixed 9:1 is less sensitive and temperature is a critical factor in how long it takes to ignite. The addition of glycerine will also produce ignition.

**Sodium chlorate and sugar** mixed 3:1.

- Sulphuric acid is found in car batteries
- Potassium chlorate is found in some throat tablets—their contents may be listed on the pack. Try crushing one and seeing if it works.
- Potassium permanganate is included in your survival kit.
- Glycerine is a constituent of anti-freeze.
- Sodium chlorate is a weed-killer.

## TYPES OF FIRE

However quickly you want to get a fire going, take time, while you gather fuel and get the tinder ready, to choose the best location and the best type of fire.

### Fires for warmth

With a single fire outdoors only surfaces facing it are warmed. With two fires you can sit between them—but that would use a lot of fuel and, no matter which way the wind is blowing, you are bound to be covered in smoke. Build one fire and use a reflector.



*A good reflector, close to the fire, not only reflects heat back to you but also helps to make the smoke go upwards, drawn by hot currents of air, instead of getting in your eyes. Use a reflector to direct heat into a sleeping shelter.*



*The inexperienced often build a fire up against a tree stump or a rock — don't, build the fire away from it and sit between the two so that the rock reflects the heat and warms your back. Add a reflector.*



*If there is no ready-made reflector, build one — and build another reflector on the other side of the fire to reflect as much as possible of its heat back to you.*

### **Snake hole fire**

This is a shielded fire that produces a good draught and burns almost anything once lit. In the side of a firm earth bank excavate a chamber about 45cm (18in) deep. From above drive a stick down into the chamber, manoeuvre it about a little to make a chimney, removing the spoil that falls below. Build the fire in the chamber.



*A snake hole fire is good for burning rubbish and the smoke for preserving meat and fish. The snake hole fire entrance is best sited downwind in windy conditions.*

### Cooking fires

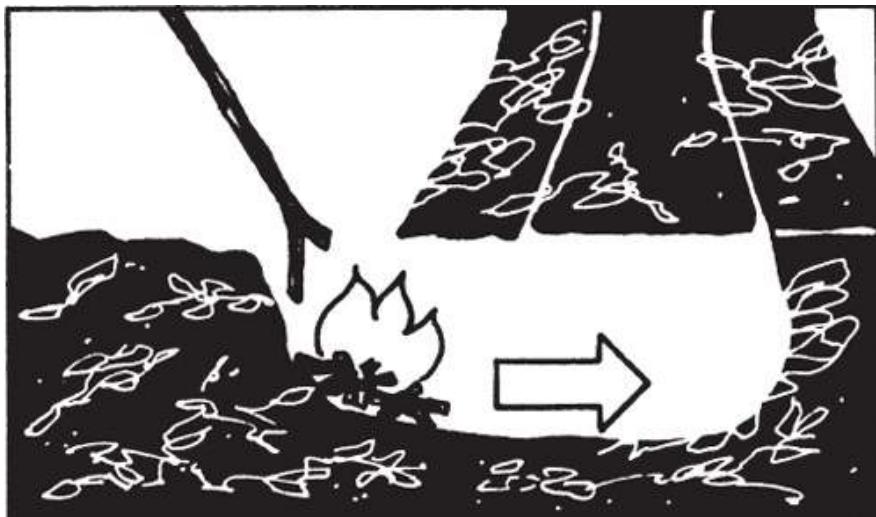
These cooking fires are also good for heating.

### Yukon stove

This fire, once lit, will burn almost anything. It takes a lot of effort to build but is worth it for the whole structure gives off good heat and the top can be used for cooking.



Dig a hole circular in shape and about 24cm (9in) deep with a channel on one side leading down to it. Set rocks up all round the outer edge of the main hole and build up a funnel, bridging over the channel and gradually sloping inwards. Let the upper courses begin to open out again. Seal all the spaces between the rocks with earth. The fire is shielded, the chimney creating a good draught.

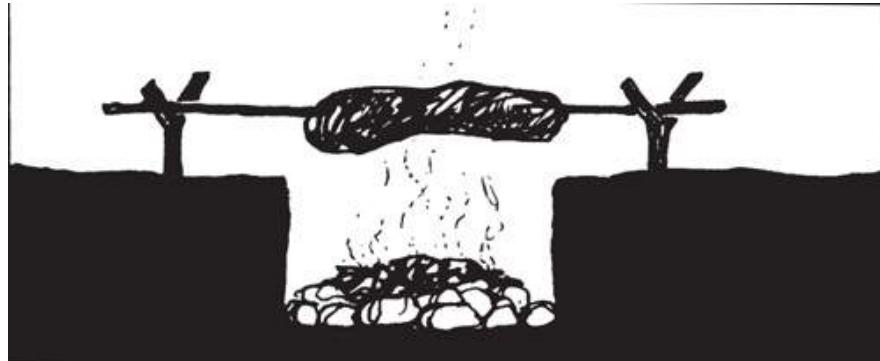
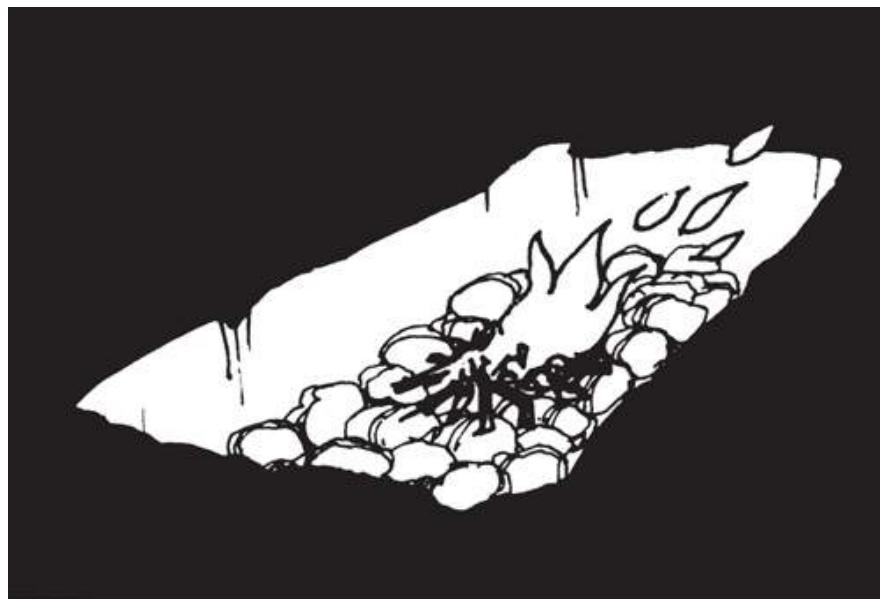


*Light the fire first in the channel. When it gets going push it beneath the chimney. Fuel is then fed in through the top of the chimney and the rate of burning is controlled by opening or closing the top.*

*This fire leaves very little ash and will burn a very long time before it needs clearing out.*

### Trench fire

This fire is sheltered from strong wind by being below ground level. Dig a trench about 30 x 90cm (12 x 36in) and about 30cm (12in) deep plus the depth of a layer of rocks with which you now line the bottom. Build the fire on top of the rocks. Even when it has died down they will remain hot and make an excellent grill.



*A spit placed across the embers is excellent for roasting.*

### Hobo stove

This stove provides a heat source several people can huddle around and its top can be used for cooking. To

make it you need something like a 5-gallon oil drum.



*Punch holes in the bottom and around the bottom of the sides of the drum for draught to enter. Cut out a panel on one side, about 5cm (2in) from the bottom through which to stoke the fire.*

*Punch holes in the top if to be used only for heating, but make them on the upper part of one side if you don't want smoke coming through the top.*

*Set the whole drum on a ring of stones so that there is plenty of draught beneath.*

## **SPONTANEOUS COMBUSTION**

Fire sometimes breaks out spontaneously in a compacted heap of wet hay. It can be produced in cotton soaked in linseed oil provided the atmosphere is warm and dry, but temperature can be critical. Either it will burst into flames within a couple of hours or not at all. Not a reliable way of fire-lighting—but a risk to be aware of.

# **COOKING**

---

**W**hen food is heated it loses nutritional value—the more the heat the greater the loss—so nothing should be cooked longer than is necessary to make it palatable unless it is suspect and being cooked to kill germs and parasites or to neutralize poisons.

Boiling vegetables destroys their vitamin C content and roasting meat removes its all-important fat, but we are used to eating our food cooked and a hot meal is unsurpassed for raising morale. It would take great discipline to eat many things raw that you had not previously considered foods, but a frog, grubs or rats do not seem too bad once cooked.

Cooking not only makes many foods more appetizing to taste, see and smell, it softens the muscle fibres in meat, makes protein more easy to digest and—most important—it destroys bacteria and parasites that may be present.

If the ground is lush, animal foods are more likely to carry parasites. Pigs, especially, carry worms and flukes. Thorough boiling will destroy them, though at the loss of food value. Some foods must never be eaten raw—nettles and several other plants, for instance—but should always be cooked to neutralize harmful substances which they contain.

Your particular situation will determine whether to cook or not. If you cannot face eating something raw, or if food is plentiful but limited in type, cook it to make it more palatable. Relieve boredom by varying cooking instructions.

Cooking methods will depend upon the foodstuff and the facilities you have or can create. Type of fire, utensil support and cooking methods must all be matched.

Cooking requires a slow heat. Use the flame of a fire to boil water then let the fierce flames die down and use embers and hot ash for cooking.

**REMEMBER:** NEVER leave your fire unattended when cooking—you cannot afford to ruin food.

Once having lit a fire, **ALWAYS** have something boiling on it—unless water is in short supply—for hot water is always an asset: hot drinks are always cheering and you will find a multitude of uses from sterilizing wounds to making poultry plucking easier.

Do NOT just balance a can on the fire—if it tips over you could put your fire out, quite apart from losing its contents. Support vessels on firm rocks or suspend them over the fire.

## **Boiling**

Cooking in boiling water requires a container. Tin cans and metal boxes are ideal. Make a handle, hang them from a pot support or use pot tongs to take them on and off the fire (see [Useful utensils](#)). Puncture holes in pots can be repaired by hammering in small plugs of wood—when wet they will expand and stop leaks. If no metal containers are available, a thick length of bamboo holds liquids well. Containers can also be made from birch bark—but be careful that they do not boil dry.



*To cook in a bamboo stem, angle it across the heat of the fire, supporting it on a forked stick driven into the ground.*

Although boiling does destroy some food elements it conserves the natural juices and retains all the fat—provided that you drink all the liquid as well as eat the remaining solids. Each time you throw away cooking water you lose valuable nutrients, though you will have to discard it if boiling out toxic substances. Boiling will make tough and stringy roots and old game softer and more edible. It will kill worms and flukes and can even make spoiled meat fit to eat.

If you frighten a feeding animal from its kill, you can eat the remaining meat provided that you cut the meat up and boil it for at least 30 minutes. If desperate for food any dead animal that is not actually decomposing can be risked if you use only the large muscle areas. Cut them into 2.5cm (1in) cubes and then boil briskly for at least 30 minutes. Eat only a little, then wait for half an hour to see if there are any ill effects—most toxins affect the digestive system in that time or less. If there are no ill effects tuck in.

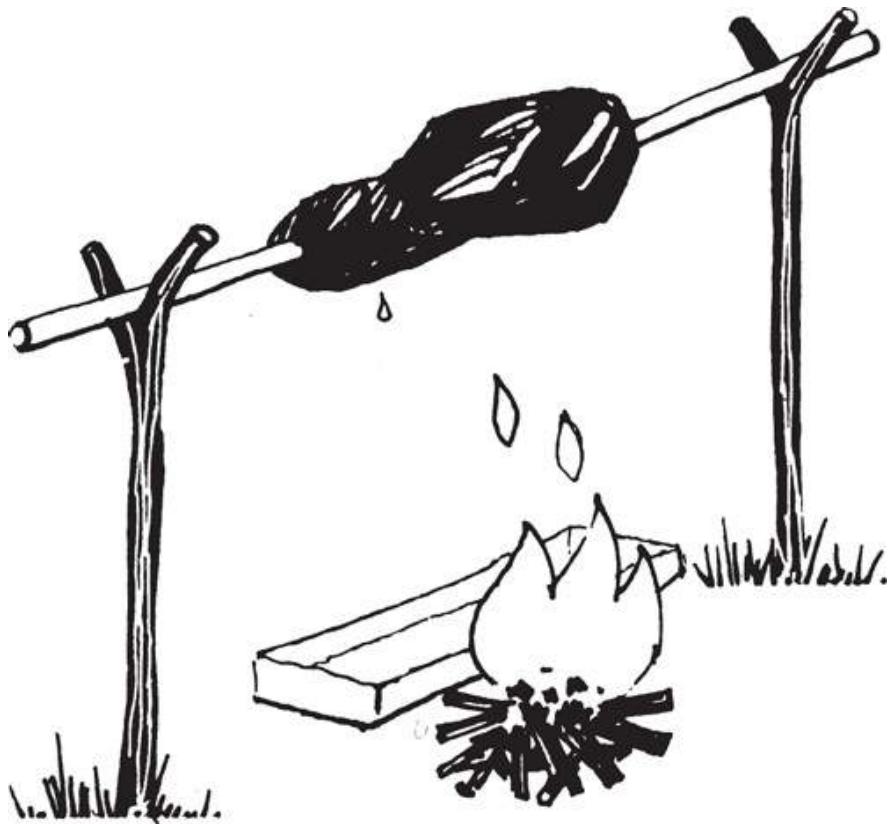
Part-boiling vegetables that you intend to cook by other means will speed up cooking times. (For boiling water when no fire proof containers are available see [\*Hangi method\*](#).)

## **Roasting**

Roasted meat cooks in its own fat. The easiest method is to skewer the meat on a spit and turn it over the hot embers of a fire or beside a blazing fire where it is hot enough to cook. Continually turning the meat keeps the fat moving over the surface. Roasting makes a very tasty dish but has two disadvantages.

Valuable fat is lost unless a drip tray is placed beneath the spit. Regularly baste the meat with fat from the tray.

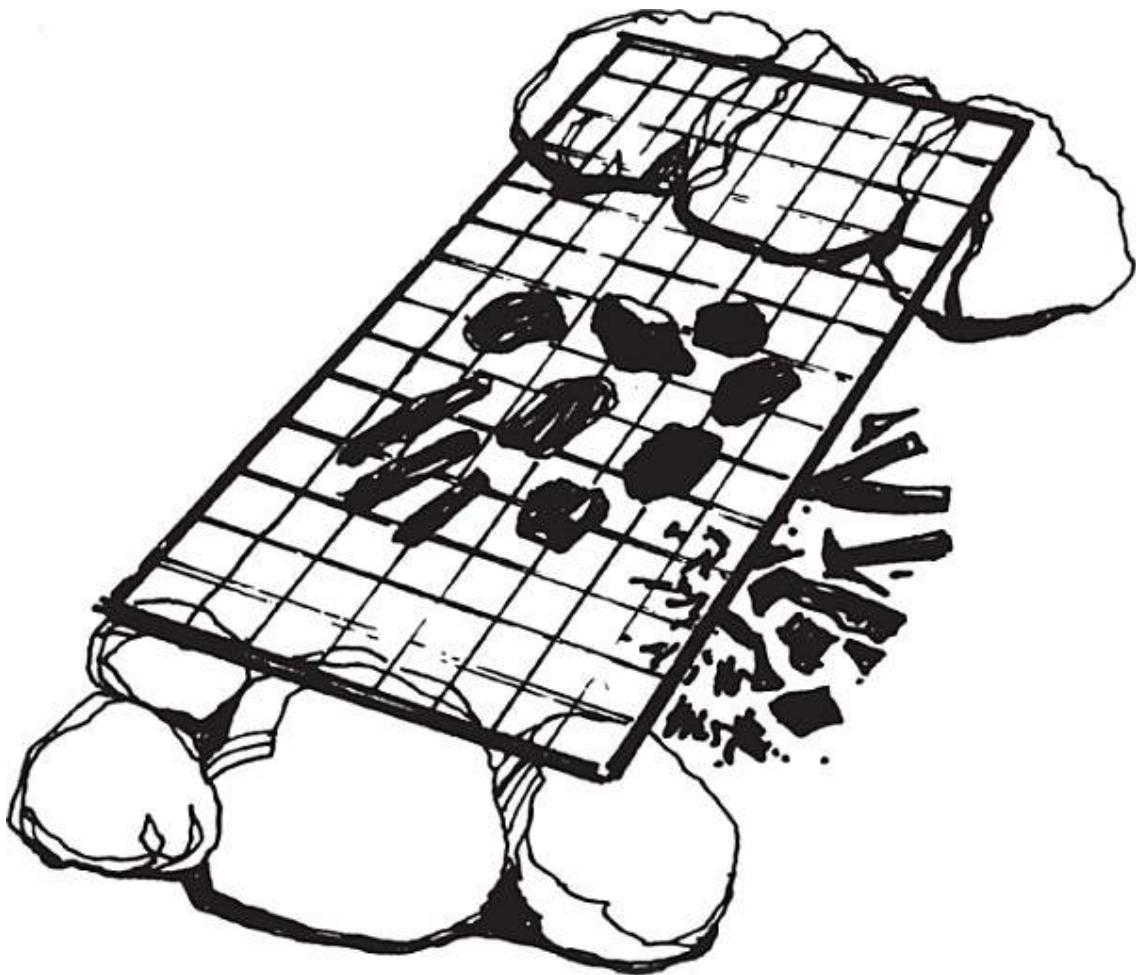
Roasting by a fierce fire can cook and seal the outside, the inner flesh remaining undercooked, leaving harmful bacteria alive. A slow roast is preferable, and if cooking continues after the outer meat has been cut off the inner flesh can go on cooking.



*The fire should be slightly to one side of food to allow for a drip tray to catch valuable fat.*

## **Grilling**

Grilling is a quick way of cooking large amounts of food but it requires a support—such as a mesh of wire—rested on rocks over the embers of the fire. It should only be used when food is plentiful since it wastes most of the fat from the meat. Hot rocks beside the fire can be used as grilling surfaces or food skewered on sticks and held over the fire.



*If no wire mesh is available, make a grid of very green sticks or rest a long stick on a forked support so that it can hold food over the fire. Wrap food around the stick. You can also barbecue meat and vegetables on a stick supported across glowing embers by a forked stick on each side.*

### **Baking**

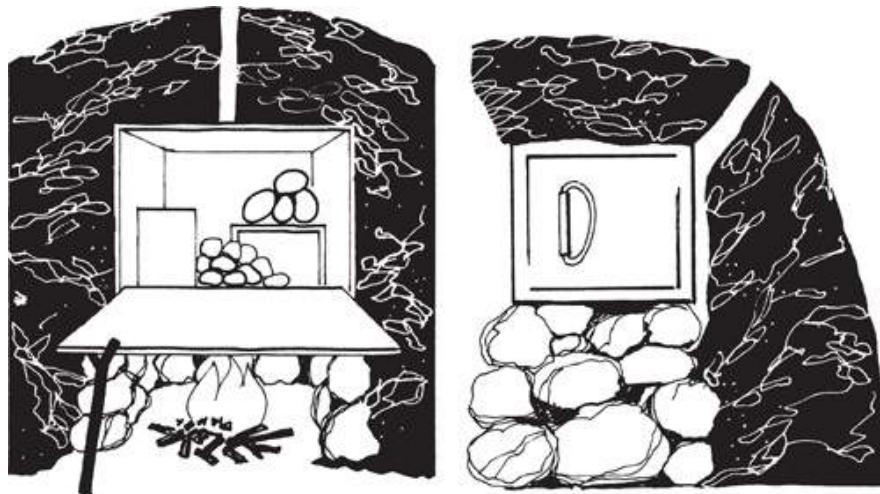
You need an oven for baking, but if time and materials are available this is a good way of cooking. Meat should be cooked on a dish and the fat which runs out used to baste it. It is ideal for tough, stringy meat. Cooked for a long time on a steady heat the meat becomes more tender. Baking is also very suitable for root vegetables.

If meat is placed in a tin containing a little water to be cooked in the oven this is a form of braising.

Use an oven to cook several different things at once.

### **Metal box oven**

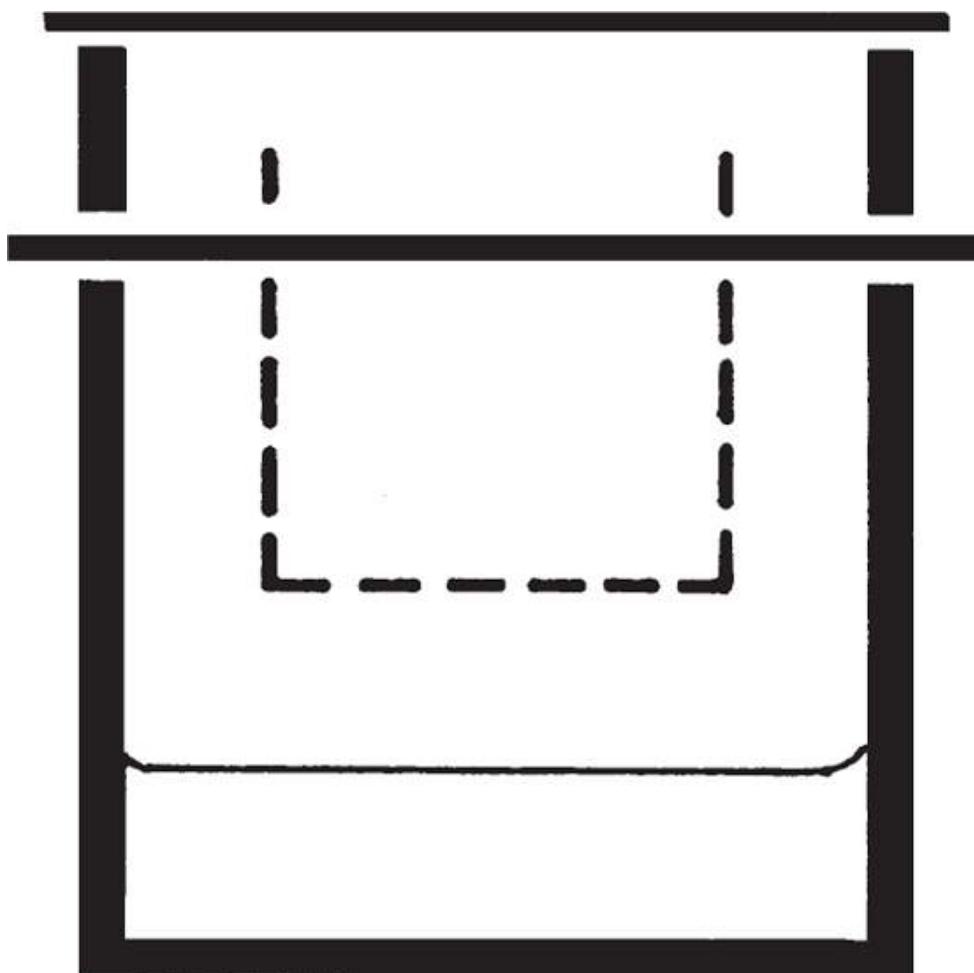
A large food tin or metal box with a hinged lid makes an excellent improvised oven. Army survivors found an ammunition box ideal. If the lid is hinged and has a catch on it that you can use as a handle, you could set it up to open sideways. It will probably be easier, especially if it has no catch or you have to improvise hinges, to let it open downwards. If you place a rock or other support in front, to rest it on, you will have a convenient shelf. You can always prop it closed if there is no catch, for you do not want a tightly sealed fit—which could build up dangerous pressure inside. If no tin or box is available you could make a clay dome, like an Indian tandoori oven. To make it hot set a fire inside and scrape this out before cooking. Leave a smallish aperture which can be easily sealed while baking.



*Stand the tin on some rocks so that a fire can be lit beneath it. Build up rocks and earth — or, better, clay — around back and sides and over it, but leaving a space behind for heat and smoke to move around the back. Use a stick to make a chimney hole from above to the space at the back.*

### **Steaming**

Steaming does not overcook so preserves nutritional values. It is an excellent way of cooking fish and green vegetables. Fresh young leaves take very little cooking. The foodstuff needs to be suspended in the steam from boiling water.



*Make a simple steamer by punching holes in a can and suspending it inside a larger can, or putting something in the bottom of the larger can to keep the inner one above the water. Cover the outer can so that steam is not dissipated, but not so tightly that it is sealed or pressure could build up and cause it to explode.*



*The compartmented sections of bamboo also make an excellent steamer. Make a comparatively small hole between the sections, but big enough to let water through to fill the bottom section. Make a lid (not too tight) for the top. Water boiled in the lowest section will produce steam to cook food in the top one.*

### Frying

Frying is an excellent way of varying diet, if fat is available and you have a container to fry in. Any sheet of metal that you can fashion into a curve or give a slight lip to will serve. In some areas, you may find a large leaf which contains enough oil not to dry out before the cooking is done—banana leaves are excellent surfaces to fry eggs upon. Try leaves out before you risk valuable food on them and, if you do use one, fry only over embers, not over flames.

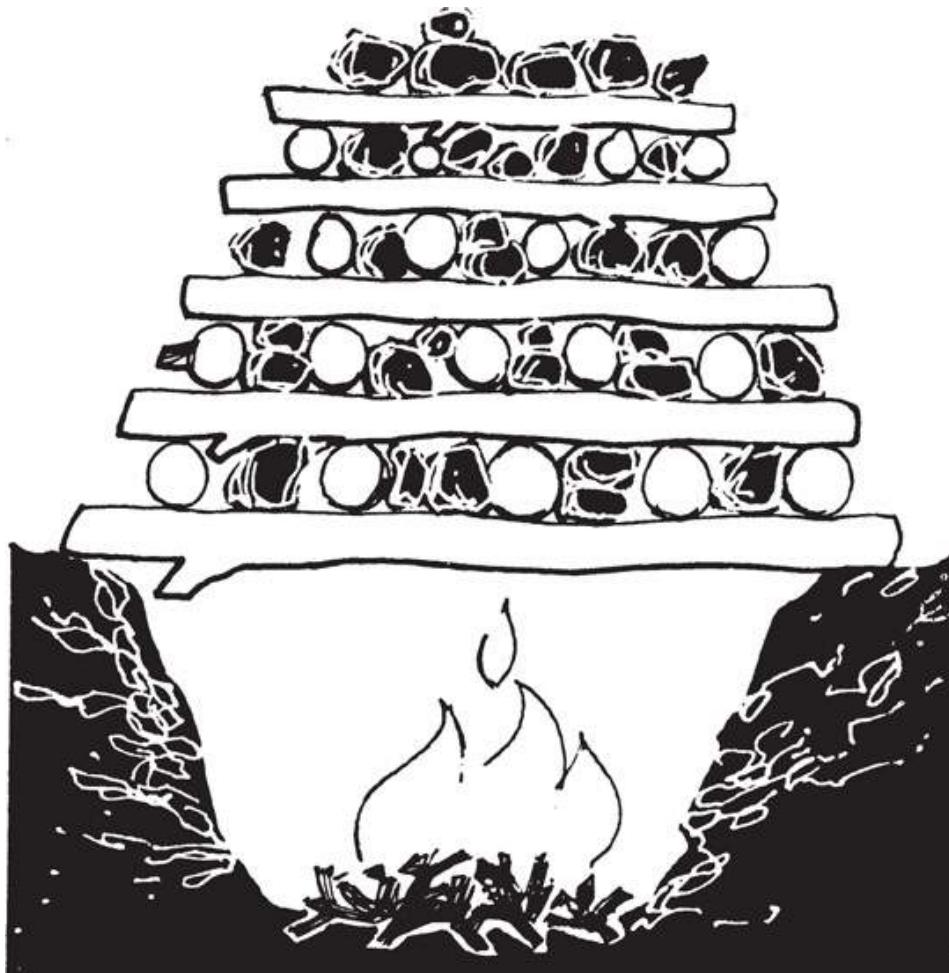
### Cooking in clay

Wrapping food in clay is a method that requires no utensils and offers a tasty alternative even when you have them. After wrapping in a ball of clay, food is placed in the embers of a fire. The heat radiates through the clay which protects the food so that it does not scorch or burn.

Animals must be cleaned and gutted first but need not be otherwise prepared: when the clay is removed a hedgehog's spines or a fish's scales will remain embedded in it. With small birds, the clay does your plucking for you—but feathers provide insulation and may prevent a big bird being properly cooked. Cooking root vegetables in this way will remove their skins—losing important food value.

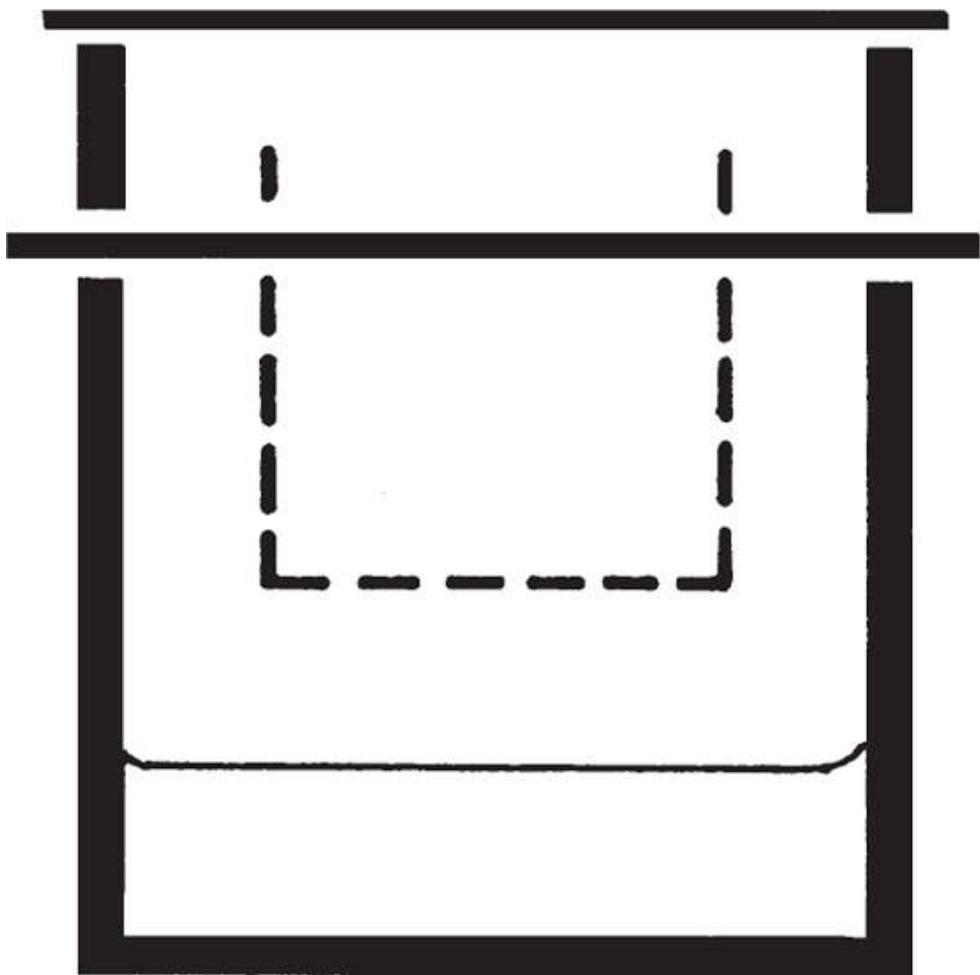
### Hangi method

This is another way of cooking without utensils. Like the clam bake of the United States and traditional Maori and South Pacific methods it involves heating stones. It requires kindling, logs and round rocks or stones about the size of a fist. Do not use soft, porous or flaky stones which might explode on heating.



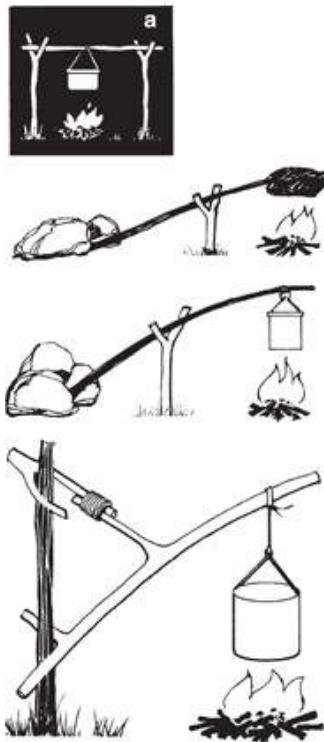
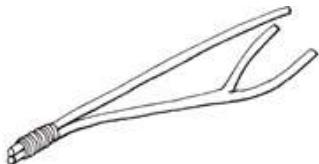
*Dig an oval-shaped hole with rounded sides 45–60cm deep (18–24in) and place kindling at the bottom. Lay logs across the hole, place another layer of logs at right angles to them, interspersing them with stones. Make another layer of logs and build up five or six more alternating layers, topping them off with stones.*

When the kindling is set alight the logs will burn, heating the stones above them, until, eventually, all falls down into the pit. Remove the burning embers and ash. Now, place food on top of the hot rocks, meat to the centre and vegetables towards the outer edge. There must be a gap between the food and the earth. Lay saplings across the pit and place sacking, leaves and so forth on top of them, covering the lot with the earth which you excavated to keep the heat in. The hole now acts rather like a pressure cooker. After 1½ hours remove the cover—your meal will be cooked.



### **Boiling water in a hangi**

If you have no container in which to boil water you can make use of the hangi. Whatever you have collected water in, provided that it does not melt (so that rules out plastic but includes other kinds of waterproof fabric), can be gathered up and tied so that the water does not spill and placed in the hangi). It will take about 1½ hours to boil but the fabric will not burn through.



## TONGS

Choose two branches, both with a natural curve, and lash them together so that they want to spring apart at the free ends. Or use a tapering piece of wood between them under the lashings to hold them apart. If one has a forked end the grip will be improved. Use for holding pots, hot rocks and logs.

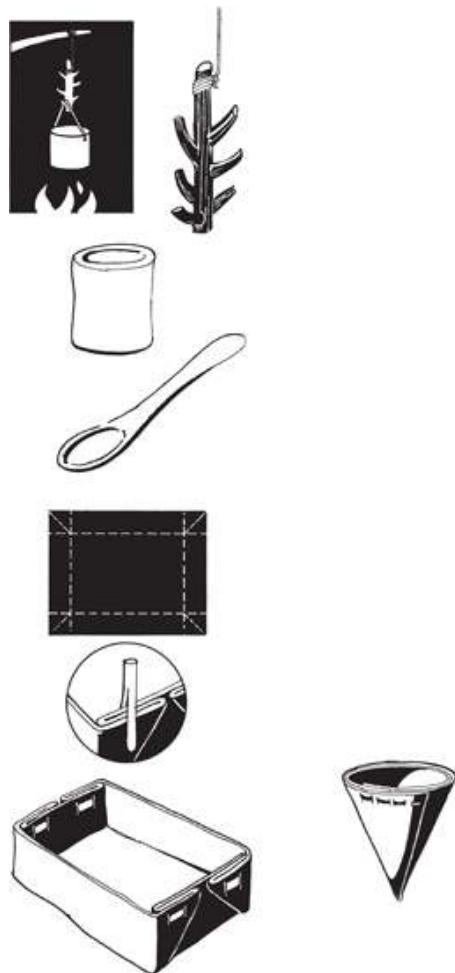
## POT ROD

To give more variable access to the fire than a rail over it (a), drive a sturdy forked stick into the ground near the fire — but not so close as to catch alight. Rest a much longer stick across it with one end over the fire. Drive the bottom end of the longer stick into the ground and prevent it from springing up with heavy rocks. Cut a groove near the tip to prevent pots from slipping off, or — to be safer — tie on a strong hook.

Two or three sticks could lean over the fire at different heights with meat or vegetables attached.

## SWINGING POT HOLDER

This can be made from two forked sticks and a firm upright driven into the ground. Bind the branches together so that the forks fit in opposite directions on the upright. The cantilever action will maintain the height you set it at, and a push sideways will swing the pot away from the flames. With a longer upright you could control cooking height also.



### VARIABLE POT HOOK

*Since the distance between the fire and the food will affect the speed at which the food cooks, make this hanging device so that you can control your cooking.*

*Cut a strong piece with several branches from a small tree or bush and trim the branches to 10–12cm (4–5in). Strip off the bark, which may hide a rotten branch.*

### BAMBOO CUP

*Cut a section of bamboo just below a natural joint and then cut just below the next joint up. Smooth the edges to prevent splinters.*

### SPOON

*Start with a flattish piece of wood and scribe a spoon shape on it with the point of your knife. Then whittle away to the required shape. Do not hurry — this will only result in mistakes. Never cut towards yourself or your hand.*

### BIRCH BARK CONTAINERS

*Use the inner layer of birch bark to make storage boxes or temporary cooking vessels — which can be used for boiling. Sew or tie them — near the top — to prevent unfolding. An alternative for temporary vessels is to peg the top edges with split sticks, but you might well spill the contents if the vessel suddenly unfolds.*

*Make another vessel, but with a larger base, and you will have a lid to fit over the first.*

*A circle, folded into quarters, will make a cone-shaped cup — or a boiling vessel if suspended.*

## USEFUL UTENSILS

### TONGS

Choose two branches, both with a natural curve, and lash them together so that they want to spring apart at the free ends. Or use a tapering piece of wood between them under the lashings to hold them apart. If one has a forked end the grip will be improved. Use for holding pots, hot rocks and logs.

### POT ROD

To give more variable access to the fire than a rail over it (a), drive a sturdy forked stick into the ground near the fire—but not so close as to catch alight. Rest a much longer stick across it with one end over the fire. Drive the bottom end of the longer stick into the ground and prevent it from springing up with heavy rocks. Cut a groove

near the tip to prevent pots from slipping off, or—to be safer—tie on a strong hook.

Two or three sticks could lean over the fire at different heights with meat or vegetables attached.

### **SWINGING POT HOLDER**

This can be made from two forked sticks and a firm upright driven into the ground. Bind the branches together so that the forks fit in opposite directions on the upright. The cantilever action will maintain the height you set it at, and a push sideways will swing the pot away from the flames. With a longer upright you could control cooking height also.

### **VARIABLE POT HOOK**

Since the distance between the fire and the food will affect the speed at which the food cooks, make this hanging device so that you can control your cooking.

Cut a strong piece with several branches from a small tree or bush and trim the branches to 10-12cm (4-5in). Strip off the bark, which may hide a rotten branch.

### **BAMBOO CUP**

Cut a section of bamboo just below a natural joint and then cut just below the next joint up. Smooth the edges to prevent splinters.

### **SPOON**

Start with a flattish piece of wood and scribe a spoon shape on it with the point of your knife. Then whittle away to the required shape. Do not hurry—this will only result in mistakes. Never cut towards yourself or your hand.

### **BIRCH BARK CONTAINERS**

Use the inner layer of birch bark to make storage boxes or temporary cooking vessels—which can be used for boiling. Sew or tie them—near the top—to prevent unfolding. An alternative for temporary vessels is to peg the top edges with split sticks, but you might well spill the contents if the vessel suddenly unfolds.

Make another vessel, but with a larger base, and you will have a lid to fit over the first.

A circle, folded into quarters, will make a cone-shaped cup—or a boiling vessel if suspended.

## **PRESERVING FOOD**

If food is not plentiful or is likely to be limited by season, it is important to ensure that stores keep safely.

Micro-organisms, such as moulds, that spoil food, thrive in warm moist atmospheres. Deterioration can be delayed by keeping food in cool places such as caves or by water, but that is only a short-term measure. More positive action must be taken to ensure long-term preservation. The main methods to use are drying, smoking, pickling and salting. Sugar preserves will not keep for very long unless you can vacuum-seal them, but will keep longer than soft fruit, and alcohol is an excellent preservative if you set up the facilities to make it.

## **BE AWARE**

When you have taken time and trouble to preserve valuable foodstuffs, particularly in areas where food is scarce, take equal trouble in storing your food.

Do not store in direct sunlight, near excessive warmth or moisture, nor where scavenging animals may ruin it.

Wrap, where possible, in airtight and waterproof materials—or store in containers (such as birch-bark boxes) with a good seal. Label if you are storing several kinds of food and separate to avoid cross-flavouring.

Check occasionally to see all is well.

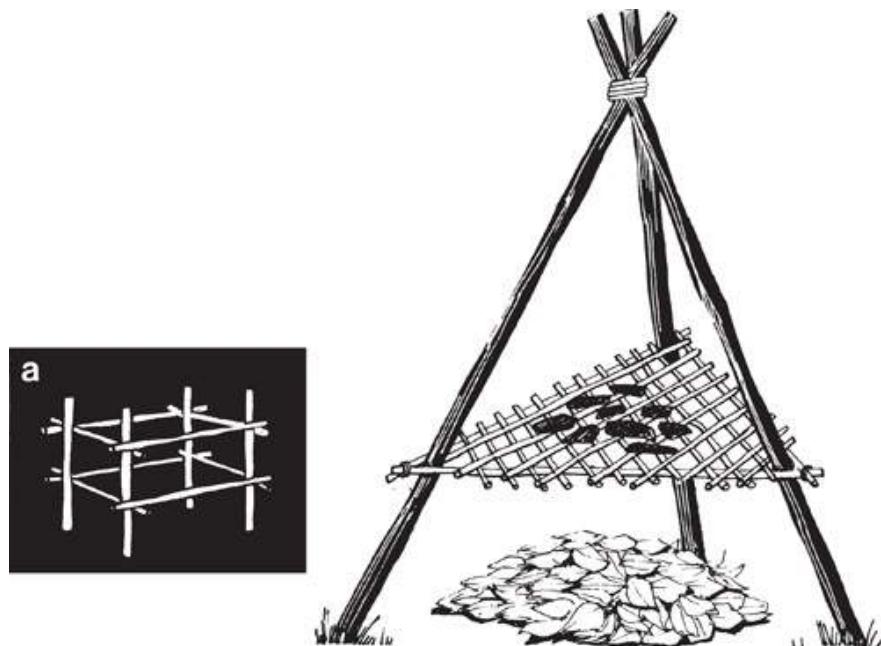
### **Drying**

Both wind and sun can dry food but, in most climates, it is easier to force dry food over a fire. Losing moisture shrinks size and weight, concentrating the nutritional value. Many moulds can grow when there is as little as 16 per cent moisture content, but few can grow on foods with 5 per cent or less and these will also be less vulnerable to maggots.

Pork, geese, seabirds and other meat with a high fat content are the most difficult to preserve. It is best to cut off most of the fat and rub salt into the flesh. Salt is a good drying agent. Hang the salted meat in a cool airy place.

### **Smoke drying**

Smoking both dehydrates meat and coats it with a protective layer, like varnishing its surface. The inside is dry so no condensation takes place, and the outside is sealed against bacteria. Smoking can be best effected in a smoke house or a smoke tepee.



### **SMOKE TEPEE**

*Drive three sticks into the ground to form a triangle and tie the tops together. Build a platform between them and get a fire going beneath.*

As an alternative to the tepee make a square frame of uprights (a) and cross-pieces supporting a smoking platform with the fire beneath and used in exactly the same way as the tepee.

In both cases meat should be cut into lean, fat-free strips and fish gutted and filleted. The strips can be any length but should only be about 2.5cm (1 in) wide and 6mm ( $\frac{1}{4}$ in) thick.

Get a fire going to produce a pile of hot embers. Have a pile of green leaves ready. Leaves from hardwood trees are excellent, especially oak, but avoid holly and other toxic leaves and conifers which tend to be resinous and may burst into flame. Do not use grass. Some leaves will give meat an individual flavour; pimento leaves are particularly distinctive.

Make sure that there are no flames left in the fire and pile the leaves over the embers. Cover the whole structure with a cloth to keep in the smoke. If you do not have a suitable material, have boughs and turfs ready to pile rapidly on the frame and seal it. Leave the structure sealed for 18 hours ensuring that little or no smoke escapes.



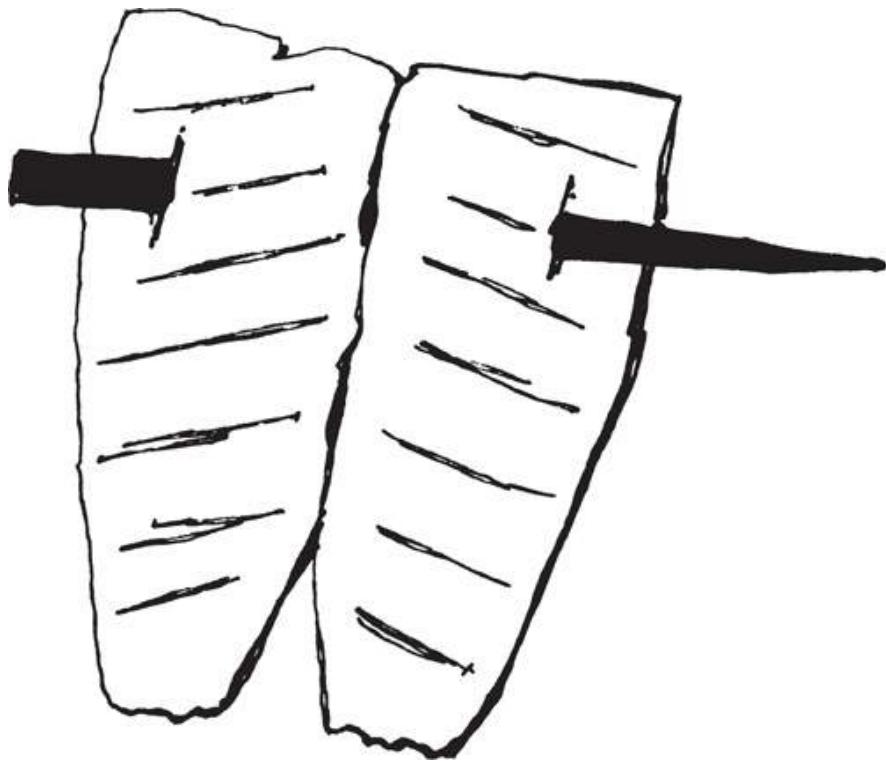
If the embers in a smoke tepee burst into flame, there is a risk that the whole structure may catch alight. This can be avoided by building a fire in a chamber in a bank (see [Snake hole in Fire](#)) with the tepee erected over the chimney. This also makes it possible to tend the fire and to ensure a more extensive supply of smoke, which will be cooler than from a fire directly underneath. The food will dry slowly and become coated with smoke without being cooked.

### Biltong

This is sun-dried meat. Biltong is the Afrikaans name, it is also known as jerky, from the North American Indian *charqui*. It does not keep as efficiently as smoked meat and should be used only when smoking is not practicable.

Cut strips, as for smoking, and hang them up in the sun. Make sure that they are out of the reach of animals and about 2-3m (6-10ft) from the ground.

It may take two weeks for meat to dry and all this time it must be kept dry, so protection from rain must be provided. The strips must be turned, if necessary, to make sure that all surfaces are thoroughly dried, and, initially at least, flies must be kept off so that they do not lay eggs on the meat.



## DRYING FISH

*Preserve fish as biltong. Cut off heads and tails and gut. Split open. Remove backbone and lay on hot sun-baked rocks. Score inner flesh to speed up drying.*

*Small fish, under 7.5cm (3in) long need not be gutted.*

*Fish can also be smoked. They should be opened out, but it will be easier to hang if cleaned and gutted without removing the backbone, head or tail. Suspend by one side of the head.*

## Pemmican

This is a nutritious concentrated food made from biltong—excellent for provisions to carry with you if you decide it is time to trek to safety. It contains all essential minerals and vitamins except vitamin C.

You need an equal quantity, by weight, of biltong and of rendered fat. Shred and pound the meat. Melt the animal fat over a slow fire, without allowing it to boil. Pour the fat over the shredded biltong and mix them well together.

When cold pack the mixture in a waterproof bag. It will keep for a long time, especially in colder climates.

## Pickling and salting

Citric acid obtained from wild limes and lemons can be used to pickle fish and meat. Dilute two parts of fruit juice with one of water, mix well and soak flesh in this for at least 12 hours. Now transfer it to a covered, and preferably airtight, container and with sufficient solution to cover all the meat. Vegetables with a high water content are difficult to preserve. Pickling is best for them. Alternatively, if salt is more easily available than citrus fruits, they can be boiled and then kept in brine (saltwater). Boiling kills off bacteria and the brine keeps fresh bacteria away from the food.

The usual way of making sure that a brine solution is sufficiently strong is to add salt until a potato will float in it. In lieu of a potato try a small fruit or root vegetable which fails to float in salt-free water (not apples—they float too easily). Another method of using salt is to pack tightly layers of salt and vegetables such as beans and peas, thoroughly washing off the salt when you need to use them.

## Nuts and cereals

These keep reasonably well provided they are not allowed to get damp but will keep better if dried. Place them on hot rocks from the fire, turning them frequently until thoroughly dried. They should then be kept in damp-proof containers.

## Fruit, fungi and lichens

Fruit and berries can be dried whole or cut into slices and dried by sun, smoke or heat. Fungi also dry very readily—the *Boletus* species especially. Fruit can usually be eaten dry. Fungi can be added to soups and stews

or soaked in water for several hours to regain some of their texture if being used in other ways.

To store lichens, soak them overnight, boil well and dry. Grind to a powder then boil again to form a thick syrup, which can be kept in a sealed container and used to give body to other foods.

## **COOKING TIPS**

### **Meat**

Meat is best cut into small cubes and boiled. Pork is particularly suspect in hot climates: wild pig is usually infested with worm and liver fluke. Venison is also prone to worms.

Put excessively tough meat in a solution of juice from citric fruit for 24 hours. This marinading helps to make it more tender. Bring to boil and simmer until tender.

### **Offal**

Check liver especially carefully. If firm, odourless and free from spots and hard lumps it can be eaten. Boil first, then fry if you wish. Hearts are best par-boiled then baked. Brain (if not used for preserving hides) makes an excellent stew. Skin the head and boil, simmering for 90 minutes. Strip all the flesh from the skull, including the eyes, tongue and ears.

### **Blood**

Leave in the container in which it is collected but keep it covered. A clear liquid comes to the top. When separation seems complete drain it off. Dry the residue by the fire to form a firm cake. Use it to enrich soups and stews.

### **Sausages**

Thoroughly clean intestines, turning them inside out to wash. Fill with a mix of half meat/half fat bound with enough blood to hold the ingredients together. Tie the ends and boil. Once cooked they can be preserved by cold smoking in a smoke tepee over a chimney.

### **Fish**

Usually germ-free if caught in fresh water. Fish take little cooking and are best stewed or wrapped in leaves and placed in hot embers—chickweed and butterbur are good for this: avoid toxic leaves.

### **Birds**

Boil all carrion. Old crows, blackbirds and parrots are tough and best boiled. Young specimens can be roasted—stuff the bird with herbs and fruits.

### **Reptiles**

Best gutted and then cooked in their skins which are rough and leathery. Place in hot embers and turn continually. When the skin splits the meat can be removed and boiled. A few snakes have poisonous secretions on the skin and others may have venom glands in their head, so cut this off before cooking. If you are not sure whether they are safe, take care in handling them.

Skin frogs before cooking (many frogs have poisonous skins). Roast on a stick.

### **Turtles**

Boil turtles and tortoises until the shell comes off. Cut up the meat and cook until tender.

### **Shark meat**

Has a bad taste unless correctly cooked. Cut into small cubes and soak overnight in fresh water. Boil in several changes of water to get rid of the ammonia flavour.

### **Shellfish**

Crabs, lobsters and shrimps, crayfish, prawns and so forth are safer boiled since they may contain harmful organisms. All seafood spoils quickly and must be cooked as soon as possible. Drop into boiling salted water and boil for ten minutes.

If you are sure the food is fresh, a clambake is a delicious way to prepare mussels, clams and similar

creatures. Dig a hole in the sand and light a fire alongside with stones on top. When the stones are hot place them in the hole, put the shells on top and cover with wet seaweed or grass, then a 10cm (4in) layer of sand. The hole will develop a lot of steam which cooks the molluscs.

## Insects and worms

Best boiled. Cook and mince them by crushing in a can.

More acceptable dried on hot rocks and then ground into a powder with which to enrich soups and stews.

## Eggs

Boiling is the best way of cooking, but if no container is available roast after first using a sharpened stick or the very sharp point of a knife to pierce a small hole in one end. Place on warm embers to cook slowly. Slow cooking reduces the risk of cracking. Remember that banana leaves, which are full of oil, make an excellent frying pan. Place over hot embers and crack the egg onto the leaf. If a boiled egg contains an embryo chick remove the embryo and roast it.

## Green vegetables

Wash in clean water and boil for just long enough to make them tender—they are often and easily overcooked. Tender plants can be gently steamed if you are sure that they are safe to eat. Add to stew after the meat is cooked and already tender. Eat fresh greens raw as salad.

## Roots

Some are toxic but the toxins are destroyed by heat. Always cook roots; boiling will make the toughest ones tender. Roast roots are tasty—but boil them first. Try boiling for five minutes then place them in a hole dug beneath the fire, cover with ash and embers and leave until tender.

## Lichens and mosses

Soak overnight in clean water. Add to stews.

## Sago

Proper sago comes from the sago palm, but buri, sugar, fishtail and, in the American tropics, cabbage palms can be used in the same way. The average sago palm yields about 275kg (600lb) of sago—enough to feed one person for a year. Cut down the palm at the base of the trunk, trim off the tip just below the last flowering line. Divide a large trunk into sections.

Cut lengthwise—hard work, for the outer bark is 5cm (2in) thick and hard as bamboo. Using each section as a trough, pound pith into a mash, then knead in a container of water (the bole of the trunk will do) and strain through a cloth. A starchy paste will precipitate in the water. Roll this into sticky balls and cook.

## Sap

Palm sap is extracted from flowering parts, not the trunk. Choose a fat stalk carrying a flowering head (at the base of the crown of the trunk). Bruise with a club to stimulate flow of sap, then cut off head. Sweet juice will flow from the end of the stalk—1.5 litre (2½pt) per day. Bruise and cut daily to stimulate flow. Drink raw or boil then cool it to produce toffee-like lumps of almost pure sugar. Sugar, nipa, coconut and burl palms can all be used in this way. (Extracting resinous sap is dealt with under *Trees in Food*.)

## Grains and seeds

Grains are enclosed in a husk. Dry them thoroughly to allow the grain to crack out. Thresh (or thrash) it with a flail, stick or rock, or, if the grain is very malleable, rub it between your hands. Shake out on to a flat container and occasionally toss into the air in a breeze (winnowing). The husks (chaff) will blow away leaving the heavier seed behind.

## Pinole

Parch husked seeds on hot stones by the fire. The heat will cook and dry seeds without roasting them. This pinole will keep well. Eat cold or reheat. Add to stews or place a handful in a mug of hot water—tasty and nutritious. Dry they will not be properly digested, but they will fill the belly. It is better to grind them into flour.

## Flour

Grinding flour without a proper mill is hard work but can be done by pounding with a smooth stone on a hard surface. Look for a large stone with a depression in the middle to place the grain in. Use a circling action as with a mortar and pestle. Another way to grind flour is to hollow a tube of hardwood and to pound a stick up and down inside it on the grain.

Mix flour with a little water and knead into a dough. Bake in an oven or make into thin strips, wrap around a shaven green stick and cook over hot embers. Another method is to make the dough into fist-size balls, flatten them and then drop hot pebble-size stones into the centre and wrap the dough around them. Lick your fingers before picking up the pebbles—if you are quick the moisture stops the pebble from burning you—or use sticks or tongs (see [Useful utensils](#)) to lift them.

Flour does not have to be made from cereal grains. Use the flowering heads of cat's tails or boil and mash up peeled roots, of wild calla for instance, or edible barks. Those that are not harmful raw can be steeped in water and crushed with a stick or stone to free the starch. Remove fibres, leave starch to settle, then pour off the water and you will have your flour.

# **ORGANIZING THE CAMP**

---

In many survival situations there will already be someone in a position of responsibility who will head the organization of the camp and lead the development of survival plans. If no established command structure exists among a group of survivors, an organizing committee should be established and individuals nominated and elected with particular responsibilities, perhaps on a rotational basis if it is a large group and rescue does not come quickly. Experience must be pooled and immediate steps taken to discover what skills individuals can contribute.

A roster is essential for such daily chores as collecting firewood and water, foraging, cooking, latrine digging and maintenance tasks, and for hunting and trapping.

In a group of survivors there may be all kinds of people of different ages and experience. People will have varied skills and enjoy doing different tasks. Everyone who is fit and able should take their turn at the unpleasant tasks, unless their skills are so much in demand that it would be a waste of their abilities, but individuals should do what they are good at—and be encouraged to develop skills for which they show an aptitude.

Not only should everyone do their fair share but keeping busy eliminates boredom and keeps up morale. Anyone who is sick or injured gets the lightest jobs and is best employed around camp until they have recovered. In a group there should always be someone in camp, and they should be able enough to operate the signals should a search aircraft appear. If you have sufficient numbers do NOT venture from the camp in less than pairs.

Except in the desert, where the day will be largely spent sheltering from the sun and early morning and evening are the times for activity, daytime is likely to be fully occupied. Evenings, however, may drag if not occupied by hunting. A gathering around the camp fire will help establish a pattern and provide a sense of discipline and normality. It will give an opportunity to debrief on the day's events, to plan for tomorrow and to discuss new strategies.

Music can be a great morale booster. If no instruments were carried or survived, simple ones such as percussion or pan-pipes can easily be improvised, and everyone can sing after a fashion.

Sing-songs, dancing, charades, quizzes and story-telling all have their place and you may have talents which can create more elaborate entertainments. For private recreation any books will be invaluable and you can make pieces for board games such as draughts and chess, using stones for counters or carving simple playing pieces.

Even the lone survivor requires discipline and order. A regular routine will help morale and exactly the same care must be taken to ensure that the camp is kept in good order. At first there may be so much to do that the individual is too tired to think of recreation, but boredom is even more dangerous for a person on their own and objectives should be set each day whether practical or for amusement.

## **CAMP HYGIENE**

Keeping healthy is an important factor for survival, so strict hygiene should be practised, not only personally but in the planning and running of a camp. Rubbish and latrines must be kept away from the camp to reduce the threat from flies and, since most of the common diseases in a survival situation are water-borne, pollution of drinking water must be rigorously avoided. Food scraps and other rubbish should be burned in the fire if possible.

### **Camp layout**

Select sites for all camp activities so that they do not interfere with each other or pollute the living and cooking areas. If you are camped by a river or stream, fix specific sections for activities and keep to them. Latrines should be dug downhill of the camp and away from the water supply so that there is no possible risk of seepage polluting either.

### **Activity areas**

Establish a water point from which drinking water will be collected and ensure that no one washes, cleans pots, scrubs clothes or otherwise uses the stream upstream of this point. Downstream choose a wash point for personal ablutions and clothes washing and further downstream of that select a place to be used for cleaning cooking utensils.

Latrines and rubbish disposal should be well away from the camp—and preferably downwind—but not so far away that it is inconvenient and people are tempted to go elsewhere. If necessary cut a track to it to make access easier.

**REMEMBER:** NEVER urinate or defecate in or near your water supply.

## Latrines and rubbish disposal

It is important that proper latrines be established, even for the lone survivor. With a group separate latrines for the sexes may make a mixed group feel more comfortable, and as much privacy as possible should be provided. Rubbish, after checking that it really has no useful value, should be burned, and what cannot be burned should be buried.

Even if you have it, do NOT use disinfectant in a latrine. Lime or disinfectants would kill the useful bacteria that break waste down and then it WILL start smelling! After defecating cover the faeces with earth. Add small amounts of water which will promote the bacteria.

Make a latrine cover to keep out flies and remember always to replace it, or flies that have walked all over faeces may walk all over your food and start a cycle of infection.

If, after a time, a latrine starts to smell, dig a new one. Fill in the old latrine. Build a new seat and burn old timbers and covers.



### DEEP TRENCH LATRINE

Dig a trench about 1.25m (4ft) deep and 45cm (18in) wide. Build up the sides with logs or rocks and earth to make a comfortable sitting height sealing the gaps between them. Lay logs across to leave only a hole for use (or several if you are a large group and making a communal latrine). Empty wood ash on the logs to make a seal — it will also deter flies.



Make a lid of smaller wood to cover the opening or use a large flat rock or a large leaf weighted down with stones. Always remember to replace it.



## URINAL

Dig a pit about 60cm (2ft) deep. Three-quarters fill it with large stones and then top up with earth, with a cone made from bark set into it as a funnel. Site it close enough to the camp to ensure that people bother to use it.

## Incinerator

If there is too much waste for the camp fire to burn, make a separate fire in the latrine area. If a large can is available use it as an incinerator. Bury any unburned refuse in a garbage pit.

## CAMP DISCIPLINE

- 
- Do not prepare game in camp: bleed, gut and skin on the trap line. This attracts game to the traps where you want them, not into your camp.
  - Keep food covered and off the ground. If kept in trees make sure it is proof from tree-dwelling animals.
  - Replace lids on water bottles and containers immediately after using them.
  - Stow spare clothing and equipment in your shelter. Do not leave it lying where it can get wet or burned.
  - Have a place for everything and keep things tidy: a tree for mess tins and cooking utensils—hook them on twigs and branches, a place for mugs and spoons—and keep everything off the ground. Fit a box as a cupboard on a tree trunk.
  - Never leave the fire unattended.

## Soap

Washing with soap removes natural oils, leaving the skin less waterproof and more prone to attack by germs. In survival circumstances it is a mistake to wash with soap too often. However, soap is the most widely used antiseptic, better than many others, such as iodine, which destroy body tissue as well as germs. It is ideal for scrubbing hands before administering first-aid for wounds. Save supplies for this.

## Soap-making

Two ingredients—an oil and alkali—are needed to make soap. The oil can be animal fat (including fish) or vegetable, but not mineral. The alkali can be produced by burning wood or seaweed to produce ash.

**METHOD:** Wash ash with water. Strain and boil with the oil. Simmer until excess liquid is evaporated and allow to cool. This soap will clean the skin but is not antiseptic. Adding horseradish root or pine resin to the brew will make it antiseptic.

Experiment will be necessary to get the balance in the mixture right. Start with more oil than alkali because too much alkali will dry the skin, leaving it sore.



## TOOLS

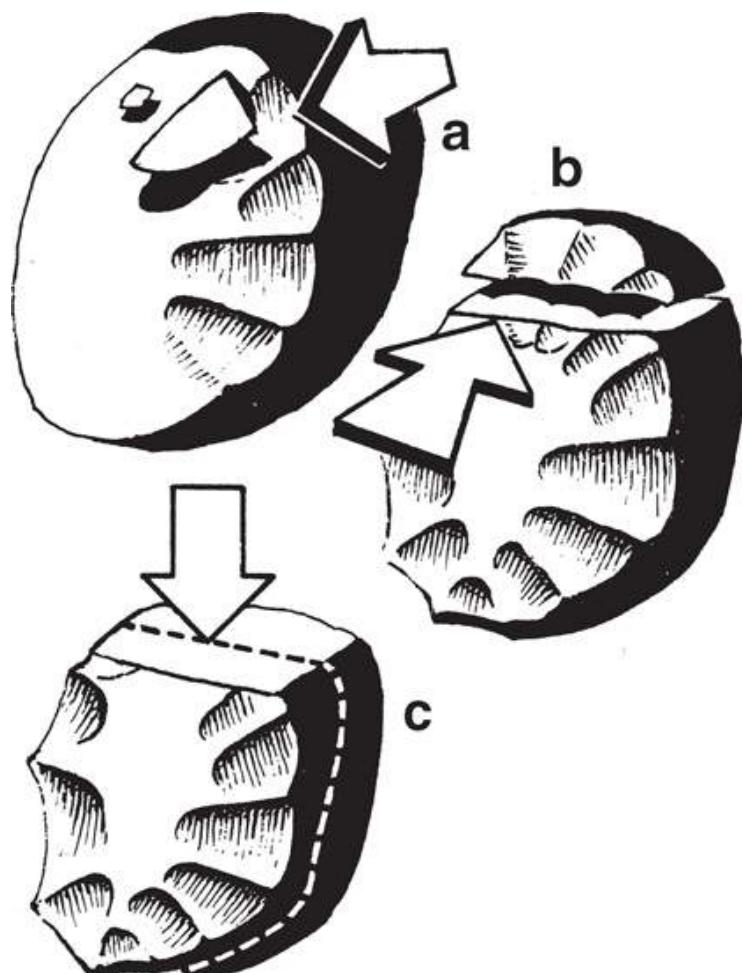
Before humans discovered metals, and learned to work them, tools were made from stone (especially flint, obsidian, quartz, chert and other glassy rocks), bone and other natural objects. Stones can make efficient hammers, alone or lashed onto a handle if in a shape that can be easily secured. The glassy stones can be knapped (chipped and flaked) to make a sharp edge; some other kinds of stone, such as slate, can also produce a knife edge, though they may not have the strength to be used for percussive blows.

The best start for a stone implement is a split cobble, perhaps from a stream bed, or split by a blow from another smooth, hard pebble, so that a flat face is produced. The blow should be at an angle of less than 90 degrees or the shock will be absorbed within the pebble. Once the split is made, other layers can be broken off. Flakes can be removed around the edge of the flat face by hitting edge-on with another stone. Delicate work can be produced by hitting and pressing with a softer tool such as deer's antler. If a flat face is produced, end-on blows can make thin blades.

Making stone implements is not a skill that can be quickly acquired and you may have to be very persistent.

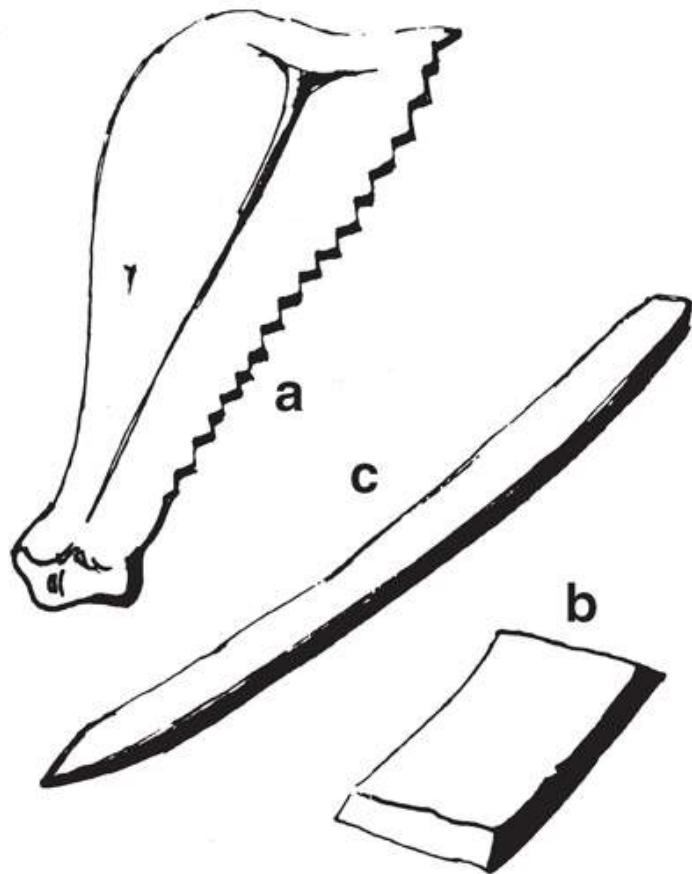
Bones can be used as tools—antlers and horns make useful digging implements, gougers and hammers. They can also be cut with stone tools or ground with coarse stones. You may have the advantage over the prehistoric toolmakers, whose skills you are copying, of having a knife or other metal implement to help you to carve bone.

Some woods, such as the Mulga tree of Australia, used by the Aborigines for spears, are hard enough to make effective blades for hunting and cutting.



### STONE TOOLS

One technique for producing an axehead: First the stone is split and the edges partly shaped (a), then a platform is created on one side (b) from which a series of flakes can be struck vertically down (c).



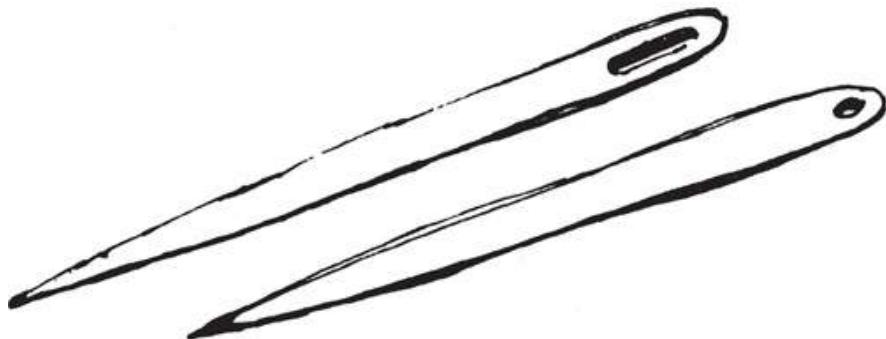
## BONE TOOLS

A shoulder blade provides a good shape for an effective saw (a).

First it should be split in half then teeth can be cut along it with a knife.

A small bone scraper (b) could also be made, the edge ground sharp.

Ribs are good bones for shaping into points (c).

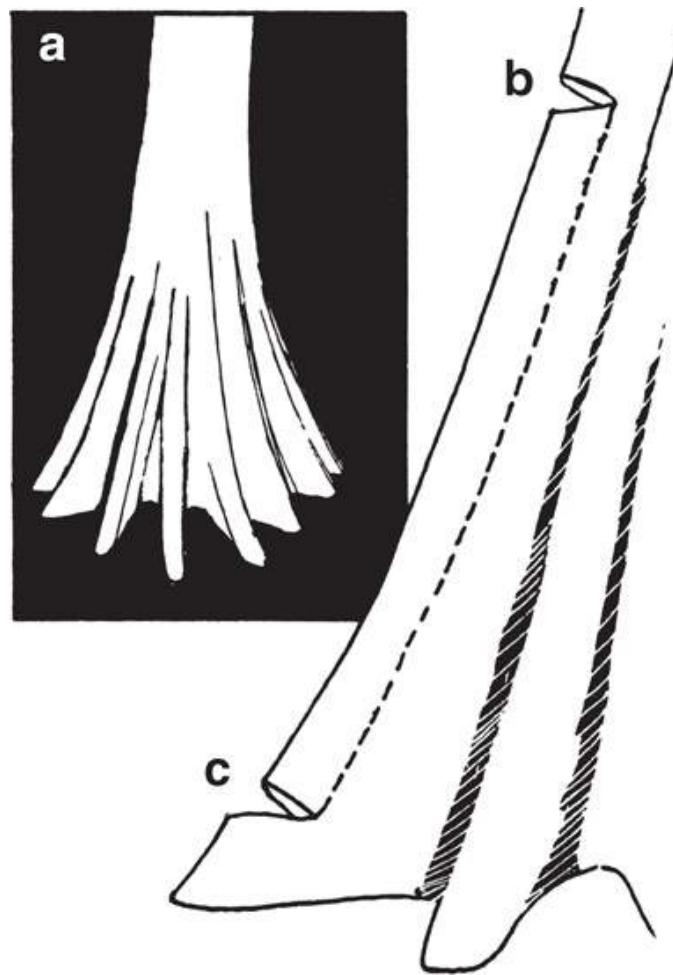


## BONE NEEDLE

Choose a suitably sized bone or flake of bone and sharpen to a point. Burn an eye with a piece of hot wire, or lacking that, scrape with a knife point or piece of flint. DON'T heat the knife in the fire.

## AXES

A fire axe is part of the equipment of any boat or plane, but an axehead, to be fitted to an improvised handle, is a useful additional piece of equipment for anyone to carry. One of about 500-750g (1-1½lb) is ideal. Use your knife to fashion a handle when needed.

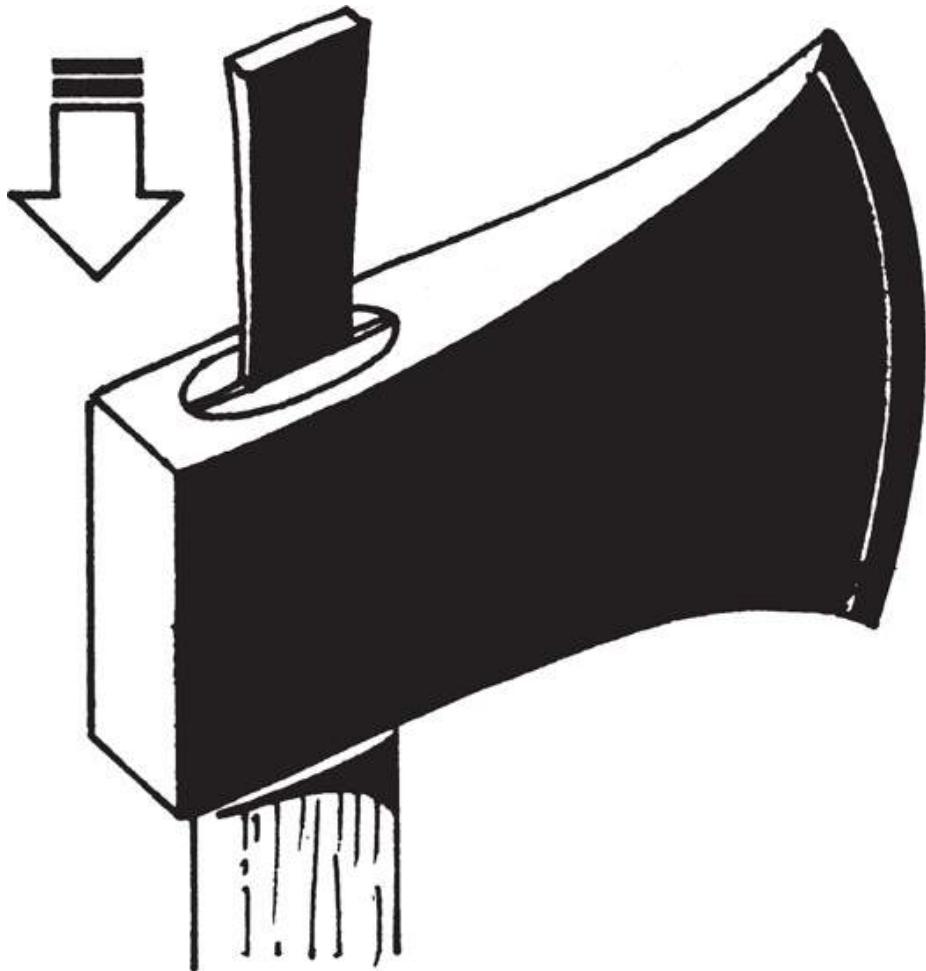


### AXE HANDLE

Any straight, knot-free hardwood is suitable — ash and hickory are ideal. In the tropics the flukes of a buttress tree (a) are excellent: slightly curved, straight-grained and easy to work.

Cut two notches into the fluke of a buttress spaced to the desired handle length (b to c).

Hit along the side of fluke close to the cuts. It will split away at their depth.

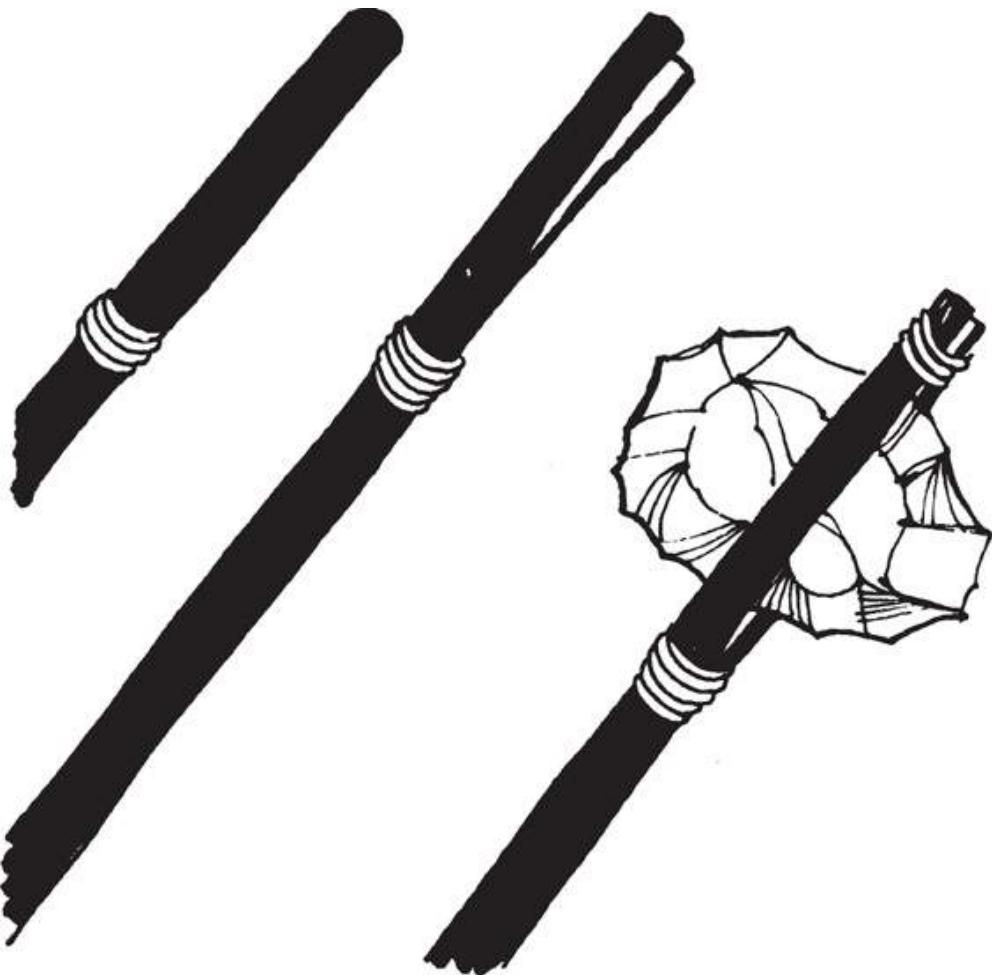


### FITTING THE HEAD

*Whittle the handle into shape with one end cut to fit the hole in the axehead, cutting a notch in that end. Make a wedge to fit the notch.*

*With the head in place drive in the notch then soak the axe in water overnight to tighten the head on the shaft.*

*Always check axeheads for tightness before using them.*



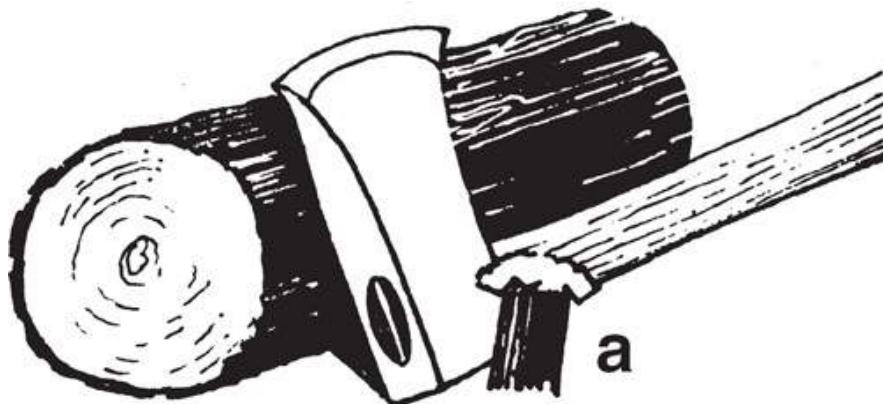
#### FITTING A STONE AXEHEAD

Select a hardwood handle. Tie a band of cord around it about 23cm (9in) from one end. Split the end down as far as this band (use your knife and a wedge or the piece of flint you have made for the axehead). Insert the flint and tie the end to secure.

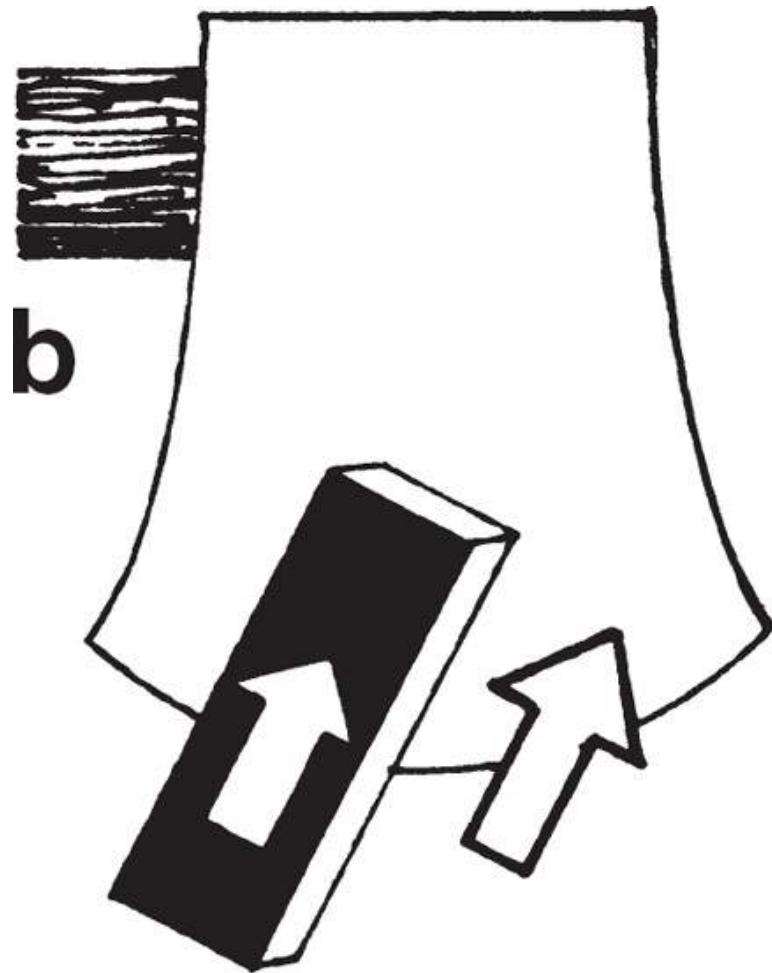
*This mounting will split wood but will not be very effective for chopping it.*

#### Sharpening an axe

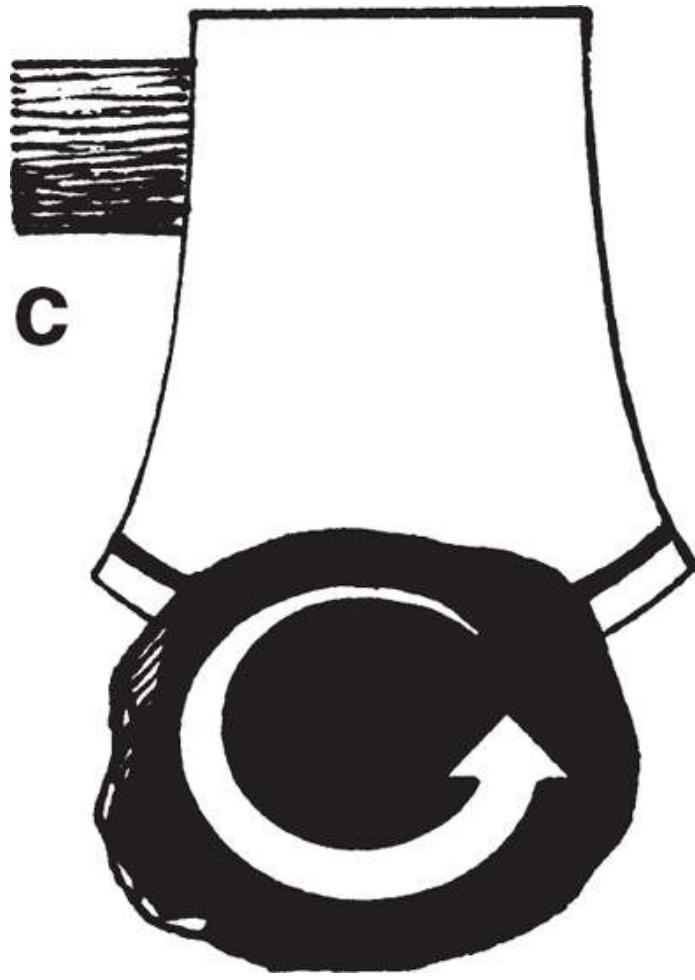
An axe with a blunt edge becomes no more than an inefficient hammer so keep it sharp, it will save energy. A file is best for getting rid of burrs, and a whetstone for imparting the sharp edge. A file is a one-way tool—it works when pushed, not pulled.



*Prop axehead between a log and a peg (a). Always try to sharpen INWARDS from cutting edge to avoid producing burrs.*



*Use a file or rougher stone first to remove rucks and burrs (b). Then finish with a smoother stone, using a circular motion. Don't drag the stone off the cutting edge. Push ONTO blade. (See [Knives in Essentials](#)).*



*Turn the axe over. Repeat the process circling in the opposite direction.*

### **Using an axe**

Most people have a natural prime hand and swing. Use an axe in a way that is comfortable to you, swinging it in an arc that feels natural with a firm grip and ALWAYS away from your body, hands, and legs. Make sure that, if you miss the tree or other point of aim and follow through, the axe will not strike you or anyone else. NEVER throw an axe on the ground. Sheath it or bury the blade in a log.

### **Tree felling**

Check overhead for dead branches, which may fall and injure you, and for hornets' nests. Clear branches or creepers which could deflect your blows. If roots or the bole spread out at the bottom, build a platform to reach a thinner diameter trunk and reduce the effort of chopping. Ensure such a platform is stable and that you can jump off it quickly if the tree falls the wrong way!

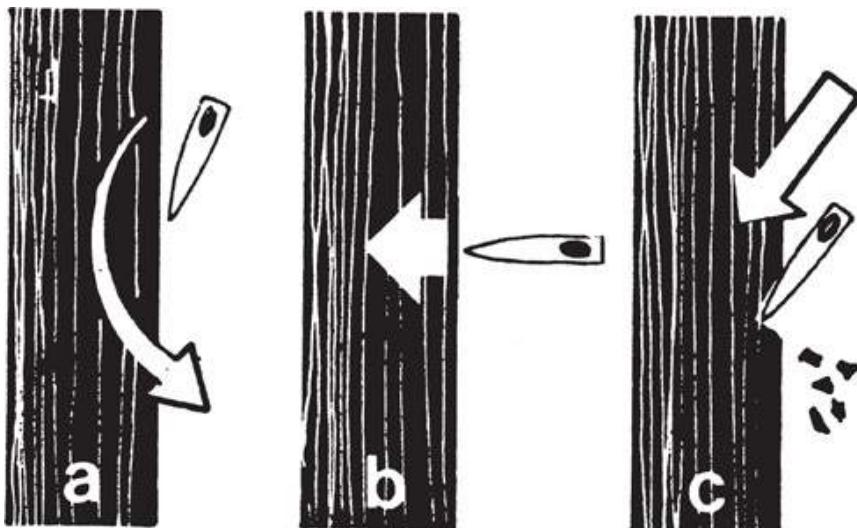
Work at a comfortable height and try to cut downwards at 45 degrees, although every now and then a horizontal blow is needed to clear the cut.



*Cut from both sides of the tree, first chopping out a notch at an angle of about 45 degrees and another on the opposite side at a lower level, ON THE SIDE TO WHICH YOU WANT THE TREE TO FALL (a). Do not cut through more than half the tree before starting the other notch.*

If two people are at work on opposite sides this is particularly important. A leaning trunk or a tree with most of its branches on one side will fall in the direction of its weight and the placing of the cuts will not affect it.

A steady rhythm of blows will cut more effectively than trying to make fewer big blows. If you put too much effort behind the axe your aim will suffer and you will soon tire. Let the weight of the axe do the work.



*Alternating the angle of stroke will prevent the axe from jamming. Too steep an angle will cause the axe to glance off the trunk (a). Dead-on will make it jam or be inefficient (b). Aim for 45 degrees (c).*



## TO REMOVE BRANCHES

Cut off branches from the outside of the fork (a), not the inside (b).

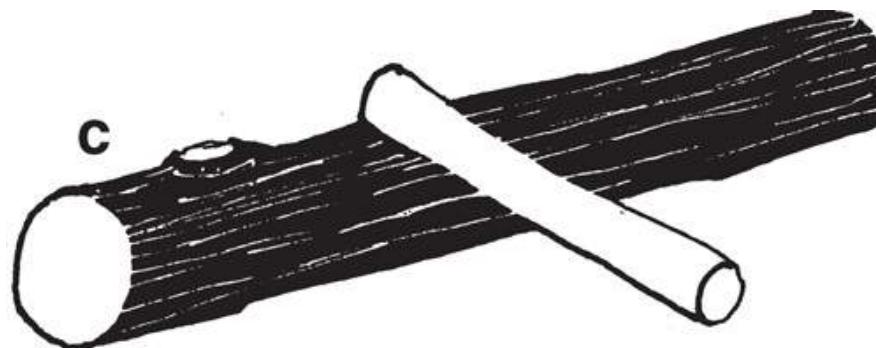


## SPLITTING LOGS

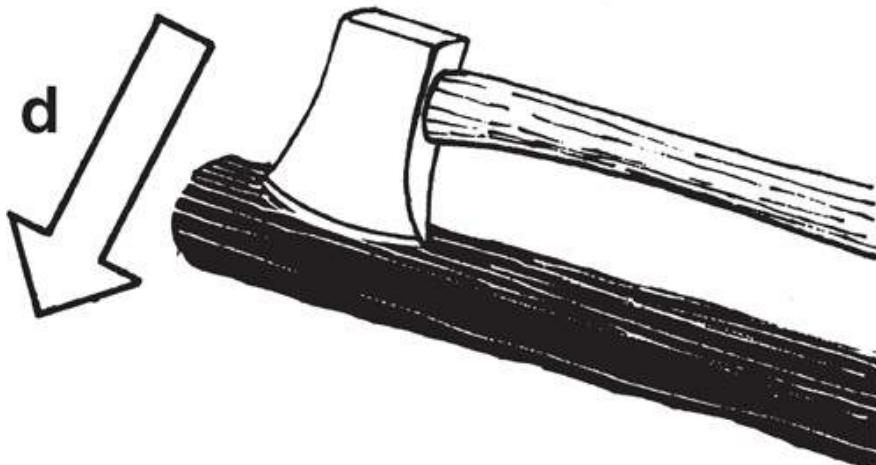
Stand behind a large log with feet well apart. Swing down to cut the side away from you (a).



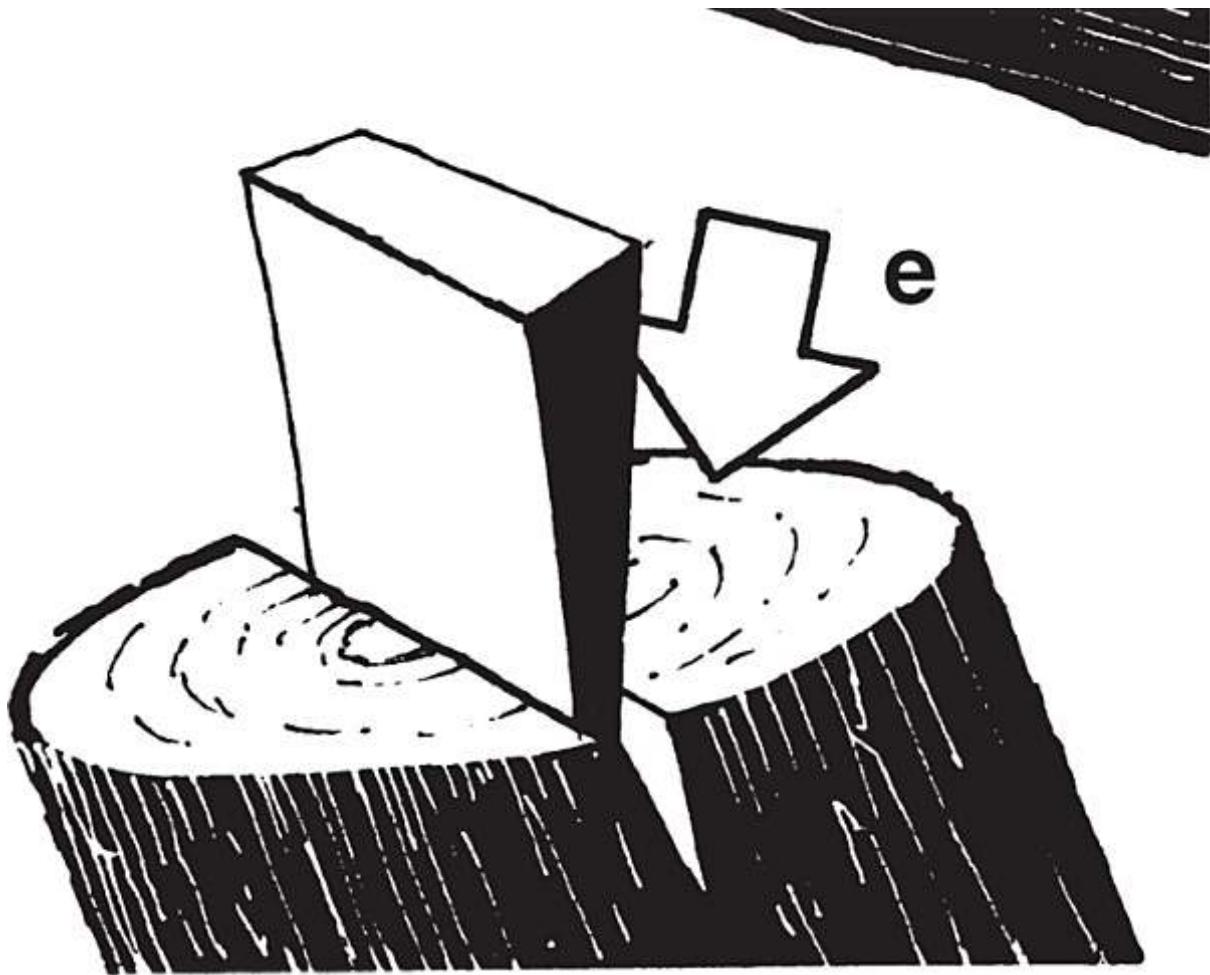
Do NOT chop downwards (b).



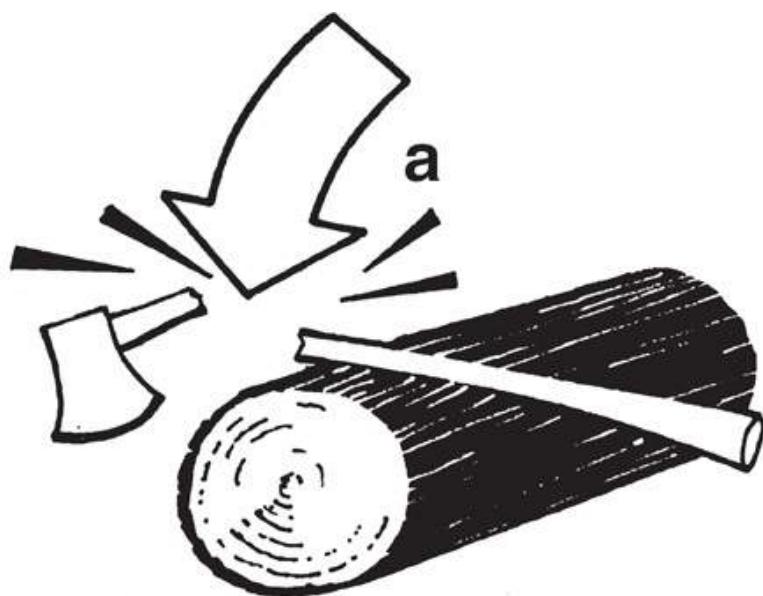
To split a smaller log, angle against another log (c). DO NOT PUT YOUR FOOT ON IT.

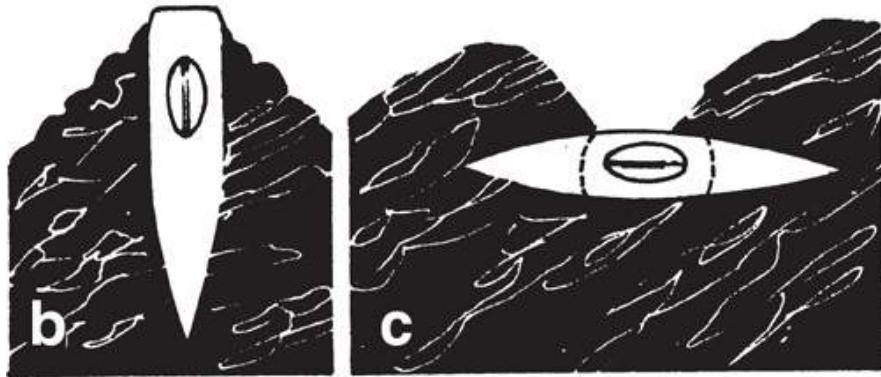


Alternatively, hold smaller log against cutting edge of axe and bring both down together (d) on to a larger log.  
(Not to be tried holding too short a log for safety.)



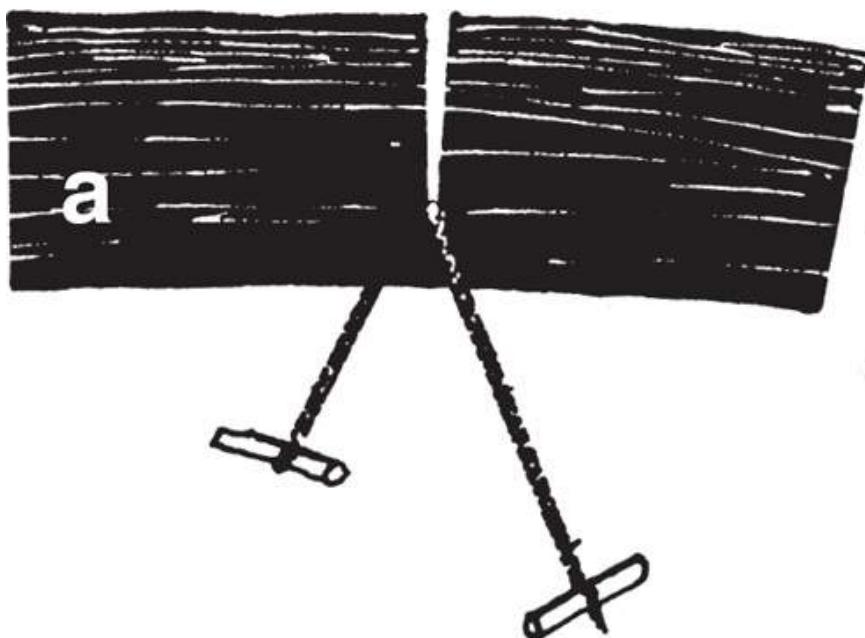
*If in doubt split larger logs with a wedge and a rock (e). DO NOT HOLD WOOD UPRIGHT IN YOUR HAND AND ATTEMPT TO SPLIT WITH AXE.*

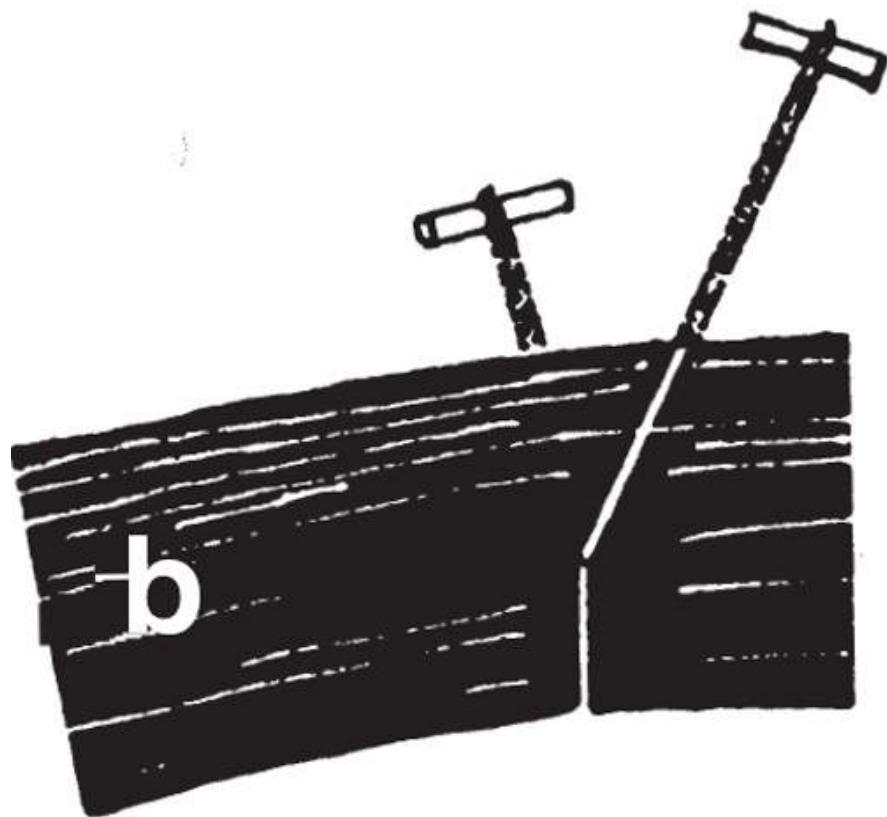




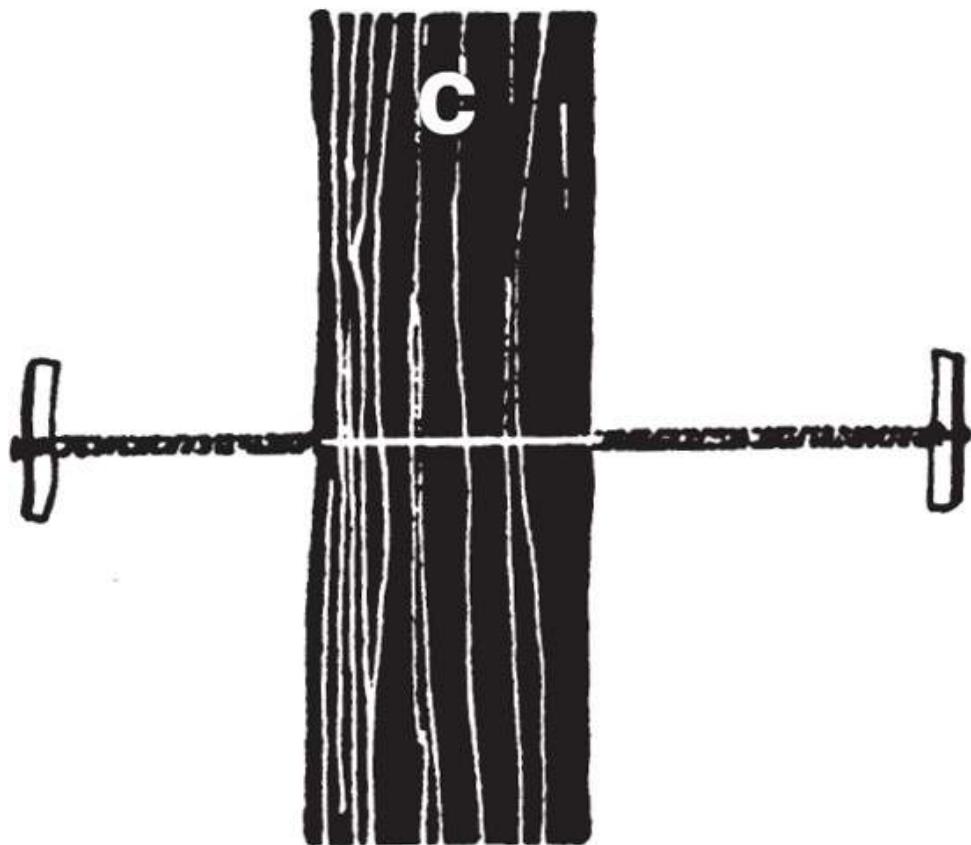
### BROKEN HANDLES

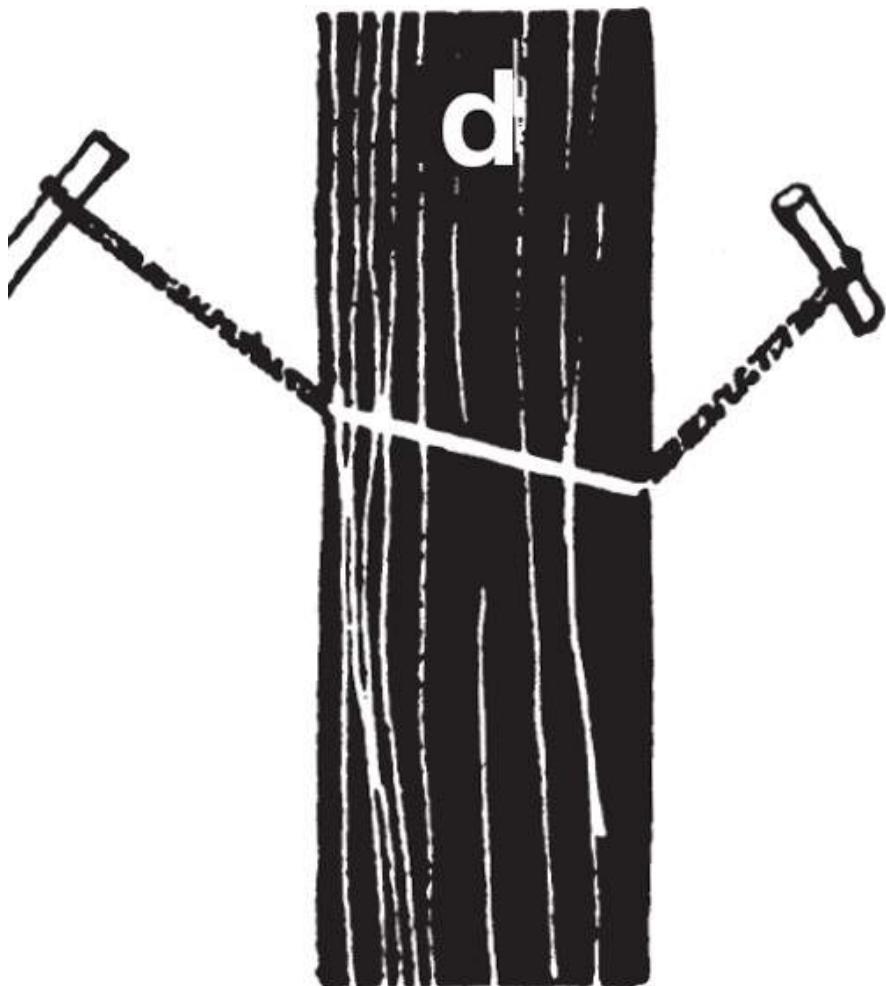
Using an axe takes practice and while gaining experience axe handles often get broken — usually because the head misses the target and the handle takes all the blow (a). To remove a broken handle, the easiest way is to put it in a fire, burying as much as possible of the metal in the earth to prevent it losing temper — single-headed (b), double-headed (c).



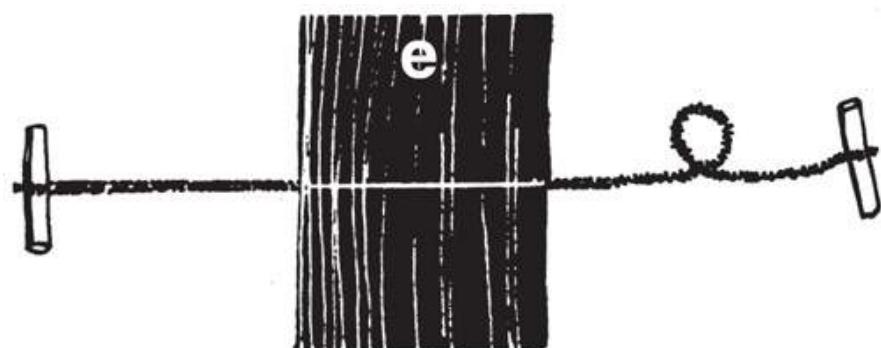


**USING A FLEXIBLE SAW** Always use a flexible saw so that the cut opens up (a) rather than closes tight (b) on the saw, causing it to jam. Do not pull too hard or the saw may break.

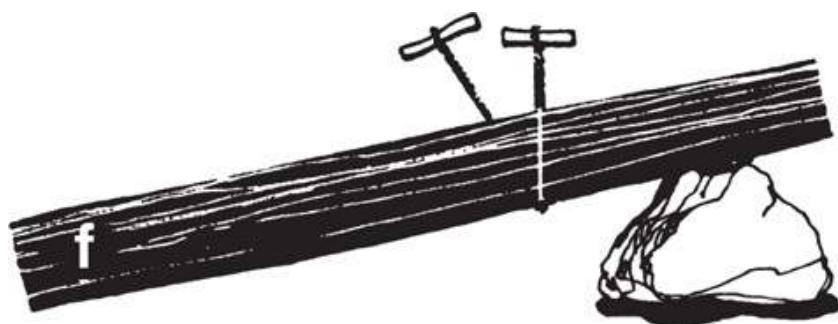




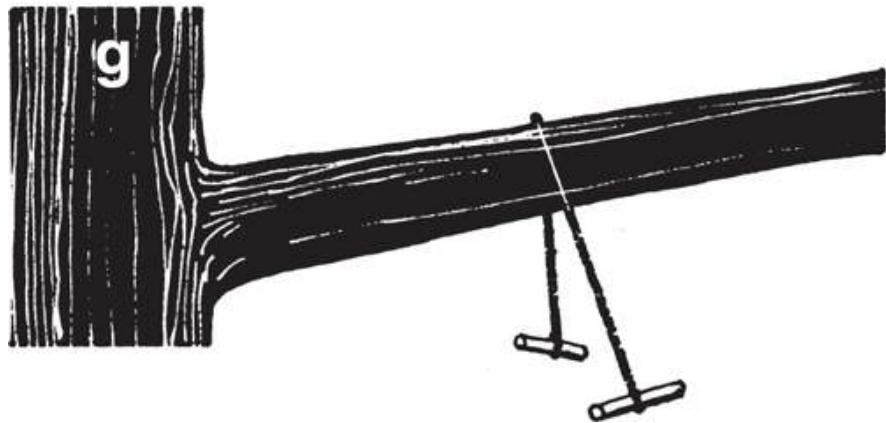
*At all times keep the wire taut (c) pulling in a straight line, never at angles (d).*



*With two people the rhythm must be carefully maintained. If a kink is produced in the saw (e) it may break.*



*It is usually easier for a single person to cut a log by pulling upwards (f). Support the log to keep it off the ground and give it an angle to keep the cut open.*



*Alternatively, to remove a branch, pull down from above the head (g). This could be dangerous.*



*Very high branches can be removed by attaching strings to the saw toggles to give extra reach. This is dangerous. Keep your eye on the branch and be prepared to jump out of the way.*

# FURNISHING THE CAMP

## BEDS

Sleep is the great regenerator and a comfortable bed is worth a little effort. Some form of bedding should always be used to avoid lying directly on cold or damp ground. In tropical climates it is always better to raise the bed into the air, both to keep off wet earth and to provide a current of cooling air. In cold climates, when no permanent shelter has been erected, choose fuel which will keep the fire going through the night and build a screen to reflect heat back on to your sleeping space.

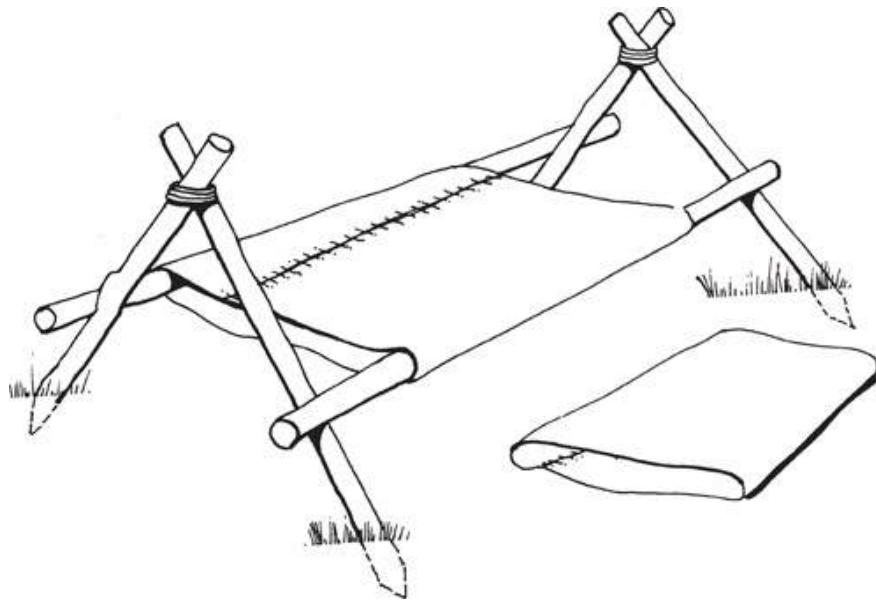
When the ground is dry, or under shelter, stones heated in the fire (but see [WARNING](#) in *Fire*) and then buried under a thin layer of soil beneath the bedding will keep their heat through most of the night, adding to your comfort.

### A-frame beds

An A-frame forms a strong construction and will keep you off the ground. Drive two pairs of posts into the ground at an angle, leaving a little more than your height between the pairs. Lash the tops together. If the ground is hard, cross-members will be needed between the feet of each A-frame and between the two A-frames.

### Tube bed

This simplest form depends on having or making a tube of strong material, sewn or thonged together. A large heavy-duty plastic bag is suitable, but not thin plastic. Really toughly made clothing could serve but would usually make a rather narrow bed.



Do not risk this method with any fabric that might give under your weight or with seams that might come apart.

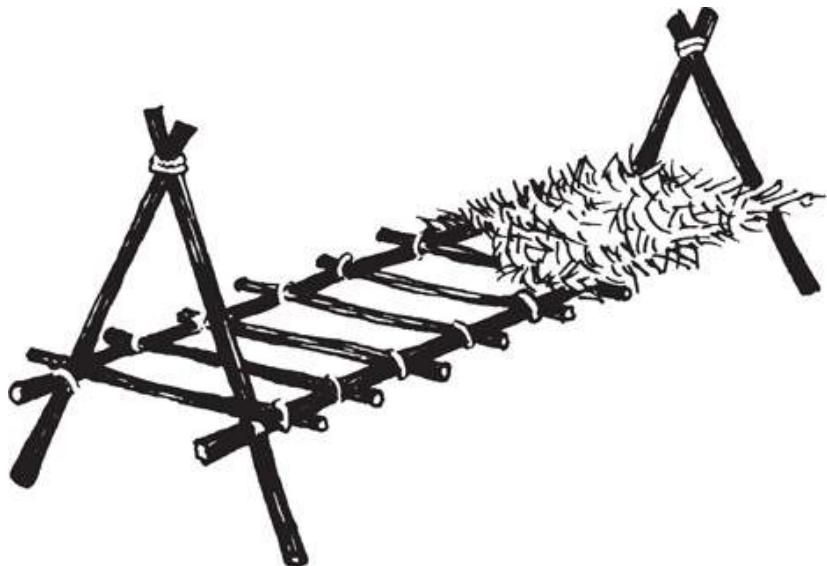
Make A-frame supports and choose two fairly straight poles, each slightly longer than the distance between the frames, and pass them through the tube of plastic or fabric. Place them over the frames so that they rest on the sides, the tube preventing them from slipping lower.

### Bough bed

Where conifers are growing, fir tree branches arranged in alternate layers will be comfortable and their fragrance will ensure a good night's sleep.

### Ladder bed

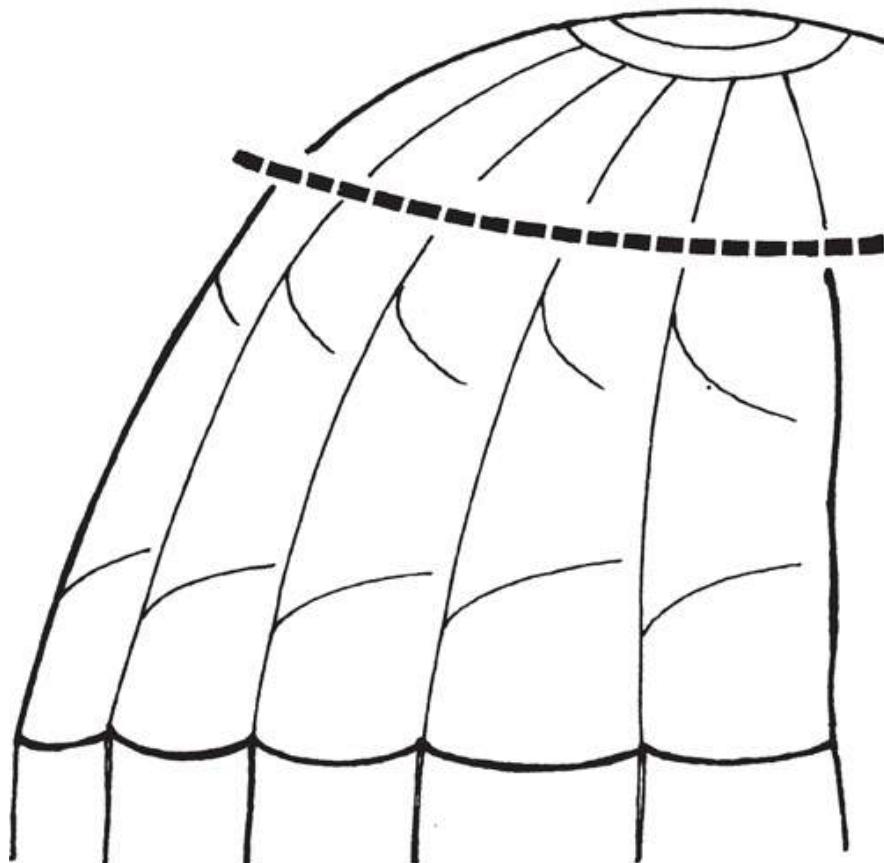
Make A-frame supports and select poles as for the tube bed, but you will also need a number of cross-pieces—how many will depend upon the size of the sleeper and the kind of bedding to be used. Springy saplings will be more comfortable than boughs, provided they are strong.



*Lash the end 'rungs' to the A-frames, jutting out either side. Make these of strong timber and lash them securely. Fit the ladder over the frames and lash in place. Lay bedding of bracken, ferns or leaves.*

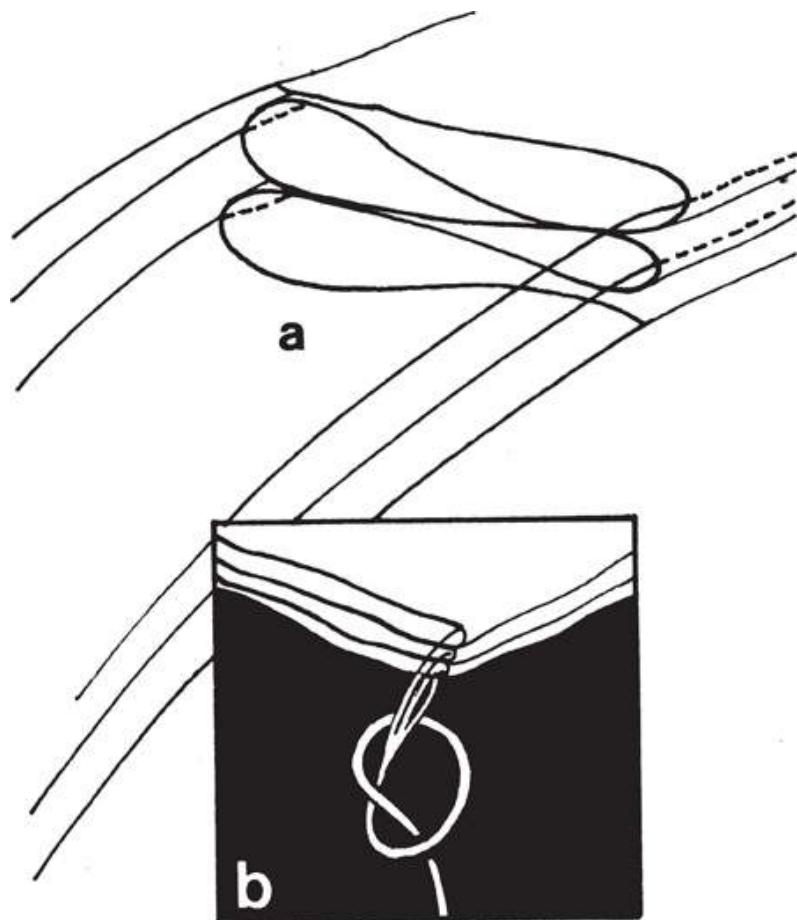
## Hammocks

It takes a little practice to sleep in a hammock—in a string one you must push the sides outwards so that it cups around you.



## PARA-HAMMOCK

*It is possible to make a hammock from a parachute. The rigging lines run through the fabric right up to the apex. Cut five panels as shown but do not cut the rigging lines above.*

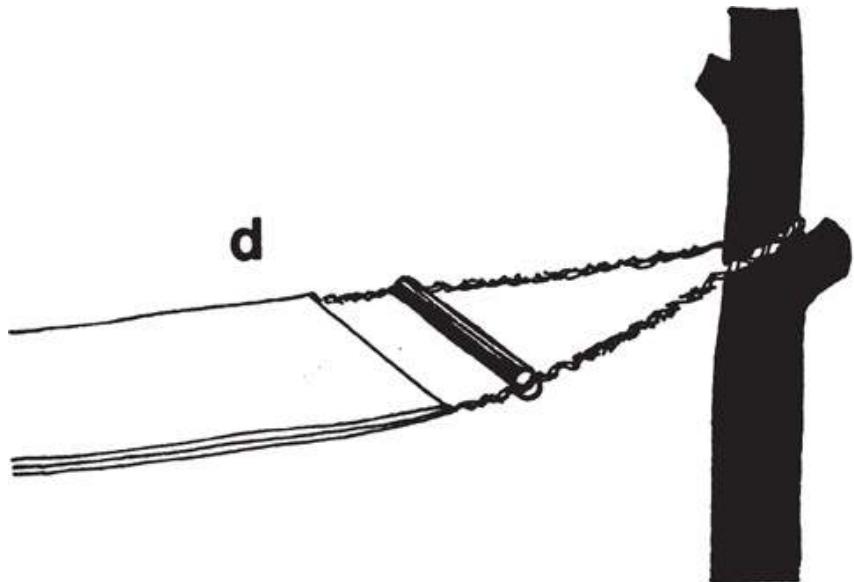


*Overlay the panels as shown (a) and flatten out.*

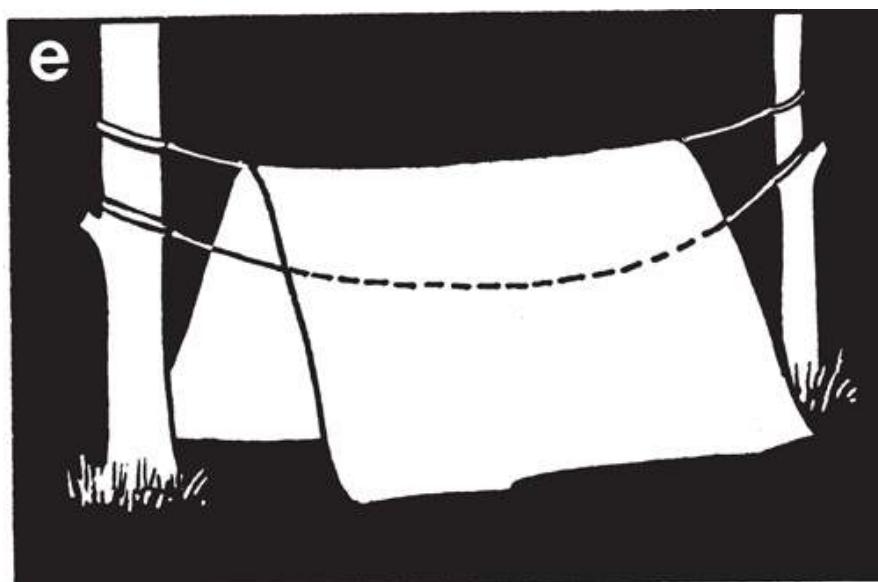
*Grasp the three rigging lines in the corner and tie, close to the fabric, in an overhand knot (b).*



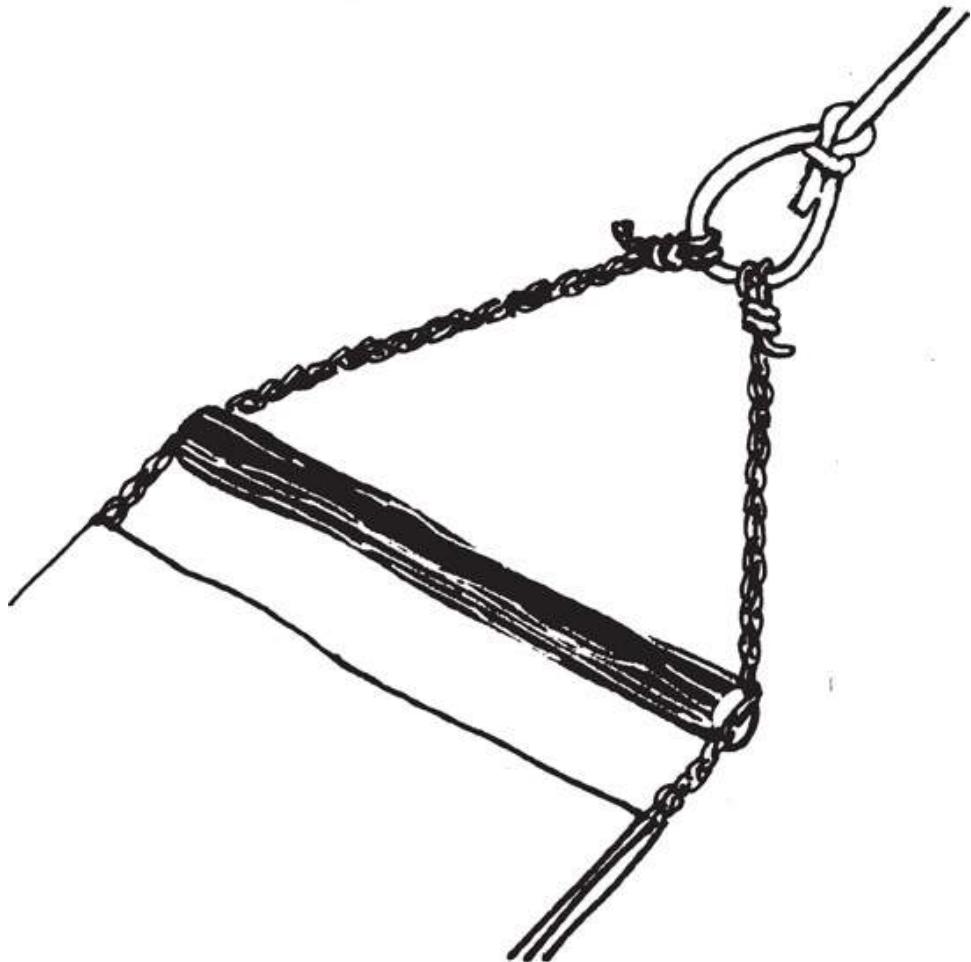
*Then plait the three lines together (c) (see Knots).*



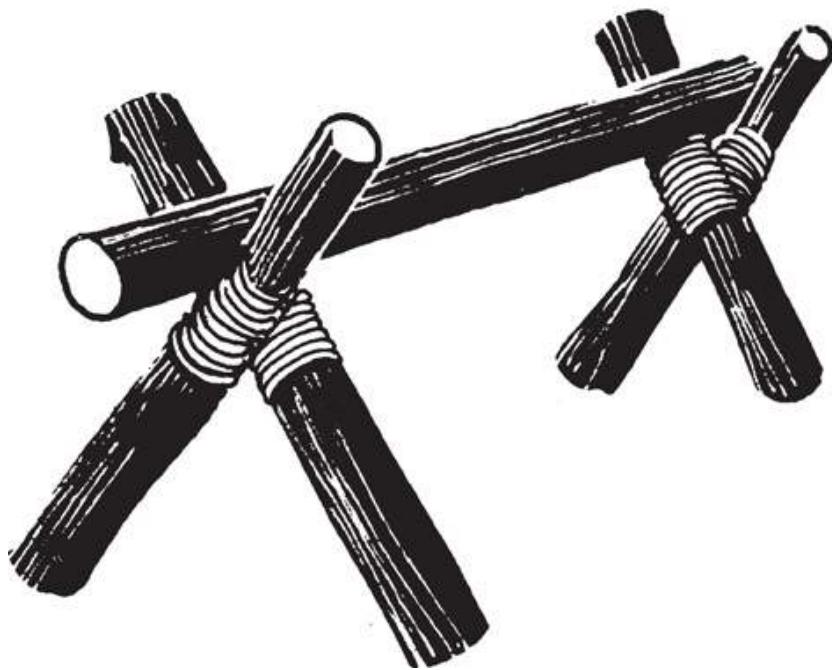
*Insert spacer bars, notched at each end (d) to take the lines and tie your hammock to two convenient trees or stout posts.*



*If you rig a line over the hammock (e) you could drape a groundsheet or poncho over you to form a quick shelter. If you do this be sure one end of the hammock is secured with a quick-release knot (see Knots). It might be necessary to get out of the hammock in an emergency.*

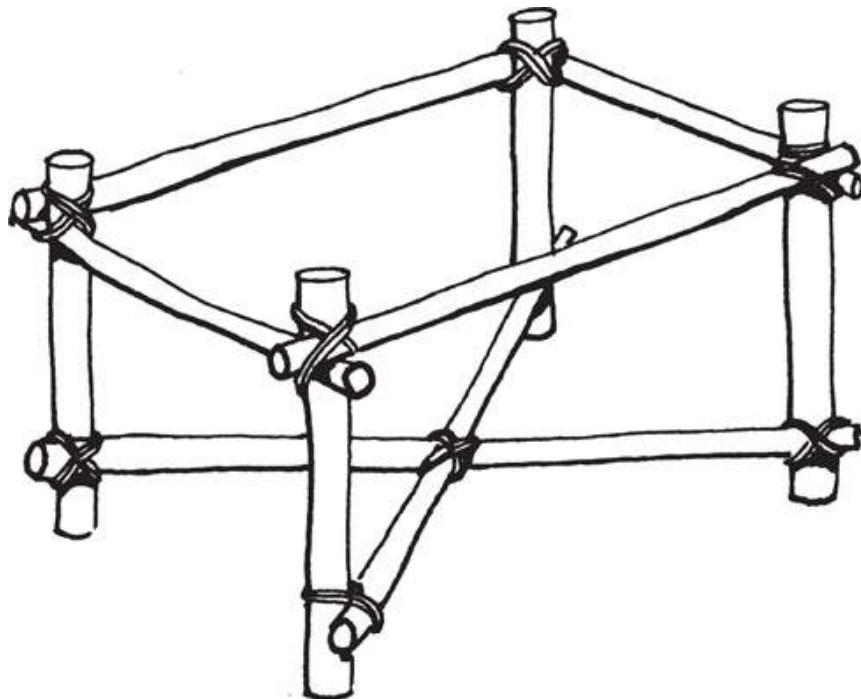


If you have another piece of rope, or plait some from unused rigging lines, you could tie both the hammock strings to a fixed loop, such as a bowline (see Knots). Experiment with different ways of suspending your hammock, until you find the most stable and comfortable.

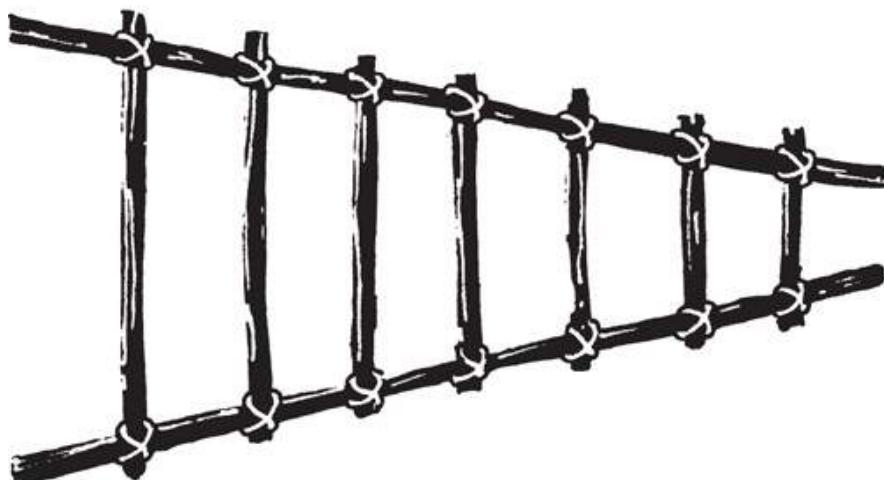


## SEATS

Never sit on damp ground. Use something, even if it is only a log. If there is no ready-made seat available, lash together a couple of low A-frame supports and rest another bough across them.

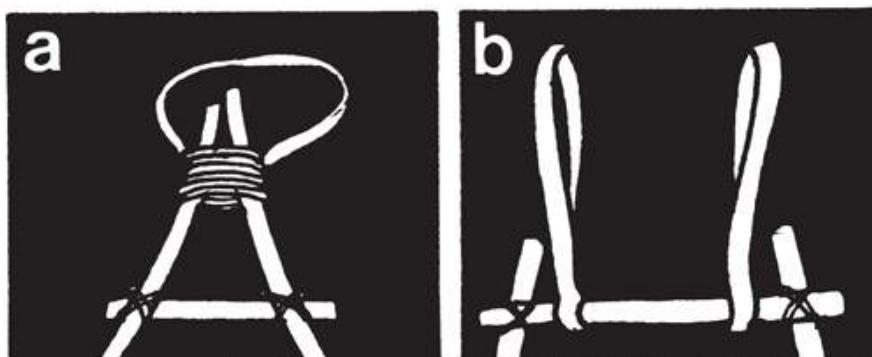


*Make a simple box frame with cross-members linking legs from short lengths of wood. To make a seat: weave vines or twine back and forth or sew on a piece of canvas or plastic with thongs. Failing these, try a flat piece of wood or metal laid across, or thin springy saplings lashed to the frame and interwoven.*



### LADDER

*Food-collecting, shelter-building, trap-setting and a whole lot of other tasks will be easier with a ladder. This one is easily made by lashing cross-pieces to two long poles. Because these are set at an angle, not parallel, the rungs will not be able to slip down.*



## TRAVOIS

*For bringing fuel or your prepared kill back to camp, or for other loads, a travois will work if the ground is fairly smooth — it will not on rough and boulder strewn terrain. Choose two boughs with some spring to them and lash cross-pieces, as for the ladder. Add additional struts to provide closer support.*

*Pull the load on its ‘runners’ like a sled. If you are pulling loads over a short distance, lash the runners to come to a single grip (a). For a larger version leave the last space clear or fit leather or fabric shoulder straps to haul it by (b).*

(For carrying equipment and sledges see [On the Move](#)).

# **ANIMAL PRODUCTS**

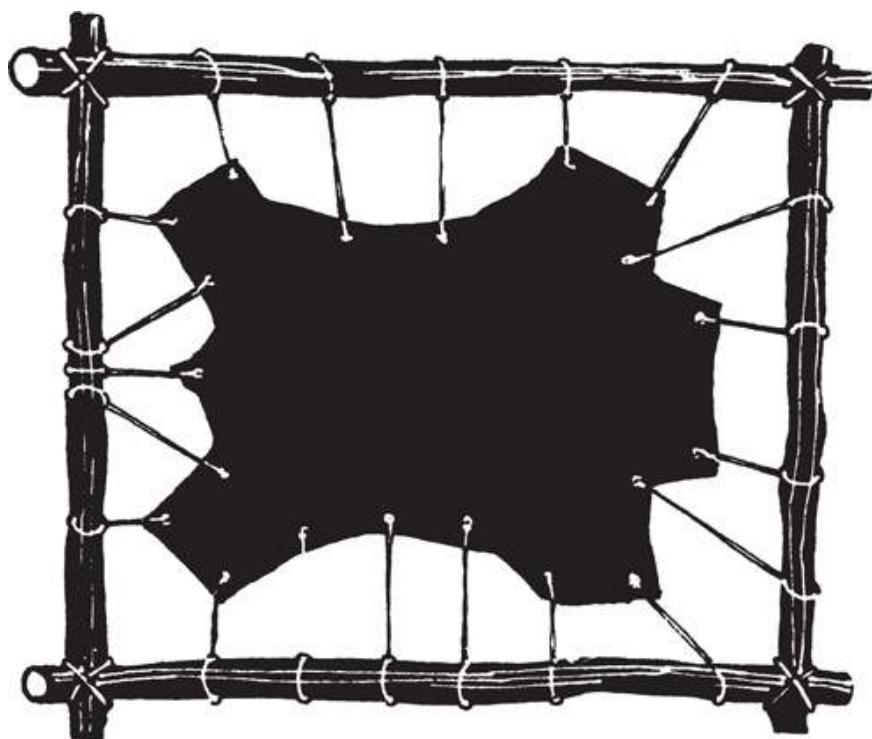
## **SKINS AND FURS**

All animals provide skins. Their condition will depend on how carefully they were removed, the way the animal was killed (which may have damaged the skin), the age of the animal and time of year (mating season, moult and change of season can affect the amount and colour of fur in some species). Common defects are due to parasites, disease, malnutrition and scars from fight injuries.

Snakes, lizards, crocodiles and other reptiles all provide excellent skins. So do large birds such as ostriches. Some aquatic mammals, seals and their relations, are fur-bearing, like land mammals, and whales and dolphins have strong hides. Sharks also have a hide, instead of scales like most other fish. Birds can be skinned with the feathers attached and used to make warm clothing or bed covers. Skin is a source of food and in circumstances of acute shortage can be eaten, even after being preserved and used for clothing, but it is very tough and takes a lot of digesting. There are cases of people surviving by eating their boots, though it should be emphasized that in all such cases plentiful water was available.

Skins and hides are composed of water and proteins and decay quickly if they are not specially treated to preserve them. How they are treated will depend upon whether you want to retain the hair or fur, but the initial stages will be the same in both. To make moccasins, shelters, laces, thongs, water bags or canoes, the hair is removed, but for warm clothing, bedding or a good insulating groundsheet it should be left on.

Properly prepared skins will be supple, yet strong, and resist tearing, abrasions, deformation or stretching. They are comfortable to wear, with good thermal insulation, but permeable to air and water vapour.



### **CLEANING THE SKIN**

*Make cleaning and drying a skin easier by stretching it on a frame. Do not make the holes for the cords too close to the edge. Remove fat and flesh by scraping the skin, using an edge of bone, flint or other rock, or even wood. Take care not to cut the skin. Remove every trace of flesh. Ants and other insects may help you if you lay the skin on the ground. Keep watch that they do not start to consume the skin itself.*

### **To cure furs**

Stretch the skin as tight as possible and leave it in the sun to dry out. All the moisture must be drawn from it so that it will not rot. Rubbing salt or wood ash into the skin will aid the process.

Do not let the skin get wet, or even damp, until the process is complete. Do not leave it where it will be exposed to rain or risk a covering with morning dew.

Keep it absolutely dry. If little or no sun is available, force dry over a fire, but keep the skin out of the flames and use only the heat and the smoke (which will aid preservation). Keep it away from the steam from any cooking pots.

## **Leather-making**

After cleaning, place the skin in water and weight it down with stones. Leave it until the fur can be pulled out in handfuls—usually 2-3 days.

Make a mixture of animal fat and brains, simmered over a fire till they form an even consistency.

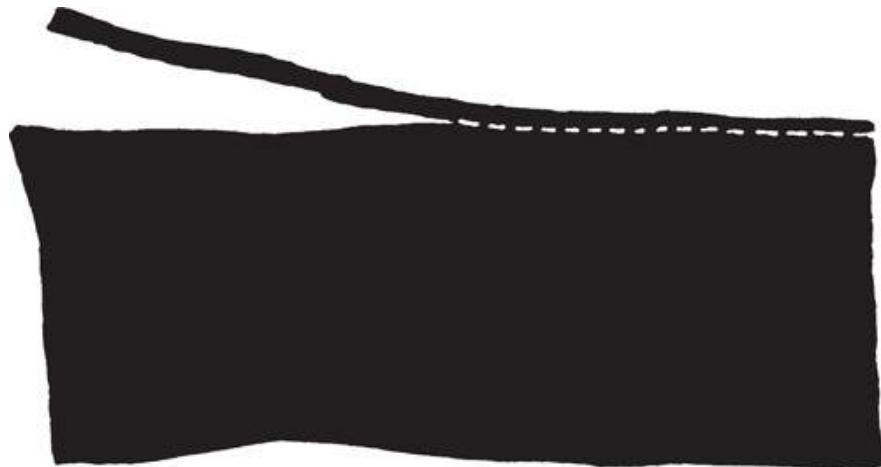
Scrape the skin on both sides, removing hair, and grain. Keep it wet. Work sitting down with the skin over your knees. Keep manipulating it.

Work the fat and brains mixture into the inner side of the still-wet skin, stretching and manipulating as you do so.

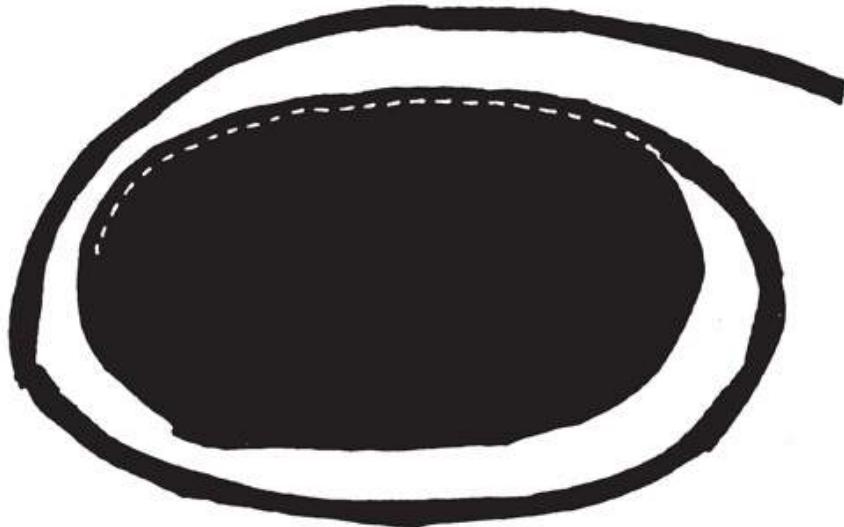
Dry the skin in the smoke over a fire, keeping it well away from the flames. The smoke sets up a reaction with the solution you have rubbed in to make the skin supple.

## **Laces and lashings**

Hide is one of the best materials for lashings and for thongs to lace things together.



*Cut short laces straight from the skin, along its length.*



*To obtain a greater length cut in a spiral — keep the width consistent or the thonging will have weak points.*

## **Sinew as thread**

The hamstring and the main sinews of the legs—especially of the larger animals—can be dried and used as thread to stitch hides together for shelter and clothing. Recognize them by their strong, white, cord-like appearance.

You can also use them for bowstrings and short ropes. They make excellent bindings for arrowheads. Sticky when wet, they dry hard.

## **Bladder**

The normal function of the bladder is to hold water, so naturally the bladder of a large animal can be used as a water carrier—so can the stomach. Tie off the openings to seal them.

## **CLOTHING**

When inadequately or unsuitably clothed for the situation you can improvise or supplement protection in many ways. Weaving fibres will only be practicable in a long-term situation and skins will not be available at first. Salvage towels, blankets, tablecloths, cushions, seat-covers, curtains, sacking from the wreckage—with a bit of initiative any kind of fabric can be used for garments, bedding or shelter.

Improve insulation and increase warmth by adding layers. Wear one sock on top of another and stuff dry grass or moss between them. Grass, paper, feathers, animal hair, etc, can be stuffed between other layers of clothing—newspapers give excellent insulation.

## **Waterproofing**

Use plastic bags and sheets to improvise waterproofs or cut off large sections of birch bark. Discard the outer bark and insert the soft and pliable inner layer under the outer clothing. It will turn away much of the rain. Other smooth barks that peel easily can be used, but birch is best.

In the longer term, improve water-repellent qualities by rubbing animal fat or the tallow from suet into your clothing. Do NOT do this in situations of intense cold, where the reduction in insulation would be too great a loss and rain rarely a threat.

## **Footwear**

Never underestimate the heavy wear and tear of rough ground on your feet. Climbing over rock and scree can soon destroy a pair of smart city shoes. High heels and sandals will soon break or wear in rough conditions.

- Cut shoe soles from rubber tyres, make holes around the edges for thongs to tie them over wrapped feet, or to sew onto fabric uppers.
- Several layers of wrapping are better than one on the feet. Tie on with thongs or use a triangular shape. Fold one point back over toes, make slits in front. Bring other points from behind the heel, through slits and tie around ankle.
- Moccasins can be cut from a single piece of leather, about 8cm (3in) bigger all round than the actual sole of your foot. Thong in and out around the edges and gather them in over wrapped feet. Tie off the gathering thongs, and weave another back and forth over the foot to make more secure. Alternatively, given more time and patience, more traditional moccasins can be made from a thickish hide sole, side strips and an upper. Measure around your foot first.

## **Goggles**

To protect from glare at sea and in snow or desert cut a strip of material, paper, bark—but not metal—to tie over the eyes (or over the whole face in cold climates). Eskimos often carved goggles from wood. Make narrow slits for the eyes. Add extra protection by blackening beneath the eyes with charcoal to reduce glare.

## **Needle and thread**

The Agave plant produces fibres for ropes and mats that are too rough for clothing but the end of the leaf is almost always a hard point which can be extracted with a fibre attached. It makes a perfectly threaded needle!

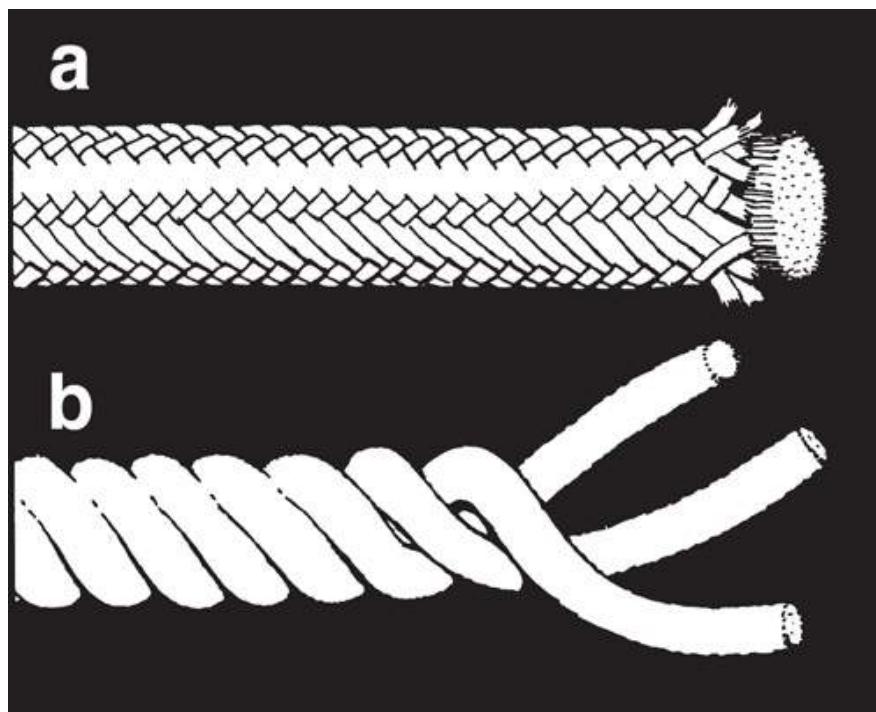
## **Clothing tips**

- Tie long leaf strips and fibres around a belt or neck band to hang down as a ‘grass’ skirt or cape.
- Cut a head hole in a blanket or carpet and use as a poncho. Tie at waist or thong sides.
- Small skins are easily thonged or sewn together. Fur on the inside will give greater insulation but on outer garments the suede side sheds snow better.

# ROPES AND LINES

There are thousands of uses for ropes and line, from securing constructional joints to making candle wicks, for rappelling down a cliff face to making snares and nets. Traditional materials for rope include hemp, coir (coconut fibre), Manila hemp (from the Abaca plant), henequin and sisal (both from species of Agave). Rope can be made from any pliable, fibrous material producing strands of sufficient length and strength. Much modern rope is made from nylon and other man-made fibres. They have the advantage of great inherent strength, lightness, resistance to water, insects and rot. However, nylon rope should not be the automatic choice if choosing equipment.

Nylon has the disadvantage that it can melt if subjected to heat—and friction on a rope produces heat. It is also slippery when wet. While its tensile strength is good, nylon also tends to snap if subjected to tension over an edge—it does not have to be a very sharp edge.



## TYPES OF ROPE

*Kernmantel type (a) encloses a central core of strands in an outer sheath. Easier to handle, except when wet or icy, but not so strong as hawser. It can unravel if cut. Traditional hawser-laid rope (b) has three bundles of fibres twisted together. If one is severed the others may hold.*

## Choosing rope

Match type, thickness and length of rope you carry to the demands you expect to make on it. Nylon will have advantages in very damp climates and when weight is critical but remember its drawbacks. Thicknesses of 7mm ( $\frac{5}{16}$  in) and below are difficult to handle.

Rope about 9-10mm ( $\frac{3}{8}$  in) is usually recommended for lashings, throwing and mountaineering. It can be used for safety lines and for climbing, provided belay and abseiling techniques are used—it is not thick enough for a hand over hand and foot grip. A length of 30-40m (100-125ft) would then be as much as can be carried without encumbrance.

Climbing rope must be elastic, to absorb some of the shock, without putting enormous strain on anyone who falls. See if it has the approval of official mountaineering bodies or conforms to the British Standard 3184 (for hawser-laid ropes).

## Taking care of rope

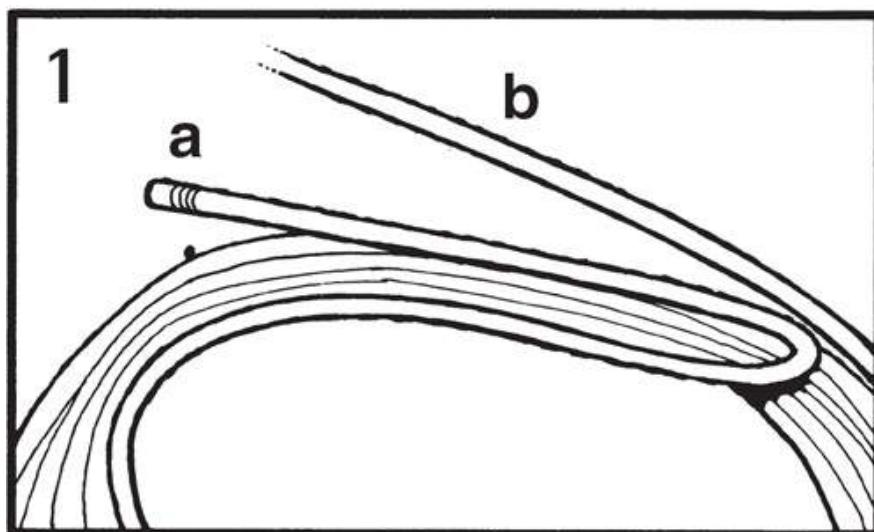
Rope should be protected from unnecessary exposure to damp or strong sunlight and (in the case of natural fibres) from attack by rodents and insects.

If it does get wet, do not force-dry it in front of a fire. Do not unnecessarily drag it along or leave it on the ground. Dirt can penetrate and particles of grit work away at the fibres from inside the rope. If weather conditions will make drying possible, it is worth trying to wash a very dirty rope in clean water.

Try to keep a rope for the job for which it was intended—do not use climbing rope as clothesline or lashing if you can avoid it—though in a survival situation you may have to use the same length for many purposes.

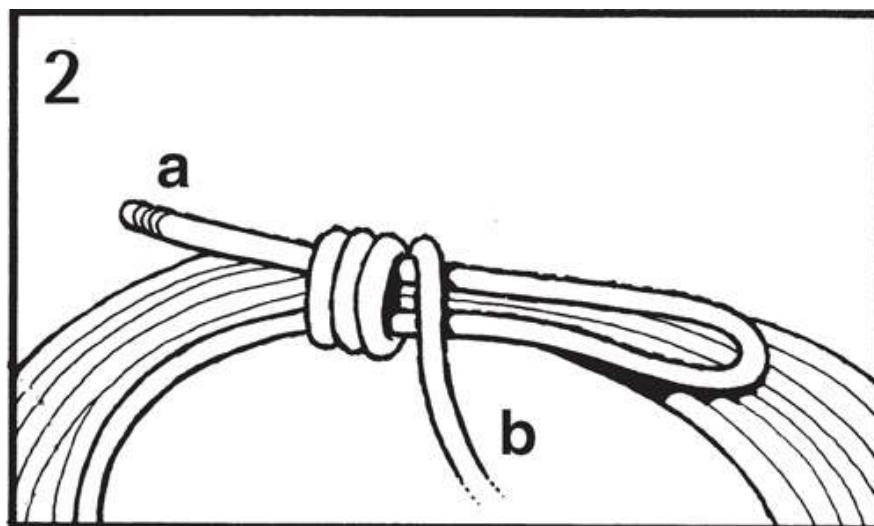
Whipping the end of the rope (shown later) will prevent it fraying. To prevent a rope becoming tangled, store and carry it in a coil or skein. It will be easier to handle and to pay out when needed.

Rope is valuable equipment. You may have to trust your life to it. Do your best to keep it in good condition.

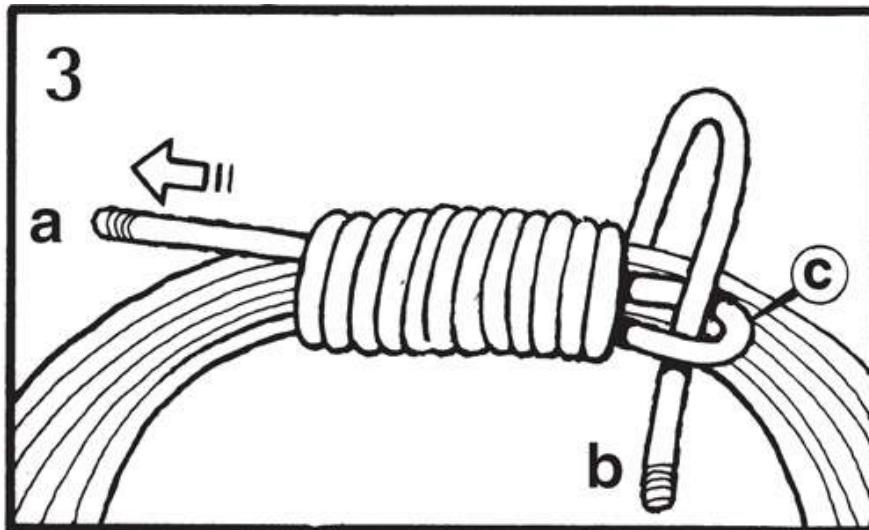


### SIMPLE COIL

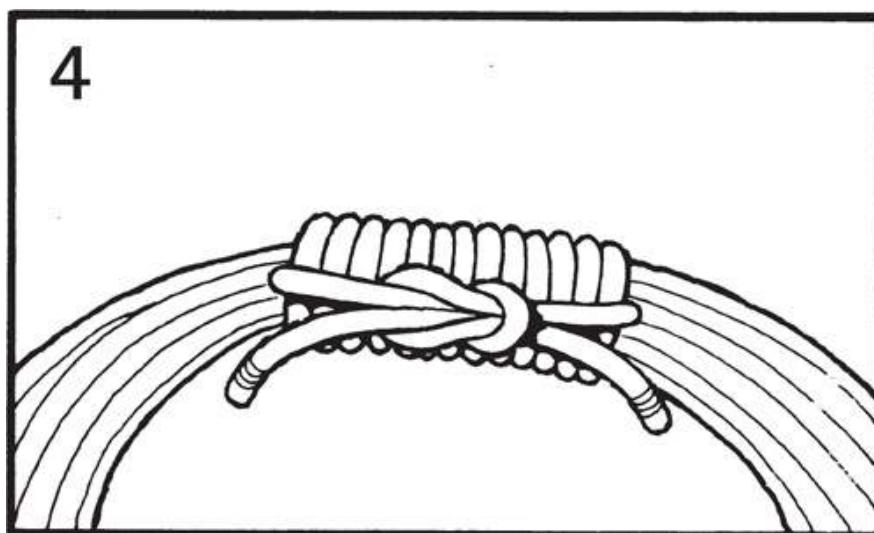
**1** Make a coil of rope 35–45cm (14–18in) in diameter, keeping each circle of the rope alongside the next without twisting or tangling. Leave a length at each end ready for fastening.



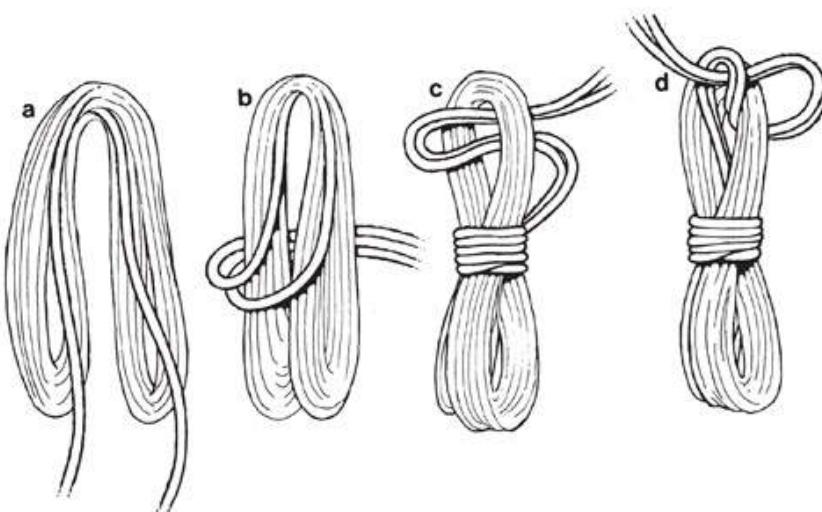
**2** Bend one end (a) back along the coil and wrap it with the other end (b).



**3** Feed the 'wrapping' end through the loop (c) and pull (a) to secure.



**4** Tie off with a reef knot — shown later.



#### FOR LONGER ROPES

If you wish to carry long ropes over your shoulder or suspended from a belt or from your pack, form a skein.

Loop the rope backwards and forwards over your arm, letting it hang down about 35–60cm (18–24in) long. Leave the ends free (a).

Take both ends together and wrap them several times around the skein (b). Make a loop and take this through the top part of the skein (c) and, finally, pass the ends through this loop (d).